

MSP430x1xx Family

User's Guide

IMPORTANT NOTICE

Texas Instruments Incorporated and its subsidiaries (TI) reserve the right to make corrections, modifications, enhancements, improvements, and other changes to its products and services at any time and to discontinue any product or service without notice. Customers should obtain the latest relevant information before placing orders and should verify that such information is current and complete. All products are sold subject to TI's terms and conditions of sale supplied at the time of order acknowledgment.

TI warrants performance of its hardware products to the specifications applicable at the time of sale in accordance with TI's standard warranty. Testing and other quality control techniques are used to the extent TI deems necessary to support this warranty. Except where mandated by government requirements, testing of all parameters of each product is not necessarily performed.

TI assumes no liability for applications assistance or customer product design. Customers are responsible for their products and applications using TI components. To minimize the risks associated with customer products and applications, customers should provide adequate design and operating safeguards.

TI does not warrant or represent that any license, either express or implied, is granted under any TI patent right, copyright, mask work right, or other TI intellectual property right relating to any combination, machine, or process in which TI products or services are used. Information published by TI regarding third-party products or services does not constitute a license from TI to use such products or services or a warranty or endorsement thereof. Use of such information may require a license from a third party under the patents or other intellectual property of the third party, or a license from TI under the patents or other intellectual property of TI.

Reproduction of information in TI data books or data sheets is permissible only if reproduction is without alteration and is accompanied by all associated warranties, conditions, limitations, and notices. Reproduction of this information with alteration is an unfair and deceptive business practice. TI is not responsible or liable for such altered documentation.

Resale of TI products or services with statements different from or beyond the parameters stated by TI for that product or service voids all express and any implied warranties for the associated TI product or service and is an unfair and deceptive business practice. TI is not responsible or liable for any such statements.

Mailing Address:

Texas Instruments
Post Office Box 655303
Dallas, Texas 75265

Read This First

About This Manual

The MSP430x1xx User's Guide is intended to assist the development of MSP430x1xx family products by assembling together and presenting hardware and software information in a manner that is easy for engineers and programmers to use.

This manual discusses modules and peripherals of the MSP430x1xx family of devices. Each discussion presents the module or peripheral in a general sense. Not all features and functions of all modules or peripherals are present on all devices. In addition, modules or peripherals may differ in their exact implementation between device families, or may not be fully implemented on an individual device or device family. Therefore, a user must always consult the data sheet of any device of interest to determine what peripherals and modules are implemented, and exactly how they are implemented on that particular device.

How to Use This Manual

This document contains the following chapters:

- Chapter 1 – Introduction
- Chapter 2 – Architectural Overview
- Chapter 3 – System Resets, Interrupts, and Operating Modes
- Chapter 4 – Memory
- Chapter 5 – 16-Bit CPU
- Chapter 6 – Hardware Multiplier
- Chapter 7 – Basic Clock Module
- Chapter 8 – Digital I/O Configuration
- Chapter 9 – Watchdog Timer
- Chapter 10 – Timer_A
- Chapter 11 – Timer_B
- Chapter 12 – USART Peripheral Interface, UART Mode
- Chapter 13 – USART Peripheral Interface, SPI Mode

Chapter 14 – Comparator_A
Chapter 15 – ADC12
Chapter 16 – ADC10
Appendix A – Peripheral File Map
Appendix B – Instruction Set Description
Appendix C – Flash Memory

Notational Conventions

This document uses the following conventions.

- Program listings, program examples, and interactive displays are shown in a *special typeface* similar to a typewriter's.

Here is a sample program listing:

```
0011 0005 0001      .field    1, 2
0012 0005 0003      .field    3, 4
0013 0005 0006      .field    6, 3
0014 0006           .even
```

Related Documentation From Texas Instruments

For related documentation see the web site <http://www.ti.com/sc/msp430>.

FCC Warning

This equipment is intended for use in a laboratory test environment only. It generates, uses, and can radiate radio frequency energy and has not been tested for compliance with the limits of computing devices pursuant to subpart J of part 15 of FCC rules, which are designed to provide reasonable protection against radio frequency interference. Operation of this equipment in other environments may cause interference with radio communications, in which case the user at his own expense will be required to take whatever measures may be required to correct this interference.

Contents

1	Introduction	1-1
1.1	Features and Capabilities	1-2
1.2	11x Devices	1-3
1.3	11x1 Devices	1-3
1.4	11x2 Devices	1-4
1.5	12x Devices	1-4
1.6	12x2 Devices	1-4
1.7	13x Devices	1-5
1.8	14x Devices	1-5
2	Architectural Overview	2-1
2.1	Introduction	2-2
2.2	Central Processing Unit	2-2
2.3	Program Memory	2-3
2.4	Data Memory	2-3
2.5	Operation Control	2-3
2.6	Peripherals	2-4
2.7	Oscillator and Clock Generator	2-4
3	System Resets, Interrupts, and Operating Modes	3-1
3.1	System Reset and Initialization	3-2
3.1.1	Introduction	3-2
3.1.2	Device Initialization After System Reset	3-4
3.2	Global Interrupt Structure	3-5
3.3	MSP430 Interrupt-Priority Scheme	3-6
3.3.1	Operation of Global Interrupt—Reset/NMI	3-8
3.3.2	Operation of Global Interrupt—Oscillator Fault Control	3-9
3.4	Interrupt Processing	3-9
3.4.1	Interrupt Control Bits in Special-Function Registers (SFRs)	3-11
3.4.2	Interrupt Vector Addresses	3-20
3.5	Operating Modes	3-23
3.5.1	Low-Power Mode 0 and 1 (LPM0 and LPM1)	3-27
3.5.2	Low-Power Modes 2 and 3 (LPM2 and LPM3)	3-28
3.5.3	Low-Power Mode 4 (LPM4)	3-28
3.6	Basic Hints for Low-Power Applications	3-29
4	Memory	4-1
4.1	Introduction	4-2
4.2	Data in the Memory	4-3

4.3	Internal ROM Organization	4-4
4.3.1	Processing of ROM Tables	4-4
4.3.2	Computed Branches and Calls	4-5
4.4	RAM and Peripheral Organization	4-6
4.4.1	Random Access Memory	4-6
4.4.2	Peripheral Modules—Address Allocation	4-8
4.4.3	Peripheral Modules-Special Function Registers (SFRs)	4-10
5	16-Bit CPU	5-1
5.1	CPU Registers	5-2
5.1.1	The Program Counter (PC)	5-2
5.1.2	The System Stack Pointer (SP)	5-2
5.1.3	The Status Register (SR)	5-4
5.1.4	The Constant Generator Registers CG1 and CG2	5-5
5.2	Addressing Modes	5-7
5.2.1	Register Mode	5-8
5.2.2	Indexed Mode	5-9
5.2.3	Symbolic Mode	5-10
5.2.4	Absolute Mode	5-11
5.2.5	Indirect Mode	5-12
5.2.6	Indirect Autoincrement Mode	5-13
5.2.7	Immediate Mode	5-14
5.2.8	Clock Cycles, Length of Instruction	5-15
5.3	Instruction Set Overview	5-17
5.3.1	Double-Operand (Format I) Instructions	5-18
5.3.2	Single-Operand (Format II) Instructions	5-19
5.3.3	Conditional Jumps	5-20
5.3.4	Short Form of Emulated Instructions	5-21
5.3.5	Miscellaneous	5-22
5.4	Instruction Map	5-23
6	Hardware Multiplier	6-1
6.1	Hardware Multiplier Module Support	6-2
6.2	Hardware Multiplier Operation	6-3
6.2.1	Multiply Unsigned, 16 × 16 bit, 16 × 8 bit, 8 × 16 bit, 8 × 8 bit	6-4
6.2.2	Multiply Signed, 16 × 16 bit, 16 × 8 bit, 8 × 16 bit, 8 × 8 bit	6-4
6.2.3	Multiply Unsigned and Accumulate, 16 × 16 bit, 168 bit, 8 × 16 bit, 8 × 8 bit ..	6-5
6.2.4	Multiply Signed and Accumulate, 16 × 16 bit, 16 × 8 bit, 8 × 16 bit, 8 × 8 bit	6-5
6.3	Hardware Multiplier Registers	6-6
6.4	Hardware Multiplier Special Function Bits	6-7
6.5	Hardware Multiplier Software Restrictions	6-7
6.5.1	Hardware Multiplier Software Restrictions—Address Mode	6-7
6.5.2	Hardware Multiplier Software Restrictions—Interrupt Routines	6-8
6.5.3	Hardware Multiplier Software Restrictions—MACS	6-9
7	Basic Clock Module	7-1
7.1	Basic Clock Module	7-2
7.2	LFXT1 and XT2 Oscillators	7-4
7.2.1	LFXT1 Oscillator	7-4
7.2.2	XT2 Oscillator	7-5
7.2.3	Oscillator Fault Detection	7-6

7.2.4	Select DCO Oscillator for MCLK on XT Oscillator Fault	7-8
7.3	Digitally-Controlled Oscillator (DCO)	7-10
7.3.1	Operation of the DCO Modulator	7-12
7.4	Basic Clock Module Operating Modes	7-14
7.4.1	Starting From Power Up Clear (PUC)	7-14
7.4.2	Adjusting the Basic Clock	7-14
7.4.3	Basic Clock Features for Low-Power Applications	7-15
7.4.4	Selecting a Crystal Clock for MCLK	7-15
7.4.5	Synchronization of Clock Signals	7-17
7.5	Basic Clock Module Control Registers	7-18
7.5.1	Digitally-Controlled Oscillator (DCO) Clock-Frequency Control	7-18
7.5.2	Oscillator and Clock Control Register	7-18
7.5.3	Special-Function Register Bits	7-20
8	Digital I/O Configuration	8-1
8.1	Introduction	8-2
8.2	Ports P1, P2	8-3
8.2.1	Port P1, Port P2 Control Registers	8-4
8.2.2	Port P1, Port P2 Schematic	8-7
8.2.3	Port P1, P2 Interrupt Control Functions	8-8
8.3	Ports P3, P4, P5, P6	8-9
8.3.1	Port P3–P6 Control Registers	8-9
8.3.2	Port P3–P6 Schematic	8-11
9	Watchdog Timer	9-1
9.1	The Watchdog Timer	9-2
9.1.1	Watchdog Timer Register	9-3
9.1.2	Watchdog Timer Interrupt Control Functions	9-5
9.1.3	Watchdog Timer Operation	9-5
10	Timer_A	10-1
10.1	Introduction	10-2
10.2	Timer_A Operation	10-4
10.2.1	Timer Mode Control	10-4
10.2.2	Clock Source Select and Divider	10-5
10.2.3	Starting the Timer	10-6
10.3	Timer Modes	10-7
10.3.1	Timer—Stop Mode	10-7
10.3.2	Timer—Up Mode	10-7
10.3.3	Timer—Continuous Mode	10-9
10.3.4	Timer—Up/Down Mode	10-10
10.4	Capture/Compare Blocks	10-13
10.4.1	Capture/Compare Block—Capture Mode	10-14
10.4.2	Capture/Compare Block—Compare Mode	10-18
10.5	The Output Unit	10-19
10.5.1	Output Unit—Output Modes	10-20
10.5.2	Output Control Block	10-21
10.5.3	Output Examples	10-22
10.6	Timer_A Registers	10-24
10.6.1	Timer_A Control Register TACTL	10-25
10.6.2	Timer_A Register TAR	10-26

10.6.3	Capture/Compare Control Register CCTLx	10-27
10.6.4	Timer_A Interrupt Vector Register	10-29
10.7	Timer_A UART	10-33
11	Timer_B	11-1
11.1	Introduction	11-2
11.1.1	Similarities and Differences From Timer_A	11-2
11.2	Timer_B Operation	11-5
11.2.1	Timer Length	11-5
11.2.2	Timer Mode Control	11-5
11.2.3	Clock Source Select and Divider	11-6
11.2.4	Starting the Timer	11-7
11.3	Timer Modes	11-8
11.3.1	Timer—Stop Mode	11-8
11.3.2	Timer—Up Mode	11-8
11.3.3	Timer—Continuous Mode	11-10
11.3.4	Timer—Up/Down Mode	11-12
11.4	Capture/Compare Blocks	11-15
11.4.1	Capture/Compare Block—Capture Mode	11-16
11.4.2	Capture/Compare Block—Compare Mode	11-19
11.5	The Output Unit	11-23
11.5.2	Output Control Block	11-25
11.5.3	Output Examples	11-26
11.6	Timer_B Registers	11-29
11.6.1	Timer_B Control Register TBCTL	11-29
11.6.2	Timer_B Register TBR	11-32
11.6.3	Capture/Compare Control Register CCTLx	11-32
11.6.4	Timer_B Interrupt Vector Register	11-35
12	USART Peripheral Interface, UART Mode	12-1
12.1	USART Peripheral Interface	12-2
12.2	USART Peripheral Interface, UART Mode	12-3
12.2.1	UART Serial Asynchronous Communication Features	12-3
12.3	Asynchronous Operation	12-4
12.3.1	Asynchronous Frame Format	12-4
12.3.2	Baud Rate Generation in Asynchronous Communication Format	12-5
12.3.3	Asynchronous Communication Formats	12-7
12.3.4	Idle-Line Multiprocessor Format	12-7
12.3.5	Address-Bit Multiprocessor Format	12-9
12.4	Interrupt and Enable Functions	12-11
12.4.1	USART Receive Enable Bit	12-11
12.4.2	USART Transmit Enable Bit	12-12
12.4.3	USART Receive Interrupt Operation	12-13
12.4.4	USART Transmit Interrupt Operation	12-14
12.5	Control and Status Registers	12-15
12.5.1	USART Control Register U0CTL, U1CTL	12-16
12.5.2	Transmit Control Register U0TCTL, U1TCTL	12-18
12.5.3	Receiver Control Register U0RCTL, U1RCTL	12-19
12.5.4	Baud Rate Select and Modulation Control Registers	12-21
12.5.5	Receive-Data Buffer U0RXBUF, U1RXBUF	12-22
12.5.6	Transmit Data Buffer U0TXBUF, U1TXBUF	12-22

12.6	Utilizing Features of Low-Power Modes	12-23
12.6.1	Receive-Start Operation From UART Frame	12-23
12.6.2	Maximum Utilization of Clock Frequency vs Baud Rate UART Mode	12-25
12.6.3	Support of Multiprocessor Modes for Reduced Use of MSP430 Resources	12-26
12.7	Baud Rate Considerations	12-26
12.7.1	Bit Timing in Transmit Operation	12-27
12.7.2	Typical Baud Rates and Errors	12-29
12.7.3	Synchronization Error	12-30
13	USART Peripheral Interface, SPI Mode	13-1
13.1	USART Peripheral Interface	13-2
13.2	USART Peripheral Interface, SPI Mode	13-3
13.2.1	SPI Mode Features	13-3
13.3	Synchronous Operation	13-4
13.3.1	Master SPI Mode	13-7
13.3.2	Slave SPI Mode	13-8
13.4	Interrupt and Control Functions	13-9
13.4.1	USART Receive/Transmit Enable Bit, Receive Operation	13-9
13.4.2	USART Receive/Transmit Enable Bit, Transmit Operation	13-11
13.4.3	USART Receive-Interrupt Operation	13-13
13.4.4	Transmit-Interrupt Operation	13-14
13.5	Control and Status Registers	13-15
13.5.1	USART Control Register	13-16
13.5.2	Transmit Control Register U0TCTL, U1TCTL	13-17
13.5.3	Receive Control Register U0RCTL, U1RCTL	13-18
13.5.4	Baud Rate Select and Modulation Control Registers	13-19
13.5.5	Receive Data Buffer U0RXBUF, U1RXBUF	13-19
13.5.6	Transmit Data Buffer U0TXBUF, U1TXBUF	13-20
14	Comparator_A	14-1
14.1	Comparator_A Overview	14-2
14.2	Comparator_A Description	14-3
14.2.1	Input Analog Switches	14-3
14.2.2	Input Multiplexer	14-3
14.2.3	The Comparator	14-3
14.2.4	The Output Filter	14-3
14.2.5	The Voltage Reference Generator	14-4
14.2.6	Comparator_A Interrupt Circuitry	14-5
14.3	Comparator_A Control Registers	14-6
14.3.1	Comparator_A, Control Register CACTL1	14-6
14.3.2	Comparator_A, Control Register CACTL2	14-7
14.3.3	Comparator_A, Port Disable Register CAPD	14-7
14.4	Comparator_A in Applications	14-9
14.4.1	Analog Signals at Digital Inputs	14-9
14.4.2	Comparator_A Used to Measure Resistive Elements	14-11
14.4.3	Measuring Two Independent Resistive Element Systems	14-13
14.4.4	Comparator_A Used to Detect a Current or Voltage Level	14-16
14.4.5	Comparator_A Used to Measure a Current or Voltage Level	14-17
14.4.6	Measuring the Offset Voltage of Comparator_A	14-20
14.4.7	Compensating for the Offset Voltage of Comparator_A	14-22

14.4.8	Adding Hysteresis to Comparator_A	14-22
15	ADC12	15-1
15.1	Introduction	15-2
15.2	ADC12 Description and Operation	15-4
15.2.1	ADC Core	15-4
15.2.2	Reference	15-5
15.3	Analog Inputs and Multiplexer	15-6
15.3.1	Analog Multiplexer	15-6
15.3.2	Input Signal Considerations	15-7
15.3.3	Using the Temperature Diode	15-7
15.4	Conversion Memory	15-8
15.5	Conversion Modes	15-9
15.5.1	Single-Channel, Single-Conversion Mode	15-10
15.5.2	Sequence-of-Channels Mode	15-12
15.5.3	Repeat-Single-Channel Mode	15-16
15.5.4	Repeat-Sequence-of-Channels Mode	15-17
15.5.5	Switching Between Conversion Modes	15-19
15.5.6	Power Down	15-20
15.6	Conversion Clock and Conversion Speed	15-21
15.7	Sampling	15-22
15.7.1	Sampling Operation	15-22
15.7.2	Sample Signal Input Selection	15-23
15.7.3	Sampling Modes	15-24
15.7.4	Using the MSC Bit	15-27
15.7.5	Sample Timing Considerations	15-29
15.8	ADC12 Control Registers	15-30
15.8.1	Control Registers ADC12CTL0 and ADC12CTL1	15-31
15.8.2	Conversion-Memory Registers ADC12MEMx	15-35
15.8.3	Control Registers ADC12MCTLx	15-35
15.8.4	ADC12 Interrupt Flags ADC12IFG.x and Interrupt-Enable Registers ADC12IEN.x	15-37
15.8.5	ADC12 Interrupt Vector Register ADC12IV	15-37
15.9	A/D Grounding and Noise Considerations	15-41
16	ADC10	16-1
16.1	Introduction	16-2
16.2	ADC10 Description and Operation	16-4
16.2.1	ADC Core	16-4
16.2.2	Reference	16-5
16.3	Analog Inputs and Multiplexer	16-6
16.3.1	Analog Multiplexer	16-6
16.3.2	Input Signal Considerations	16-7
16.3.3	Using the Temperature Sensor	16-7
16.4	Conversion Modes	16-8
16.4.1	Single-Channel, Single-Conversion Mode	16-8
16.4.2	Sequence-of-Channels Mode	16-9
16.4.3	Repeat-Single-Channel Mode	16-11
16.4.4	Repeat-Sequence-of-Channels Mode	16-13
16.4.5	Switching Between Conversion Modes	16-15
16.4.6	Power Down	16-16

16.5	Conversion Clock and Conversion Speed	16-17
16.6	Sampling	16-18
16.6.1	Sampling Operation	16-18
16.6.2	Sample Signal Input Selection	16-19
16.6.3	Using the MSC Bit	16-20
16.6.4	Sample Timing Considerations	16-21
16.7	ADC10 Control Registers	16-22
16.7.1	Control Registers ADC10CTL0 and ADC10CTL1	16-22
16.7.2	Analog (Input) Enable Control Register	16-26
16.7.3	Conversion-Memory Register ADC10MEM	16-27
16.8	Data Transfer Control—High-Speed Conversion Support	16-27
16.8.1	DTC Operation	16-28
16.8.2	Data Transfer Control Registers in ADC10	16-35
16.8.3	Software Examples for Using DTC	16-36
16.8.4	DTC Transfer Cycle Time	16-38
16.9	Controlling the Current Consumption of the ADC10 Module	16-39
16.9.1	General Power Saving Features and Tips	16-39
16.9.2	Current Consumption Scenarios	16-41
16.10	A/D Grounding and Noise Considerations	16-44
17	Peripheral File Map	A-1
A.1	Overview	A-2
A.2	Special Function Register of MSP430x1xx Family, Byte Access	A-3
A.3	Digital I/O, Byte Access	A-3
A.3	Digital I/O, Byte Access (Continued)	A-4
A.4	Basic Clock Registers, Byte Access	A-5
A.5	EPROM Control Register Byte Access	A-5
A.6	Comparator_A Registers, Byte Access	A-5
A.7	USART0, USART1, UART Mode (Sync=0), Byte Access	A-6
A.8	USART0, USART1, SPI Mode (Sync=1), Byte Access	A-7
A.9	ADC12 Registers, Byte and Word Access	A-8
A.10	ADC10 Registers, Byte and Word Access	A-11
A.11	Watchdog/Timer, Word Access	A-12
A.12	Flash Control Registers, Word Access	A-12
A.13	Hardware Multiplier, Word Access	A-13
A.14	Timer_A Registers, Word Access	A-14
A.15	Timer_B Registers, Word Access	A-16
18	Instruction Set Description	B-1
B.1	Instruction Set Overview	B-2
B.1.1	Instruction Formats	B-4
B.1.2	Conditional and Unconditional Jumps (Core Instructions)	B-5
B.1.3	Emulated Instructions	B-6
B.2	Instruction Set Description	B-8
19	Flash Memory	C-1
C.1	Flash Memory Organization	C-2
C.1.1	Why Is a Flash Memory Module Divided Into Several Segments?	C-5
C.2	Flash Memory Data Structure and Operation	C-5
C.2.1	Flash Memory Basic Functions	C-6
C.2.2	Flash Memory Block Diagram	C-6

C.2.3	Flash Memory, Basic Operation	C-6
C.2.4	Flash Memory Status During Code Execution	C-8
C.2.5	Flash Memory Status During Erase	C-8
C.2.6	Flash Memory Status During Write (Programming)	C-10
C.3	Flash Memory Control Registers	C-13
C.3.1	Flash Memory Control Register FCTL1	C-13
C.3.2	Flash Memory Control Register FCTL2	C-15
C.3.3	Flash Memory Control Register FCTL3	C-16
C.4	Flash Memory, Interrupt and Security Key Violation	C-18
C.4.1	Example of an NMI Interrupt Handler	C-20
C.4.2	Protecting One-Flash Memory-Module Systems From Corruption	C-20
C.5	Flash Memory Access via JTAG and Software	C-22
C.5.1	Flash Memory Protection	C-22
C.5.2	Program Flash Memory Module via Serial Data Link Using JTAG Feature ..	C-22
C.5.3	Programming a Flash Memory Module via Controller Software	C-22

Figures

2-1	MSP430 System Configuration	2-2
2-2	Bus Connection of Modules/Peripherals	2-4
3-1	Power-On Reset and Power-Up Clear Schematic	3-2
3-2	Power-On Reset Timing on Fast VCC Rise Time	3-3
3-3	Power-on Reset Timing on Slow VCC Rise Time	3-3
3-4	Interrupt Priority Scheme	3-6
3-5	Block Diagram of NMI Interrupt Sources	3-7
3-6	RST/NMI Mode Selection	3-8
3-7	Interrupt Processing	3-10
3-8	Return From Interrupt	3-10
3-9	Status Register (SR)	3-11
3-10	MSP430x1xx Operating Modes For Basic Clock System	3-26
3-11	Typical Current Consumption of 13x and 14x Devices vs Operating Modes	3-27
4-1	Memory Map of Basic Address Space	4-2
4-2	Memory Data Bus	4-2
4-3	Bits, Bytes, and Words in a Byte-Organized Memory	4-3
4-4	ROM Organization	4-4
4-5	Byte and Word Operation	4-6
4-6	Register-Byte/Byte-Register Operations	4-7
4-7	Example of RAM/Peripheral Organization	4-8
5-1	Program Counter	5-2
5-2	System Stack Pointer	5-2
5-3	Stack Usage	5-3
5-4	PUSH SP and POP SP	5-3
5-5	Status Register Bits	5-4
5-6	Operand Fetch Operation	5-13
5-7	Double Operand Instruction Format	5-18
5-8	Single Operand Instruction Format	5-19
5-9	Conditional-Jump Instruction Format	5-20
5-10	Core Instruction Map	5-23
6-1	Connection of the Hardware Multiplier Module to the Bus System	6-2
6-2	Block Diagram of the MSP430 16 ×16-Bit Hardware Multiplier	6-3
6-3	Registers of the Hardware Multiplier	6-6
7-1	Basic Clock Schematic	7-2
7-2	Principle of LFXT1 Oscillator	7-4
7-3	Off Signals for the LFXT1 Oscillator	7-5
7-4	Off Signals for Oscillator XT2	7-5
7-5	Oscillator-Fault-Interrupt	7-6
7-6	Oscillator-Fault Signal	7-7

7-7	Oscillator Fault in Oscillator Error Condition	7-7
7-8	Oscillator Fault in Oscillator Error Condition at Start-Up	7-8
7-9	NMI/OSCFault Interrupt Handler	7-9
7-10	DCO Schematic	7-10
7-11	Principle Period Steps of the DCO	7-11
7-12	On/Off Control of DCO	7-11
7-13	Operation of the DCO Modulator	7-12
7-14	Select Crystal Oscillator for MCLK, Example Uses LFXT1 for MCLK	7-15
7-15	Timing to Select Crystal Oscillator for MCLK, Example Uses LFXT1 in HF Mode for MCLK	7-16
7-16	Select Another Clock Source Signal, Example Switches From DCOCLK to LFXT1CLK for Clock MCLK	7-17
8-1	Port P1, Port P2 Configuration	8-3
8-2	Schematic of One Bit in Port P1, P2	8-7
8-3	Ports P3–P6 Configuration	8-9
8-4	Schematic of Bits Pn.x	8-11
9-1	Schematic of Watchdog Timer	9-2
9-2	Watchdog Timer Control Register	9-3
9-3	Reading WDTCTL	9-4
9-4	Writing to WDTCTL	9-4
10-1	Timer_A Block Diagram	10-3
10-2	Mode Control	10-4
10-3	Schematic of 16-Bit Timer	10-5
10-4	Schematic of Clock Source Select and Input Divider	10-5
10-5	Timer Up Mode	10-7
10-6	Up Mode Flag Setting	10-7
10-7	New Period > Old Period	10-8
10-8	New Period < Old Period	10-8
10-9	Timer—Continuous Mode	10-9
10-10	Continuous Mode Flag Setting	10-9
10-11	Output Unit in Continuous Mode for Time Intervals	10-10
10-12	Timer Up/Down Mode	10-10
10-13	Output Unit in Up/Down Mode (II)	10-11
10-14	Timer Up/Down Direction Control	10-11
10-15	Up/Down Mode Flag Setting	10-12
10-16	Altering CCR0—Timer in Up/Down Mode	10-12
10-17	Capture/Compare Blocks	10-13
10-18	Capture Logic Input Signal	10-14
10-19	Capture Signal	10-15
10-20	Capture Cycle	10-16
10-21	Software Capture Example	10-17
10-22	Output Unit	10-19
10-23	Output Control Block	10-21
10-24	Output Examples—Timer in Up Mode	10-23
10-25	Output Examples—Timer in Continuous Mode	10-23
10-26	Output Examples—Timer in Up/Down Mode (I)	10-24
10-27	Timer_A Control Register TACTL	10-25
10-28	TAR Register	10-26
10-29	Capture/Compare Control Register CCTLx	10-27
10-30	Capture/Compare Interrupt Flag	10-29
10-31	Schematic of Capture/Compare Interrupt Vector Word	10-30

10-32	Vector Word Register	10-30
10-33	UART Implementation	10-34
10-34	Timer_A UART Timing	10-35
11-1	Timer_B Block Diagram	11-4
11-2	Mode Control	11-5
11-3	Schematic of 16-Bit Timer	11-6
11-4	Schematic of Clock Source Select and Input Divider	11-7
11-5	Timer Up Mode	11-8
11-6	Up Mode Flag Setting	11-8
11-7	New Period > Old Period	11-9
11-8	New Period < Old Period	11-10
11-9	Timer Continuous Mode	11-10
11-10	Continuous Mode Flag Setting	11-11
11-11	Output Unit in Continuous Mode for Time Intervals	11-11
11-12	Timer Up/Down Mode	11-12
11-13	Output Unit in Up/Down Mode (II)	11-12
11-14	Timer Up/Down Direction Control	11-13
11-15	Up/Down Mode Flag Setting	11-13
11-16	Altering TBCL0—Timer in Up/Down Mode	11-14
11-17	Capture/Compare Blocks	11-15
11-18	Capture Logic Input Signal	11-16
11-19	Capture Signal	11-16
11-20	Capture Cycle	11-17
11-21	Software Capture Example	11-19
11-22	Output Unit	11-23
11-23	Output Control Block	11-25
11-24	Output Examples—Timer in Up Mode	11-27
11-25	Output Examples—Timer in Continuous Mode	11-27
11-26	Output Examples – Timer in Up/Down Mode (I)	11-28
11-27	Timer_B Control Register TBCTL	11-29
11-28	TBR Register	11-32
11-29	Capture/Compare Control Register CCTLx	11-32
11-30	Capture/Compare Interrupt Flag	11-35
11-31	Schematic of Capture/Compare Interrupt Vector Word	11-36
11-32	Vector Word Register	11-36
12-1	Block Diagram of USART	12-2
12-2	Block Diagram of USART—UART Mode	12-3
12-3	Asynchronous Frame Format	12-4
12-4	Asynchronous Bit Format Example for n or $n + 1$ Clock Periods	12-4
12-5	Typical Baud-Rate Generation Other Than MSP430	12-5
12-6	MSP430 Baud Rate Generation Example for n or $n + 1$ Clock Periods	12-6
12-7	Idle-Line Multiprocessor Format	12-7
12-8	USART Receiver Idle Detect	12-8
12-9	Double-Buffered WUT and TX Shift Register	12-8
12-10	USART Transmitter Idle Generation	12-9
12-11	Address-Bit Multiprocessor Format	12-10
12-12	State Diagram of Receiver Enable	12-11
12-13	State Diagram of Transmitter Enable	12-12
12-14	Receive Interrupt Operation	12-13
12-15	Transmit Interrupt Operation	12-14

12-16	USART Control Register U0CTL, U1CTL	12-16
12-17	Transmitter Control Register U0TCTL, U1TCTL	12-18
12-18	Receiver-Control Register U0RCTL, U1RCTL	12-19
12-19	USART Baud Rate Select Register	12-21
12-20	USART Modulation Control Register	12-21
12-21	USART0 Receive Data Buffer U0RXBUF, U1RXBUF	12-22
12-22	Transmit Data Buffer U0TXBUF, U1TXBUF	12-22
12-23	Receive-Start Conditions	12-23
12-24	Receive-Start Timing Using URXS Flag, Start Bit Accepted	12-24
12-25	Receive Start Timing Using URXS Flag, Start Bit Not Accepted	12-24
12-26	Receive Start Timing Using URXS Flag, Glitch Suppression	12-24
12-27	MSP430 Transmit Bit Timing	12-27
12-28	MSP430 Transmit Bit Timing Errors	12-27
12-29	Synchronization Error	12-30
13-1	Block Diagram of USART	13-2
13-2	Block Diagram of USART—SPI Mode	13-3
13-3	MSP430 USART as Master, External Device With SPI as Slave	13-5
13-4	Serial Synchronous Data Transfer	13-6
13-5	Data Transfer Cycle	13-6
13-6	MSP430 USART as Slave in Three-Pin or Four-Pin Configuration	13-7
13-7	State Diagram of Receiver Enable Operation—MSP430 as Master	13-10
13-8	State Diagram of Receive/Transmit Enable—MSP430 as Slave, Three-Pin Mode	13-10
13-9	State Diagram of Receive Enable—MSP430 as Slave, Four-Pin Mode	13-11
13-10	State Diagram of Transmit Enable—MSP430 as Master	13-11
13-11	State Diagram of Transmit Enable—MSP430 as Slave	13-12
13-12	Receive Interrupt Operation	13-13
13-13	Receive Interrupt State Diagram	13-13
13-14	Transmit-Interrupt Operation	13-14
13-15	USART Control Register	13-16
13-16	Transmit Control Register U0TCTL, U1TCTL	13-17
13-17	USART Clock Phase and Polarity	13-18
13-18	Receive Control Register U0RCTL, U1RCTL	13-18
13-19	USART Baud-Rate Select Register	13-19
13-20	USART Modulation Control Register	13-19
13-21	Receive Data Buffer U0RXBUF, U1RXBUF	13-19
13-22	Transmit Data Buffer U0TXBUF, U1TXBUF	13-20
14-1	Schematic of Comparator_A	14-2
14-2	RC-Filter Response at the Output of the Comparator	14-4
14-3	Comparator_A Interrupt System	14-5
14-4	Transfer Characteristic and Power Dissipation in a CMOS Inverter/Buffer	14-9
14-5	Transfer Characteristic and Power Dissipation in a CMOS Gate	14-9
14-6	Application Example With One Active(Driving R3) and Three Passive Pins With Applied Analog Signals	14-10
14-7	Temperature Measurement Systems	14-11
14-8	Timing for Temperature Measurement Systems	14-12
14-9	Two Independent Temperature Measurement Systems	14-13
14-10	Temperature Measurement Via Temperature Sensor R1(meas)	14-14
14-11	Temperature Measurement Via Temperature Sensor R2(meas)	14-15
14-12	Detect a Voltage Level Using an External Reference Level	14-16
14-13	Detect a Current Level Using an Internal Reference Level	14-17
14-14	Measuring a Current Source	14-18

14-15	Timing for Measuring a Current Source	14-18
14-16	A/D Converter for Voltage Sources	14-19
14-17	A/D Converter for Voltage Sources, Conversion Timing	14-19
14-18	Measuring the Offset Voltage of the Comparator, CAEX = 0	14-20
14-19	Offset Voltage of the Comparator, CAEX = 0	14-20
14-20	Measuring the Offset Voltage of the Comparator, CAEX = 1	14-21
14-21	Offset Voltage of the Comparator, CAEX = 1	14-21
14-22	Use CAOUT at an External Pin to Add Hysteresis to the Reference Level	14-23
15-1	ADC12 Schematic	15-2
15-2	ADC Core, Input Multiplexer, and Sample-and-Hold	15-4
15-3	Analog Multiplexer Channel	15-6
15-4	Stopping Conversion With ENC Bit	15-10
15-5	Single-Channel, Single-Conversion Mode	15-11
15-6	Example Conversion-Memory Setup	15-12
15-7	ENC Does Not Effect Active Sequence	15-13
15-8	Sequence-of-Channels Mode	15-14
15-9	Sequence-of-Channels Mode Flow	15-15
15-10	Sequence-of-Channels Mode Example	15-16
15-11	Repeat-Single-Channel Mode	15-17
15-12	Repeat-Sequence-of-Channels Mode	15-19
15-13	The Conversion Clock ADC12CLK	15-21
15-14	The Sample-and-Hold Function	15-22
15-15	Sample and Conversion, Basic Signal Timing	15-23
15-16	Synchronized Sample and Conversion Signal With Enable Conversion	15-24
15-17	Conversion Timing, Pulse-Sample Mode	15-25
15-18	Pulse-Sample Mode Example Configuration	15-25
15-19	Pulse-Sample Mode Example Timing	15-26
15-20	Conversion Timing for Extended-Sample Mode	15-26
15-21	Extended-Sample Mode Example Configuration	15-27
15-22	Extended-Sample Mode Example Timing	15-27
15-23	Use of MSC Bit With Nonrepeated Modes	15-28
15-24	Use of MSC Bit With Repeated Modes	15-28
15-25	Equivalent Circuit	15-29
15-26	A/D Grounding and Noise Considerations	15-41
16-1	ADC10 Schematic	16-2
16-2	ADC Core, Input Multiplexer, and Sample-and-Hold	16-4
16-3	Analog Multiplexer Channel	16-6
16-4	Single-Channel, Single-Conversion Mode	16-9
16-5	Sequence-of-Channels Mode	16-11
16-6	Repeat-Single-Channel Mode	16-13
16-7	Repeat-Sequence-of-Channels Mode	16-15
16-8	The Conversion Clock ADC10CLK	16-17
16-9	Sample and Conversion, Basic Signal Timing, ADC10OSC Selected for ADC10CLK	16-18
16-10	Sample and Conversion, Basic Signal Timing, SMCLK Selected for ADC10CLK	16-18
16-11	Synchronized Sample and Conversion Signal With Enable Conversion	16-19
16-12	Use of MSC Bit With Nonrepeated Modes	16-20
16-13	Use of MSC Bit With Repeated Modes	16-20
16-14	Equivalent Circuit	16-21
16-15	The DTC Concept	16-27

16-16	One-Block Transfer	16-29
16-17	State Diagram for Data Transfer Control in One-Block Transfer Mode	16-31
16-18	Two-Block Transfer	16-32
16-19	State Diagram for Data Transfer Control in Two-Block Transfer Mode	16-34
16-20	Detail Block Diagram of the Internal Reference	16-40
16-21	ADC10 Current Consumption Without Internal Reference	16-41
16-22	ADC10 Current Consumption With Internal Reference On, but not Routed Externally	16-41
16-23	ADC10 Current Consumption With Internal Reference On, Routed Externally, and REFBurst=0	16-42
16-24	ADC10 Current Consumption With Internal Reference On, Routed Externally, and REFBurst=1	16-43
16-25	A/D Grounding and Noise Considerations	16-44
B-1	Double-Operand Instructions	B-4
B-2	Single-Operand Instructions	B-5
B-3	Conditional and Unconditional Jump Instructions	B-5
B-4	Decrement Overlap	B-26
B-5	Main Program Interrupt	B-46
B-6	Destination Operand—Arithmetic Shift Left	B-47
B-7	Destination Operand—Carry Left Shift	B-48
B-8	Destination Operand—Arithmetic Right Shift	B-49
B-9	Destination Operand—Carry Right Shift	B-51
B-10	Destination Operand Byte Swap	B-58
B-11	Destination Operand Sign Extension	B-59
C-1	Interconnection of Flash Memory Module(s)	C-2
C-2	Flash Memory Module1 Disabled, Module2 Can Execute Code Simultaneously	C-3
C-3	Flash Memory Module Example	C-4
C-4	Segments in Flash Memory Module, 4K-Byte Example	C-5
C-5	Flash Memory Module Block Diagram	C-6
C-6	Block Diagram of the Timing Generator in the Flash Memory Module	C-7
C-7	Basic Flash EEPROM Module Timing During the Erase Cycle	C-9
C-8	Basic Flash Memory Module Timing During Write (Single Byte or Word) Cycle	C-11
C-9	Basic Flash Memory Module Timing During a Block-Write Cycle	C-11
C-10	Access Violation (Non)Maskable Interrupt Scheme in Flash Memory Module	C-19
C-11	Signal Connections to MSP430 JTAG Pins	C-22

Tables

3-1	Interrupt Control Bits in SFRs	3-11
3-2	MSP430x11xx Interrupt Enable Registers 1 and 2	3-12
3-3	MSP430x12xx Interrupt Enable Registers 1 and 2	3-12
3-4	MSP430x13x Interrupt Enable Registers 1 and 2	3-13
3-5	MSP430x14x Interrupt Enable Registers 1 and 2	3-13
3-6	MSP430x11xx Interrupt Flag Registers 1 and 2	3-14
3-7	MSP430x12xx Interrupt Flag Registers 1 and 2	3-15
3-8	MSP430x13x Interrupt Flag Registers 1 and 2	3-16
3-9	MSP430x14x Interrupt Flag Registers 1 and 2	3-17
3-10	MSP430x11xx Module Enable Registers 1 and 2	3-18
3-11	MSP430x12xx Module Enable Registers 1 and 2	3-18
3-12	MSP430x13x Module Enable Registers 1 and 2	3-19
3-13	MSP430x14x Module Enable Registers 1 and 2	3-19
3-14	Interrupt Sources,Flags, and Vectors of MSP430x11xx Configurations	3-20
3-15	Interrupt Sources,Flags, and Vectors of MSP430x12xx Configurations	3-21
3-16	Interrupt Sources, Flags, and Vectors of MSP430x13x and MSP430x14x Configurations	3-22
3-17	Low Power Mode Logic Chart for Basic Clock System	3-26
4-1	Peripheral File Address Map—Word Modules	4-9
4-2	Peripheral File Address Map—Byte Modules	4-10
4-3	Special Function Register Address Map	4-11
5-1	Register by Functions	5-2
5-2	Description of Status Register Bits	5-4
5-3	Values of Constant Generators CG1, CG2	5-5
5-4	Source/Destination Operand Addressing Modes	5-7
5-5	Register Mode Description	5-8
5-6	Indexed Mode Description	5-9
5-7	Symbolic Mode Description	5-10
5-8	Absolute Mode Description	5-11
5-9	Indirect Mode Description	5-12
5-10	Indirect Autoincrement Mode Description	5-13
5-11	Immediate Mode Description	5-14
5-12	Instruction Format I and Addressing Modes	5-15
5-13	Execution Cycles for Double Operand Instructions	5-15
5-14	Instruction Format-II and Addressing Modes	5-16
5-15	Execution Cycles for Single Operand Instructions	5-16
5-16	Miscellaneous Instructions or Operations	5-17
5-17	Double Operand Instruction Format Results	5-18
5-18	Single Operand Instruction Format Results	5-19

5-19	Conditional-Jump Instructions	5-20
5-20	Emulated Instructions	5-21
6-1	Sum Extension Register Contents	6-4
6-2	Hardware Multiplier Registers	6-6
8-1	Port P1 Registers	8-4
8-2	Port P2 Registers	8-4
8-3	Port P3-P6 Registers	8-10
9-1	WDT CNT Taps	9-3
10-1	Timer Modes	10-4
10-2	State of OUTx at Next Rising Edge of Timer Clock	10-22
10-3	Timer_A Registers	10-24
10-4	Mode Control	10-25
10-5	Input Clock Divider Control Bits	10-26
10-6	Clock Source Selection	10-26
10-7	Capture/Compare Control Register Output Mode	10-28
10-8	Capture/Compare Control Register Capture Mode	10-29
10-9	Vector Register TAIV Description	10-31
11-1	Timer Modes	11-6
11-2	Compare Latch Operating Modes	11-21
11-3	State of OUTx at Next Rising Edge of Timer Clock	11-26
11-4	Timer_B Registers	11-29
11-5	Mode Control	11-30
11-6	Input Clock Divider Control Bits	11-30
11-7	Clock Source Selection	11-30
11-8	Capture/Compare Control Register Output Mode	11-34
11-9	Capture/Compare Control Register Capture Mode	11-35
11-10	Vector Register TBIV Description	11-37
12-1	USART Interrupt Control and Enable Bits—UART Mode	12-11
12-2	USART0 Control and Status Registers	12-15
12-3	USART1 Control and Status Registers	12-15
12-4	Interrupt Flag Set Conditions	12-20
12-5	Receive Data Buffer Characters	12-22
12-6	Commonly Used Baud Rates, Baud Rate Data, and Errors	12-29
13-1	USART Interrupt Control and Enable Bits—SPI Mode	13-9
13-2	USART0 Control and Status Registers	13-15
13-3	USART1 Control and Status Registers	13-15
14-1	Comparator_A Control Registers	14-6
15-1	Reference Voltage Configurations	15-5
15-2	Conversion-Modes Summary	15-9
15-3	ADC12IV Interrupt-Vector Values	15-38
16-1	Reference Voltage Configurations	16-5
16-2	Conversion-Modes Summary	16-8
16-3	Maximum DTC Cycle Time	16-37
C-1	Control Bits for Write or Erase Operation	C-8
C-2	Conditions to Read Data From Flash Memory	C-12

Examples

12-1	4800 Baud	12-6
12-2	19,200 Baud	12-6
12-3	Error Example for 2400 Baud	12-28
12-4	Synchronization Error—2400 Baud	12-31
16-1	Calculate the Maximum ADC10 Clock Frequency With the Following System Conditions	16-38
16-2	Calculate the Maximum ADC10 Clock Frequency With the Following System Conditions	16-38

Notes, Cautions, and Warnings

Word-Byte Operations	4-8
Status Register Bits V, N, Z, and C	5-5
Data in Registers	5-8
Instruction Format II Immediate Mode	5-16
Destination Address	5-17
Instructions CMP and SUB	5-18
LFXT1 Oscillator Fault Signal	7-7
Control of DCOCLK Frequency	7-13
Writing to Read-Only Registers P1IN, P2IN	8-4
Port P1, Port P2 Interrupt Sensitivity	8-6
Function Select With P1SEL, P2SEL	8-7
Writing to Read-Only Register	8-10
Function Select With PnSEL Registers	8-11
Watchdog Timer, Changing the Time Interval	9-6
Capture With Timer Halted	10-16
Changing Timer_A Control Bits	10-26
Modifying Timer_A Register TAR	10-27
Simultaneous Capture and Capture Mode Selection	10-29
Writing to Read-Only Register TAIV	10-31
Capture With Timer Halted	11-18
Changing Timer_B Control Bits	K-32
Modifying Timer_B Register TBR	K-32
Simultaneous Capture and Capture Mode Selection	K-35
Writing to Read-Only Register TBIV	K-37
URXE Reenabled, UART Mode	12-11
Writing to UxTXBUF, UART Mode	12-12
Write to UxTXBUF/Reset of Transmitter, UART Mode	12-12
Mark and Space Definitions	12-17
Receive Status Control Bits	12-20
Break Detect (BRK) Bit With Halted UART Clock	12-25
USART Synchronous Master Mode, Receive Initiation	13-7
USPIIE Reenabled, SPI Mode	13-10
Writing to UxTXBUF, SPI Mode	13-12
Writing to UxTXBUF/Reset of Transmitter, SPI Mode	13-12
Caution! ADC12 Turnon Time	15-5
Warning! Reference Voltage Settling Time	15-6
Availability of ADC12CLK During Conversion	15-22
Warning: Modifying ADC Control Register During Active Conversion	15-34
Warning : Software Write to Register ADC12MEMx	15-35

Writing to Read Only Register ADC12IV	15-38
Basic Clock System	15-40
Caution! ADC10 Turnon Time	16-4
Warning! Reference Voltage Settling Time	16-5
Offset Error of the Temperature Diode	16-7
Powering Down Active Converter	16-16
Considerations Before Turning the ADC10 and Voltage Reference On or Off.	16-17
Availability of ADC10CLK During Conversion	16-18
Warning! Modifying ADC Control Register During Active Conversion	16-26
DTC Transfer While ADC10 Is Busy	16-36
Asterisked Instructions	B-3
Operations Using the Status Register (SR) for Destination	B-4
Conditional and Unconditional Jumps	B-6
Disable Interrupt	B-28
Enable Interrupt	B-29
Emulating No-Operation Instruction	B-42
The System Stack Pointer	B-43
The System Stack Pointer	B-44
RLA Substitution	B-47
RLC and RLC.B Emulation	B-48
Borrow Is Treated as a .NOT.	B-52
Borrow Is Treated as a .NOT.	B-56
Borrow Is Treated as a .NOT. Carry	B-57
Flash Memory Module(s) in MSP430 Devices	C-2

Introduction

This chapter outlines the features and capabilities of the Texas Instruments MSP430x1xx family of microcontrollers.

The MSP430 employs a von-Neumann architecture, therefore, all memory and peripherals are in one address space.

The MSP430 devices constitute a family of ultralow-power, 16-bit RISC microcontrollers with an advanced architecture and rich peripheral set. The architecture uses advanced timing and design features, as well as a highly orthogonal structure to deliver a processor that is both powerful and flexible. The MSP430 consumes less than 400 μA in active mode operating at 1 MHz in a typical 3-V system and can wake up from a $<2\text{-}\mu\text{A}$ standby mode to fully synchronized operation in less than 6 μs . These exceptionally low current requirements, combined with the fast wake-up time, enable a user to build a system with minimum current consumption and maximum battery life.

Additionally, the MSP430x1xx family has an abundant mix of peripherals and memory sizes enabling true system-on-a-chip designs. The peripherals include a 12-bit A/D, slope A/D, multiple timers (some with capture/compare registers and PWM output capability), on-chip clock generation, H/W multiplier, USART(s), Watchdog Timer, GPIO, and others.

See <http://www.ti.com> for the latest device information and literature for the MSP430 family.

Topic	Page
1.1 Features and Capabilities	1-2
1.2 11x Devices	1-3
1.3 11x1 Devices	1-3
1.4 11x2 Devices	1-4
1.5 12x Devices	1-4
1.6 12x2 Devices	1-4
1.7 13x Devices	1-5
1.8 14x Devices	1-5

1.1 Features and Capabilities

The TI MSP430x1xx family of controllers has the following features and capabilities:

- ☐ Ultralow-power architecture:
 - 0.1- μ A – 250- μ A nominal operating current @1 MHz
 - 1.8-V – 3.6-V operation (2.5–5.5 V for C11x, P11x, and E11x devices)
 - 6- μ s wake-up from standby mode
 - Extensive interrupt capability relieves need for polling
- ☐ Flexible and powerful processing capabilities:
 - Seven source-address modes
 - Four destination-address modes
 - Only 27 core instructions
 - Prioritized, nested interrupts
 - No interrupt or subroutine level limits
 - Large register file
 - Ram execution capability
 - Efficient table processing
 - Fast hex-to-decimal conversion
- ☐ Extensive, memory-mapped peripheral set including:
 - Integrated 12-bit A/D converter
 - Integrated precision comparator
 - Multiple timers and PWM capability
 - Slope A/D conversion (all devices)
 - Integrated USART(s)
 - Watchdog Timer
 - Multiple I/O with extensive interrupt capability
 - Integrated programmable oscillator
 - 32-kHz crystal oscillator (all devices)
 - 450-kHz – 8-MHz crystal oscillator (selected devices)
- ☐ Powerful, easy-to-use development tools including:
 - Simulator (including peripheral and interrupt simulation)
 - C compiler
 - Assembler
 - Linker
 - Emulators
 - Flash emulation tool
 - Device programmer
 - Application notes
 - Example code

- ☐ Versatile ultralow-power device options including:
 - Masked ROM
 - OTP (in-system programmable)
 - Flash (in-system programmable)
 - EPROM (UV-erasable, in-system programmable)
 - 40°C to 85°C operating temperature range
 - Up to 64K addressing space
 - Memory mixes to support all types of applications

1.2 11x Devices

The 11x devices contain the following peripherals:

- ☐ Basic Clock System (on-chip DCO + one crystal oscillator)
- ☐ Watchdog Timer/General Purpose Timer
- ☐ Timer_A3 (16-bit timer with three capture/compare registers and PWM output)
- ☐ I/O Port1, 2 (Eight I/Os each, all with interrupt)

The 11x device family includes:

MSP430C111	2KB ROM, 128B RAM
MSP430C112	4KB ROM, 256B RAM
MSP430P112	4KB OTP, 256B RAM
PMS430E112	4KB EPROM, 256B RAM
MSP430F110	1KB +128B Flash, 128B RAM
MSP430F112	4KB +256B Flash, 256B RAM

1.3 11x1 Devices

The 11x1 devices contain the following peripherals:

- ☐ Basic Clock System (on-chip DCO + one crystal oscillator)
- ☐ Watchdog Timer/General Purpose Timer
- ☐ Timer_A3 (16-bit timer with three capture/compare registers and PWM output)
- ☐ I/O Port1, 2 (Eight I/Os each, all with interrupt)
- ☐ Comparator_A (precision analog comparator, ideal for slope A/D conversion)

The 11x1 device family includes:

MSP430C1111	2KB ROM, 128B RAM
MSP430C1121	4KB ROM, 256B RAM
MSP430F1101	1KB +128B Flash, 128B RAM
MSP430F1111	2KB +256B Flash, 256B RAM
MSP430F1121	4KB +256B Flash, 256B RAM

1.4 11x2 Devices†

The 11x2 devices contain the following peripherals:

- ☐ Basic Clock System (on-chip DCO + one crystal oscillator)
- ☐ Watchdog Timer/General Purpose Timer
- ☐ Timer_A3 (16-bit timer with three capture/compare registers and PWM output)
- ☐ I/O Port1, 2 (Eight I/Os each, all with interrupt)
- ☐ ADC10 (10-bit A/D)

The 11x2 device family includes:

MSP430F1122	4KB +256B Flash, 256B RAM
MSP430F1132	8KB +256B Flash, 256B RAM

1.5 12x Devices

The 12x devices contain the following peripherals:

- ☐ Basic Clock System (on-chip DCO + one crystal oscillator)
- ☐ Watchdog Timer/General Purpose Timer
- ☐ Timer_A3 (16-bit timer with three capture/compare registers and PWM output)
- ☐ I/O Port1, 2 (Eight I/Os each, all with interrupt)
- ☐ I/O Port3 (Eight I/Os each)
- ☐ Comparator_A (precision analog comparator, ideal for slope A/D conversion)
- ☐ USART0

The 12x device family includes:

MSP430F122	4KB +256B Flash, 256B RAM
MSP430F123	8KB +256B Flash, 256B RAM

1.6 12x2 Devices†

The 12x2 devices contain the following peripherals:

- ☐ Basic Clock System (on-chip DCO + one crystal oscillator)
- ☐ Watchdog Timer/General Purpose Timer
- ☐ Timer_A3 (16-bit timer with three capture/compare registers and PWM output)
- ☐ I/O Port1, 2 (Eight I/Os each, all with interrupt)
- ☐ I/O Port3 (8 I/Os each)
- ☐ ADC10 (10-bit A/D)
- ☐ USART0

The 12x2 device family includes:

MSP430F1222	4KB +256B Flash, 256B RAM
MSP430F1232	8KB +256B Flash, 256B RAM

†Advanced information, future devices

1.7 13x Devices

The 13x devices contain the following peripherals:

- ☐ Basic Clock System (on-chip DCO + two crystal oscillators)
- ☐ Watchdog Timer/General Purpose Timer
- ☐ Timer_A3 (16-bit timer with three capture/compare registers and PWM output)
- ☐ Timer_B3 (16-bit timer with three capture/compare registers and PWM output)
- ☐ I/O Port1, 2 (8 I/Os each, all with interrupt)
- ☐ I/O Port3, 4, 5, 6 (Eight I/Os each)
- ☐ Comparator_A (precision analog comparator, ideal for slope A/D conversion)
- ☐ ADC12 (12-bit A/D) (Not in MSP430C1351)
- ☐ USART0

The 13x device family includes:

MSP430F133	8KB +256B Flash, 256B RAM
MSP430F135	16KB +256B Flash, 512B RAM
MSP430F1351	16KB ROM, 512B RAM

1.8 14x Devices

The 14x devices contain the following peripherals:

- ☐ Basic Clock System (on-chip DCO + two crystal oscillators)
- ☐ Watchdog Timer/General Purpose Timer
- ☐ Timer_A3 (16-bit timer with three capture/compare registers and PWM output)
- ☐ Timer_B7 (16-bit timer with seven capture/compare registers and PWM output)
- ☐ I/O Port1, 2 (8 I/Os each, all with interrupt)
- ☐ I/O Port3, 4, 5, 6 (Eight I/Os each)
- ☐ Comparator_A (precision analog comparator, ideal for slope A/D conversion)
- ☐ ADC12 (12-bit A/D)
- ☐ USART0
- ☐ USART1
- ☐ Hardware Multiplier

The 14x device family includes:

MSP430F147	32KB +256B Flash, 1KB RAM
MSP430F148	48KB +256B Flash, 2KB RAM
MSP430F149	60KB +256B Flash, 2KB RAM

Architectural Overview

This section describes the basic functions of an MSP430-based system.

The MSP430 devices contain the following main elements:

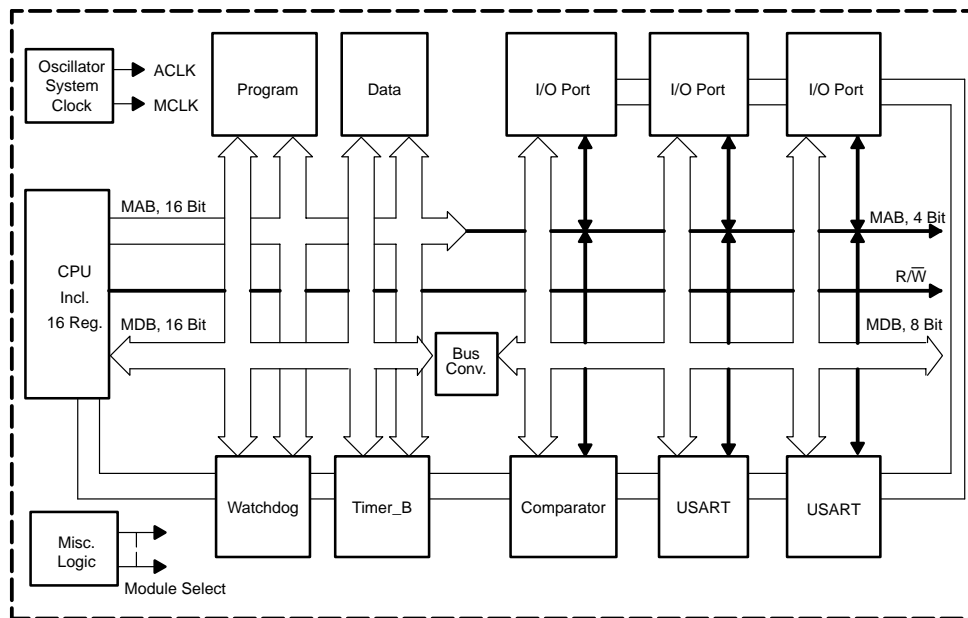
- ☐ Central processing unit
- ☐ Program memory
- ☐ Data memory
- ☐ Operation control
- ☐ Peripheral modules
- ☐ Oscillator and clock generator

Topic	Page
2.1 Introduction	2-2
2.2 Central Processing Unit	2-2
2.3 Program Memory	2-3
2.4 Data Memory	2-3
2.5 Operation Control	2-3
2.6 Peripherals	2-4
2.7 Oscillator and Clock Generator	2-4

2.1 Introduction

The architecture of the MSP430 family is based on a memory-to-memory architecture, a common address space for all functional blocks, and a reduced instruction set applicable to all functional blocks as illustrated in Figure 2–1. See specific device data sheets for complete block diagrams of individual devices.

Figure 2–1. MSP430 System Configuration



2.2 Central Processing Unit

The CPU incorporates a reduced and highly transparent instruction set and a highly orthogonal design. It consists of a 16-bit arithmetic logic unit (ALU), 16 registers, and instruction control logic. Four of these registers are used for special purposes. These are the program counter (PC), stack pointer (SP), status register (SR), and constant generator (CGx). All registers, except the constant-generator registers R3/CG2 and part of R2/CG1, can be accessed using the complete instruction set. The constant generator supplies instruction constants, and is not used for data storage. The addressing mode used on CG1 separates the data from the constants.

The CPU control over the program counter, the status register, and the stack pointer (with the reduced instruction set) allows the development of applications with sophisticated addressing modes and software algorithms.

2.3 Program Memory

Instruction fetches from program memory are always 16-bit accesses, whereas data memory can be accessed using word (16-bit) or byte (8-bit) instructions. Any access uses the 16-bit memory data bus (MDB) and as many of the least-significant address lines of the memory address bus (MAB) as required to access the memory locations. Blocks of memory are automatically selected through module-enable signals. This technique reduces overall current consumption. Program memory is integrated as programmable or mask-programmed memory.

In addition to program code, data may also be placed in the ROM section of the memory map and may be accessed using word or byte instructions; this is useful for data tables, for example. This unique feature gives the MSP430 an advantage over other microcontrollers, because the data tables do not have to be copied to RAM for usage.

Sixteen words of memory are reserved for reset and interrupt vectors at the top of the 64-kilobytes address space from 0FFFFh down to 0FFE0h.

2.4 Data Memory

The data memory is connected to the CPU through the same two buses as the program memory (ROM): the memory address bus (MAB) and the memory data bus (MDB). The data memory can be accessed with full (word) data width or with reduced (byte) data width.

Additionally, because the RAM and ROM are connected to the CPU via the same busses, program code can be loaded into and executed from RAM. This is another unique feature of the MSP430 devices, and provides valuable, easy-to-use debugging capability.

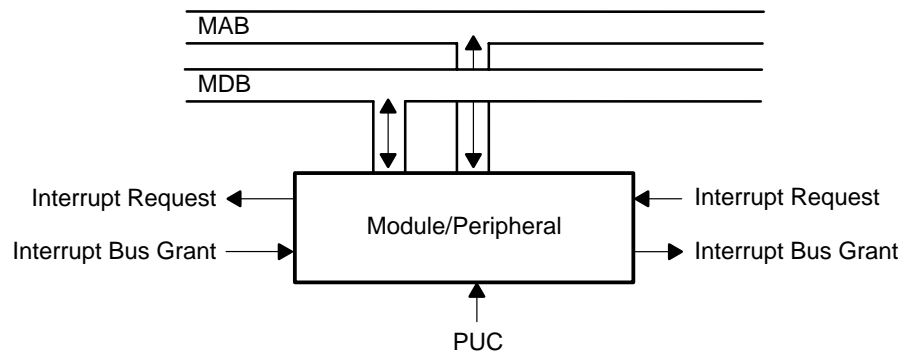
2.5 Operation Control

The operation of the different MSP430 members is controlled mainly by the information stored in the special-function registers (SFRs). The different bits in the SFRs enable interrupts, provide information about the status of interrupt flags, and define the operating modes of the peripherals. By disabling peripherals that are not needed during an operation, total current consumption can be reduced. The individual peripherals are described later in this manual.

2.6 Peripherals

Peripheral modules are connected to the CPU through the MAB, MDB, and interrupt service and request lines. The MAB is usually a 5-bit bus for most of the peripherals. The MDB is an 8-bit or 16-bit bus. Most of the peripherals operate in byte format. Modules with an 8-bit data bus are connected by bus-conversion circuitry to the 16-bit CPU. The data exchange with these modules must be handled with byte instructions. The SFRs are also handled with byte instructions. The operation for 8-bit peripherals follows the order described in Figure 2–2.

Figure 2–2. Bus Connection of Modules/Peripherals



2.7 Oscillator and Clock Generator

The LFXT1 oscillator is designed for the commonly used 32,768 Hz, low-current-consumption clock crystal or to be used with a high-speed crystal. All analog components for the 32,768 Hz oscillator are integrated into the MSP430; only the crystal needs to be connected with no other external components required. When using the LFXT1 oscillator with a high-speed crystal, additional load capacitors are required. Some MSP430 devices have an additional high-speed crystal oscillator (LFXT2). Refer to the clock chapter and the specific device data sheets for details.

In addition to the crystal oscillator(s), all MSP430 devices contain a digitally-controlled RC oscillator (DCO). The DCO is different from RC oscillators found on other microcontrollers because it is digitally controllable and tuneable.

Clock source selection for peripherals and CPU is very flexible. Most peripherals are capable of using the 32768-Hz crystal oscillator clock, the high-speed crystal oscillator clock (where applicable), or the DCO clock. The CPU is capable of executing from the DCO clock or from either of the two crystal oscillator clocks. See Chapter 7 for details on the clock system.

System Resets, Interrupts, and Operating Modes

This chapter discusses the MSP430x1xx system resets, interrupts, and operating modes.

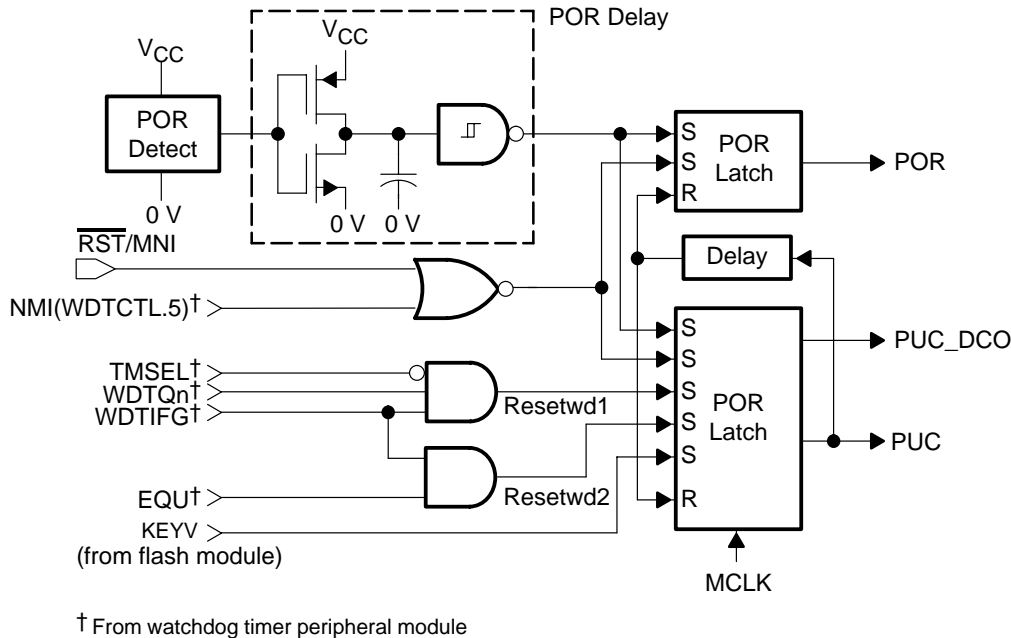
Topic	Page
3.1 System Reset and Initialization	3-2
3.2 Global Interrupt Structure	3-5
3.3 MSP430 Interrupt-Priority Scheme	3-6
3.4 Interrupt Processing	3-9
3.5 Operating Modes	3-23
3.6 Basic Hints for Low-Power Applications	3-29

3.1 System Reset and Initialization

3.1.1 Introduction

The MSP430 system reset circuitry (shown in Figure 3–1) sources two internal reset signals: power-on reset (POR) and power-up clear (PUC). Different events trigger these reset signals and different initial conditions exist depending on which signal was generated.

Figure 3–1. Power-On Reset and Power-Up Clear Schematic



A POR is a device reset. It is only generated by the two following events:

- ☐ Powering up the device
- ☐ A low signal on the $\overline{\text{RST}}/\text{NMI}$ pin when configured in the reset mode

A PUC is always generated when a POR is generated, but a POR is not generated by a PUC. The following events trigger a PUC:

- ☐ A POR signal
- ☐ Watchdog timer expiration (in watchdog mode only)
- ☐ Watchdog timer security key violation
- ☐ A low signal on the $\overline{\text{RST}}/\text{NMI}$ pin when configured in the reset mode
- ☐ A Flash memory security key violation

Note: Software PUC

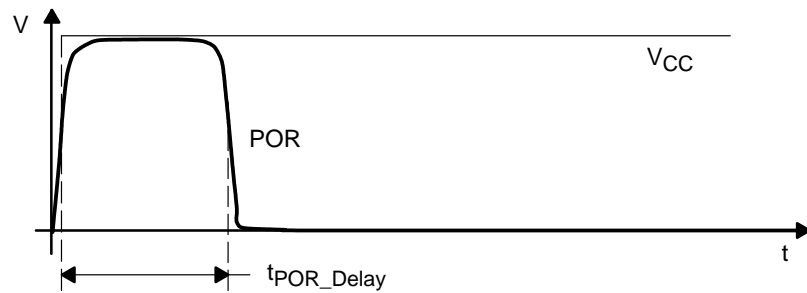
If desired, software can cause a PUC by simply writing to the watchdog timer control register with an incorrect password.

Note:

Generation of the POR/PUC signals does not necessarily generate a system reset interrupt. Anytime a POR is activated, a system reset interrupt is generated. However, when a PUC is activated, a system reset interrupt may or may not be generated. Instead, a lower priority interrupt vector may be generated, depending on what action caused the PUC. Each device data sheet gives a detailed table of what action generates each interrupt. This table should be consulted for the proper handling of all interrupts.

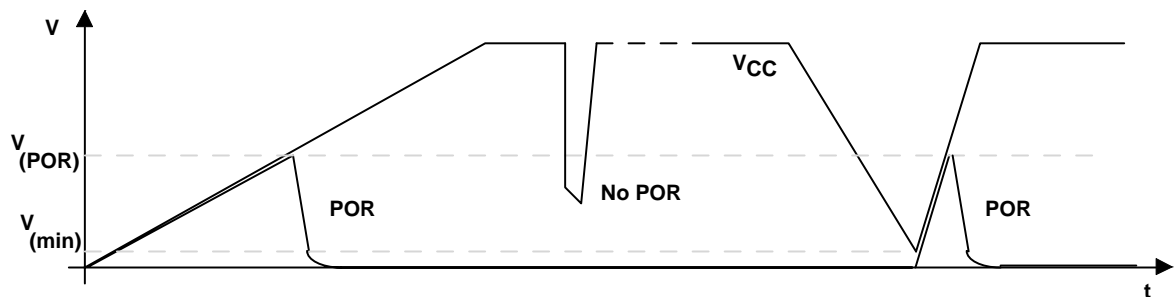
When the V_{CC} supply provides a fast rise time as shown in Figure 3–2, the POR delay provides enough active time on the POR signal to allow the signal to initialize the circuitry correctly after power up. When the V_{CC} rise time is slow, as shown in Figure 3–3, the POR detector holds the POR signal active until V_{CC} has risen above the $V_{(POR)}$ level. This also ensures a correct initialization.

Figure 3–2. Power-On Reset Timing on Fast V_{CC} Rise Time



If power to the chip is cycled, the supply voltage V_{CC} must fall below the $V_{(min)}$ (see Figure 3–3) to ensure that another POR signal occurs when V_{CC} is powered up again. If V_{CC} does not fall below $V_{(min)}$ during a cycle or a glitch, a POR is not generated and power-up conditions do not set correctly.

Figure 3–3. Power-on Reset Timing on Slow V_{CC} Rise Time



3.1.2 Device Initialization After System Reset

After a device reset (POR/PUC combination), the initial system conditions are:

- ☐ I/O pins switched to input mode.
- ☐ I/O flags are cleared as described in the I/O chapter.
- ☐ Other peripherals and registers are initialized as described in their respective chapters.
- ☐ Status register is reset.
- ☐ Program counter is loaded with address contained at reset vector location (0FFFEh). CPU execution begins at that address.

After a system reset, the user program can evaluate the various flags to determine the source of the reset and take appropriate action.

The initial state of registers and peripherals is discussed in each applicable section of this manual. Each register is shown with a key indicating the accessibility of the register and the initial condition, for example, *rw*–(0), or *rw*–0. In these examples, the *r* indicates read, the *w* indicates write, and the value after the dash indicates the initial condition. If the value is in parenthesis, the initial condition takes effect only after a POR – a PUC alone will not effect the bit(s). If the value is not in parenthesis, it takes effect after a PUC alone or after a POR/PUC combination. Some examples follow:

Type	Description
<i>rw</i> –(0)	Read/write, reset with POR
<i>rw</i> –0	Read/write, reset with POR or PUC
<i>r</i> –1	Read only, set with POR or PUC
<i>r</i>	Read only, no initial state
<i>w</i>	Write only, no initial state

3.2 Global Interrupt Structure

There are four types of interrupts:

- ☐ System reset
- ☐ Maskable
- ☐ Non-maskable
- ☐ (Non)-maskable

System reset (POR/PUC) is discussed in section 3.1.

Maskable interrupts are caused by:

- ☐ A watchdog-timer overflow (if timer mode is selected)
- ☐ Other modules with interrupt capability

Non-maskable interrupts are not maskable in any way. No individual interrupt enable bit is implemented for them, and the general interrupt enable bit (GIE) has no effect on them.

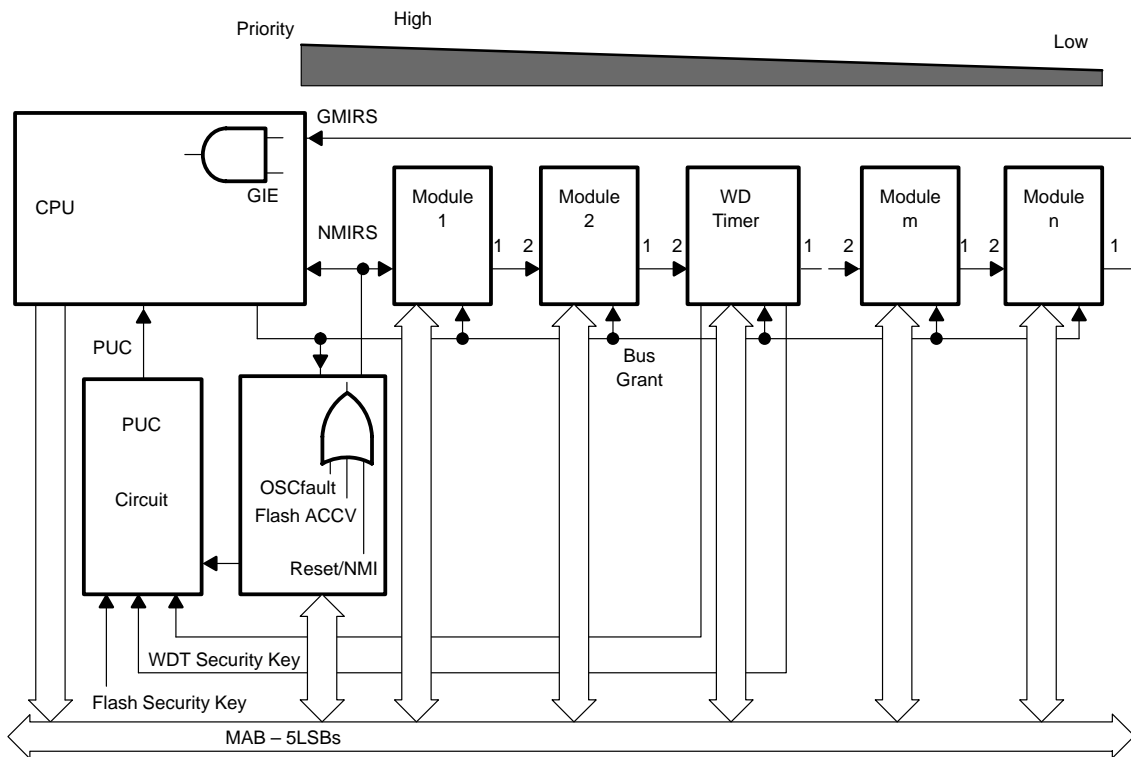
(Non)-maskable interrupts are not masked by the general interrupt enable bit (GIE) but are individually enabled or disabled by an individual interrupt enable bit. When a (non)-maskable interrupt is accepted, the corresponding interrupt enable bit is automatically reset, therefore disabling the interrupt for execution of the interrupt service routine (ISR). The RETI (return from interrupt) instruction has no effect on the individual enable bits of the (non)-maskable interrupts. So the software must set the corresponding interrupt enable bit in the ISR before execution of the RETI instruction for the interrupt to be re-enabled after the ISR.

A (non)-maskable NMI interrupt can be generated by an edge on the RST/NMI pin (if NMI mode is selected), an oscillator fault occurs (if the oscillator fault interrupt is enabled), or an access violation to the flash memory takes place (if the access violation interrupt is enabled).

3.3 MSP430 Interrupt-Priority Scheme

The interrupt priority of the modules, as shown in Figure 3–4, is defined by the arrangement of the modules in the connection chain: the nearer a module is to the CPU/NMIRS, the higher the priority.

Figure 3–4. Interrupt Priority Scheme



Reset and NMI, as shown in Figure 3–5, can only be used as alternative interrupts because they use the same input pin. The associated control bits are located in the watchdog timer control register shown in Figure 3–6, and are password protected.

Figure 3–5. Block Diagram of NMI Interrupt Sources

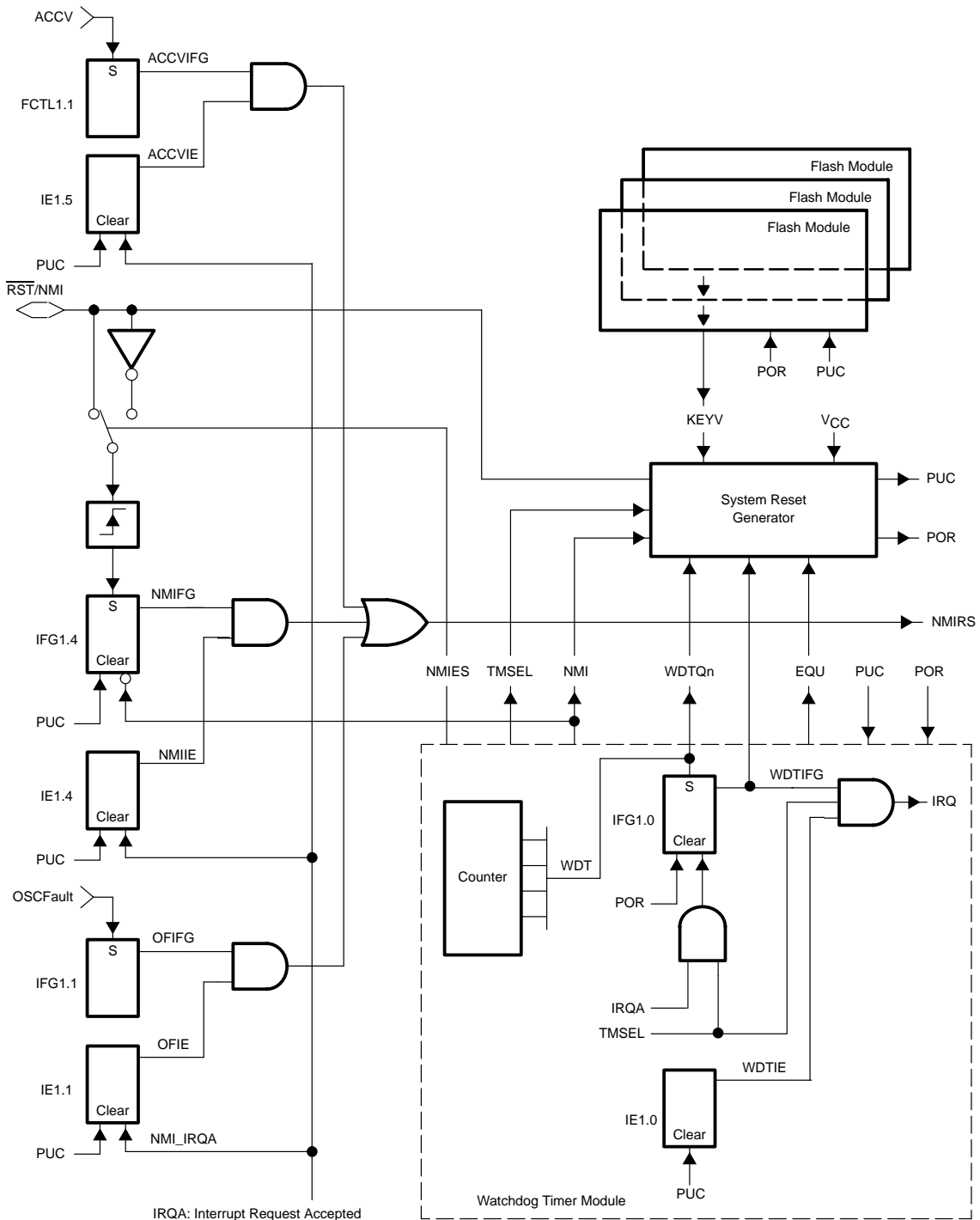


Figure 3–6. $\overline{\text{RST}}/\text{NMI}$ Mode Selection

WDTCTL 0120h	7				0			
	HOLD	NMIES	NMI	TMSEL	CNTCL	SSEL	IS1	IS0
	rw-0	rw-0	rw-0	rw-0	(w)-0	rw-0	rw-0	rw-0

BITS 0–4,7 See Watchdog Timer chapter.

BIT 5: The NMI bit selects the function of the $\overline{\text{RST}}/\text{NMI}$ input pin. It is cleared after a PUC signal.

NMI = 0: The $\overline{\text{RST}}/\text{NMI}$ input works as reset input. As long as the $\overline{\text{RST}}/\text{NMI}$ pin is held low, the internal PUC signal is active (level-sensitive).

NMI = 1: The $\overline{\text{RST}}/\text{NMI}$ input works as an edge-sensitive, nonmaskable interrupt input.

BIT 6: This bit selects the activating edge of the $\overline{\text{RST}}/\text{NMI}$ input if the NMI function is selected. It is cleared after a PUC signal.

NMIES = 0: A rising edge triggers an NMI interrupt.

NMIES = 1: A falling edge triggers an NMI interrupt.

3.3.1 Operation of Global Interrupt—Reset/NMI

If the $\overline{\text{RST}}/\text{NMI}$ pin is set to the reset function, the CPU is held in the reset state as long as the $\overline{\text{RST}}/\text{NMI}$ pin is held low. After the input changes to a high state, the CPU starts program execution at the word address stored in word location 0FFFEh (reset vector).

If the $\overline{\text{RST}}/\text{NMI}$ pin is set to the NMI function, a signal edge (selected by the NMIES bit) will generate an interrupt if the NMIIIE bit is set. When accepted, program execution begins at the address stored in location 0FFFCh. The $\overline{\text{RST}}/\text{NMI}$ flag in the SFR IFG1.4 is also set.

Note:

When configured in the NMI mode, a signal generating an NMI event should not hold the $\overline{\text{RST}}/\text{NMI}$ pin low. When a PUC is generated (see section 3.1.1), the PUC resets the bits in the WDTCTL register. This results in the $\overline{\text{RST}}/\text{NMI}$ pin being configured in the reset mode. If the signal on the $\overline{\text{RST}}/\text{NMI}$ pin that generated the NMI event holds the pin low, the processor will be held in the reset state.

When NMI mode is selected and the NMI edge select bit is changed, an NMI can be generated, depending on the actual level at the $\overline{\text{RST}}/\text{NMI}$ pin. When the NMI edge select bit is changed before selecting the NMI mode, no NMI is generated.

The NMI interrupt is maskable by the NMIIIE bit.

3.3.2 Operation of Global Interrupt—Oscillator Fault Control

The oscillator fault signal warns of a possible error condition with the crystal oscillator.

3.3.2.1 Oscillator Fault Control in the Basic Clock System

The oscillator-fault signal is triggered when the LFXT1 oscillator is configured to run in HF mode but is not running, stops running after being operational, or is switched off. The oscillator-fault signal is also triggered under the same conditions for the XT2 oscillator, present in some devices. Note that a PUC signal can trigger an oscillator fault, because the PUC switches the LFXT1 to LF mode, therefore switching off the HF mode. The PUC signal also switches off the XT2 oscillator.

The oscillator fault signal can be enabled to generate an NMI by bit OFIE in the SFRs. The interrupt flag OFIFG in the SFRs can then be tested by the interrupt service routine to determine if the NMI was caused by an oscillator fault. See Basic Clock Module chapter for more details on the operation of the crystal oscillators LFXT1 and XT2.

3.4 Interrupt Processing

The MSP430 programmable interrupt structure allows flexible on-chip and external interrupt configurations to meet real-time interrupt-driven system requirements. Interrupts may be initiated by the processor's operating conditions such as watchdog overflow; or by peripheral modules or external events. Each interrupt source can be disabled individually by an interrupt enable bit, or all maskable interrupts can be disabled by the general interrupt enable (GIE) bit in the status register.

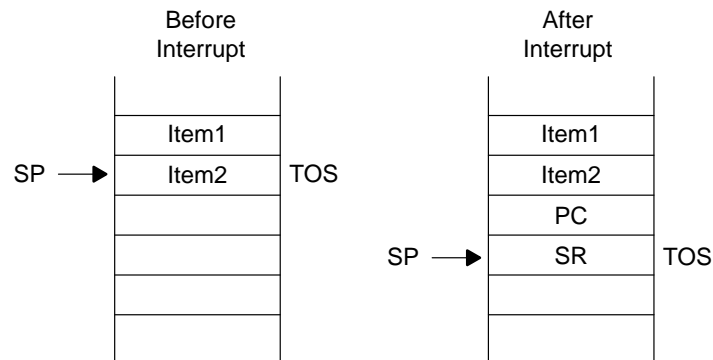
Whenever an interrupt is requested and the appropriate interrupt enable bit and general interrupt enable (GIE) bit are set, the interrupt service routine becomes active as follows:

- 1) CPU active: The currently executing instruction is completed.
- 2) CPU stopped: The low-power modes are terminated.
- 3) The program counter pointing to the next instruction is pushed onto the stack.
- 4) The status register is pushed onto the stack.
- 5) The interrupt with the highest priority is selected if multiple interrupts occurred during the last instruction and are pending for service.
- 6) The appropriate interrupt request flag resets automatically on single-source flags. Multiple source flags remain set for servicing by software.
- 7) The GIE bit is reset; the CPUOff bit, the OscOff bit, and the SCG1 bit are cleared; the status bits V, N, Z, and C are reset. SCG0 is left unchanged.

- 8) The content of the appropriate interrupt vector is loaded into the program counter: the program continues with the interrupt handling routine at that address.

The interrupt latency is six cycles, starting with the acceptance of an interrupt request, and lasting until the start of execution of the appropriate interrupt-service routine first instruction, as shown in Figure 3–7.

Figure 3–7. Interrupt Processing



The interrupt handling routine terminates with the instruction:

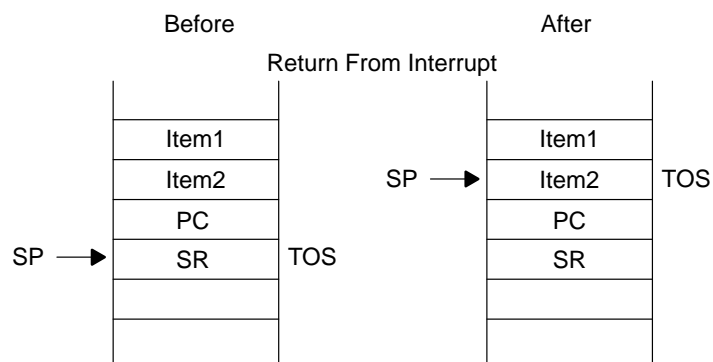
`RETI` (return from an interrupt service routine)

which performs the following actions:

- 1) The status register with all previous settings pops from the stack. All previous settings of GIE, CPUOFF, etc. are now in effect, regardless of the settings utilized during the interrupt service routine.
- 2) The program counter pops from the stack and begins execution at the point where it was interrupted.

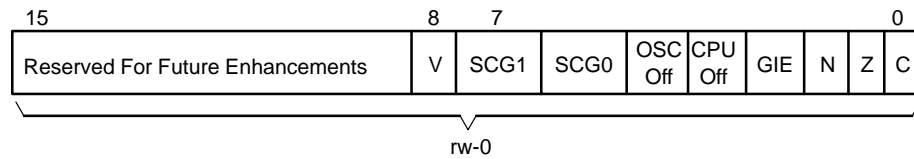
The return from the interrupt is illustrated in Figure 3–8.

Figure 3–8. Return From Interrupt



A RETI instruction takes five cycles. Interrupt nesting is activated if the GIE bit is set inside the interrupt handling routine. The GIE bit is located in status register SR/R2, which is included in the CPU as shown in Figure 3–9.

Figure 3–9. Status Register (SR)



Apart from the GIE bit, other sources of interrupt requests can be enabled/disabled individually or in groups. The interrupt enable flags are located together within two addresses of the special-function registers (SFRs). The program-flow conditions on interrupt requests can be easily adjusted using the interrupt enable masks. The hardware serves the highest priority within the empowered interrupt source.

3.4.1 Interrupt Control Bits in Special-Function Registers (SFRs)

Most of the interrupt control bits, interrupt flags, and interrupt enable bits are collected in SFRs under a few addresses, as shown in Table 3–1. The SFRs are located in the lower address range and are implemented in byte format. SFRs must be accessed using byte instructions.

Table 3–1. Interrupt Control Bits in SFRs

Address	7	0
000Fh	Not yet defined or implemented	
000Eh	Not yet defined or implemented	
000Dh	Not yet defined or implemented	
000Ch	Not yet defined or implemented	
000Bh	Not yet defined or implemented	
000Ah	Not yet defined or implemented	
0009h	Not yet defined or implemented	
0008h	Not yet defined or implemented	
0007h	Not yet defined or implemented	
0006h	Not yet defined or implemented	
0005h	Module enable 2 (ME2.x)	
0004h	Module enable 1 (ME1.x)	
0003h	Interrupt flag reg. 2 (IFG2.x)	
0002h	Interrupt flag reg. 1 (IFG1.x)	
0001h	Interrupt enable 2 (IE2.x)	
0000h	Interrupt enable 1 (IE1.x)	

The Module Enable bits, Interrupt Enable bits, and Interrupt flags contained in the SFRs are shown in the following tables.

Table 3–2. MSP430x11xx Interrupt Enable Registers 1 and 2

Bit Position	Short Form	Initial State†	Comments
IE1.0	WDTIE	Reset	Watchdog timer enable signal. Inactive if watchdog mode is selected. Active if watchdog timer is configured as general-purpose timer.
IE1.1	OFIE	Reset	Oscillator fault interrupt enable
IE1.2			Not implemented
IE1.3			Not implemented
IE1.4	NMIIE	Reset	NMI interrupt enable
IE1.5	ACCVIE	Reset	Flash access violation enable (flash devices only)
IE1.6			Not implemented
IE1.7			Not implemented
IE2.0			Not implemented
IE2.1			Not implemented
IE2.2			Not implemented
IE2.3			Not implemented
IE2.4			Not implemented
IE2.5			Not implemented
IE2.6			Not implemented
IE2.7			Not implemented

† The initial state is the logical state after the PUC signal.

Table 3–3. MSP430x12xx Interrupt Enable Registers 1 and 2

Bit Position	Short Form	Initial State†	Comments
IE1.0	WDTIE	Reset	Watchdog timer enable signal. Inactive if watchdog mode is selected. Active if watchdog timer is configured as general-purpose timer.
IE1.1	OFIE	Reset	Oscillator fault interrupt enable
IE1.2			Not implemented
IE1.3			Not implemented
IE1.4	NMIIE	Reset	NMI interrupt enable
IE1.5	ACCVIE	Reset	Flash access violation enable
IE1.6			Not implemented
IE1.7			Not implemented
IE2.0	URXIE0	Reset	USART0 receive interrupt enable
IE2.1	UTXIE0	Reset	USART0 transmit interrupt enable
IE2.2			Not implemented
IE2.3			Not implemented
IE2.4			Not implemented
IE2.5			Not implemented
IE2.6			Not implemented
IE2.7			Not implemented

† The initial state is the logical state after the PUC signal.

Table 3–4. MSP430x13x Interrupt Enable Registers 1 and 2

Bit Position	Short Form	Initial State†	Comments
IE1.0	WDTIE	Reset	Watchdog timer enable signal. Inactive if watchdog mode is selected. Active if watchdog timer is configured as general-purpose timer.
IE1.1	OFIE	Reset	Oscillator fault interrupt enable
IE1.2			Not implemented
IE1.3			Not implemented
IE1.4	NMIIE	Reset	NMI interrupt enable
IE1.5	ACCVIE	Reset	Flash access violation enable
IE1.6	URXIE0	Reset	USART0 receive interrupt enable
IE1.7	UTXIE0	Reset	USART0 transmit interrupt enable
IE2.0			Not implemented
IE2.1			Not implemented
IE2.2			Not implemented
IE2.3			Not implemented
IE2.4			Not implemented
IE2.5			Not implemented
IE2.6			Not implemented
IE2.7			Not implemented

† The initial state is the logical state after the PUC signal.

Table 3–5. MSP430x14x Interrupt Enable Registers 1 and 2

Bit Position	Short Form	Initial State†	Comments
IE1.0	WDTIE	Reset	Watchdog timer enable signal. Inactive if watchdog mode is selected. Active if watchdog timer is configured as general-purpose timer.
IE1.1	OFIE	Reset	Oscillator fault interrupt enable
IE1.2			Not implemented
IE1.3			Not implemented
IE1.4	NMIIE	Reset	NMI interrupt enable
IE1.5	ACCVIE	Reset	Flash access violation enable
IE1.6	URXIE0	Reset	USART0 receive interrupt enable
IE1.7	UTXIE0	Reset	USART0 transmit interrupt enable
IE2.0			Not implemented
IE2.1			Not implemented
IE2.2			Not implemented
IE2.3			Not implemented
IE2.4	URXIE1	Reset	USART1 receive interrupt enable
IE2.5	UTXIE1	Reset	USART1 transmit interrupt enable
IE2.6			Not implemented
IE2.7			Not implemented

† The initial state is the logical state after the PUC signal.

Table 3–6. MSP430x11xx Interrupt Flag Registers 1 and 2

Bit Position	Short Form	Initial State	Comments
IFG1.0	WDTIFG	Set	Set on watchdog timer overflow in watchdog mode or security key violation.
		Or reset	Reset with VCC power-up, or a reset condition at the $\overline{\text{RST}}$ /NMI pin in reset mode.
IFG1.1	OFIFG	Set	Flag set on oscillator fault
IFG1.2			Not implemented
IFG1.3			Not implemented
IFG1.4	NMIIFG	Reset	Set through the $\overline{\text{RST}}$ /NMI pin
IFG1.5			Not implemented
IFG1.6			Not implemented
IFG1.7			Not implemented
IFG2.0			Not implemented
IFG2.1			Not implemented
IFG2.2			Not implemented
IFG2.3			Not implemented
IFG2.4			Not implemented
IFG2.5			Not implemented
IFG2.6			Not implemented
IFG2.7			Not implemented

Note: The configuration of some MSP430 devices may differ from those in above table. Refer to specific device data sheets for individual configurations.

Table 3–7. MSP430x12xx Interrupt Flag Registers 1 and 2

Bit Position	Short Form	Initial State	Comments
IFG1.0	WDTIFG	Set	Set on watchdog timer overflow in watchdog mode or security key violation.
		Or reset	Reset with VCC power-up, or a reset condition at the $\overline{\text{RST}}$ /NMI pin in reset mode.
IFG1.1	OFIFG	Set	Flag set on oscillator fault
IFG1.2			Not implemented
IFG1.3			Not implemented
IFG1.4	NMIIFG	Reset	Set through the $\overline{\text{RST}}$ /NMI pin
IFG1.5			Not implemented
IFG1.6			Not implemented
IFG1.7			Not implemented
IFG2.0	URXIFG0	Reset	USART0 receive flag
IFG2.1	UTXIFG0	Set	USART0 transmitter ready
IFG2.2			Not implemented
IFG2.3			Not implemented
IFG2.4			Not implemented
IFG2.5			Not implemented
IFG2.6			Not implemented
IFG2.7			Not implemented

Note: The configuration of some MSP430 devices may differ from those in above table. Refer to specific device data sheets for individual configurations.

Table 3–8. MSP430x13x Interrupt Flag Registers 1 and 2

Bit Position	Short Form	Initial State	Comments
IFG1.0	WDTIFG	Set	Set on watchdog timer overflow in watchdog mode or security key violation.
		Or reset	Reset with VCC power-up, or a reset condition at the $\overline{\text{RST}}$ /NMI pin in reset mode.
IFG1.1	OFIFG	Set	Flag set on oscillator fault
IFG1.2			Not implemented
IFG1.3			Not implemented
IFG1.4	NMIIFG	Reset	Set through the $\overline{\text{RST}}$ /NMI pin
IFG1.5			Not implemented
IFG1.6	URXIFG0	Reset	USART0 receive flag
IFG1.7	UTXIFG0	Set	USART0 transmitter ready
IFG2.0			Not implemented
IFG2.1			Not implemented
IFG2.2			Not implemented
IFG2.3			Not implemented
IFG2.4			Not implemented
IFG2.5			Not implemented
IFG2.6			Not implemented
IFG2.7			Not implemented

Note: The configuration of some MSP430 devices may differ from those in above table. Refer to specific device data sheets for individual configurations.

Table 3–9. MSP430x14x Interrupt Flag Registers 1 and 2

Bit Position	Short Form	Initial State	Comments
IFG1.0	WDTIFG	Set	Set on watchdog timer overflow in watchdog mode or security key violation.
		Or reset	Reset with VCC power-up, or a reset condition at the $\overline{\text{RST}}$ /NMI pin in reset mode.
IFG1.1	OFIFG	Set	Flag set on oscillator fault
IFG1.2			Not implemented
IFG1.3			Not implemented
IFG1.4	NMIIFG	Reset	Set through the $\overline{\text{RST}}$ /NMI pin
IFG1.5			Not implemented
IFG1.6	URXIFG0	Reset	USART0 receive flag
IFG1.7	UTXIFG0	Set	USART0 transmitter ready
IFG2.0			Not implemented
IFG2.1			Not implemented
IFG2.2			Not implemented
IFG2.3			Not implemented
IFG2.4	URXIFG1	Reset	USART1 receive flag
IFG2.5	UTXIFG1	Set	USART1 transmitter ready
IFG2.6			Not implemented
IFG2.7			Not implemented

Note: The configuration of some MSP430 devices may differ from those in above table. Refer to specific device data sheets for individual configurations.

Table 3–10. MSP430x11xx Module Enable Registers 1 and 2

Bit Position	Short Form	Initial State	Comments
ME1.0			Reserved
ME1.1			Reserved
ME1.2			Reserved
ME1.3			Reserved
ME1.4			Reserved
ME1.5			Reserved
ME1.6			Reserved
ME1.7			Reserved
ME2.0			Reserved
ME2.1			Reserved
ME2.2			Reserved
ME2.3			Reserved
ME2.4			Reserved
ME2.5			Reserved
ME2.6			Reserved
ME2.7			Reserved

Note: The configuration of some MSP430 devices may differ from those in above table. Refer to specific device data sheets for individual configurations.

Table 3–11. MSP430x12xx Module Enable Registers 1 and 2

Bit Position	Short Form	Initial State	Comments
ME1.0			Reserved
ME1.1			Reserved
ME1.2			Reserved
ME1.3			Reserved
ME1.4			Reserved
ME1.5			Reserved
ME1.6			Reserved
ME1.7			Reserved
ME2.0	URXE0 USPIE0	Reset Reset	USART0 receiver enable (UART mode) USART0 transmit and receive enable (SPI mode)
ME2.1	UTXE0	Reset	USART0 transmit enable (UART mode)
ME2.2			Reserved
ME2.3			Reserved
ME2.4			Reserved
ME2.5			Reserved
ME2.6			Reserved
ME2.7			Reserved

Note: The configuration of some MSP430 devices may differ from those in above table. Refer to specific device data sheets for individual configurations.

Table 3–12. MSP430x13x Module Enable Registers 1 and 2

Bit Position	Short Form	Initial State	Comments
ME1.0			Reserved
ME1.1			Reserved
ME1.2			Reserved
ME1.3			Reserved
ME1.4			Reserved
ME1.5			Reserved
ME1.6	URXE0 USPIE0	Reset Reset	USART0 receiver enable (UART mode) USART0 transmit and receive enable (SPI mode)
ME1.7	UTXE0	Reset	USART0 transmit enable (UART mode)
ME2.0			Reserved
ME2.1			Reserved
ME2.2			Reserved
ME2.3			Reserved
ME2.4			Reserved
ME2.5			Reserved
ME2.6			Reserved
ME2.7			Reserved

Note: The configuration of some MSP430 devices may differ from those in above table. Refer to specific device data sheets for individual configurations.

Table 3–13. MSP430x14x Module Enable Registers 1 and 2

Bit Position	Short Form	Initial State	Comments
ME1.0			Reserved
ME1.1			Reserved
ME1.2			Reserved
ME1.3			Reserved
ME1.4			Reserved
ME1.5			Reserved
ME1.6	URXE0 USPIE0	Reset Reset	USART0 receiver enable (UART mode) USART0 transmit and receive enable (SPI mode)
ME1.7	UTXE0	Reset	USART0 transmit enable (UART mode)
ME2.0			Reserved
ME2.1			Reserved
ME2.2			Reserved
ME2.3			Reserved
ME2.4	URXE1 USPIE1	Reset Reset	USART1 receiver enable (UART mode) USART1 transmit and receive enable (SPI mode)
ME2.5	UTXE1	Reset	USART1 transmit enable (UART mode)
ME2.6			Reserved
ME2.7			Reserved

Note: The configuration of some MSP430 devices may differ from those in above table. Refer to specific device data sheets for individual configurations.

3.4.2 Interrupt Vector Addresses

The interrupt vectors and the power-up starting address are located in the address range 0FFFFh – 0FFE0h as described in Tables 3–14 through 3–16. The vector contains the 16-bit address of the appropriate interrupt handler instruction sequence. The interrupt vectors for '1xx devices are shown in the following tables. See also the specific device's data sheet.

Table 3–14. Interrupt Sources, Flags, and Vectors of MSP430x11xx Configurations

INTERRUPT SOURCE	INTERRUPT FLAG	SYSTEM INTERRUPT	WORD ADDRESS	PRIORITY
Power-up, external reset, watchdog	WDTIFG (Note1) KEYV (see Note 1)	Reset	0FFFEh	15, highest
NMI, oscillator fault, flash memory access violation	NMIIFG (see Notes 1 and 4) OFIFG (see Notes 1 and 4) ACCVIFG (see Notes 1, 4, and 5)	(non)-maskable, (non)-maskable, (non)-maskable	0FFFCCh	14
			0FFFAh	13
			0FFF8h	12
Comparator_A	CAIFG (see Note 6)	maskable	0FFF6h	11
Watchdog timer	WDTIFG	maskable	0FFF4h	10
Timer_A	CCIFG0 (see Note 2)	maskable	0FFF2h	9
Timer_A	CCIFG1, CCIFG2, TAIFG (see Notes 1 and 2)	maskable	0FFF0h	8
			0FFEEh	7
			0FFECCh	6
ADC10	(see Note 7)		0FFEAh	5
			0FFE8h	4
I/O Port P2 (eight flags – see Note 3)	P2IFG.0 to P2IFG.7 (see Notes 1 and 2)	maskable	0FFE6h	3
I/O Port P1 (eight flags)	P1IFG.0 to P1IFG.7 (see Notes 1 and 2)	maskable	0FFE4h	2
			0FFE2h	1
			0FFE0h	0, lowest

- NOTES: 1. Multiple source flags
2. Interrupt flags are located in the module
3. There are eight Port P2 interrupt flags, but only six Port P2 I/O pins (P2.0–5) are implemented on the 11x1 devices.
4. (non)-maskable: the individual interrupt enable bit can disable an interrupt event, but the general interrupt enable cannot.
Nonmaskable: neither the individual nor the general interrupt enable bit will disable an interrupt event.
5. Flash devices only
6. MSP430x11x1 devices only
7. MSP430x11x2 devices only

Table 3–15. Interrupt Sources, Flags, and Vectors of MSP430x12xx Configurations

INTERRUPT SOURCE	INTERRUPT FLAG	SYSTEM INTERRUPT	WORD ADDRESS	PRIORITY
Power-up, external reset, watchdog	WDTIFG (see Note 8) KEYV (see Note 8)	Reset	0FFFEh	15, highest
NMI, oscillator fault, flash memory access violation	NMIIFG (see Notes 8 and 11) OFIFG (see Notes 8 and 11) ACCVIFG (see Notes 8 and 11)	(non)-maskable, (non)-maskable, (non)-maskable	0FFFCh	14
			0FFFAh	13
			0FFF8h	12
Comparator_A	CAIFG (see Note 13)	Maskable	0FFF6h	11
Watchdog timer	WDTIFG	Maskable	0FFF4h	10
Timer_A	CCIFG0 (see Note 9)	Maskable	0FFF2h	9
Timer_A	CCIFG1, CCIFG2, TAIFG (see Notes 8 and 9)	Maskable	0FFF0h	8
USART0 receive	URXIFG0	Maskable	0FFEEh	7
USART0 transmit	UTXIFG0	Maskable	0FFECCh	6
ADC10	(see Note 12)		0FFEAh	5
			0FFE8h	4
I/O Port P2 (eight flags – see Note 9)	P2IFG.0 to P2IFG.7 (see Notes 8 and 9)	Maskable	0FFE6h	3
I/O Port P1 (eight flags)	P1IFG.0 to P1IFG.7 (see Notes 8 and 9)	Maskable	0FFE4h	2
			0FFE2h	1
			0FFE0h	0, lowest

- NOTES:
8. Multiple source flags
 9. Interrupt flags are located in the module
 10. There are eight Port P2 interrupt flags, but only six Port P2 I/O pins (P2.0–5) are implemented on the 11x1 devices.
 11. (Non)-maskable: the individual interrupt enable bit can disable an interrupt event, but the general interrupt enable cannot.
 12. MSP430x12x2 devices only
 13. MSP430x12x1 devices only

Table 3–16. Interrupt Sources, Flags, and Vectors of MSP430x13x and MSP430x14x Configurations

INTERRUPT SOURCE	INTERRUPT FLAG	SYSTEM INTERRUPT	WORD ADDRESS	PRIORITY
Power-up External Reset Watchdog Flash memory	WDTIFG KEYV (see Note 14)	Reset	0FFFEh	15, highest
NMI Oscillator Fault Flash memory access violation	NMIIFG (see Notes 14 and 16) OFIFG (see Notes 14 and 16) ACCVIFG (see Notes 14 and 16)	(Non)maskable (Non)maskable (Non)maskable	0FFFCh	14
Timer_B7	BCCIFG0 (see Note 15)	Maskable	0FFFAh	13
Timer_B7	BCCIFG1 to BCCIFG6 TBIFG (see Notes 14 and 15)	Maskable	0FFF8h	12
Comparator_A	CAIFG	Maskable	0FFF6h	11
Watchdog timer	WDTIFG	Maskable	0FFF4h	10
USART0 receive	URXIFG0	Maskable	0FFF2h	9
USART0 transmit	UTXIFG0	Maskable	0FFF0h	8
ADC	ADCIFG (see Notes 14 and 15)	Maskable	0FFEEh	7
Timer_A3	CCIFG0 (see Note 15)	Maskable	0FFECCh	6
Timer_A3	CCIFG1, CCIFG2, TAIFG (see Notes 14 and 15)	Maskable	0FFEAh	5
I/O port P1 (eight flags)	P1IFG.0 (see Notes 14 and 15) To P1IFG.7 (see Notes 14 and 15)	Maskable	0FFE8h	4
USART1 receive	URXIFG1 (see Note 17)	Maskable	0FFE6h	3
USART1 transmit	UTXIFG1 (see Note 17)	Maskable	0FFE4h	2
I/O port P2 (eight flags)	P2IFG.0 (see Notes 14 and 15) To P2IFG.7 (see Notes 14 and 15)	Maskable	0FFE2h	1
			0FFE0h	0, lowest

NOTES: 14. Multiple source flags

15. Interrupt flags are located in the module (not available on MSP430C1351 devices).

16. (Non)maskable: the individual interrupt-enable bit can disable an interrupt event, but the general-interrupt enable can not disable it.

17. MSP430x14x devices only

Note: Some MSP430 devices have different implementations, See device datasheet for details.

3.4.2.1 External Interrupts

All eight bits of ports P1 and P2 are designed for interrupt processing of external events. All individual I/O bits are independently programmable. Any combinations of inputs, outputs, and interrupt conditions are possible. This allows easy adaptation to different I/O configurations. See the *I/O Ports* chapter for more details on I/O ports.

3.5 Operating Modes

The MSP430 family was developed for ultralow-power applications and uses different levels of operating modes. The MSP430 operating modes, shown in Figure 3–10, give advanced support to various requirements for ultralow power and ultralow energy consumption. This support is combined with an intelligent management of operations during the different module and CPU states. An interrupt event wakes the system from each of the various operating modes and the RETI instruction returns operation to the mode that was selected before the interrupt event.

The ultralow power system design which uses complementary metal-oxide semiconductor (CMOS) technology, takes into account three different needs:

- ☐ The desire for speed and data throughput despite conflicting needs for ultra-low power
- ☐ Minimization of individual current consumption
- ☐ Limitation of the activity state to the minimum required by the use of low power modes

There are four bits that control the CPU and the main parts of the operation of the system clock generator: CPUOff, OscOff, SCG0, and SCG1. These four bits support discontinuous active mode (AM) requests, to limit the time period of the full operating mode, and are located in the status register. The major advantage of including the operating mode bits in the status register is that the present state of the operating condition is saved onto the stack during an interrupt service request. As long as the stored status register information is not altered, the processor continues (after RETI) with the same operating mode as before the interrupt event. Another program flow may be selected by manipulating the data stored on the stack or the stack pointer. Being able to access the stack and stack pointer with the instruction set allows the program structures to be individually optimized, as illustrated in the following program flow:

- ☐ Enter interrupt routine

The interrupt routine is entered and processed if an enabled interrupt awakens the MSP430:

- The SR and PC are stored on the stack, with the content present at the interrupt event.
- Subsequently, the operation mode control bits OscOff, SCG1, and CPUOff are cleared automatically in the status register.

☐ Return from interrupt

Two different modes are available to return from the interrupt service routine and continue the flow of operation:

- Return with low-power mode bits set. When returning from the interrupt, the program counter points to the next instruction. The instruction pointed to is not executed, since the restored low power mode stops CPU activity.
- Return with low-power mode bits reset. When returning from the interrupt, the program continues at the address following the instruction that set the OscOff or CPUOff-bit in the status register. To use this mode, the interrupt service routine must reset the OscOff, CPUOff, SCGO, and SCG1 bits on the stack. Then, when the SR contents are popped from the stack upon RETI, the operating mode will be active mode (AM).

There are six operating modes that the software can configure:

- ☐ Active mode AM; SCG1=0, SCG0=0, OscOff=0, CPUOff=0:
CPU clocks are active
- ☐ Low power mode 0 (LPM0); SCG1=0, SCG0=0, OscOff=0, CPUOff=1:
CPU is disabled
MCLK is disabled
SMCLK and ACLK remain active
- ☐ Low power mode 1 (LPM1); SCG1=0, SCG0=1, OscOff=0, CPUOff=1:
CPU is disabled
MCLK is disabled
DCO's dc generator is disabled if the DCO is not used for MCLK or SMCLK when in active mode. Otherwise, it remains enabled.
SMCLK and ACLK remain active

- ☐ Low power mode 2 (LPM2); SCG1=1, SCG0=0, OscOff=0, CPUOff=1:
 - CPU is disabled
 - MCLK is disabled
 - SMCLK is disabled
 - DCO oscillator automatically disabled because it is not needed for MCLK or SMCLK
 - DCO's dc-generator remains enabled
 - ACLK remains active
- ☐ Low power mode 3 (LPM3); SCG1=1, SCG0=1, OscOff=0, CPUOff=1:
 - CPU is disabled
 - MCLK is disabled
 - SMCLK is disabled
 - DCO oscillator is disabled
 - DCO's dc-generator is disabled
 - ACLK remains active
- ☐ Low power mode 4 (LPM4); SCG1=X, SCG0=X, OscOff=1, CPUOff=1:
 - CPU is disabled
 - ACLK is disabled
 - MCLK is disabled
 - SMCLK is disabled
 - DCO oscillator is disabled
 - DCO's dc-generator is disabled
 - Crystal oscillator is stopped

Note:

Peripheral operation is not halted by CPUOff. Peripherals are controlled by their individual control registers.

Table 3–17. Low Power Mode Logic Chart for Basic Clock System

	SCG1	SCG0	OscOff	CPUOff
LPM0	0	0	0	1
LPM1	0	1	0	1
LPM2	1	0	0	1
LPM3	1	1	0	1
LPM4	1	1	1	1

These modes are illustrated in Figure 3–11.

Figure 3–10. MSP430x1xx Operating Modes For Basic Clock System

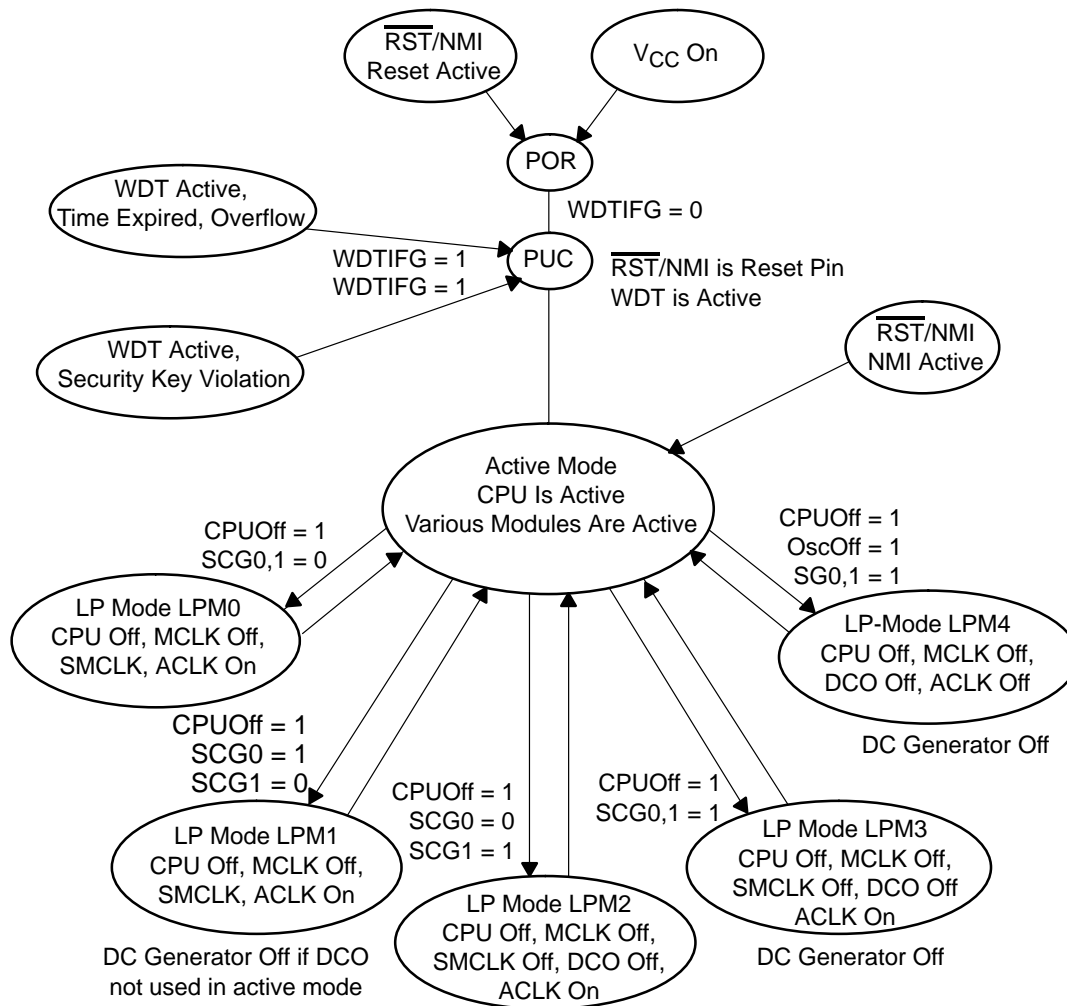
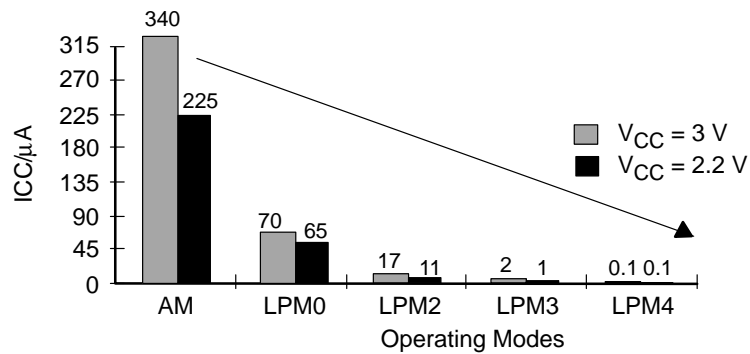


Figure 3–11. Typical Current Consumption of 13x and 14x Devices vs Operating Modes



The low-power modes 1–4 enable or disable the CPU and the clocks. In addition to the CPU and clocks, enabling or disabling specific peripherals may further reduce total current consumption of the individual modes. The activity state of each peripheral is controlled by the control registers for the individual peripherals. In addition, the SFRs include module enable bits that may be used to enable or disable the operation of specific peripheral modules (see Table 3–4).

3.5.1 Low-Power Mode 0 and 1 (LPM0 and LPM1)

Low power mode 0 or 1 is selected if bit CPUOff in the status register is set. Immediately after the bit is set the CPU stops operation, and the normal operation of the system core stops. The operation of the CPU halts and all internal bus activities stop until an interrupt request or reset occurs. The system clock generator continues operation, and the clock signals MCLK, SMCLK, and ACLK stay active depending on the state of the other three status register bits, SCG0, SCG1, and OscOff.

The peripherals are enabled or disabled with their individual control register settings, and with the module enable registers in the SFRs. All I/O port pins and RAM/registers are unchanged. Wake up is possible through all enabled interrupts.

The following are examples of entering and exiting LPM0. The method shown is applicable to all low-power modes.

The following example describes entering into low-power mode 0.

```

;===Main program flow with switch to CPUOff Mode=====
;
    BIS #18h,SR    ;Enter LPM0 + enable general interrupt GIE
                  ;(CPUOff=1, GIE=1). The PC is incremented
                  ;during execution of this instruction and
                  ;points to the consecutive program step.
    .....        ;The program continues here if the CPUOff
                  ;bit is reset during the interrupt service
                  ;routine. Otherwise, the PC retains its
                  ;value and the processor returns to LPM0.

```

The following example describes clearing low-power mode 0.

```
====Interrupt service routine=====
.....      ;CPU is active while handling interrupts
BIC #10h,0(SP) ;Clears the CPUOff bit in the SR contents
              ;that were stored on the stack.

RETI         ;RETI restores the CPU to the active state
              ;because the SR values that are stored on
              ;the stack were manipulated. This occurs
              ;because the SR is pushed onto the stack
              ;upon an interrupt, then restored from the
              ;stack after the RETI instruction.
```

3.5.2 Low-Power Modes 2 and 3 (LPM2 and LPM3)

Low-power mode 2 or 3 is selected if bits CPUOff and SCG1 in the status register are set. Immediately after the bits are set, CPU, MCLK, and SMCLK operations halt and all internal bus activities stop until an interrupt request or reset occurs.

Peripherals that operate with the MCLK or SMCLK signal are inactive because the clock signals are inactive. Peripherals that operate with the ACLK signal are active or inactive according with the individual control registers and the module enable bits in the SFRs. All I/O port pins and the RAM/registers are unchanged. Wake up is possible by enabled interrupts coming from active peripherals or $\overline{\text{RST}}$ /NMI.

3.5.3 Low-Power Mode 4 (LPM4)

In low power mode 4 all activities cease; only the RAM contents, I/O ports, and registers are maintained. Wake up is only possible by enabled external interrupts.

Before activating LPM4, the software should consider the system conditions during the low power mode period. The two most important conditions are environmental (that is, temperature effect on the DCO), and the clocked operation conditions.

The environment defines whether the value of the frequency integrator should be held or corrected. A correction should be made when ambient conditions are anticipated to change drastically enough to increase or decrease the system frequency while the device is in LPM4.

3.6 Basic Hints for Low-Power Applications

There are some basic practices to follow when current consumption is a critical part of a system application:

- ☐ Switch off analog circuitry when possible.
- ☐ Select the lowest possible operating frequency for the core and the individual peripheral module.
- ☐ Use the interrupt driven software; the program starts execution rapidly.
- ☐ Tie all unused inputs to an applicable voltage level. The list below defines the correct termination for all unused pins.

Pin	Potential	Comment
<input type="checkbox"/> AV_{CC}	DV _{CC}	
<input type="checkbox"/> AV_{SS}	DV _{SS}	
<input type="checkbox"/> Xout	Open	
<input type="checkbox"/> V_{REF+}	Open	
<input type="checkbox"/> Ve_{REF+}	DV _{SS}	
<input type="checkbox"/> V_{REF-}/Ve_{REF-}	DV _{SS}	
<input type="checkbox"/> XIN	DV _{SS}	
<input type="checkbox"/> XT2IN	DV _{SS}	13x and 14x devices
<input type="checkbox"/> XT2OUT	Open	13x and 14x devices
<input type="checkbox"/> Px.0 to Px.7	Open	Unused ports switched to port function and output direction
<input type="checkbox"/> RST/NMI	DV _{CC} or V _{CC}	Pullup resistor 100k
<input type="checkbox"/> Test/V_{PP}	DV _{SS}	11x devices
<input type="checkbox"/> Test	DV _{SS}	11x1 devices
<input type="checkbox"/> TDO	Open	
<input type="checkbox"/> TDI:	Open	
<input type="checkbox"/> TMS	Open	
<input type="checkbox"/> TCK	Open	

Memory

MSP430 devices are configured as a von-Neumann architecture. It has code memory, data memory, and peripherals in one address space. As a result, the same instructions are used for code, data, or peripheral accesses. Also, code may be executed from RAM.

Topic	Page
4.1 Introduction	4-2
4.2 Data in the Memory	4-3
4.3 Internal ROM Organization	4-4
4.4 RAM and Peripheral Organization	4-6

4.1 Introduction

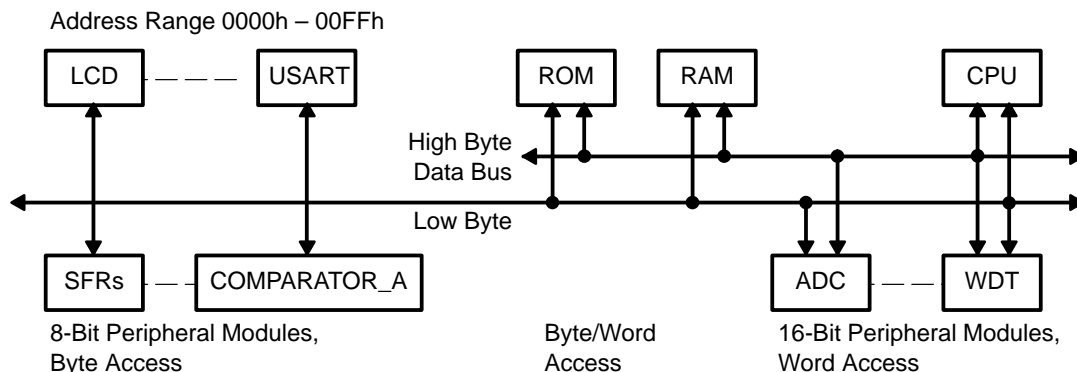
All of the physically separated memory areas (ROM, RAM, SFRs, and peripheral modules) are mapped into the common address space, as shown in Figure 4–1 for the MSP430 family. The addressable memory space is 64KB. Future expansion is possible.

Figure 4–1. Memory Map of Basic Address Space

Address (Hex.)		Function	Access
0FFFFh	Interrupt Vector Table	ROM	Word/Byte
0FFE0h			
0FFDFh	Program Memory Branch Control Tables Data Tables...	ROM	Word/Byte
0200h	Data Memory	RAM	Word/Byte
01FFh	16-Bit Peripheral Modules	Timer, ADC, . . .	Word
0100h			
0FFh	8-Bit Peripheral Modules	I/O, LCD 8bT/C, . . .	Byte
010h			
0Fh	Special Function Registers	SFR	Byte
0h			

The memory data bus (MDB) is 16- or 8-bits wide. For those modules that can be accessed with word data the width is always 16 bits. For the other modules, the width is 8 bits, and they must be accessed using byte instructions only. The program memory (ROM) and the data memory (RAM) can be accessed with byte or word instructions.

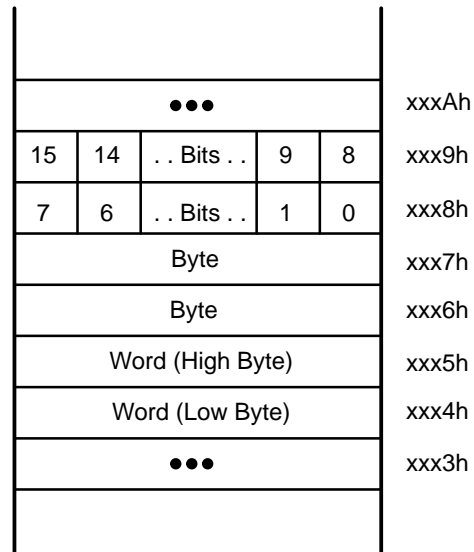
Figure 4–2. Memory Data Bus



4.2 Data in the Memory

Bytes are located at even or odd addresses as shown in Figure 4–3. However, words are only located at even addresses. Therefore, when using word instructions, only even addresses may be used. The low byte of a word is always at an even address. The high byte of a word is at the next odd address after the address of the word. For example, if a data word is located at address xxx2h, then the low byte of that data word is located at address xxx2h, and the high byte of that word is located at address xxx3h.

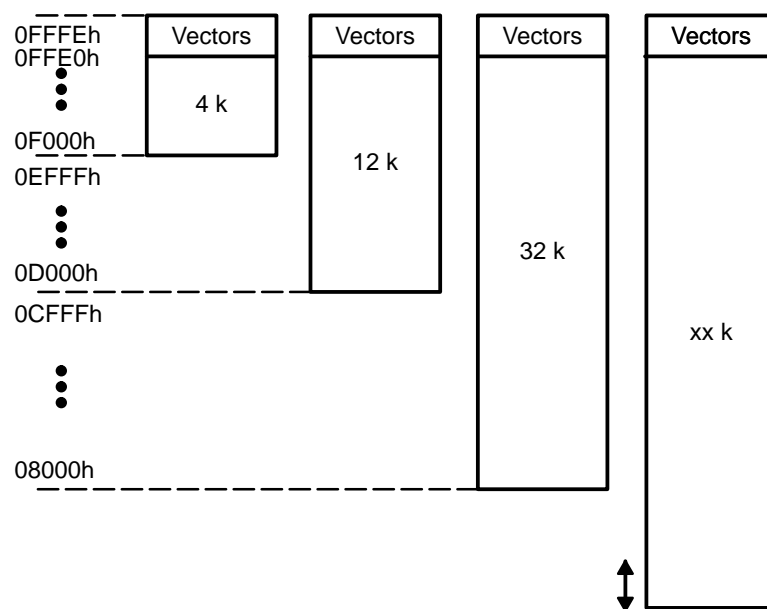
Figure 4–3. Bits, Bytes, and Words in a Byte-Organized Memory



4.3 Internal ROM Organization

Various sizes of ROM (OTP, masked-ROM, EPROM, or FLASH) are available within the 64-kB address space, as shown in Figure 4–4. The common address space is shared with SFRs, peripheral module registers, data and code memory. The SFRs and peripheral modules are mapped into the address range, starting with 0 and ending with 01FFh. The remaining address space, 0200h to 0FFFFh, is shared by data and code memory. The start address for ROM depends on the amount of ROM present. The interrupt vector table is mapped into the the upper 16 words of ROM address space, with the highest priority interrupt vector at the highest ROM word address (0FFFEh). See the individual data sheets for specific memory maps.

Figure 4–4. ROM Organization



4.3.1 Processing of ROM Tables

The MSP430 architecture allows for the storage and usage of large tables in ROM without the need to copy the tables to RAM before using them. This ROM accessing of tables allows fast and clear programming in applications where data tables are necessary. This offers the flexible advantages listed below, and saves on ROM and RAM requirements. To access these tables, all word and byte instructions can be used.

- ☐ ROM storage of an output programmable logic array (OPLA) for display character conversion
- ☐ The use of as many OPLA terms as needed (no restriction on n terms)
- ☐ OTP version automatically includes OPLA programmability
- ☐ Computed table accessibility (for example, for a bar graph display)
- ☐ Table-supported program flows

4.3.2 Computed Branches and Calls

Computed branches and subroutine calls are possible using standard instructions. The call and branch instructions use the same addressing modes as the other instructions.

The addressing modes allow indirect-indirect addressing that is ideally suited for computed branches and calls. This programming technique permits a program structure that is different from conventional 8- and 16-bit microcontrollers. Most of the routines can be handled easily by using software status handling instead of flag-type program-flow control.

The computed branch and subroutine calls are valid throughout the entire ROM space.

4.4 RAM and Peripheral Organization

The entire RAM can be accessed with byte or word instructions using the appropriate instruction suffix. The peripheral modules, however, are located in two different address spaces and must be accessed with the appropriate instruction length.

- ☐ The SFRs are byte-oriented and mapped into the address space from 0h up to 0Fh.
- ☐ Peripheral modules that are byte-oriented are mapped into the address space from 010h up to 0FFh.
- ☐ Peripheral modules that are word-oriented are mapped into the address space from 100h up to 01FFh.

4.4.1 Random Access Memory

RAM can be used for both code and data memory. Code accesses are always performed on even byte addresses.

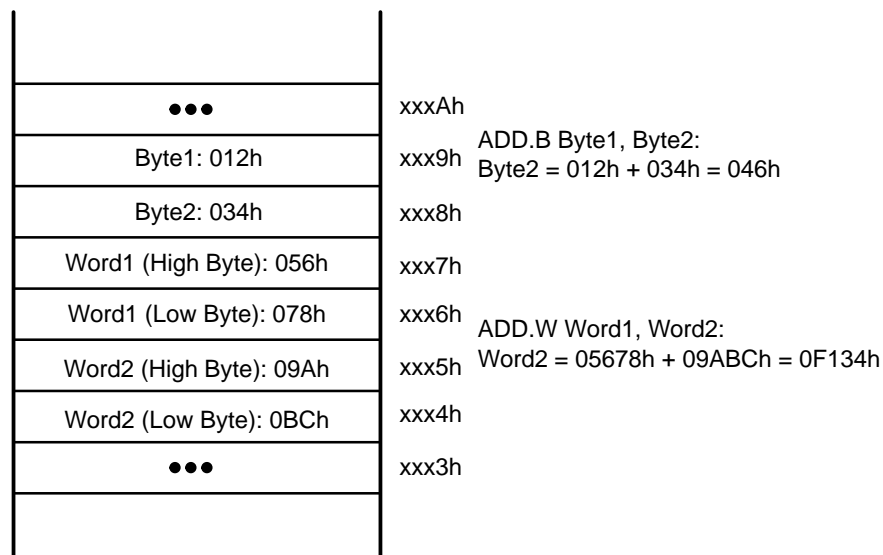
The instruction mnemonic suffix defines the data as being word or byte data.

Example:

```
MOV.B    TXDATA,&UTXBUF0      ;Byte access
ADD      R5,SUM_A              = ADD.W    R5,SUM_A    ;Word access
ADDC     SUM_B                 = ADDC.W    SUM_A      ;Word access
```

A word consists of two bytes: a high byte (bit 15 to bit 8), and a low byte (bit 7 to bit 0) as shown in Figure 4–5. It must always align to an even address.

Figure 4–5. Byte and Word Operation



All operations on the stack and PC are word operations and use even-aligned memory addresses.

In the following examples, word-to-word and byte-to-byte operations show the results of the operation and the status bit information.

Example Word-Word Operation

R5 = 0F28Eh
 EDE EQU 0212h
 Mem(0F28Eh) = 0FFFEh
 Mem(0212h) = 00112h

ADD @R5,&EDE

Mem(0212h) = 00110h
 C = 1, Z = 0, N = 0

Example Byte-Byte Operation

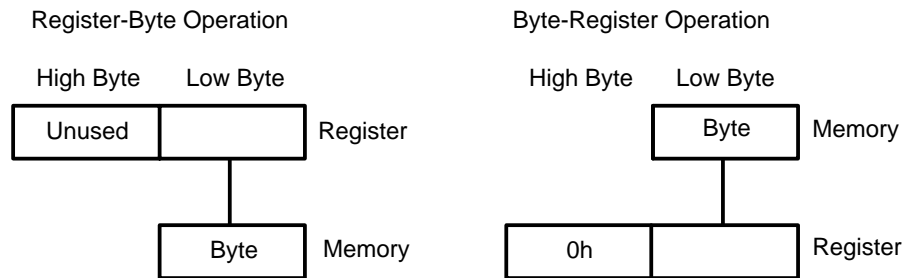
R5 = 0223h
 EDE EQU 0202h
 Mem(0223h) = 05Fh
 Mem(0202h) = 043h

ADD.B @R5,&EDE

Mem(0202h) = 0A2h
 C = 0, Z = 0, N = 1

Figure 4–6 shows the register-byte and byte-register operations.

Figure 4–6. Register-Byte/Byte-Register Operations



The two following examples describe the register-byte and byte-register operations.

Example Register-Byte Operation

R5 = 0A28Fh
 R6 = 0203h
 Mem(0203h) = 012h

ADD.B R5,0(R6)

$$\begin{array}{r} 08Fh \\ + 012h \\ \hline 0A1h \end{array}$$

Mem (0203h) = 0A1h
 C = 0, Z = 0, N = 1

(Low byte of register)
 + (Addressed byte)
 —————
 ->(Addressed byte)

Example Byte-Register Operation

R5 = 01202h
 R6 = 0223h
 Mem(0223h) = 05Fh

ADD.B @R6,R5

$$\begin{array}{r} 05Fh \\ + 002h \\ \hline 00061h \end{array} \quad \begin{array}{l} \text{;Low byte of R5} \\ \text{;->Store into R5} \\ \text{;High byte is 0} \end{array}$$

R5 = 00061h
 C = 0, Z = 0, N = 0

(Addressed byte)
 + (Low byte of register)
 —————
 ->(Low byte of register,
 zero to High byte)

Note: Word-Byte Operations

Word-byte or byte-word operations on memory data are not supported. Each register-byte or byte-register is performed as a byte operation.

4.4.2 Peripheral Modules—Address Allocation

Some peripheral modules are accessible only with byte instructions, while others are accessible only with word instructions. The address space from 0100 to 01FFh is reserved for word modules, and the address space from 00h to 0FFh is reserved for byte modules.

Peripheral modules that are mapped into the word address space must be accessed using word instructions (for example, `MOV R5,&WDTCTL`). Peripheral modules that are mapped into the byte address space must be accessed with byte instructions (`MOV.B #1,&P1OUT`).

The addressing of both is through the absolute addressing mode or the 16-bit working registers using the indexed, indirect, or indirect autoincrement addressing mode. See Figure 4–7 for the RAM/peripheral organization.

Figure 4–7. Example of RAM/Peripheral Organization

Address (Hex.)	7	0	Function	Access
01FFh	16-Bit Peripheral Modules		Timer, ADC, . . .	Word
⋮				
0100h				
0FFh	8-Bit Peripheral Modules		I/O, USART Comparator_A, . . .	Byte
010h				
0Fh				
0h	Special Function Registers		SFR	Byte

4.4.2.1 Word Modules

Word modules are peripherals that are connected to the 16-bit MDB.

Word modules can be accessed with word or byte instructions. If byte instructions are used, only even addresses are permissible, and the high byte of the result is always 0.

The peripheral file address space is organized into sixteen frames with each frame representing eight words as described in Table 4–1.

Table 4–1. Peripheral File Address Map—Word Modules

Address	Description
1F0h – 1FFh	Reserved
1E0h – 1EFh	Reserved
1D0h – 1DFh	Reserved
1C0h – 1CFh	Reserved
1B0h – 1BFh	Reserved
1A0h – 1AFh	ADC12 control and interrupt
190h – 19Fh	Timer_B
180h – 18Fh	Timer_B
170h – 17Fh	Timer_A
160h – 16Fh	Timer_A
150h – 15Fh	ADC12 conversion
140h – 14Fh	ADC12 conversion
130h – 13Fh	Multiplier
120h – 12Fh	Watchdog Timer, Flash control
110h – 11Fh	Reserved
100h – 10Fh	Reserved

4.4.2.2 Byte Modules

Byte modules are peripherals that are connected to the reduced (eight LSB) MDB. Access to byte modules is always by byte instructions. The hardware in the peripheral byte modules takes the low byte (the LSBs) during a write operation.

Byte instructions operate on byte modules without any restrictions. Read access to peripheral byte modules using word instructions results in unpredictable data in the high byte. Word data is written into a byte module by writing the low byte to the appropriate peripheral register and ignoring the high byte.

The peripheral file address space is organized into sixteen frames as described in Table 4–2.

Table 4–2. Peripheral File Address Map—Byte Modules

Address	Description
00F0h – 00FFh	Reserved
00E0h – 00EFh	Reserved
00D0h – 00DFh	Reserved
00C0h – 00CFh	Reserved
00B0h – 00BFh	Reserved
00A0h – 00AFh	Reserved
0090h – 009Fh	Reserved
0080h – 008Fh	ADC12 memory control
0070h – 007Fh	USART0, USART1
0060h – 006Fh	Reserved
0050h – 005Fh	System clock generator, Comparator A
0040h – 004Fh	Reserved
0030h – 003Fh	Digital I/O port P5, digital I/O port P6
0020h – 002Fh	Digital I/O port P1 and P2 control
0010h – 001Fh	Digital I/O port P3, and P4 control
0000h – 000Fh	Special function

4.4.3 Peripheral Modules-Special Function Registers (SFRs)

The system configuration and the individual reaction of the peripheral modules to the processor operation is configured in the SFRs as described in Table 4–3. The SFRs are located in the lower address range, and are organized by bytes. SFRs must be accessed using byte instructions only.

Table 4–3. Special Function Register Address Map

Address	Data Bus	
	7	0
000Fh	Not yet defined or implemented	
000Eh	Not yet defined or implemented	
000Dh	Not yet defined or implemented	
000Ch	Not yet defined or implemented	
000Bh	Not yet defined or implemented	
000Ah	Not yet defined or implemented	
0009h	Not yet defined or implemented	
0008h	Not yet defined or implemented	
0007h	Not yet defined or implemented	
0006h	Not yet defined or implemented	
0005h	Module enable 2; ME2.2	
0004h	Module enable 1; ME1.1	
0003h	Interrupt flag reg. 2; IFG2.x	
0002h	Interrupt flag reg.1; IFG1.x	
0001h	Interrupt enable 2; IE2.x	
0000h	Interrupt enable 1; IE1.x	

The system power consumption is influenced by the number of enabled modules and their functions. Disabling a module from the actual operation mode reduces power consumption while other parts of the controller remain fully active (unused pins must be tied appropriately or power consumption will increase; see *Basic Hints for Low Power Applications* in section 3.6.

16-Bit CPU

The MSP430 von-Neumann architecture has RAM, ROM, and peripherals in one address space, both using a single address and data bus. This allows using the same instruction to access either RAM, ROM, or peripherals and also allows code execution from RAM.

Topic	Page
5.1 CPU Registers	5-2
5.2 Addressing Modes	5-7
5.3 Instruction Set Overview	5-17
5.4 Instruction Map	5-23

5.1 CPU Registers

Sixteen 16-bit registers (R0, R1, and R4 to R15) are used for data and addresses and are implemented in the CPU. They can address up to 64 Kbytes (ROM, RAM, peripherals, etc.) without any segmentation. The complete CPU-register set is described in Table 5–1. Registers R0, R1, R2, and R3 have dedicated functions, which are described in detail later.

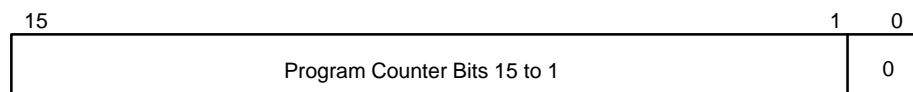
Table 5–1. Register by Functions

Program counter (PC)	R0
Stack pointer (SP)	R1
Status register (SR)	R2
Constant generator (CG1)	
Constant generator (CG2)	R3
Working register R4	R4
Working register R5	R5
⋮	⋮
⋮	⋮
Working register R13	R13
Working register R14	R14
Working register R15	R15

5.1.1 The Program Counter (PC)

The 16-bit program counter points to the next instruction to be executed. Each instruction uses an even number of bytes (two, four, or six), and the program counter is incremented accordingly. Instruction accesses are performed on word boundaries, and the program counter is aligned to even addresses. Figure 5–1 shows the program counter bits.

Figure 5–1. Program Counter



5.1.2 The System Stack Pointer (SP)

The system stack pointer must always be aligned to even addresses because the stack is accessed with word data during an interrupt request service. The system SP is used by the CPU to store the return addresses of subroutine calls and interrupts. It uses a predecrement, postincrement scheme. The advantage of this scheme is that the item on the top of the stack is available. The SP can be used by the user software (PUSH and POP instructions), but the user should remember that the CPU also uses the SP. Figure 5–2 shows the system SP bits.

Figure 5–2. System Stack Pointer



5.1.2.1 Examples for System SP Addressing (Refer to Figure 5–4)

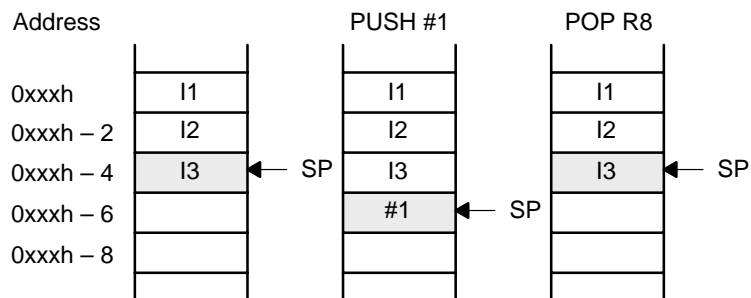
```

MOV    SP,R4      ; SP -> R4
MOV    @SP,R5     ; Item I3 (TOS) -> R5
MOV    2(SP),R6   ; Item I2 -> R6
MOV    R7,0(SP)   ; Overwrite TOS with R7
MOV    R8,4(SP)   ; Modify item I1
PUSH   R12        ; Store R12 in address 0xxxh - 6; SP points
                  ; to same address
POP    R12        ; Restore R12 from address 0xxxh - 6; SP
                  ; points to 0xxxh - 4
MOV    @SP+,R5    ; Item I3 -> R5 (popped from stack); same as
                  ; POP instruction

```

Figure 5–3 shows stack usage.

Figure 5–3. Stack Usage



5.1.2.2 Special Cases—PUSH SP and POP SP

The special cases of using the SP as an argument to the PUSH and POP instructions are described below.

Figure 5–4. PUSH SP and POP SP



The stack pointer is changed after a PUSH SP instruction.

The stack pointer is not changed after a PUSH SP, POP SP instruction sequence. The POP SP instruction places SP₁ into the stack pointer SP (SP₂=SP₁)

After the sequence

```

PUSH SP    ; SP1 is stack pointer after this instruction
|
POP SP     ; SP2 is stack pointer after this instruction

```

The stack pointer is two bytes lower than before this sequence.

5.1.3 The Status Register (SR)

The status register SR contains the following CPU status bits:

<input type="checkbox"/> V	Overflow bit
<input type="checkbox"/> SCG1	System clock generator control bit 1
<input type="checkbox"/> SCG0	System clock generator control bit 0
<input type="checkbox"/> OscOff	Crystal oscillator off bit
<input type="checkbox"/> CPUOff	CPU off bit
<input type="checkbox"/> GIE	General interrupt enable bit
<input type="checkbox"/> N	Negative bit
<input type="checkbox"/> Z	Zero bit
<input type="checkbox"/> C	Carry bit

Figure 5–5 shows the SR bits.

Figure 5–5. Status Register Bits

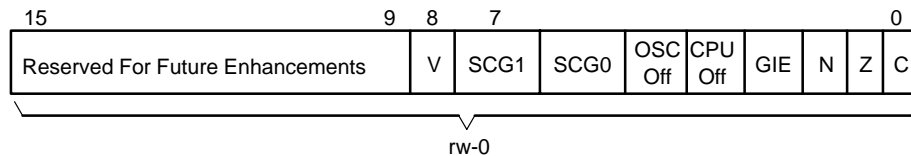


Table 5–2 describes the status register bits.

Table 5–2. Description of Status Register Bits

Bit	Description
V	<p>Overflow bit. Set if the result of an arithmetic operation overflows the signed-variable range. The bit is valid for both data formats, byte and word:</p> <p>ADD(.B), ADDC(.B) Set when: Positive + Positive = Negative Negative + Negative = Positive, otherwise reset</p> <p>SUB(.B), SUBC(.B), CMP(.B) Set when: Positive – Negative = Negative Negative – Positive = Positive, otherwise reset</p>
SCG1, SCG0	These bits control four activity states of the system-clock generator and therefore influence the operation of the processor system.
OscOFF	If set, the crystal oscillator enters off mode: all activities cease; however, the RAM contents, the port, and the registers are maintained. Wake up is possible only through enabled external interrupts when the GIE bit is set and from the NMI.
CPU Off	If set, the CPU enters off mode: program execution stops. However, the RAM, the port registers, and especially the enabled peripherals (for example, Timer_A, UART, etc.) stay active. Wake up is possible through all enabled interrupts.
GIE	If set, all enabled maskable interrupts are handled. If reset, all maskable interrupts are disabled. The GIE bit is cleared by interrupts and restored by the RETI instruction as well as by other appropriate instructions.
N	<p>Set if the result of an operation is negative.</p> <p>Word operation: Negative bit is set to the value of bit 15 of the result Byte operation: Negative bit is set to the value of bit 7 of the result</p>
Z	Set if the result of byte or word operation is 0; cleared if the result is not 0.
C	Set if the result of an operation produced a carry; cleared if no carry occurred. Some instructions modify the carry bit using the inverted zero bits.

Note: Status Register Bits V, N, Z, and C

The status register bits V, N, Z, and C are modified only with the appropriate instruction. For additional information, see the detailed description of the instruction set in Appendix B.

5.1.4 The Constant Generator Registers CG1 and CG2

Commonly-used constants are generated with the constant generator registers R2 and R3, without requiring an additional 16-bit word of program code. The constant used for immediate values is defined by the addressing mode bits (As) as described in Table 5–3. See Section 5.3 for a description of the addressing mode bits (As).

Table 5–3. Values of Constant Generators CG1, CG2

Register	As	Constant	Remarks
R2	00	----	Register mode
R2	01	(0)	Absolute address mode
R2	10	00004h	+4, bit processing
R2	11	00008h	+8, bit processing
R3	00	00000h	0, word processing
R3	01	00001h	+1
R3	10	00002h	+2, bit processing
R3	11	0FFFFh	–1, word processing

The major advantages of this type of constant generation are:

- ☐ No special instructions required
- ☐ Reduced code memory requirements: no additional word for the six most used constants
- ☐ Reduced instruction cycle time: no code memory access to retrieve the constant

The assembler uses the constant generator automatically if one of the six constants is used as a source operand in the immediate addressing mode. The status register SR/R2, used as a source or destination register, can be used in the register mode only. The remaining combinations of addressing-mode bits are used to support absolute-address modes and bit processing without any additional code. Registers R2 and R3, used in the constant mode, cannot be addressed explicitly; they act like source-only registers.

The RISC instruction set of the MSP430 has only 27 instructions. However, the constant generator allows the MSP430 assembler to support 24 additional, emulated instructions. For example, the single-operand instruction:

CLR dst

is emulated by the double-operand instruction with the same length:

MOV R3,dst
or the equivalent
MOV #0,dst

where #0 is replaced by the assembler, and R3 is used with As = 00, which results in:

- ☐ One word instruction
- ☐ No additional control operation or hardware within the CPU
- ☐ Register-addressing mode for source: no additional fetch cycle for the constant (#0)

5.2 Addressing Modes

All seven addressing modes for the source operand and all four addressing modes for the destination operand can address the complete address space. The bit numbers in Table 5–4 describe the contents of the As and Ad mode bits. See Section 5.3 for a description of the source address As and the destination address Ad bits.

Table 5–4. Source/Destination Operand Addressing Modes

As/Ad	Addressing Mode	Syntax	Description
00/0	Register mode	Rn	Register contents are operand
01/1	Indexed mode	X(Rn)	(Rn + X) points to the operand X is stored in the next word
01/1	Symbolic mode	ADDR	(PC + X) points to the operand X is stored in the next word. Indexed mode X(PC) is used.
01/1	Absolute mode	&ADDR	The word following the instruction contains the absolute address.
10/–	Indirect register mode	@Rn	Rn is used as a pointer to the operand.
11/–	Indirect autoincrement	@Rn+	Rn is used as a pointer to the operand. Rn is incremented afterwards.
11/–	Immediate mode	#N	The word following the instruction contains the immediate constant N. Indirect autoincrement mode @PC+ is used.

The seven addressing modes are explained in detail in the following sections. Most of the examples show the same addressing mode for the source and destination, but any valid combination of source and destination addressing modes is possible in an instruction.

5.2.1 Register Mode

The register mode is described in Table 5–5.

Table 5–5. Register Mode Description

Assembler Code	Content of ROM
MOV R10,R11	MOV R10,R11

Length: One or two words

Operation: Move the content of R10 to R11. R10 is not affected.

Comment: Valid for source and destination

Example: MOV R10,R11

Before:		After:	
R10	0A023h	R10	0A023h
R11	0FA15h	R11	0A023h
PC	PC _{old}	PC	PC _{old} + 2

Note: Data in Registers

The data in the register can be accessed using word or byte instructions. If byte instructions are used, the high byte is always 0 in the result. The status bits are handled according to the result of the byte instruction.

5.2.2 Indexed Mode

The indexed mode is described in Table 5–6.

Table 5–6. Indexed Mode Description

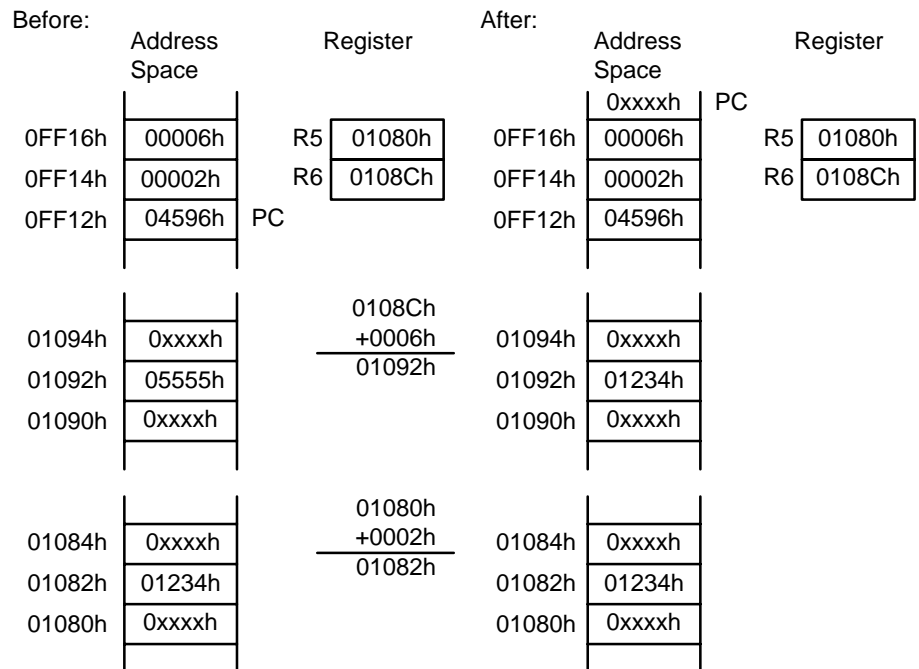
Assembler Code	Content of ROM
MOV 2(R5),6(R6)	MOV X(R5),Y(R6)
	X = 2
	Y = 6

Length: Two or three words

Operation: Move the contents of the source address (contents of R5 + 2) to the destination address (contents of R6 + 6). The source and destination registers (R5 and R6) are not affected. In indexed mode, the program counter is incremented automatically so that program execution continues with the next instruction.

Comment: Valid for source and destination

Example: MOV 2(R5),6(R6):



5.2.3 Symbolic Mode

The symbolic mode is described in Table 5–7.

Table 5–7. Symbolic Mode Description

Assembler Code	Content of ROM
MOV EDE,TONI	MOV X(PC),Y(PC)
	X = EDE – PC
	Y = TONI – PC

Length: Two or three words

Operation: Move the contents of the source address EDE (contents of PC + X) to the destination address TONI (contents of PC + Y). The words after the instruction contain the differences between the PC and the source or destination addresses. The assembler computes and inserts offsets X and Y automatically. With symbolic mode, the program counter (PC) is incremented automatically so that program execution continues with the next instruction.

Comment: Valid for source and destination

Example: MOV EDE,TONI ;Source address EDE = 0F016h,
;dest. address TONI=01114h

Before:	Address Space	Register	After:	Address Space	Register
				0xxxxh	PC
0FF16h	011FEh		0FF16h	011FEh	
0FF14h	0F102h		0FF14h	0F102h	
0FF12h	04090h	PC	0FF12h	04090h	
0F018h	0xxxxh	0FF14h +0F102h — 0F016h	0F018h	0xxxxh	
0F016h	0A123h		0F016h	0A123h	
0F014h	0xxxxh		0F014h	0xxxxh	
01116h	0xxxxh	0FF16h +011FEh — 01114h	01116h	0xxxxh	
01114h	01234h		01114h	0A123h	
01112h	0xxxxh		01112h	0xxxxh	

5.2.4 Absolute Mode

The absolute mode is described in Table 5–8.

Table 5–8. Absolute Mode Description

Assembler Code	Content of ROM
MOV &EDE,&TONI	MOV X(0),Y(0)
	X = EDE
	Y = TONI

Length: Two or three words

Operation: Move the contents of the source address EDE to the destination address TONI. The words after the instruction contain the absolute address of the source and destination addresses. With absolute mode, the PC is incremented automatically so that program execution continues with the next instruction.

Comment: Valid for source and destination

Example: MOV &EDE,&TONI ;Source address EDE = 0F016h,
;dest. address TONI=01114h

Before:	Address Space	Register	After:	Address Space	Register
				0xxxxh	PC
0FF16h	01114h		0FF16h	01114h	
0FF14h	0F016h		0FF14h	0F016h	
0FF12h	04292h	PC	0FF12h	04292h	
0F018h	0xxxxh		0F018h	0xxxxh	
0F016h	0A123h		0F016h	0A123h	
0F014h	0xxxxh		0F014h	0xxxxh	
01116h	0xxxxh		01116h	0xxxxh	
01114h	01234h		01114h	0A123h	
01112h	0xxxxh		01112h	0xxxxh	

This address mode is mainly for hardware peripheral modules that are located at an absolute, fixed address. These are addressed with absolute mode to ensure software transportability (for example, position-independent code).

5.2.5 Indirect Mode

The indirect mode is described in table 5–9.

Table 5–9. Indirect Mode Description

Assembler Code	Content of ROM
MOV @R10,0(R11)	MOV @R10,0(R11)

Length: One or two words

Operation: Move the contents of the source address (contents of R10) to the destination address (contents of R11). The registers are not modified.

Comment: Valid only for source operand. The substitute for destination operand is 0(Rd).

Example: MOV.B @R10,0(R11)

Before:	Address Space	Register	After:	Address Space	Register
	0xxxxh			0xxxxh	PC
0FF16h	0000h	R10 0FA33h	0FF16h	0000h	R10 0FA33h
0FF14h	04AEBh	PC R11 002A7h	0FF14h	04AEBh	R11 002A7h
0FF12h	0xxxxh		0FF12h	0xxxxh	
0FA34h	0xxxxh		0FA34h	0xxxxh	
0FA32h	05BC1h		0FA32h	05BC1h	
0FA30h	0xxxxh		0FA30h	0xxxxh	
002A8h	0xxh		002A8h	0xxh	
002A7h	012h		002A7h	05Bh	
002A6h	0xxh		002A6h	0xxh	

5.2.6 Indirect Autoincrement Mode

The indirect autoincrement mode is described in Table 5–10.

Table 5–10. Indirect Autoincrement Mode Description

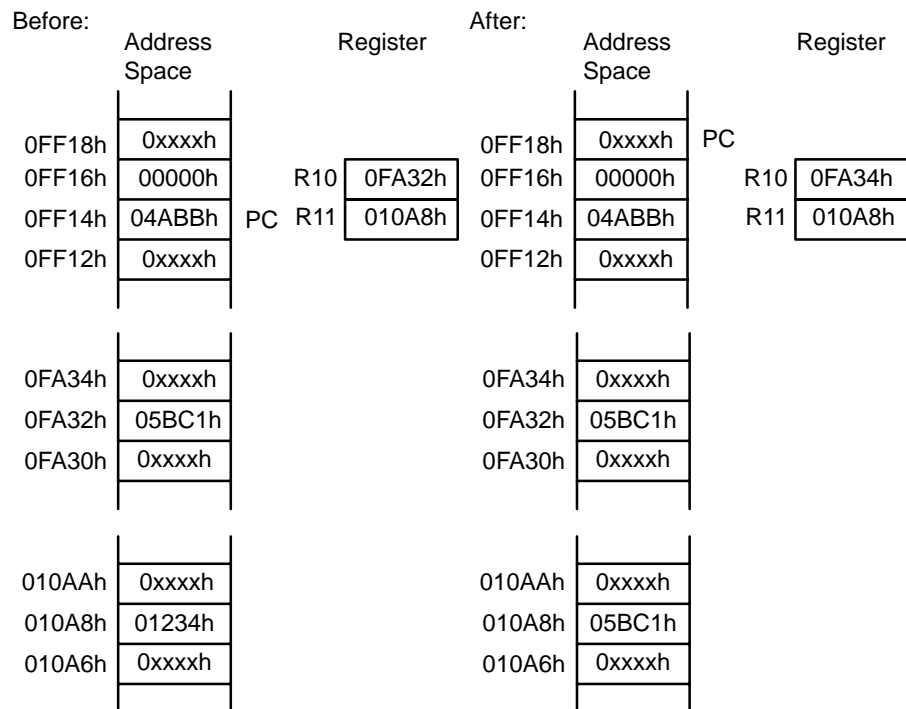
Assembler Code	Content of ROM
MOV @R10+,0(R11)	MOV @R10+,0(R11)

Length: One or two words

Operation: Move the contents of the source address (contents of R10) to the destination address (contents of R11). Register R10 is incremented by 1 for a byte operation, or 2 for a word operation after the fetch; it points to the next address without any overhead. This is useful for table processing.

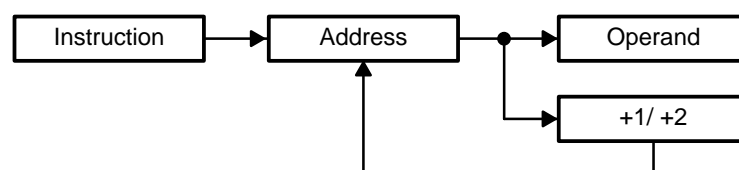
Comment: Valid only for source operand. The substitute for destination operand is 0(Rd) plus second instruction INCD Rd.

Example: MOV @R10+,0(R11)



The autoincrementing of the register contents occurs after the operand is fetched. This is shown in Figure 5–6.

Figure 5–6. Operand Fetch Operation



5.2.7 Immediate Mode

The immediate mode is described in Table 5–11.

Table 5–11. Immediate Mode Description

Assembler Code	Content of ROM
MOV #45h,TONI	MOV @PC+,X(PC)
	45
	$X = \text{TONI} - \text{PC}$

Length: Two or three words
It is one word less if a constant of CG1 or CG2 can be used.

Operation: Move the immediate constant 45h, which is contained in the word following the instruction, to destination address TONI. When fetching the source, the program counter points to the word following the instruction and moves the contents to the destination.

Comment: Valid only for a source operand.

Example: MOV #45h,TONI

Before:	Address Space	Register	After:	Address Space	Register
0FF16h	01192h		0FF18h	0xxxxh	PC
0FF14h	00045h		0FF16h	01192h	
0FF12h	040B0h	PC	0FF14h	00045h	
			0FF12h	040B0h	
010AAh	0xxxxh		010AAh	0xxxxh	
010A8h	01234h	$\begin{array}{r} 0FF16h \\ +01192h \\ \hline 010A8h \end{array}$	010A8h	00045h	
010A6h	0xxxxh		010A6h	0xxxxh	

5.2.8 Clock Cycles, Length of Instruction

The operating speed of the CPU depends on the instruction format and addressing modes. The number of clock cycles refers to the MCLK.

5.2.8.1 Format-I Instructions (Double Operand)

Table 5–12 describes the CPU format-I instructions and addressing modes.

Table 5–12. Instruction Format I and Addressing Modes

Address Mode		No. of Cycles	Length of Instruction	Example	
As	Ad				
00, Rn	0, Rm	1	1	MOV	R5,R8
	0, PC	2	1	BR	R9
00, Rn	1, x(Rm)	4	2	ADD	R5,3(R6)
	1, EDE		2	XOR	R8,EDE
	1, &EDE		2	MOV	R5,&EDE
01, x(Rn)	0, Rm	3	2	MOV	2(R5),R7
01, EDE			2	AND	EDE,R6
01, &EDE			2	MOV	&EDE,R8
01, x(Rn)	1, x(Rm)	6	3	ADD	3(R4),6(R9)
01, EDE	1, TONI		3	CMP	EDE,TONI
01, &EDE	1, &TONI		3	MOV	2(R5),&TONI
			3	ADD	EDE,&TONI
10, @Rn	0, Rm	2	1	AND	@R4,R5
10, @Rn	1, x(Rm)	5	2	XOR	@R5,8(R6)
	1, EDE		2	MOV	@R5,EDE
	1, &EDE		2	XOR	@R5,&EDE
11, @Rn+	0, Rm	2	1	ADD	@R5+,R6
	0, PC	3	1	BR	@R9+
11, #N	0, Rm	2	2	MOV	#20,R9
	0, PC	3	2	BR	#2AEh
11, @Rn+	1, x(Rm)	5	2	MOV	@R9+,2(R4)
11, #N	1, EDE		3	ADD	#33,EDE
11, @Rn+	1, &EDE		2	MOV	@R9+,&EDE
11, #N			3	ADD	#33,&EDE

Table 5–13 shows a simple way to determine CPU instruction cycles for Format-I (double operand) instructions.

Table 5–13. Execution Cycles for Double Operand Instructions

Source Addressing Mode	Destination Addressing Mode	
	Rm	x(Rm) Symbolic Absolute (&)
Rn	1†	4
@Rn, @Rn+, #N	2†	5
x(Rn), Symbolic, Absolute (&)	3	6

† Add one cycle if Rm is the PC

EXAMPLE: the instruction `ADD #500h, 16(R5)` needs 5 cycles for the execution.

5.2.8.2 Format-II Instructions (Single Operand)

Table 5–14 describes the CPU format II instructions and addressing modes.

Table 5–14. Instruction Format-II and Addressing Modes

Address Mode $A_{(s/d)}$	No. of Cycles		Length of Instruction (words)	Example
	RRA RRC SWPB SXT	PUSH/ CALL		
00, Rn	1	3/4	1	SWPB R5
01, X(Rn)	4	5	2	CALL 2(R7)
01, EDE	4	5	2	PUSH EDE
01, &EDE				SXT &EDE
10, @Rn	3	4	1	RRC @R9
11, @Rn+ (see Note)	3	4/5	1	SWPB @R10+
11, #N			2	CALL #81H

Note: Instruction Format II Immediate Mode

Do not use instructions RRA, RRC, SWPB, and SXT with the immediate mode in the destination field. Use of these in the immediate mode will result in an unpredictable program operation.

Table 5–15 shows a simple way to determine CPU instruction cycles for Format–II (single operand) instructions.

Table 5–15. Execution Cycles for Single Operand Instructions

Addressing Mode	Instruction		
	SWPB SXT RRA RRC	PUSH	CALL
Rn	1	3	4
@Rn	3	4	4
@Rn+, #N	3	4	5
x(Rn), Symbolic, Absolute (&)	4	5	5

Example: the instruction `PUSH #500h` needs 4 cycles for the execution.

5.2.8.3 Format-III Instructions (Jump)

Format-III instructions are described as follows:

Jxx—all instructions need the same number of cycles, independent of whether a jump is taken or not.

Clock cycle: Two cycles

Length of instruction: One word

5.2.8.4 Miscellaneous-Format Instructions

Table 5–16 describes miscellaneous-format instructions.

Table 5–16. Miscellaneous Instructions or Operations

Activity	Clock Cycle
RETI	5 cycles 1 word†
Interrupt	6 cycles
WDT reset	4 cycles
Reset (RST/NMI)	4 cycles

† Length of instruction

5.3 Instruction Set Overview

This section gives a short overview of the instruction set. The addressing modes are described in Section 5.2.

Instructions are either single or dual operand or jump.

The source and destination parts of an instruction are defined by the following fields:

src	The source operand defined by As and S-reg
dst	The destination operand defined by Ad and D-reg
As	The addressing bits responsible for the addressing mode used for the source (src)
S-reg	The working register used for the source (src)
Ad	The addressing bits responsible for the addressing mode used for the destination (dst)
D-reg	The working register used for the destination (dst)
B/W	Byte or word operation: 0: word operation 1: byte operation

Note: Destination Address

Destination addresses are valid anywhere in the memory map. However, when using an instruction that modifies the contents of the destination, the user must ensure the destination address is writeable. For example, a masked-ROM location would be a valid destination address, but the contents are not modifiable, so the results of the instruction would be lost.

5.3.1 Double-Operand (Format I) Instructions

Figure 5–7 illustrates the double-operand instruction format. See section 5.2.8 for information on number of code words and execution cycles per instruction.

Figure 5–7. Double Operand Instruction Format

15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Opcode				S-Reg				Ad	B/W	As		D-Reg			

Table 5–17 describes the effects of an instruction on double operand instruction status bits.

Table 5–17. Double Operand Instruction Format Results

Mnemonic	S-Reg, D-Reg	Operation	Status Bits			
			V	N	Z	C
MOV	src,dst	src → dst	–	–	–	–
ADD	src,dst	src + dst → dst	*	*	*	*
ADDC	src,dst	src + dst + C → dst	*	*	*	*
SUB	src,dst	dst + .not.src + 1 → dst	*	*	*	*
SUBC	src,dst	dst + .not.src + C → dst	*	*	*	*
CMP	src,dst	dst – src	*	*	*	*
DADD	src,dst	src + dst + C → dst (dec)	*	*	*	*
AND	src,dst	src .and. dst → dst	0	*	*	*
BIT	src,dst	src .and. dst	0	*	*	*
BIC	src,dst	.not.src .and. dst → dst	–	–	–	–
BIS	src,dst	src .or. dst → dst	–	–	–	–
XOR	src,dst	src .xor. dst → dst	*	*	*	*

- * The status bit is affected
- The status bit is not affected
- 0 The status bit is cleared
- 1 The status bit is set

Note: Instructions CMP and SUB

The instructions CMP and SUB are identical except for the storage of the result. The same is true for the BIT and AND instructions.

5.3.2 Single-Operand (Format II) Instructions

Figure 5–8 illustrates the single-operand instruction format. See section 5.2.8 for information on number of code words and execution cycles per instruction.

Figure 5–8. Single Operand Instruction Format

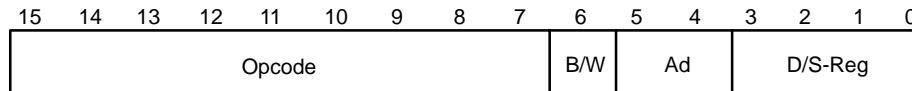


Table 5–18 describes the effects of an instruction on the single operand instruction status bits.

Table 5–18. Single Operand Instruction Format Results

Mnemonic	S-Reg, D-Reg	Operation	Status Bits			
			V	N	Z	C
RRC	dst	C → MSB →LSB → C	*	*	*	*
RRA	dst	MSB → MSB →LSB → C	0	*	*	*
PUSH	src	SP – 2 → SP, src → @ SP	–	–	–	–
SWPB	dst	Swap bytes	–	–	–	–
CALL	dst	SP – 2 → SP	–	–	–	–
		PC+2 → stack, dst → PC				
RETI		TOS → SR, SP ← SP + 2	X	X	X	X
		TOS → PC, SP ← SP + 2				
SXT	dst	Bit 7 → Bit 8.....Bit 15	0	*	*	*

- * The status bit is affected
- The status bit is not affected
- 0 The status bit is cleared
- 1 The status bit is set

All addressing modes are possible for the CALL instruction. If the symbolic mode (ADDRESS), the immediate mode (#N), the absolute mode (&EDE) or the indexed mode X (RN) is used, the word that follows contains the address information.

5.3.3 Conditional Jumps

Conditional jumps support program branching relative to the program counter. The possible jump range is from -511 to $+512$ words relative to the program counter state of the jump instruction. The 10-bit program-counter offset value is treated as a signed 10-bit value that is doubled and added to the program counter. None of the jump instructions affect the status bits.

The instruction code fetch and the program counter increment technique end with the formula:

$$PC_{\text{new}} = PC_{\text{old}} + 2 + PC_{\text{offset}} \times 2$$

Figure 5–9 shows the conditional-jump instruction format.

Figure 5–9. Conditional-Jump Instruction Format

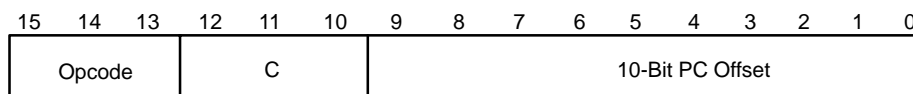


Table 5–19 describes these conditional-jump instructions.

Table 5–19. Conditional-Jump Instructions

Mnemonic	S-Reg, D-Reg	Operation
JEQ/JZ	Label	Jump to label if zero bit is set
JNE/JNZ	Label	Jump to label if zero bit is reset
JC	Label	Jump to label if carry bit is set
JNC	Label	Jump to label if carry bit is reset
JN	Label	Jump to label if negative bit is set
JGE	Label	Jump to label if (N .XOR. V) = 0
JL	Label	Jump to label if (N .XOR. V) = 1
JMP	Label	Jump to label unconditionally

5.3.4 Short Form of Emulated Instructions

The basic instruction set, together with the register implementations of the program counter, stack pointer, status register, and constant generator, form the emulated instruction set; these make up the popular instruction set. The status bits are set according to the result of the execution of the basic instruction that replaces the emulated instruction.

Table 5–20 describes these instructions.

Table 5–20. Emulated Instructions

Mnemonic	Description	Status Bits				Emulation			
		V	N	Z	C				
Arithmetic Instructions									
ADC[.W]	dst	Add carry to destination	*	*	*	*	ADDC	#0,dst	
ADC.B	dst	Add carry to destination	*	*	*	*	ADDC.B	#0,dst	
DADC[.W]	dst	Add carry decimal to destination	*	*	*	*	DADD	#0,dst	
DADC.B	dst	Add carry decimal to destination	*	*	*	*	DADD.B	#0,dst	
DEC[.W]	dst	Decrement destination	*	*	*	*	SUB	#1,dst	
DEC.B	dst	Decrement destination	*	*	*	*	SUB.B	#1,dst	
DECD[.W]	dst	Double-decrement destination	*	*	*	*	SUB	#2,dst	
DECD.B	dst	Double-decrement destination	*	*	*	*	SUB.B	#2,dst	
INC[.W]	dst	Increment destination	*	*	*	*	ADD	#1,dst	
INC.B	dst	Increment destination	*	*	*	*	ADD.B	#1,dst	
INCD[.W]	dst	Increment destination	*	*	*	*	ADD	#2,dst	
INCD.B	dst	Increment destination	*	*	*	*	ADD.B	#2,dst	
SBC[.W]	dst	Subtract carry from destination	*	*	*	*	SUBC	#0,dst	
SBC.B	dst	Subtract carry from destination	*	*	*	*	SUBC.B	#0,dst	
Logical Instructions									
INV[.W]	dst	Invert destination	*	*	*	*	XOR	#0FFFFh,dst	
INV.B	dst	Invert destination	*	*	*	*	XOR.B	#−1,dst	
RLA[.W]	dst	Rotate left arithmetically	*	*	*	*	ADD	dst,dst	
RLA.B	dst	Rotate left arithmetically	*	*	*	*	ADD.B	dst,dst	
RLC[.W]	dst	Rotate left through carry	*	*	*	*	ADDC	dst,dst	
RLC.B	dst	Rotate left through carry	*	*	*	*	ADDC.B	dst,dst	
Data Instructions (common use)									
CLR[.W]		Clear destination	−	−	−	−	MOV	#0,dst	
CLR.B		Clear destination	−	−	−	−	MOV.B	#0,dst	
CLRC		Clear carry bit	−	−	−	0	BIC	#1,SR	
CLRN		Clear negative bit	−	0	−	−	BIC	#4,SR	
CLRZ		Clear zero bit	−	−	0	−	BIC	#2,SR	
POP	dst	Item from stack	−	−	−	−	MOV	@SP+,dst	
SETC		Set carry bit	−	−	−	1	BIS	#1,SR	
SETN		Set negative bit	−	1	−	−	BIS	#4,SR	
SETZ		Set zero bit	−	−	1	−	BIS	#2,SR	

Table 5–20. Emulated Instructions (Continued)

Mnemonic	Description		Status Bits				Emulation	
			V	N	Z	C		
Data Instructions (common use) (continued)								
TST[.W]	dst	Test destination	0	*	*	*	CMP	#0,dst
TST.B	dst	Test destination	0	*	*	*	CMP.B	#0,dst
Program Flow Instructions								
BR	dst	Branch to . . .	–	–	–	–	MOV	dst,PC
DINT		Disable interrupt	–	–	–	–	BIC	#8,SR
EINT		Enable interrupt	–	–	–	–	BIS	#8,SR
NOP		No operation	–	–	–	–	MOV	#0h,#0h
RET		Return from subroutine	–	–	–	–	MOV	@SP+,PC

5.3.5 Miscellaneous

Instructions without operands, such as CPUOff, are not provided. Their functions are switched on or off by setting or clearing the function bits in the status register or the appropriate I/O register. Other functions are emulated using dual operand instructions.

Some examples are as follows:

```

BIS    #28h,SR    ; Enter OscOff mode
                ; + Enable general interrupt (GIE)

BIS    #18h,SR    ; Enter CPUOff mode
                ; + Enable general interrupt (GIE)

```

5.4 Instruction Map

The instruction map in Figure 5–10 is an example of how to encode instructions. There is room for more instructions, if needed. See section 5.2.8 for information on number of code words and execution cycles per instruction.

Figure 5–10. Core Instruction Map

	000	040	080	0C0	100	140	180	1C0	200	240	280	2C0	300	340	380	3C0	
0x																	Format II
04x																	
08x																	
0Cx																	
10x	RRC	RRC.B	SWPB		RRA	RRA.B	SXT		PUSH	PUSH.B	CALL		RETI				
14x																	
18x																	
1Cx																	
20x	JNE/JNZ																Format III
24x	JEQ/JZ																
28x	JNC																
2Cx	JC																
30x	JN																
34x	JGE																
38x	JL																
3Cx	JMP																Format I
4xxx	MOV, MOV.B																
5xxx	ADD, ADD.B																
6xxx	ADDC, ADDC.B																
7xxx	SUBC, SUBC.B																
8xxx	SUB, SUB.B																
9xxx	CMP, CMP.B																
Axxx	DADD, DADD.B																
Bxxx	BIT, BIT.B																
Cxxx	BIC, BIC.B																
Dxxx	BIS, BIS.B																
Exxx	XOR, XOR.B																
Fxxx	AND, AND.B																

Hardware Multiplier

The hardware multiplier is a 16-bit peripheral module. It is not integrated into the CPU. Therefore, it requires no special instructions and operates independent of the CPU. To use the hardware multiplier, the operands are loaded into registers and the results are available the next instruction—no extra cycles are required for a multiplication.

Topic	Page
6.1 Hardware Multiplier Module Support	6-2
6.2 Hardware Multiplier Operation	6-3
6.3 Hardware Multiplier Registers	6-7
6.4 Hardware Multiplier Special Function Bits	6-8
6.5 Hardware Multiplier Software Restrictions	6-8

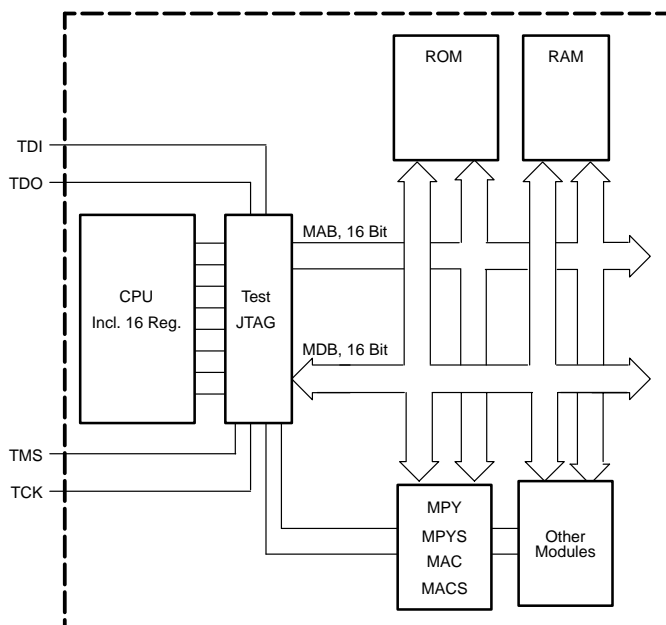
6.1 Hardware Multiplier Module Support

The hardware multiplier module expands the capabilities of the MSP430 family without changing the basic architecture. Multiplication is possible for:

- ☐ 16×16 bits
- ☐ 16×8 bits
- ☐ 8×16 bits
- ☐ 8×8 bits

The hardware multiplier module supports four types of multiplication: unsigned multiplication (MPY), signed multiplication (MPYS), unsigned multiplication with accumulation (MAC), and signed multiplication with accumulation (MACS). Figure 6–1 shows how the hardware multiplier module interfaces with the bus system to support multiplication operations.

Figure 6–1. Connection of the Hardware Multiplier Module to the Bus System



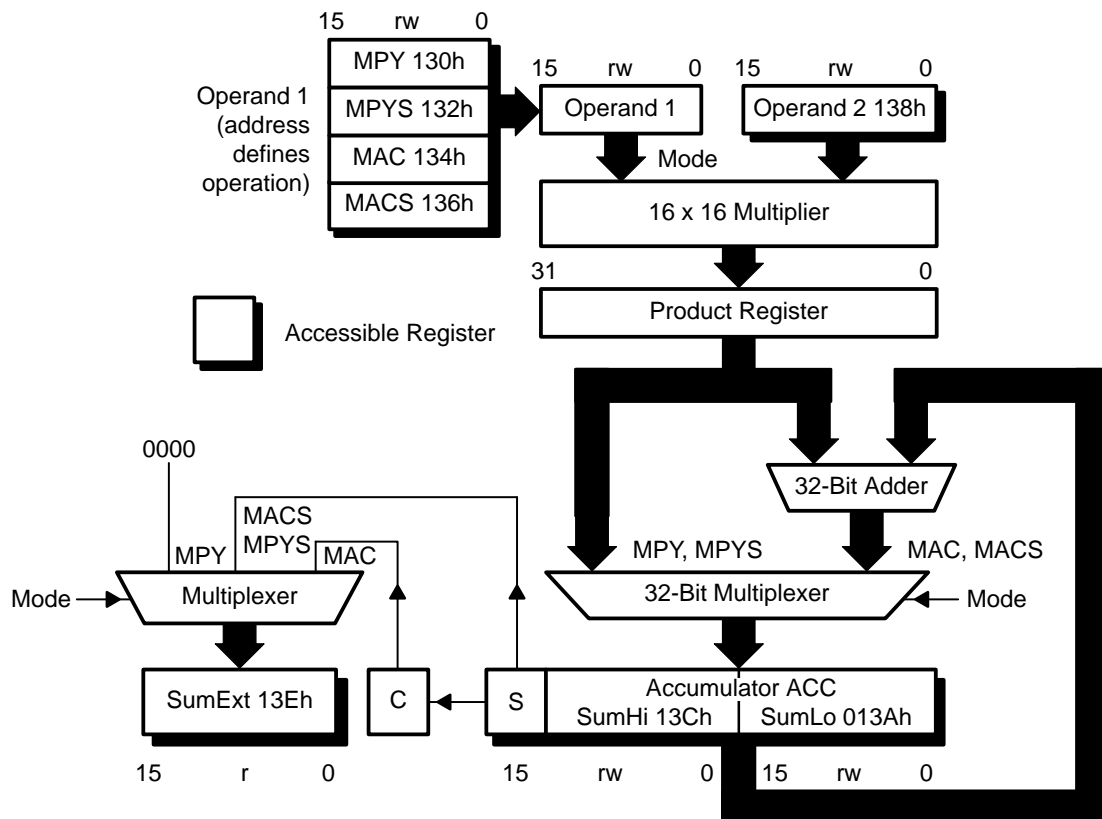
6.2 Hardware Multiplier Operation

The hardware multiplier has two 16-bit registers for both operands and three registers to store the results of the multiplication. The multiplication is executed correctly when the first operand is written to the operand register OP1 prior to writing the second operand to OP2. Writing the first operand to the applicable register selects the type of multiplication. Writing the second operand to OP2 starts the multiplication. Multiplication is completed before the result registers are accessed using the indexed address mode for the source operand. When indirect or indirect autoincrement address modes are used, another instruction is needed between the writing of the second operand and accessing the result registers. Both operands, OP1 and OP2, utilize all seven address mode capabilities.

No instruction is necessary for the multiplication; as a result, the real-time operation does not require additional clock cycles and the interrupt latency is unchanged.

The multiplier architecture is illustrated in Figure 6–2.

Figure 6–2. Block Diagram of the MSP430 16×16-Bit Hardware Multiplier



The sum extension register contents differ, depending on the operation and on the results of the operation.

Table 6–1. Sum Extension Register Contents

Register	MPY	MPYS		MAC		MACS, see Notes	
Operand1	x	+	–	+	+	(OP1×OP2 + ACC) ≤ 0FFFFFFFh	(OP1×OP2 + ACC) > 0FFFFFFFh
Operand2	x	+	–	–	–	0FFFFFFFh	0FFFFFFFh
SumExt	0000h	0000h	0FFFFh	0000h	0001h	0FFFFh	0000h

Note: The following two overflow conditions may occur when using the MACS function and should be handled by software or avoided.

- 1) The result of a MACS operation is positive and larger than 07FFF FFFFh. In this case, the SumExt register contains 0FFFFh and the ACC register contains a negative number (8000 0000h 0FFFF FFFFh).
- 2) The result of a MACS operation is negative and less than or equal to 07FFF FFFFh. In this case, the SumExt register contains 0000h and the ACC register contains a positive number (0000 0000h ... 07FFF FFFFh).

6.2.1 Multiply Unsigned, 16×16 bit, 16×8 bit, 8×16 bit, 8×8 bit

The following is an example of unsigned multiplication:

```

; 16x16 Unsigned Multiply
MOV    #01234h,&MPY      ; Load first operand into
                          ; appropriate register
MOV    #05678h,&OP2      ; Load 2nd operand
                          ; Result is now available
                          ;

; 8x8 Unsigned Multiply
MOV.B  #012h,&MPY        ; Load first operand into
                          ; appropriate register
MOV.B  #034h,&OP2        ; Load 2nd operand
                          ; Result is now available

```

6.2.2 Multiply Signed, 16×16 bit, 16×8 bit, 8×16 bit, 8×8 bit

The following is an example of signed multiplication:

```

; 16x16 Signed Multiply
MOV    #01234h,&MPYS     ; Load first operand into
                          ; appropriate register
MOV    #05678h,&OP2     ; Load 2nd operand
                          ; Result is now available
                          ;

; 8x8 Signed Multiply
MOV.B  #012h,&MPYS     ; Load first operand into
                          ; appropriate register
SXT    &MPYS           ; Sign extend first operand
MOV.B  #034h,&OP2     ; Load 2nd operand
SXT    &OP2            ; Sign extend 2nd operand
                          ; (triggers 2nd multiplication)
                          ; Result is now available

```


6.2.3 Multiply Unsigned and Accumulate, 16×16 bit, 16×8 bit, 8×16 bit, 8×8 bit

The following is an example of unsigned multiply and accumulate:

```

; 16x16 Unsigned Multiply and Accumulate
MOV     #01234h,&MAC           ; Load first operand into
                                ; appropriate register
MOV     #05678h,&OP2           ; Load 2nd operand
                                ; Result is now available
                                ;

; 8x8 Unsigned Multiply and Accumulate
MOV.B   #012h,&MAC             ; Load first operand into
                                ; appropriate register
MOV.B   #034h,&OP2             ; Load 2nd operand
                                ; Result is now available

```

6.2.4 Multiply Signed and Accumulate, 16×16 bit, 16×8 bit, 8×16 bit, 88 bit

The following is an example of signed multiply and accumulate:

```

; 16x16 Signed Multiply and Accumulate
MOV     #01234h,&MACS          ; Load first operand into
                                ; appropriate register
MOV     #05678h,&OP2           ; Load 2nd operand
                                ; Result is now available
                                ;

; 8x8 Signed Multiply and Accumulate
MOV.B   #012h,&MPYS            ; Load first operand into
                                ; appropriate register
SXT     &MPYS                  ; Sign extend first operand
MOV.B   #034h,R5               ; Temporary location for 2nd
                                ; operand
SXT     &OP2                   ; Sign extend 2nd operand
MOV     R5,&OP2                 ; Load signed-extended 2nd
                                ; operand (16-bit value)
                                ; Result is now available

```

6.3 Hardware Multiplier Registers

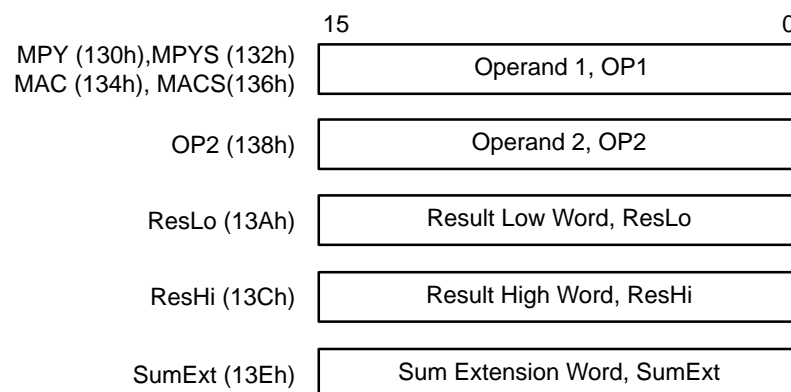
Hardware multiplier registers are word structured, but can be accessed using word or byte processing instructions. Table 6–2 describes the hardware multiplier registers.

Table 6–2. Hardware Multiplier Registers

Register	Short Form	Register Type	Address	Initial State
Multiply Unsigned (Operand1)	MPY	Read/write	0130h	Unchanged
Multiply Signed (Operand1)	MPYS	Read/write	0132h	Unchanged
Multiply+Accumulate (Operand1)	MAC	Read/write	0134h	Unchanged
Multiply Signed+Accumulate (Operand1)	MACS	Read/write	0136h	Unchanged
Second Operand	OP2	Read/write	0138h	Unchanged
Result Low Word	ResLo	Read/write	013Ah	Undefined
Result High Word	ResHi	Read/write	013Ch	Undefined
Sum Extend	SumExt	Read	013Eh	Undefined

Two registers are implemented for both operands, OP1 and OP2, as shown in Figure 6–3. Operand 1 uses four different addresses to address the same register. The different address information is decoded and defines the type of multiplication operation used.

Figure 6–3. Registers of the Hardware Multiplier



The multiplication result is located in two word registers: result high (RESHI) and result low (RESLO). The sum extend register (SumExt) holds the result sign of a signed operation or the overflow of the multiply and accumulate (MAC) operation. See Section 6.5.3 for a description of overflow and underflow when using the MACS operations.

All registers have the least significant bit (LSB) at bit0 and the most significant bit (MSB) at bit7 (byte data) or bit15 (word data).

6.4 Hardware Multiplier Special Function Bits

Because the hardware multiplier module completes all multiplication operations quickly, without interrupt intervention, no special function bits are used.

6.5 Hardware Multiplier Software Restrictions

Two restrictions require attention when the hardware multiplier is used:

- ☐ The indirect or indirect autoincrement address mode used to process the result
- ☐ The hardware multiplier used in an interrupt routine

6.5.1 Hardware Multiplier Software Restrictions—Address Mode

The result of the multiplication operation can be accessed in indexed, indirect, or indirect autoincrement mode. The result registers may be accessed without any restrictions if you use the indexed address mode including the symbolic and absolute address modes. However, when you use the indirect and indirect autoincrement address modes to access the result registers, you need at least one instruction between loading the second operand and accessing one of the result registers.

```
*****
*      EXAMPLE: MULTIPLY OPERAND1 AND OPERAND2
*****

      PUSH    R5          ; R5 WILL HOLD THE ADDRESS OF
      MOV     #RESLO,R5   ; THE RESLO REGISTER

      MOV     &OPER1,&MPY ; LOAD 1ST OPERAND,
                          ; DEFINES ADD. UNSIGNED MULTIPLY
      MOV     &OPER2,&OP2 ; LOAD 2ND OPERAND AND START
                          ; MULTIPLICATION

*****
*      EXAMPLE TO ADD THE RESULT OF THE HARDWARE
*      MULTIPLICATION TO THE RAM DATA, 64BITS
*****

      NOP                ; MIN. ONE CYCLES BETWEEN MOVING
                          ; THE OPERAND2 TO HW-MULTIPLIER
                          ; AND PROCESSING THE RESULT WITH
                          ; INDIRECT ADDRESS MODE
      ADD     @R5+,&RAM    ; ADD LOW RESULT TO RAM
      ADDC    @R5,&RAM+2   ; ADD HIGH RESULT TO RAM+2
      ADC     &RAM+4       ; ADD CARRY TO EXTENSION WORD
      ADC     &RAM+6       ; IF 64 BIT LENGTH IS USED

      POP     R5
```

The previous example shows that the indirect or indirect autoincrement address modes, when used to transfer the result of a multiplication operation to the destination, need more cycles and code than the absolute address mode. There is no need to access the hardware multiplier using the indirect addressing mode.

6.5.2 Hardware Multiplier Software Restrictions—Interrupt Routines

The entire multiplication routine requires only three steps:

- 1) Move operand OP1 to the hardware multiplier; this defines the type of multiplication.
- 2) Move operand OP2 to the hardware multiplier; the multiplication starts.
- 3) Process the result of the multiplication in the RESLO, RESHI, and SUMEXT registers.

The following considerations describe the main routines that use hardware multiplication. If no hardware multiplication is used in the main routine, multiplication in an interrupt routine is protected from further interrupts, because the GIE bit is reset after entering the interrupt service routine. Typically, a multiplication operation that uses the entire data process occurs outside an interrupt routine and the interrupt routines are as short as possible.

A multiplication operation in an interrupt routine has some feedback to the multiplication operation in the main routine.

6.5.2.1 Interrupt Following an OP1 Transfer

The two LSBs of the first operand address define the type of multiplication operation. This information cannot be recovered by any later operation. Therefore an interrupt must not be accepted between the first two steps: move operand OP1 and OP2 to the multiplier.

6.5.2.2 Interrupt Following an OP2 Transfer

After the first two steps, the multiplication result is in the corresponding registers RESLO, RESHI, and SUMEXT. It can be saved on the stack (using the PUSH instruction) and can be restored after completing another multiplication operation (using the POP instruction). However, this operation takes additional code and cycles in the interrupt routine. You can avoid this, by making an entire multiplication routine uninterruptible, by disabling any interrupt (DINT) before entering the multiplication routine, and by enabling interrupts (EINT) after the multiplication routine is completed. The negative aspect of this method is that the critical interrupt latency is increased drastically for events that occur during this period.

6.5.2.3 General Recommendation

In general, one should avoid a hardware multiplication operation within an interrupt routine when a hardware multiplication is already used in the main program. (This will depend upon the application-specific software, applied libraries, and other included software.) The methods previously discussed have some negative implications; therefore, the best practice is to keep interrupt routines as short as possible.

6.5.3 Hardware Multiplier Software Restrictions—MACS

The multiplier does not automatically detect underflow or overflow in the MACS mode. An overflow occurs when the sum of the accumulator register and the result of the signed multiplication exceed the maximum binary range.

The binary range of the accumulator for positive numbers is 0 to $2^{31}-1$ (7FFF FFFFh) and for negative numbers is -1 (0FFFF FFFFh) to -2^{31} (8000 0000h). An overflow occurs when the sum of two negative numbers yields a result that is in the range given above for a positive number. An underflow occurs when the sum of two positive numbers yields a result that is in the range for a negative number.

The maximum number of successive MACS instructions without underflow or overflow is limited by the individual application and should be determined using a worst-case calculation. Care should then be exercised to not exceed the maximum number or to handle the conditions accordingly.

Basic Clock Module

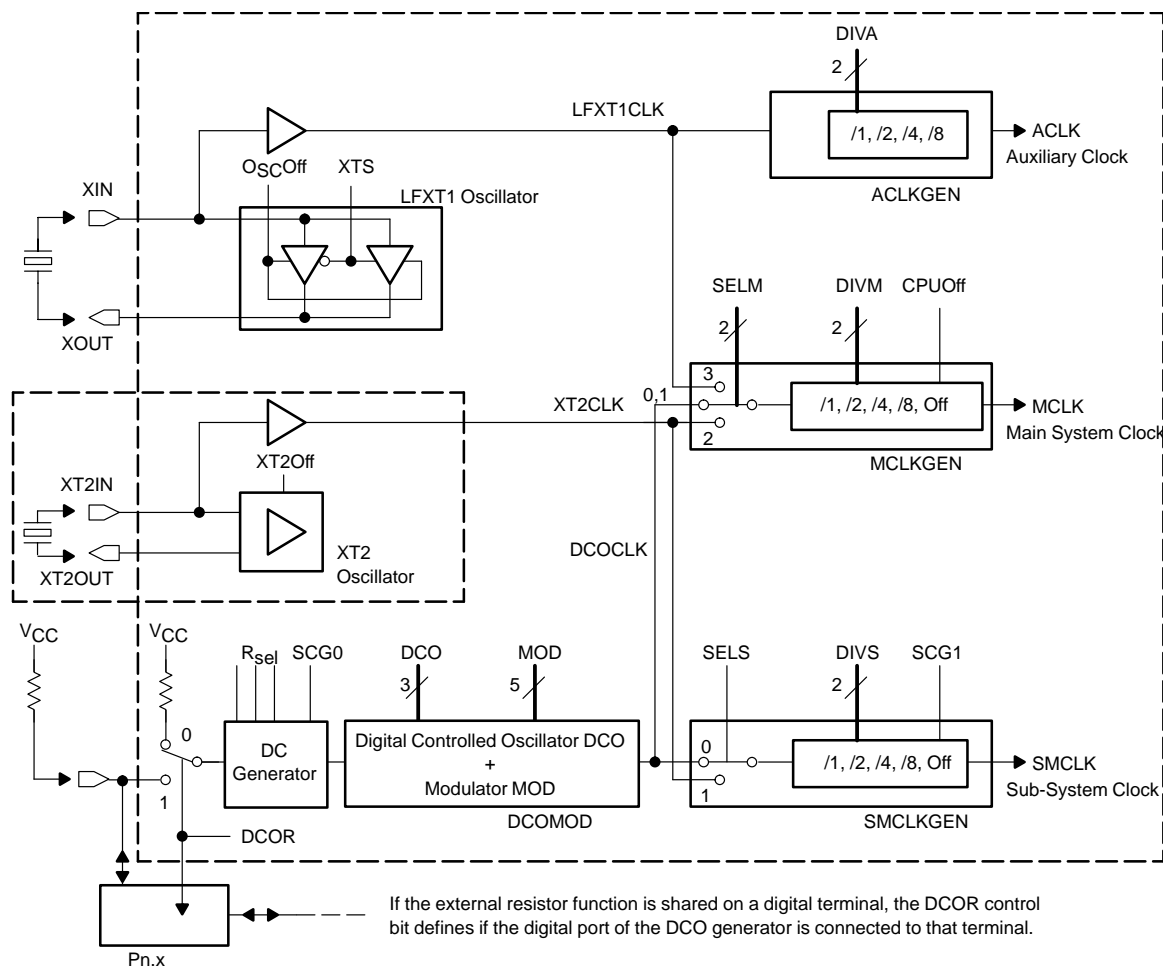
This chapter discusses the Basic Clock Module used in the MSP430x1xx families.

Topic	Page
7.1 Basic Clock Module	7-2
7.2 LXFT1 and XT2 Oscillators	7-4
7.3 Digitally-Controlled Oscillator (DCO)	7-10
7.4 Basic Clock Module Operating Modes	7-14
7.5 Basic Clock Module Control Registers	7-18

7.1 Basic Clock Module

The Basic Clock Module (shown in Figure 7–1) follows the major targets of low system cost and low power consumption. Using three internal clock signals, the design engineer can select the best balance of performance and low power consumption. The Basic Clock Module can be configured to operate without any external components, with one external resistor, with one or two external crystals, with resonators, or with clock sources using any combination of the above. The Basic Clock Module is accessible to the CPU as a byte-wide peripheral module.

Figure 7–1. Basic Clock Schematic



Note: The XT2 oscillator is implemented in MSP430F13x and MSP430F14x devices. The LFXT1 signal is used instead of XT2CLK signal in MSP430x11xx and MSP430x12xx devices without XT2 oscillator.

The Basic Clock Module includes two or three clock sources:

- ☐ LFXT1CLK low-frequency/high-frequency clock source. One oscillator that can be used with low-frequency watch crystals, standard crystals, resonators, or external clock sources. See the device data sheet for the exact operating frequency range.
- ☐ XT2CLK high-frequency clock source. This optional high-frequency oscillator can also use standard crystals, resonators, or external clock sources in the 450-kHz to 8-MHz range. See the device data sheet for the exact operating frequency range and availability of this optional oscillator.
- ☐ DCOCLK clock source. One digitally controlled oscillator (DCO) with RC-type characteristics.

Three clock signals are available from the Basic Clock Module:

- ☐ ACLK auxiliary clock. The ACLK is the buffered LFXT1CLK clock source divided by 1, 2, 4, or 8. Software selects the division factor. ACLK is software selectable for individual peripheral modules.
- ☐ MCLK master clock. MCLK is software selectable as LFXT1CLK, XT2CLK (if available), or DCOCLK. MCLK is divided by 1, 2, 4, or 8. Software selects the division factor. MCLK is used by the CPU and system.
- ☐ SMCLK submain clock. SMCLK is software selectable as LFXT1CLK, XT2CLK (if available), or DCOCLK. SMCLK is divided by 1, 2, 4, or 8. Software selects the division factor. SMCLK is software selectable for individual peripheral modules.

7.2 LFXT1 and XT2 Oscillators

The Basic Clock Module includes the LFXT1 oscillator and, in some configurations, a second XT2 oscillator.

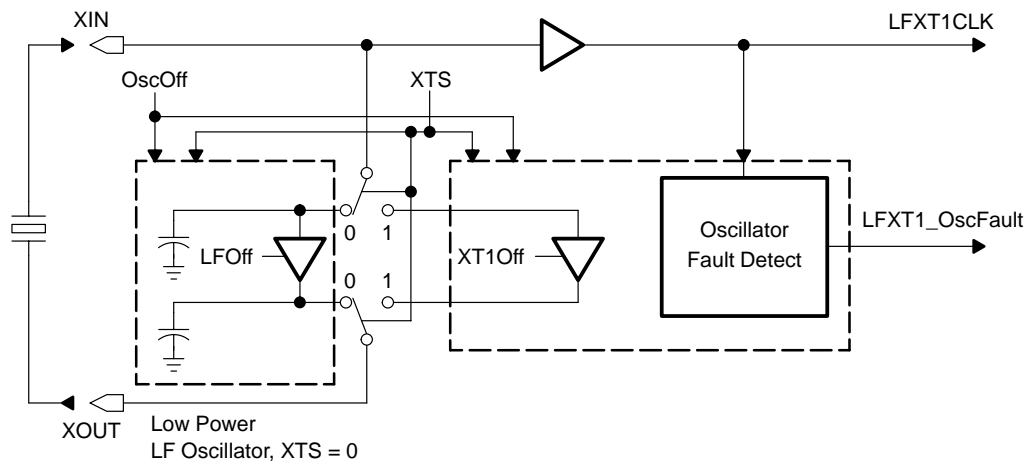
7.2.1 LFXT1 Oscillator

The LFXT1 oscillator starts operating on a valid PUC condition. A valid PUC condition resets the OscOff bit in the status register, which enables LFXT1. Software can disable LFXT1 by setting OscOff, if this signal does not source SMCLK or MCLK.

The design of the LFXT1 oscillator (shown in Figure 7–2) supports the low-current consumption feature and the use of a 32,768-Hz watch crystal when in LF mode (XTS=0). A watch crystal connects to the clock module via two terminals without any other external components. Components necessary to stabilize the clock operation have been integrated into the MSP430.

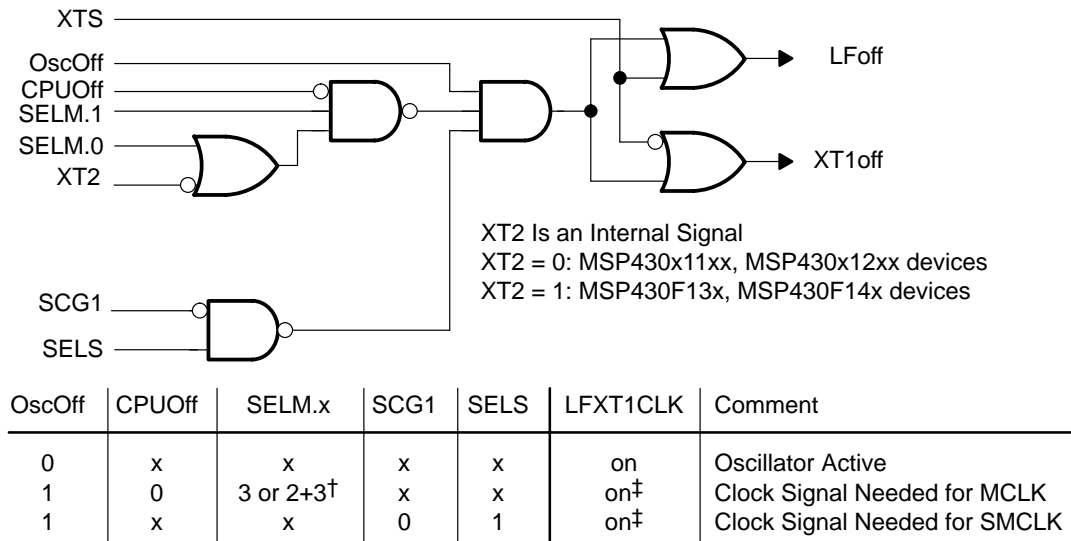
The design of the LFXT1 oscillator also supports high-speed crystals or resonators when in HF mode (XTS = 1). The crystal or resonator connects to the terminals and requires external capacitors on both terminals. These capacitors should be sized according to crystal or resonator specifications.

Figure 7–2. Principle of LFXT1 Oscillator



The OscOff bit in the status register is used to turn off LFXT1CLK if this signal does not source MCLK or SMCLK.

Figure 7–3. Off Signals for the LFXT1 Oscillator



[†] Two oscillators: SELM.x = 3. Three oscillators: SELM.x = 3 and 2

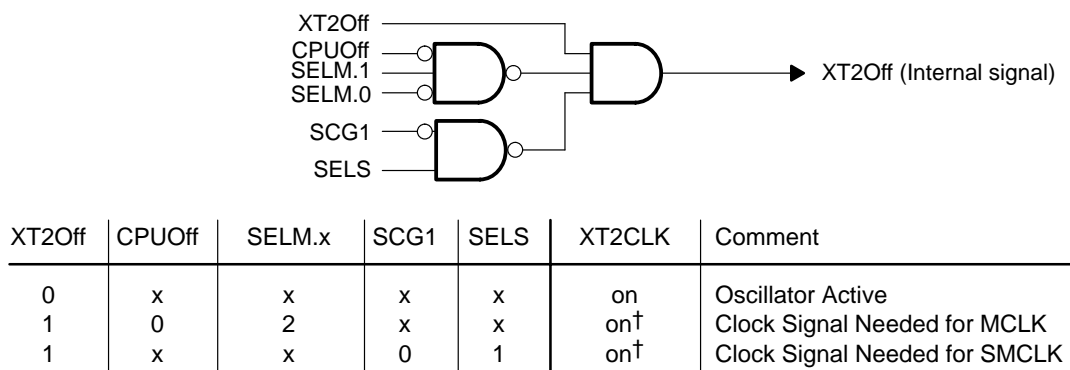
[‡] LFXT1CLK is switched off for all other bit combinations

7.2.2 XT2 Oscillator

A second oscillator, XT2, is available in MSP430F13x and MSP430F14x devices. XT2 sources XT2CLK, and its characteristics are identical to LFXT1 in HF mode.

The XT2Off control bit disables the XT2 oscillator if signal XT2CLK is not used for MCLK or SMCLK. If the CPUOff bit is reset and SELM = 2, XT2CLK sources MCLK. The XT2CLK sources SMCLK if SCG1 is reset and SELS = 1.

Figure 7–4. Off Signals for Oscillator XT2

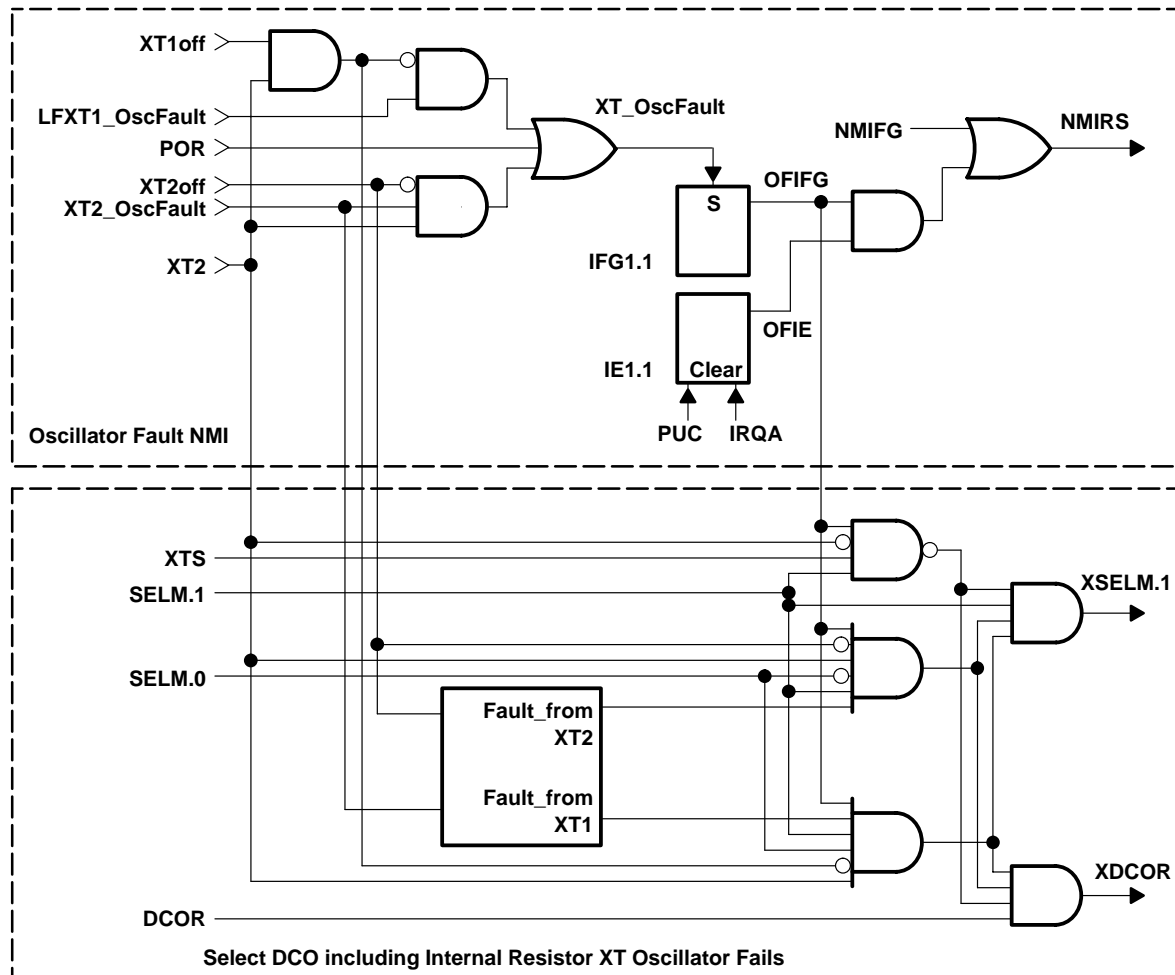


[†] XT2CLK is switched off in all other bit combinations

7.2.3 Oscillator Fault Detection

An analog circuit controls the operation of oscillators LFXT1 and XT2 and flags an oscillator fault when crystal cycles are not present for approximately 50 μ s. The active OSCFault signal sets the oscillator-fault-interrupt flag (OFIFG) and requests a non-maskable interrupt when the oscillator-fault interrupt enable bit (OFIE) is set. User software must clear the OFIFG flag.

Figure 7–5. Oscillator-Fault-Interrupt



XT2 is an internal signal

XT2 = 0: Two oscillators – MSP430x11xx and MSP430x12xx devices

XT2 = 1: Three oscillators – MSP430F13x and MSP430F14x devices

IRQA: Interrupt request accepted

LFT_XT_OscFault: Only applicable to LFXT1 oscillator in HF mode.

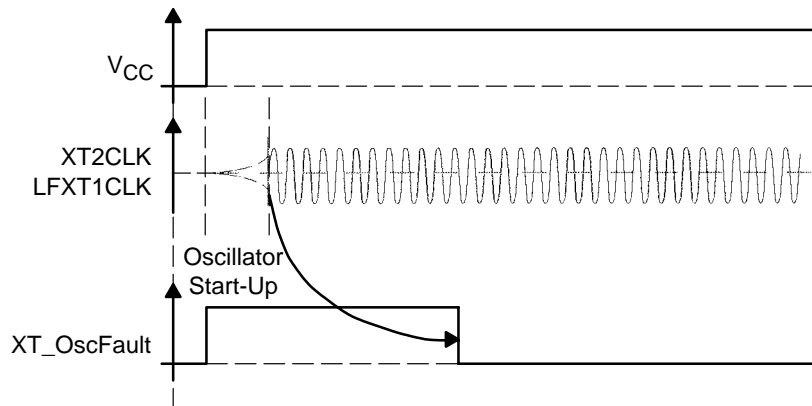
The XT2_OscFault signal of the XT2 oscillator, and the LFXT1_OscFault signal of the LFXT1 oscillator will set the oscillator-fault-interrupt flag (OFIFG) independently. For two-oscillator implementation, the oscillator-fault-interrupt flag can be reset by software if the LFXT1_OscFault signal is a logic low. For three-oscillator implementation, the oscillator-fault-interrupt flag can be reset by software only if both oscillator-fault signals, LFXT1_OscFault and XT2_OscFault, are low.

Note: LFXT1 Oscillator Fault Signal

The LFXT1_OscFault signal is only applicable when the LFXT1 oscillator is used in HF mode. There is no oscillator fault detection for the LFXT1 oscillator when it is configured in LF mode.

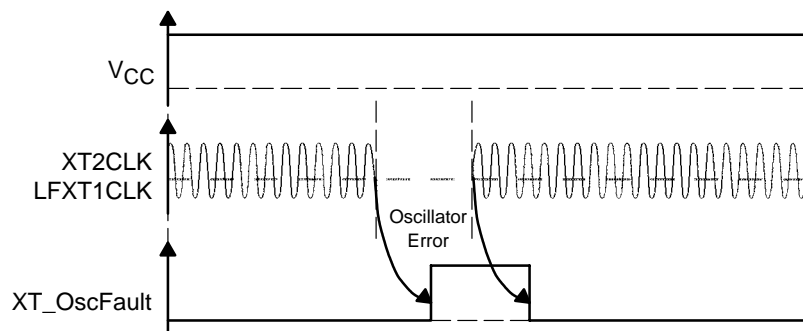
After applying V_{CC} the oscillator fault signal (XT_OscFault) becomes active. The XT_OscFault signal becomes inactive when XT2CLK and/or LFXT1CLK have been oscillating for approximately 50 μ s.

Figure 7–6. Oscillator-Fault Signal



XT_OscFault becomes active after XT2CLK and/or LFXT1CLK stop oscillating. The delay associated with the XT_OscFault signal is approximately 50 μ s.

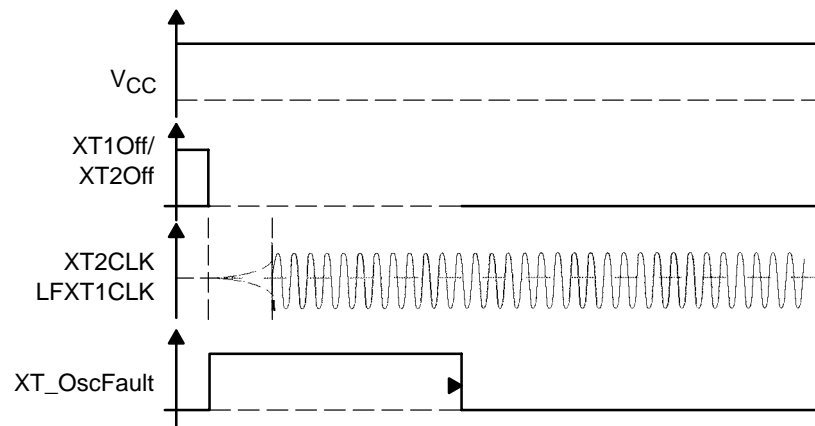
Figure 7–7. Oscillator Fault in Oscillator Error Condition



The oscillator-fault signal returns to a logic low if the oscillator starts operating again. The delay is typically 50 μ s.

When an XT oscillator has stopped and is then restarted, the oscillator fault signal (XT_OscFault) remains active until the oscillator starts operating, and becomes inactive after a delay of typically 50 μ s.

Figure 7–8. Oscillator Fault in Oscillator Error Condition at Start-Up



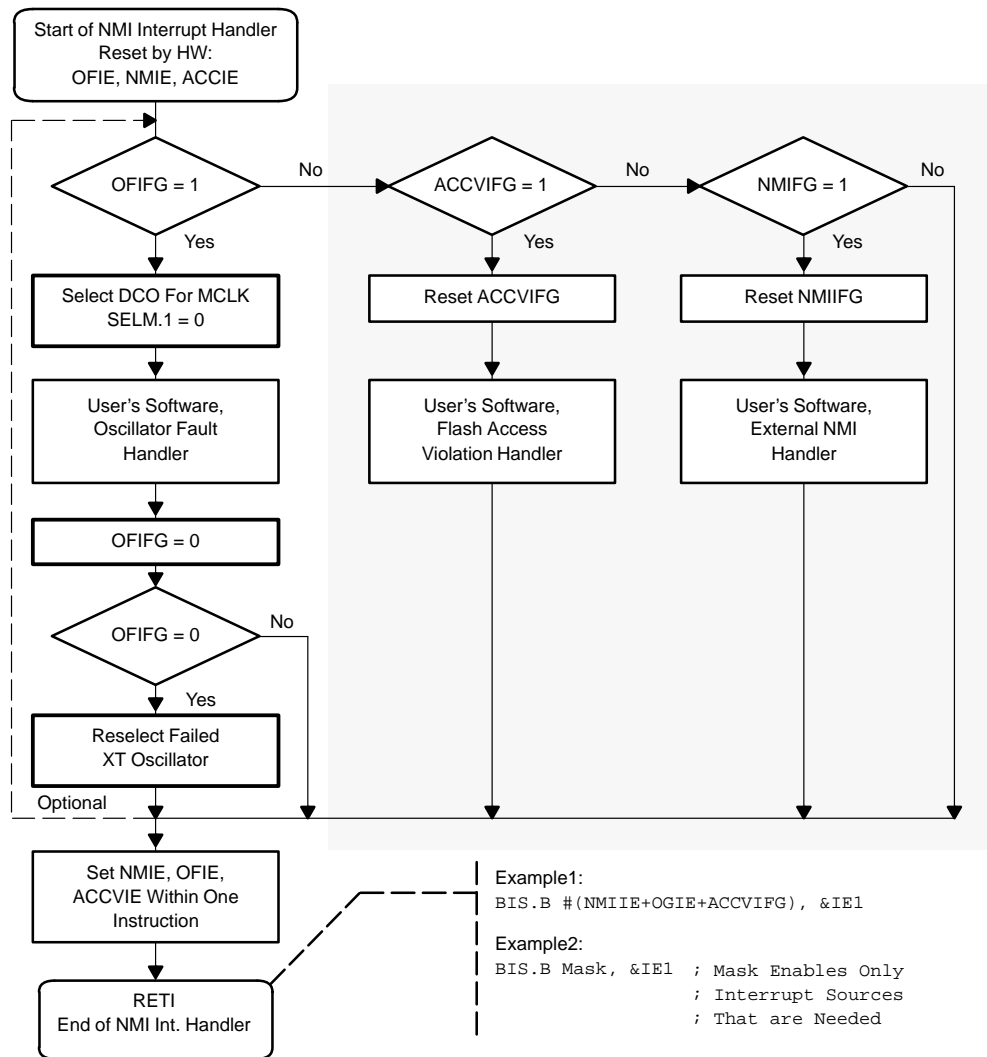
7.2.4 Select DCO Oscillator for MCLK on XT Oscillator Fault

The DCO oscillator is selected automatically for MCLK if either one of the oscillators LFXT1 (in HF mode only), or XT2 is selected for MCLK source and this oscillator fails. Since the DCO oscillator is now selected, the NMI requested by the oscillator fault can be processed. The DCO oscillator is switched on and the DCOCLK is switched to be the source for MCLK. An NMI is processed even if the CPU is switched off (CPUOFF=1).

The MSP430 ultralow-power system allows any enabled interrupt to be serviced from any low-power mode, including LPM4. MCLK automatically becomes active inside of an interrupt service routine.

An NMI interrupt routine written by the user, which handles the oscillator fault, has some important steps that should be used for proper handling of the fault situation. First, if the NMI interrupt routine detects the oscillator fault and selects the DCO as clock source for the system clock MCLK. Second, the user programs a proper algorithm to detect if the XT oscillator is working again and reselects an XT oscillator for the system clock MCLK if desired.

Figure 7–9. NMI/OSCFault Interrupt Handler



Note: Example for MSP430F1xx device

If an oscillator error forces the DCO on and uses the DCOCLK for MCLK, the clock source for MCLK should be selected to DCOCLK with SELM.1=0. If the oscillator error disappears and the original source for MCLK should be used again, the SELM.1 bit needs to be reset.

```

Int_OscError
    BIC.B #SELM1,&BCSCTL2    ; Use DCOCLK for MCLK
    .....
    .....
    BIC.B #OFIFG,&IFG1       ; Try to clear oscillator error
                                ; flag
    BIT.B #OFIFG,&IFG1       ; Test if oscillator error gone
    JC     #Continue         ; Oscillator fault still valid
    BIS.B #SELM1,&BCSCTL2    ; Return to original source for
                                ; MCLK
  
```

```

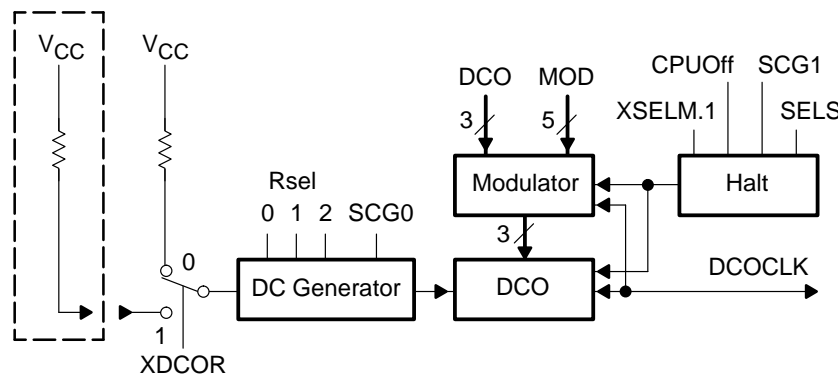
Continue
.....
.....
RETI

```

7.3 Digitally-Controlled Oscillator (DCO)

The DCO is an integrated RC-type oscillator in the Basic Clock Module. The DCO frequency can be tuned by software using the DCO, MOD, and RSEL bits. The DCO is absolutely monotonic. As with any RC-type oscillator, frequency varies with temperature, voltage, and from device to device. The digital control of the oscillator allows frequency stabilization despite its RC-type characteristics.

Figure 7–10. DCO Schematic



The dc generator, when switched off, requires some minimal start-up time (4 microsecond range) due to its low-current design. Once the current is switched on, the resistor injects current in the microampere range into the dc generator; the internal and external parasitic capacitances introduce the delay in the microsecond range. No delay occurs in operating modes that do not require to switch off the dc generator current.

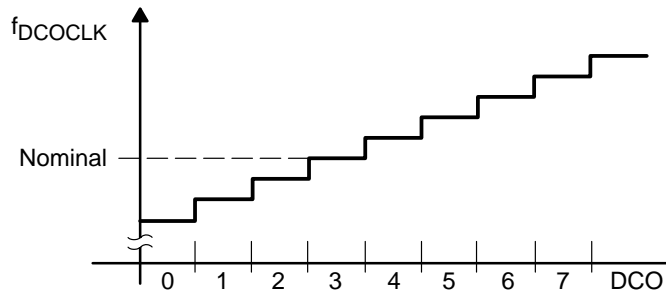
An internal or external resistor is connected to the dc generator, which determines the operating fundamental frequency of the $DCOCLK$.

The frequency of $DCOCLK$ is set by the following functions:

- ☐ The current injected into the dc generator (DCGEN) by either the internal or external resistor defines the fundamental frequency. Control bit $DCOR$ selects the internal or external resistor.
- ☐ Control bits $Rsel2$, $Rsel1$, and $Rsel0$ divide the fundamental frequency into eight nominal frequency ranges. These ranges are defined for an individual device in the appropriate data sheet.
- ☐ The three control bits, $DCO0$ to $DCO2$, adjust the $DCOCLK$ frequency.
- ☐ The five modulation bits, $MOD0$ to $MOD4$, switch between the frequency selected by the DCO bits and the next higher frequency set by $DCO+1$.

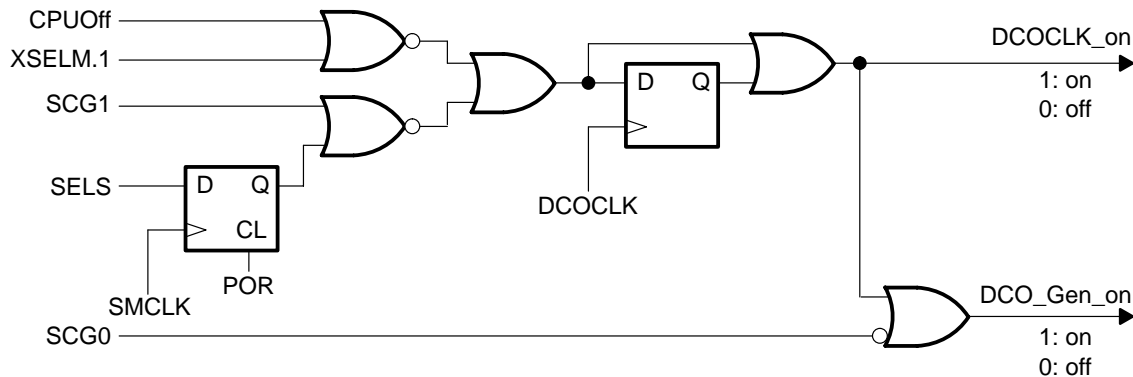
The clock period of the DCOCLK signal changes approximately ten percent for each step of the control bit DCO.

Figure 7–11. Principle Period Steps of the DCO



Five bits (SCG0, CPUOff, SELM.1, SCG1, and SELS) control the operation of the DCO.

Figure 7–12. On/Off Control of DCO



SCG0	CPUOff	SELM.1	SCG1	SELS	DCOCLK	DCO_GEN	Comment
x	0	0	x	x	on	on	DCO Clock Needed for MCLK
x	x	x	0	0	on	on	DCO Clock Needed for SMCLK
0	0	1	(see Note A)		off	on	DCO Clock Is Not Needed For MCLK (and SMCLK)
0	(see Note B)		0	1	off	on	DCO Clock Is Not Needed For SMCLK (and MCLK)
0			1	x	off	on	
1			(see Note C)		off	off	DCO Clock Is Not Needed: SCG0 Bit Switches Off DCOGEN

- NOTES: A. SMCLK does not need the DCOCLK signal if:
SMCLK is switched off (SCG1 = 1), or DCOCLK is not selected for SMCLK (SELS = 0).
- B. MCLK does not need the DCOCLK signal if:
MCLK is switched off (CPUOff = 1), or DCOCLK is not selected for MCLK (SELM.1 = 1).
- C. MCLK and SMCLK does not need the DCOCLK signal if:
The control bit SCG0 in the status register can switch off (SCG0 = 1) the DCOGEN.

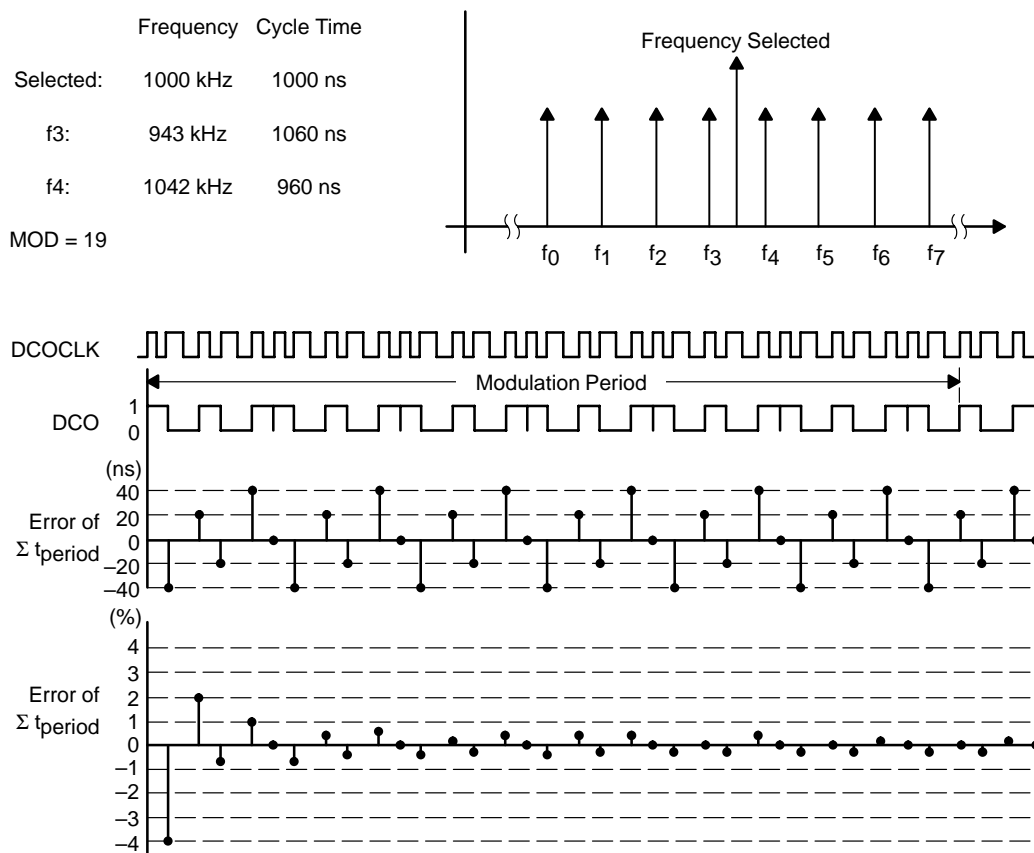
7.3.1 Operation of the DCO Modulator

The modulator is intended to reduce a long accumulating period variation by mixing adjacent DCO periods. On average, a longer period variation can be minimized by mixing DCO periods. The modulator accumulates a period of 32 DCOCLK clock cycles. The MOD control bits define the mixing ratio of the DCO+1 period. The remaining 32-MOD time slots use the DCO period. If the modulation constant is 0, the DCO data in the control register defines the period. The following formula defines the accumulating periods:

$$t = (32 - \text{MOD}) \times t_{\text{DCO}} + \text{MOD} \times t_{\text{DCO}+1}$$

The modulator selects f_{dco} or $f_{\text{dco}+1}$ individually for each DCO cycle. This is the highest possible rate that can be modulated between two discrete frequency steps. The following example illustrates the main operation of the modulator.

Figure 7–13. Operation of the DCO Modulator



The user should consider two factors when reviewing the timing accuracy generated from the DCOCLK signal:

- ☐ Short term accuracy: Each individual cycle is as inaccurate as the DCO steps.
- ☐ Long term accuracy: The accumulated average of many individual cycles reduces the relative error by less than 0.33%, assuming a step delta of 10% and a modulation period of 32.

Proper use of the modulation feature on the DCOCLK period increases the accuracy by averaging the periods. The selected frequency set using the control bits in the DCO and the modulation fraction defined by the control bits in MOD sets the DCOCLK periods.

Note: Control of DCOCLK Frequency

The frequency of the digitally-controlled oscillator varies with temperature and voltage and is different for each individual sample. The frequency can be controlled by software if an external reference (such as the ACLK signal) is used to measure the difference and to readjust the DCO frequency.

7.4 Basic Clock Module Operating Modes

Control bits SCG0, SCG1, OscOff, and CPUOff in the status register configure the operating mode, as discussed in Chapter 3, *System Resets, Interrupts and Operating Modes*.

The digitally-controlled oscillator is disabled when not used for MCLK or SMCLK. The dc generator must be switched off separately, but is switched on automatically when the DCOCLK signal is used, either for MCLK or SMCLK.

7.4.1 Starting From Power Up Clear (PUC)

On a valid PUC, the internal resistor is selected for the dc generator, $R_{sel} = 4$, and DCO = 3, allowing the oscillator to operate at a medium frequency and independently from external conditions. ACLK is sourced from LFXT1 in the LF mode and configured to operate with a watch crystal; MCLK and SMCLK are sourced from DCOCLK. Because the CPU executes code from MCLK, which is sourced from the fast-starting DCO, code execution from PUC is fast, typically less than 6 μ s. After a PUC, user software selects the best basic clock configuration for the application.

7.4.2 Adjusting the Basic Clock

The control registers of the Basic Clock are under full software control. If clock requirements other than those of the default from PUC are necessary, the Basic Clock can be configured or reconfigured by software at any time during program execution.

- ☐ ACLKGEN from LFXT1 crystal, resonator, or external-clock source and divided by 1, 2, 4, or 8. If no LFXTCLK clock signal is needed in the application, the OscOff bit should be set in the status register.
- ☐ SCLKGEN from LFXTCLK, DCOCLK, or XT2CLK (x13x and x14x only) and divided by 1, 2, 4, or 8. The SCG1 bit in the status register enables or disables SMCLK.
- ☐ MCLKGEN from LFXTCLK, DCOCLK, or XT2CLK (x13x and x14x only) and divided by 1, 2, 4, or 8. When set, the CPUOff bit in the status register enables or disables MCLK.
- ☐ DCOCLK frequency is adjusted using the RSEL, DCO, and MOD bits. The DCOCLK clock source is stopped when not used, and the dc generator can be disabled by the SCG0 bit in the status register (when set).
- ☐ The XT2 oscillator sources XT2CLK (x13x and x14x only) by clearing the XT2Off bit.

User software can modify the Basic Clock to meet the system requirements at any time using the full MSP430 instruction set. A few examples follow:

```

bis.b  #007h,&BCSCTL1    ; RSEL=7
mov.b  #081h,&BCSCTL1    ; XT2off, RSEL=1
bis.b  #070h,&BCSCTL1    ; ACLK= high-speed XTAL/8
bis.b  #008h,&BCSCTL2    ; SMCLK=LFXT1
inc.b  &DCOCTL           ; Increase DCOCLK
dec.b  &DCOCTL           ; Decrease DCOCLK

```

7.4.3 Basic Clock Features for Low-Power Applications

Conflicting requirements typically exist in battery powered MSP430x1xx applications:

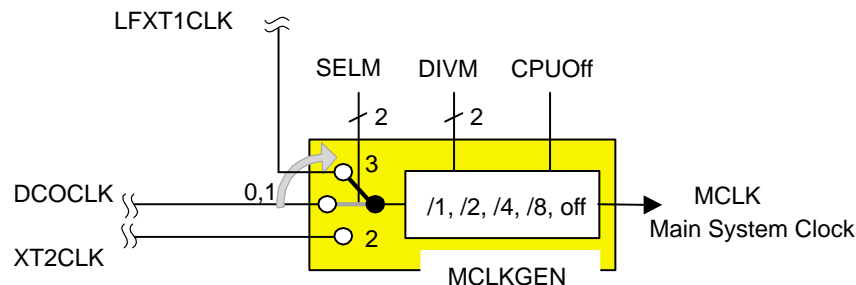
- ☐ Low clock frequency for energy conservation and time keeping
- ☐ High clock frequency for fast reaction to events and fast burst processing capability

The Basic Clock Module addresses the above conflicting requirements by allowing the design engineer to select from the three available clock signals: ACLK, MCLK and SMCLK. For optimal low-power performance, the ACLK can be configured to oscillate with a low 32,768-Hz watch-crystal frequency, providing a stable time base for the system and low power stand-by operation. The MCLK can be configured to operate from the on-chip DCO which is only activated when requested by events. The SMCLK can be configured to operate from either the watch-crystal or the DCO, depending on peripheral requirements. A flexible clock distribution and divider system is provided to fine tune the individual clock requirements. All basic clock-module configurations are under full software control.

7.4.4 Selecting a Crystal Clock for MCLK

After power up, the Basic Clock Module uses the DCO clock for the system clock MCLK. The LFXT1 oscillator starts in the low-frequency mode (XTS=0). Regardless of the configuration of the clock system the application uses, if all initial conditions are set, the software execution is ensured by the integrated DCO. Finally, the application may use a crystal for further software execution.

Figure 7–14. Select Crystal Oscillator for MCLK, Example Uses LFXT1 for MCLK



The sequence to switch the MCLK source from the DCO clock to the crystal clock (LFXT1CLK or XT2CLK) should be:

- 1) Switch on the crystal oscillator
 - a) OscOff = 0, XTS is reset (LF mode is selected) or set (HF mode is selected)

```
BIS.B  #XTS,&BCSCTL1 ; Set XTS bit to select LFXT1
                        ; oscillator
BIC    #OSCOFF,SR     ; Turn on LFXT1 oscillator
```

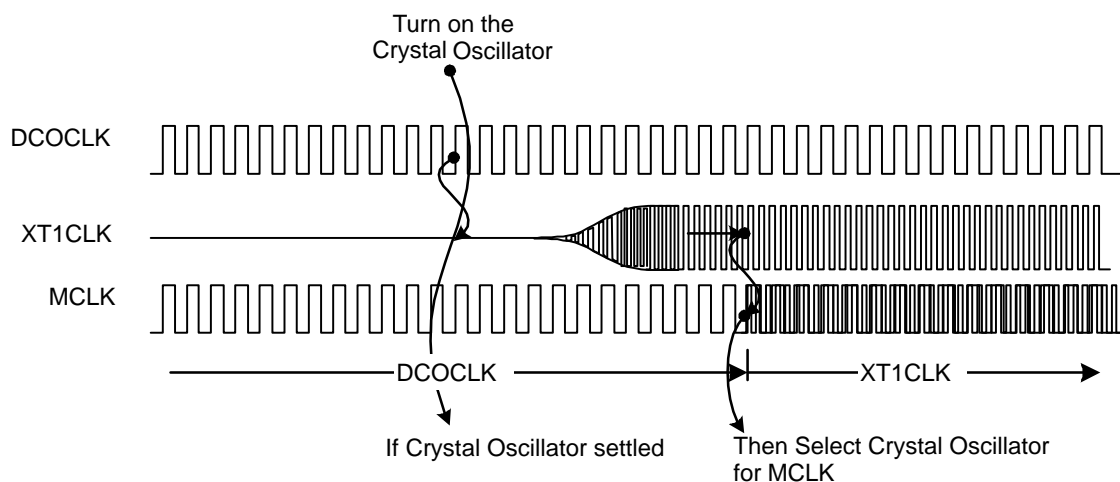
- b) In x13x and x14x devices, the XT2 oscillator can also be used: XT2Off is reset

```
BIC.B  #XT2Off,&BCSCTL1 ; Reset XT2Off to turn on LFXT1
                        ; oscillator
```

- 2) Clear the OscFault flag.
- 3) Wait the required delay.
- 4) Test the OscFault flag.
- 5) Repeat steps 2 through 4 until the OscFault flag remains cleared.

```
L1  BIC.B  #OFIFG,&IFG1 ; Clear OscFault flag
     MOV   #0FFFh,R15   ; Move delay value to register
L2  DEC    R15           ; Decrement delay value
     JNZ   L2            ; Repeat until zero
     BIT.B  #OFIFG,&IFG1 ; Test OscFault flag
     JNZ   L1            ; Repeat if necessary
```

Figure 7–15. Timing to Select Crystal Oscillator for MCLK, Example Uses LFXT1 in HF Mode for MCLK

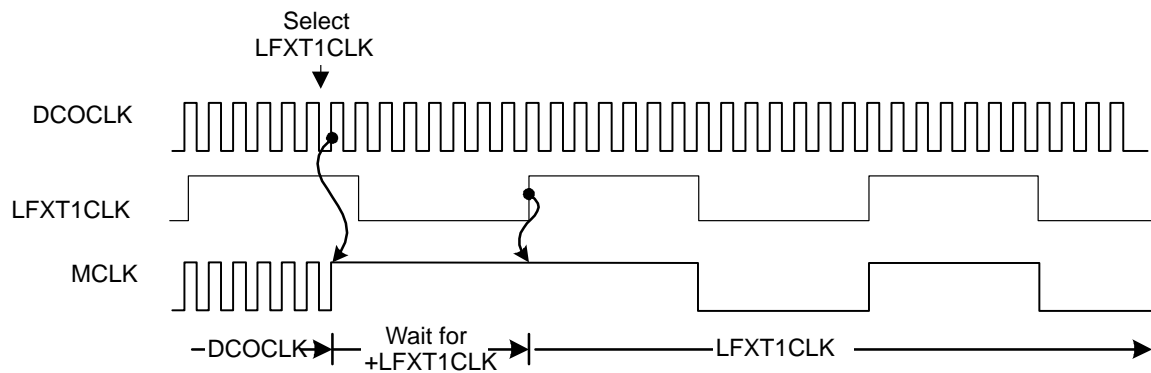


7.4.5 Synchronization of Clock Signals

The clock signals MCLK and SMCLK can be supplied by different clock sources. While switching from one clock source to the other, the switch is synchronized to avoid critical race conditions. When another clock source is selected the following occurs in order:

- 1) The current clock cycle continues until the next rising edge.
- 2) The clock then remains high until the next rising edge of the newly selected clock.
- 3) Now the new clock source is selected and continues with a full high period.

Figure 7–16. *Select Another Clock Source Signal, Example Switches From DCOCLK to LFXT1CLK for Clock MCLK*



7.5 Basic Clock Module Control Registers

The Basic Clock Module is configured using control registers DCOCTL, BCSTCTL1, and BCSTCTL2, and four bits from the CPU status register: SCG1, SCG0, OscOff, and CPUOFF. User software can modify these control registers from their default condition at any time. The Basic Clock Module control registers are located in the byte-wide peripheral map and should be accessed with byte (.B) instructions.

Register	Short Form	Register Type	Address	Initial State
DCO control register	DCOCTL	Read/write	056h	060h
Basic clock system control 1	BCSTCTL1	Read/write	057h	084h
Basic clock system control 1	BCSTCTL2	Read/write	058h	reset

7.5.1 Digitally-Controlled Oscillator (DCO) Clock-Frequency Control

DCOCTL is loaded with a value of 060h with a valid PUC condition.

DCOCTL 056h	7				0			
	DCO.2	DCO.1	DCO.0	MOD.4	MOD.3	MOD.2	MOD.1	MOD.0
	rw-0	rw-1	rw-1	rw-0	rw-0	rw-0	rw-0	rw-0

MOD.0 .. MOD.4: The MOD constant defines how often the discrete frequency $f_{\text{DCO}+1}$ is used within a period of 32 DCOCLK cycles. During the remaining clock cycles (32-MOD) the discrete frequency f_{DCO} is used. When the DCO constant is set to seven, no modulation is possible since the highest feasible frequency has then been selected.

DCO.0 .. DCO.2: The DCO constant defines which one of the eight discrete frequencies is selected. The frequency is defined by the current injected into the dc generator.

7.5.2 Oscillator and Clock Control Register

BCSTCTL1 is affected by a valid PUC or POR condition.

BCSTCTL1 057h	7				0			
	XT2Off	XTS	DIVA.1	DIVA.0	XT5V	Rsel.2	Rsel.1	Rsel.0
	rw-(1)	rw-(0)	rw-(0)	rw-(0)	rw-0	rw-1	rw-0	rw-0

Bit0 to Bit2: The internal resistor is selected in eight different steps.

Rsel.0 to Rsel.2 The value of the resistor defines the nominal frequency.
The lowest nominal frequency is selected by setting Rsel=0.

Bit3, XT5V: XT5V should always be reset.

Bit4 to Bit5: The selected source for ACLK is divided by:

- DIVA = 0: 1
- DIVA = 1: 2
- DIVA = 2: 4
- DIVA = 3: 8

Bit6, XTS: The LFXT1 oscillator operates with a low-frequency clock crystal or with a high-frequency crystal:

XTS = 0: The low-frequency oscillator is selected.

XTS = 1: The high-frequency oscillator is selected.

The oscillator selection must meet the external crystal's operating condition.

Bit7, XT2Off: The XT2 oscillator is switched on or off:

XT2Off = 0: the oscillator is on

XT2Off = 1: the oscillator is off if it is not used for MCLK or SMCLK.

BCSCTL2 is affected by a valid PUC or POR condition.

		7				0			
BCSCTL2		SELM.1	SELM.0	DIVM.1	DIVM.0	SELS	DIVS.1	DIVS.0	DCOR
058h		rw-(0)	rw-(0)	rw-(0)	rw-(0)	rw-0	rw-0	rw-0	rw-0

Bit0, DCOR: The DCOR bit selects the resistor for injecting current into the dc generator. Based on this current, the oscillator operates if activated.

DCOR = 0: Internal resistor on, the oscillator can operate. The fail-safe mode is on.

DCOR = 1: Internal resistor off, the current must be injected externally if the DCO output drives any clock using the DCOCLK.

Bit1, Bit2: The selected source for SMCLK is divided by:

DIVS.1 .. DIVS.0 DIVS = 0: 1

DIVS = 1: 2

DIVS = 2: 4

DIVS = 3: 8

Bit3, SELS: Selects the source for generating SMCLK:

SELS = 0: Use the DCOCLK

SELS = 1: Use the XT2CLK signal (in three-oscillator systems)
or

LFXT1CLK signal (in two-oscillator systems)

Bit4, Bit5: The selected source for MCLK is divided by:

DIVM.0 .. DIVM.1 DIVM = 0: 1

DIVM = 1: 2

DIVM = 2: 4

DIVM = 3: 8

Bit6, Bit7: Selects the source for generating MCLK:

SELM.0 .. SELM.1 SELM = 0: Use the DCOCLK

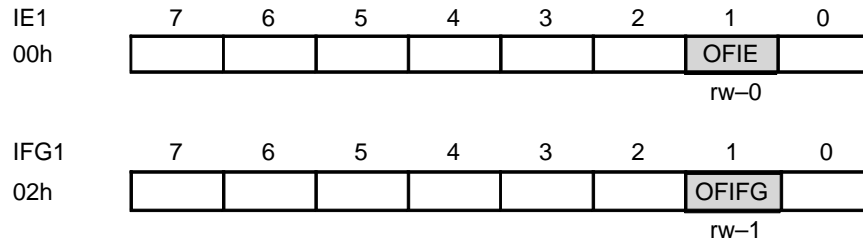
SELM = 1: Use the DCOCLK

SELM = 2: Use the XT2CLK (x13x and x14x devices) or
Use the LFXT1CLK (x11xx and x12xx devices)

SELM = 3: Use the LFXT1CLK

7.5.3 Special-Function Register Bits

The Basic Clock Module affects two bits in the special-function registers OFIFG and OFIE. The oscillator fault-interrupt enable bit (OFIE) is located in bit 1 of the interrupt-enable register IE1. The oscillator fault-interrupt flag bit (OFIFG) is located in bit 1 of the interrupt-flag register IFG1.



The oscillator fault signal XT_OscFault sets the OFIFG as long as the oscillator fault condition is active. The detection and effect of the oscillator fault condition is described in section 7.4.1. The oscillator fault interrupt requests a nonmaskable interrupt if the OFIE bit is set. The oscillator interrupt-enable bit is reset automatically if a non-maskable interrupt is accepted. The initial state of the OFIE bit is reset and no oscillator fault requests an interrupt even if a fault condition occurs.

Digital I/O Configuration

This chapter describes the digital I/O configuration.

Topic	Page
8.1 Introduction	8-2
8.2 Ports P1, P2	8-3
8.3 Ports P3, P4, P5, P6	8-9

8.1 Introduction

The general-purpose I/O ports of the MSP430 are designed to give maximum flexibility. Each I/O line is individually configurable, and most have interrupt capability.

There are two different types of I/O port modules in the MSP430x1xx family devices. Ports P1 and P2 are of one type, and ports P3 to P6 are of another type. Both types have the capability to control input/output direction and output level, to read the level applied to a pin, and to control if a port or module function is applied to a pin. The port module for P1 and P2 have interrupt capability; flag, enable, and edge sensitivity are available individually for each bit.

MSP430x11xx devices have ports P1 and P2 implemented; MSP430x12xx devices have ports P1 to P3 implemented; MSP430x13x and MSP430x14x have ports P1 to P6 implemented.

8.2 Ports P1, P2

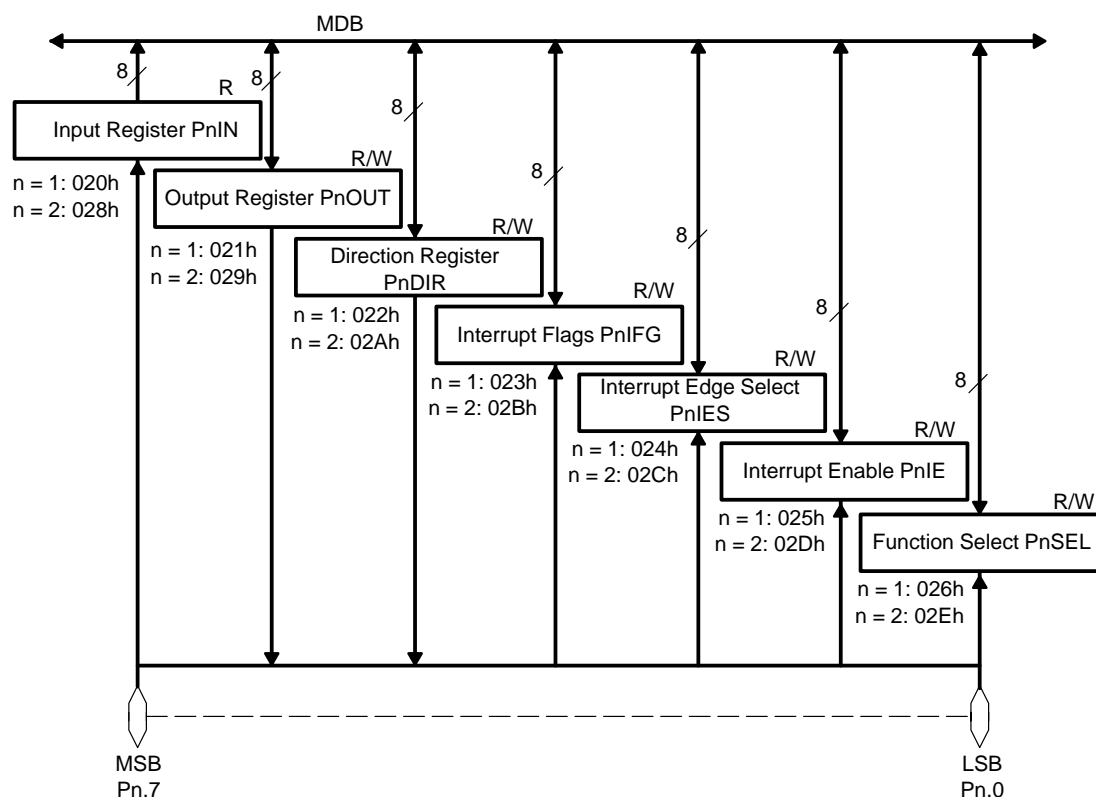
Each of the general-purpose ports P1 and P2 contain 8 general-purpose I/O lines and all of the registers required to control and configure them. Each I/O line is capable of being controlled independently. In addition, each I/O line is capable of producing an interrupt.

Separate vectors are allocated to ports P1 and P2 modules. The pins for port P1 (P1.0–7) source one interrupt, and the pins for port P2 (P2.0–7) source another interrupt.

Seven registers are used to control the port I/O pins (see Section 8.2.1).

Ports P1 and P2 are connected to the processor core through the 8-bit MDB and the MAB. They should be accessed using byte instructions in the absolute address mode.

Figure 8–1. Port P1, Port P2 Configuration



8.2.1 Port P1, Port P2 Control Registers

The seven control registers give maximum digital input/output configuration flexibility:

- ☐ All individual I/O bits are independently programmable.
- ☐ Any combination of input, output, and interrupt condition is possible.
- ☐ Interrupt processing of external events is fully implemented for all eight bits of ports P1 and P2.

The seven registers for port P1 and the seven registers for port P2 are shown in Table 8–1 and Table 8–2, respectively.

Table 8–1. Port P1 Registers

Register	Short Form	Register Type	Address	Initial State
Input	P1IN	Read only	020h	-----
Output	P1OUT	Read/write	021h	Unchanged
Direction	P1DIR	Read/write	022h	Reset
Interrupt flags	P1IFG	Read/write	023h	Reset
Interrupt edge select	P1IES	Read/write	024h	Unchanged
Interrupt enable	P1IE	Read/write	025h	Reset
Function select	P1SEL	Read/write	026h	Reset

Table 8–2. Port P2 Registers

Register	Short Form	Register Type	Address	Initial State
Input	P2IN	Read only	028h	-----
Output	P2OUT	Read/write	029h	Unchanged
Direction	P2DIR	Read/write	02Ah	Reset
Interrupt flags	P2IFG	Read/write	02Bh	Reset
Interrupt edge select	P2IES	Read/write	02Ch	Unchanged
Interrupt enable	P2IE	Read/write	02Dh	Reset
Function select	P2SEL	Read/write	02Eh	Reset

These registers contain eight bits, and should be accessed using byte instructions in absolute-address mode.

8.2.1.1 Input Registers P1IN, P2IN

Both Input registers are read-only registers that reflect the signals at the I/O pins.

Note: Writing to Read-Only Registers P1IN, P2IN

Writing to these read-only registers results in increased current consumption while the write attempt is active.

8.2.1.2 Output Registers *P1OUT, P2OUT*

Each output register shows the information of the output buffer. The output buffer can be modified by all instructions that write to a destination. If read, the contents of the output buffer are independent of pin direction. A direction change does not modify the output buffer contents.

8.2.1.3 Direction Registers *P1DIR, P2DIR*

The direction registers contain eight independent bits that define the direction of the I/O pin. All bits are reset by the PUC signal.

When:

Bit = 0: The port pin is switched to input direction (3-state)

Bit = 1: The port pin is switched to output direction

8.2.1.4 Interrupt Flags *P1IFG, P2IFG*

Each interrupt flag register contains eight flags that reflect whether or not an interrupt is pending for the corresponding I/O pin, if the I/O is interrupt-enabled.

When:

Bit = 0: No interrupt is pending

Bit = 1: An interrupt is pending due to a transition at the I/O pin or from software setting the bit.

Note:

Manipulating P1OUT and P1DIR, as well as P2OUT and P2DIR, can result in setting the P1IFG or P2IFG bits.

Writing a zero to an interrupt flag resets it; writing a one to an interrupt flag sets it and generates an interrupt.

Each group of interrupt flags P1FLG.0 to P1FLG.7 and P2FLG.0 to P2FLG.7 sources its own interrupt vector. Interrupt flags P1IFG.0 to P1IFG.7 and P2IFG.0 to P2IFG.7 are not reset automatically when an interrupt from these events is serviced. The software should determine the origin of the interrupt and reset the appropriate flag(s).

Note:

Any external interrupt event should be at least 1.5 times MCLK or longer, to ensure that it is accepted and the corresponding interrupt flag is set.

8.2.1.5 Interrupt Edge Select P1IES, P2IES

Each interrupt edge select register contains a bit for each corresponding I/O pin to select what type of transition triggers the interrupt flag.

When:

Bit = 0: The interrupt flag is set with a low-to-high transition

Bit = 1: The interrupt flag is set with a high-to-low transition

Note:

Changing the P1IES and P2IES bits can result in setting the associated interrupt flags.

PnIES.x	PnIN.x	PnIFG.x
0 → 1	0	Unchanged
0 → 1	1	May be set
1 → 0	0	May be set
1 → 0	1	Unchanged

8.2.1.6 Interrupt Enable P1IE, P2IE

Each interrupt enable register contains bits to enable the interrupt flag for each I/O pin in the port. Each of the sixteen bits corresponding to pins P1.0 to P1.7 and P2.0 to P2.7 is located in the P1IE and P2IE registers.

When:

Bit = 0: The interrupt request is disabled

Bit = 1: The interrupt request is enabled

Note: Port P1, Port P2 Interrupt Sensitivity

Only transitions, not static levels, cause interrupts.

If an interrupt flag is still set when the RETI instruction is executed (for example, a transition occurs during the interrupt service routine), an interrupt occurs again after RETI is completed. This ensures that each transition is acknowledged by the software.

8.2.1.7 Function Select Registers P1SEL, P2SEL

P1 and P2 port pins are often multiplexed with other peripheral modules to reduce overall pin count on MSP430 devices (see the specific device data sheet to determine which other peripherals also use the device pins). Control registers P1SEL and P2SEL are used to select the desired pin function—I/O port or other peripheral module. Each register contains eight bits corresponding to each pin, and each pin's function is individually selectable. All bits in these registers are reset by the PUC signal. The bit definitions are:

Bit = 0: Port P1 or P2 function is selected for the pin

Bit = 1: Other peripheral module function is selected for the pin

Note: Function Select With P1SEL, P2SEL

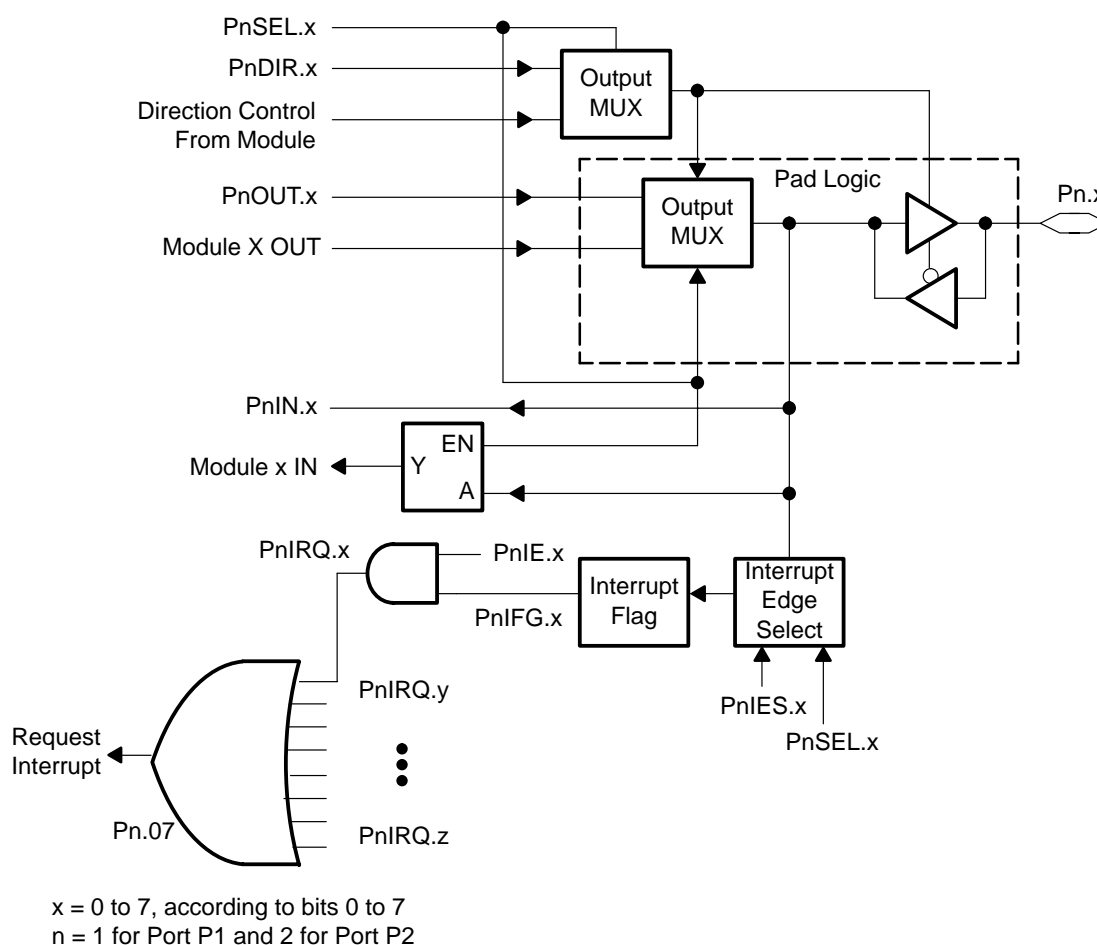
The interrupt-edge-select circuitry is disabled if control bit PnSEL.x is set. Therefore, the input signal can no longer generate an interrupt.

When a port pin is selected to be used as an input to a peripheral module other than the I/O port (PnSEL.x = 1), the actual input signal to the peripheral module is a latched representation of the signal at the device pin (see Figure 8–2 schematic). The latch uses the PnSEL.x bit as its enable, so while PnSEL.x=1, the internal input signal simply follows the signal at the pin. However, if the PnSEL.x bit is reset, then the output of the latch (and therefore the input to the other peripheral module) represents the value of the signal at the device pin just prior to the bit being reset.

8.2.2 Port P1, Port P2 Schematic

The pin logic of each individual port P1 and port P2 signal is identical. Each bit can be read and written to as shown in Figure 8–2.

Figure 8–2. Schematic of One Bit in Port P1, P2



8.2.3 Port P1, P2 Interrupt Control Functions

Ports P1 and P2 use eight bits for interrupt flags, eight bits to enable interrupts, eight bits to select the effective edge of an interrupt event, one interrupt vector address for port P1, and one interrupt vector address for port P2.

Each signal uses three bits for configuration and interrupt:

- ☐ Interrupt flag, P1IFG.0 to P1IFG.7 and P2IFG.0 to P2IFG.7
- ☐ Interrupt enable bit, P1IE.0 to P1IE.7 and P2IE.0 to P2IE.7
- ☐ Interrupt edge select bit, P1IES.0 to P1IES.7 and P2IES.0 to P2IES.7

The interrupt flags P1IFG.0 to P1IFG.7 source one interrupt and P2IFG.0 to P2IFG.7 source one interrupt. Any interrupt event on one or more pins of P1.0 to P1.7 or P2.0 to P2.7 requests an interrupt when two conditions are met: the appropriate individual bit PnIE.x is set, and the GIE bit is set. Interrupt flags P1IFG.0 to P1IFG.7 or P2IFG.0 to P2IFG.7 are not automatically reset. The software of the interrupt service routine should handle the detection of the source, and reset the appropriate flag when it is serviced.

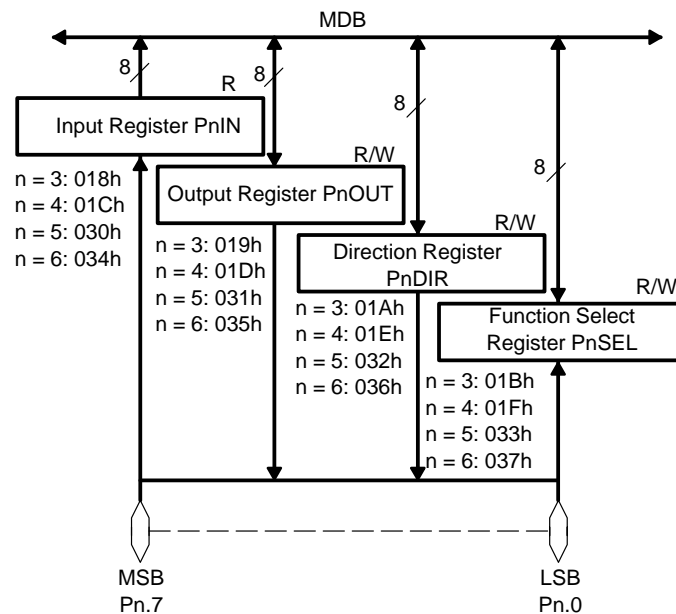
8.3 Ports P3, P4, P5, P6

General-purpose ports P3–P6 function as shown in Figure 8–3. Each pin can be selected to operate with the I/O port function, or to be used with a different peripheral module. This multiplexing of pins allows for a reduced pin count on MSP430 devices.

Four registers control each of the ports (see Section 8.3.1).

Ports P3–P6 are connected to the processor core through the 8-bit MDB and the MAB. They should be accessed with byte instructions using the absolute address mode.

Figure 8–3. Ports P3–P6 Configuration



8.3.1 Port P3–P6 Control Registers

The four control registers of each port give maximum configuration flexibility of digital I/O.

- ☐ All individual I/O bits are programmed independently
- ☐ Any combination of input is possible
- ☐ Any combination of port or module function is possible

The four registers for each port are shown in Table 8–3. They each contain eight bits and should be accessed with byte instructions.

Table 8–3. Port P3–P6 Registers

Register	Short Form	Address	Register Type	Initial State
Input	P3IN	018h	Read only	-----
	P4IN	01Ch	Read only	-----
	P5IN	030h	Read only	-----
	P6IN	034h	Read only	-----
Output	P3OUT	019h	Read/write	Unchanged
	P4OUT	01Dh	Read/write	Unchanged
	P5OUT	031h	Read/write	Unchanged
	P6OUT	035h	Read/write	Unchanged
Direction	P3DIR	01Ah	Read/write	Reset
	P4DIR	01Eh	Read/write	Reset
	P5DIR	032h	Read/write	Reset
	P6DIR	036h	Read/write	Reset
Port Select	P3SEL	01Bh	Read/write	Reset
	P4SEL	01Fh	Read/write	Reset
	P5SEL	033h	Read/write	Reset
	P6SEL	037h	Read/write	Reset

8.3.1.1 Input Registers

The input registers are read-only registers that reflect the signal at the I/O pins.

Note: Writing to Read-Only Register

Any attempt to write to these read-only registers results in an increased current consumption while the write attempt is active.

8.3.1.2 Output Registers

The output registers show the information of the output buffers. The output buffers can be modified by all instructions that write to a destination. If read, the contents of the output buffer are independent of the pin direction. A direction change does not modify the output buffer contents.

8.3.1.3 Direction Registers

The direction registers contain eight independent bits that define the direction of each I/O pin. All bits are reset by the PUC signal.

When:

Bit = 0: The port pin is switched to input direction

Bit = 1: The port pin is switched to output direction

8.3.1.4 Function Select Registers PnSEL

Ports P3–P6 pins are often multiplexed with other peripheral modules to reduce overall pin count on MSP430 devices (see the specific device data sheet to determine which other peripherals also use the device pins). Control registers PnSEL are used to select the desired pin function—I/O port or other peripheral module. Each register contains eight bits corresponding to each pin, and each pin's function is individually selectable. All bits in these registers are reset by the PUC signal. The bit definitions are:

Bit = 0: Port function is selected for the pin

Bit = 1: Other peripheral module function is selected for the pin

Note: Function Select With PnSEL Registers

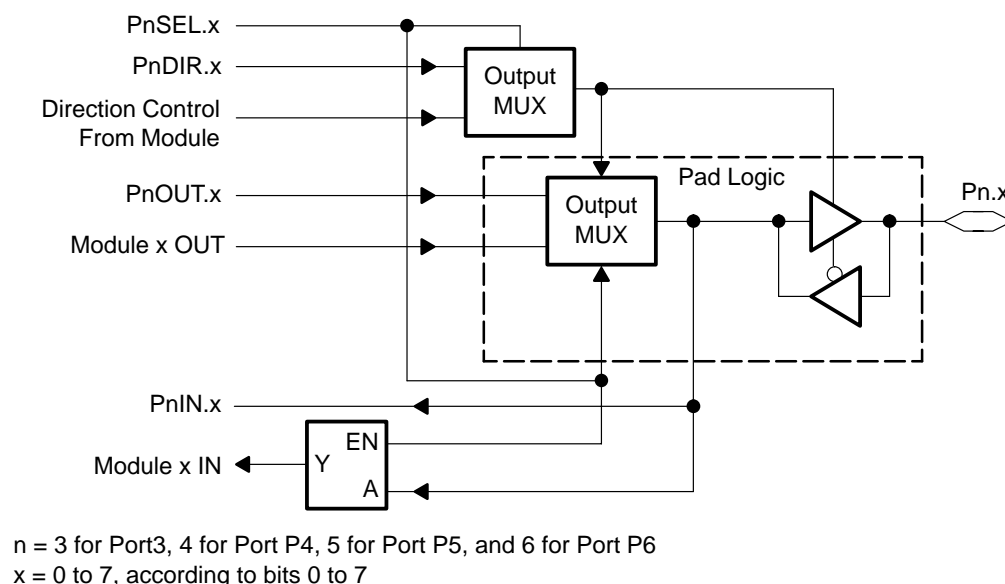
The interrupt-edge-select circuitry is disabled if control bit PnSEL.x is set. Therefore, the input signal can no longer generate an interrupt.

When a port pin is selected to be used as an input to a peripheral module other than the I/O port (PnSEL.x=1), the actual input signal to the peripheral module is a latched representation of the signal at the device pin (see Figure 8–4 schematic). The latch uses the PnSEL.x bit as its enable, so while PnSEL.x=1, the internal input signal simply follows the signal at the pin. However, if the PnSEL.x bit is reset, then the output of the latch (and therefore the input to the other peripheral module) represents the value of signal at the device pin, just prior to the bit being reset.

8.3.2 Port P3–P6 Schematic

The pin logic of each individual port signal is shown in Figure 8–4.

Figure 8–4. Schematic of Bits Pn.x





Watchdog Timer



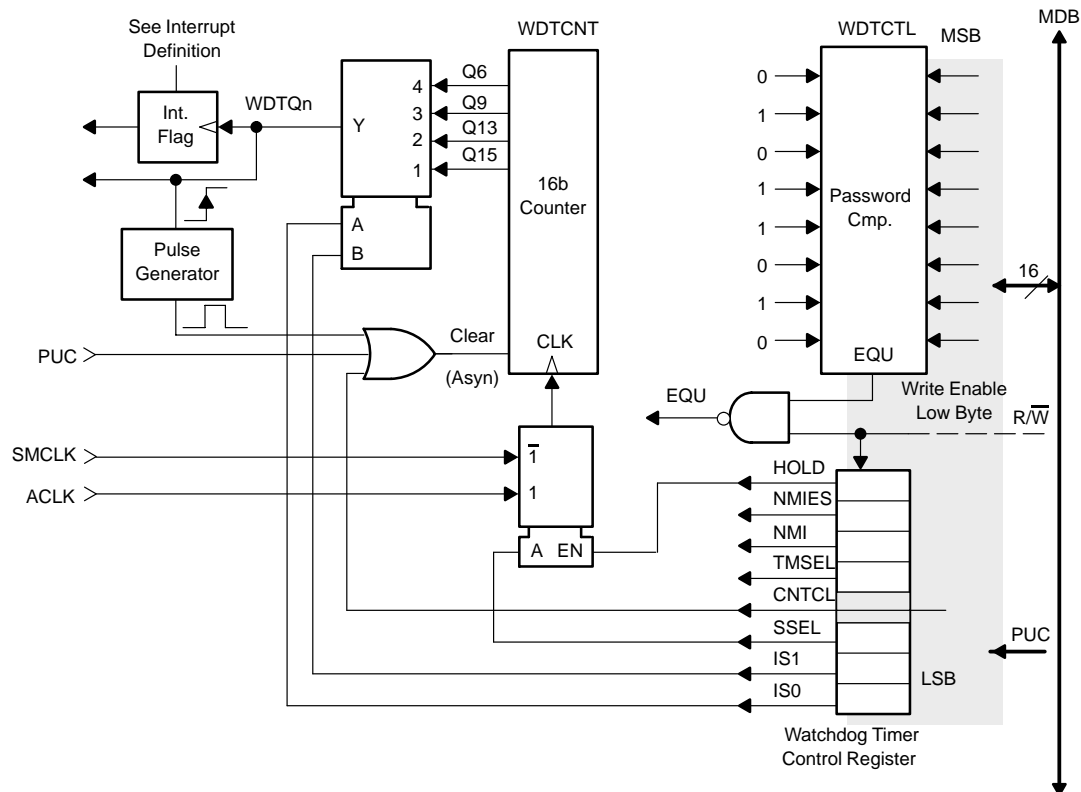
This chapter discusses the Watchdog Timer.

Topic	Page
9.1 The Watchdog Timer	9-2

9.1 The Watchdog Timer

The primary function of the watchdog-timer module (WDT) is to perform a controlled-system restart after a software problem occurs. If the selected time interval expires, a system reset is generated. If the watchdog function is not needed in an application, the module can work as an interval timer, to generate an interrupt after the selected time interval. The WDT diagram is shown in Figure 9–1.

Figure 9–1. Schematic of Watchdog Timer



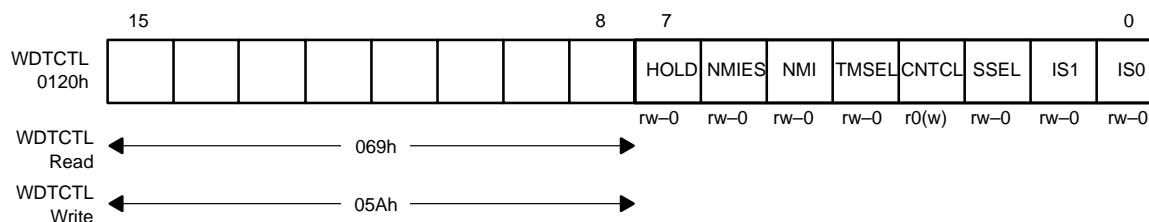
Features of the Watchdog Timer include:

- ☐ Eight software-selectable time intervals
- ☐ Two operating modes: as watchdog or interval timer
- ☐ Expiration of the time interval in watchdog mode, which generates a system reset; or in timer mode, which generates an interrupt request
- ☐ Safeguards which ensure that writing to the WDT control register is only possible using a password
- ☐ Support of ultralow-power using the hold mode

9.1.1 Watchdog Timer Register

The watchdog-timer counter (WDCNT) is a 16-bit up-counter that is not directly accessible by software. The WDCNT is controlled through the watchdog-timer control register (WDCTL), shown in Figure 9–2, which is a 16-bit read/write register located at the low byte of word address 0120h. Any read or write access must be done using word instructions with no suffix or .w suffix. In both operating modes (watchdog or timer), it is only possible to write to WDCTL using the correct password.

Figure 9–2. Watchdog Timer Control Register



Bits 0, 1: Bits IS0 and IS1 select one of four taps from the WDCNT, as described in Table 9–1. Assuming $f_{\text{crystal}} = 32,768 \text{ Hz}$ and $f_{\text{System}} = 1 \text{ MHz}$, the following intervals are possible:

Table 9–1. WDCNT Taps

SSEL	IS1	IS0	Interval [ms]
0	1	1	0.064 $t_{\text{SMCLK}} \times 2^6$
0	1	0	0.5 $t_{\text{SMCLK}} \times 2^9$
1	1	1	1.9 $t_{\text{ACLK}} \times 2^6$
0	0	1	8 $t_{\text{SMCLK}} \times 2^{13}$
1	1	0	16.0 $t_{\text{ACLK}} \times 2^9$
0	0	0	32 $t_{\text{SMCLK}} \times 2^{15} \leftarrow \text{Value after PUC (reset)}$
1	0	1	250 $t_{\text{ACLK}} \times 2^{13}$
1	0	0	1000 $t_{\text{ACLK}} \times 2^{15}$

Bit 2: The SSEL bit selects the clock source for WDCNT.

SSEL = 0: WDCNT is clocked by SMCLK.

SSEL = 1: WDCNT is clocked by ACLK.

Bit 3: Counter clear bit. In both operating modes, writing a 1 to this bit restarts the WDCNT at 00000h. The value read is not defined.

Bit 4: The TMSEL bit selects the operating mode: watchdog or timer.

TMSEL = 0: Watchdog mode

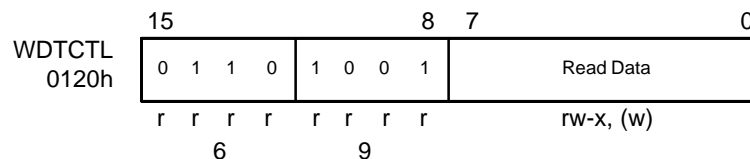
TMSEL = 1: Interval-timer mode

- Bit 5: The NMI bit selects the function of the RST/NMI input pin. It is cleared by the PUC signal.
- NMI = 0: The $\overline{\text{RST}}/\text{NMI}$ input works as reset input.
As long as the $\overline{\text{RST}}/\text{NMI}$ pin is held low, the internal signal is active (level sensitive).
- NMI = 1: The $\overline{\text{RST}}/\text{NMI}$ input works as an edge-sensitive nonmaskable interrupt input.
- Bit 6: If the NMI function is selected, this bit selects the activating edge of the $\overline{\text{RST}}/\text{NMI}$ input. It is cleared by the PUC signal.
- NMIES = 0: A rising edge triggers an NMI interrupt.
- NMIES = 1: A falling edge triggers an NMI interrupt.
- CAUTION: Changing the NMIES bit with software can generate an NMI interrupt.
- Bit 7: This bit stops the operation of the watchdog counter. The clock multiplexer is disabled and the counter stops incrementing. It holds the last value until the hold bit is reset and the operation continues. It is cleared by the PUC signal.
- HOLD = 0: The WDT is fully active.
- HOLD = 1: The clock multiplexer and counter are stopped.

9.1.1.1 Accessing the WDTCTL (Watchdog Timer Control Register)

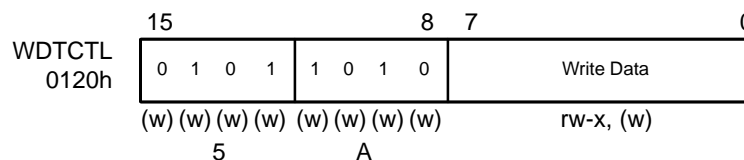
The WDTCTL register can be read or written to. As illustrated in Figure 9–3, WDTCTL can be read without the use of a password. A read access is performed by accessing word address 0120h. The low byte contains the value of WDTCTL. The value of the high byte is always read as 069h.

Figure 9–3. Reading WDTCTL



Write access to WDTCTL, illustrated in Figure 9–4, is only possible using the correct high-byte password. To change register WDTCTL, write to word address 0120h. The low byte contains the data to write to WDTCTL. The high byte is the password, which is 05Ah. A system reset (PUC) is generated if any value other than 05Ah is written to the high byte of address 0120h.

Figure 9–4. Writing to WDTCTL



9.1.2 Watchdog Timer Interrupt Control Functions

The Watchdog Timer (WDT) uses two bits in the SFRs for interrupt control.

- ☐ The WDT interrupt flag (WDTIFG) (located in IFG1.0, initial state is reset)
- ☐ The WDT interrupt enable (WDTIE) (located in IE1.0, initial state is reset)

When using the watchdog mode, the WDTIFG flag is used by the reset interrupt service routine to determine if the watchdog caused the device to reset. If the flag is set, then the Watchdog Timer initiated the reset condition (either by timing out or by a security key violation). If the flag is cleared, then the PUC was caused by a different source. See chapter 3 for more details on the PUC and POR signals.

When using the Watchdog Timer in interval-timer mode, the WDTIFG flag is set after the selected time interval and a watchdog interval-timer interrupt is requested. The interrupt vector address in interval-timer mode is different from that in watchdog mode. In interval-timer mode, the WDTIFG flag is reset automatically when the interrupt is serviced.

The WDTIE bit is used to enable or disable the interrupt from the Watchdog Timer when it is being used in interval-timer mode. Also, the GIE bit enables or disables the interrupt from the Watchdog Timer when it is being used in interval-timer mode.

9.1.3 Watchdog Timer Operation

The WDT module can be configured in two modes: watchdog and the interval-timer modes.

9.1.3.1 Watchdog Mode

When the WDT is configured to operate in watchdog mode, both a watchdog overflow and a security violation trigger the PUC signal, which automatically clears the appropriate system register bits. This results in a system configuration for the WDTCTL bits where the WDT is set into the watchdog mode and the $\overline{\text{RST}}$ /NMI pin is switched to the reset configuration.

After a power-on reset or a system reset, the WDT module automatically enters the watchdog mode and all bits in the WDTCTL register and the watchdog counter (WDTCNT) are cleared. The initial conditions at register WDTCTL cause the WDT to start running at a relatively-low frequency, due to the range of the digitally-controlled oscillator (DCO) automatically being set in these situations. Since the WDTCNT is reset, the user software has ample time to set up or halt the WDT and to adjust the system frequency. Users must refer to the specific data sheets and the clock-system chapter of this manual to determine the details of the clocking circuit on the MSP430 device chosen.

When the module is used in watchdog mode, the software should periodically reset the WDT CNT by writing a 1 to bit CNTCL of WDTCTL to prevent expiration of the selected time interval. If a software problem occurs and the time interval expires because the counter is no longer being reset, a system reset is generated and a system PUC signal is activated. The system restarts at the same program address that follows a power up. The cause of reset can be determined by testing bit 0 of interrupt flag register 1 in the SFRs. The appropriate time interval is selected by setting bits SSEL, IS0, and IS1 accordingly.

9.1.3.2 Timer Mode

Setting WDTCTL register bit TMSEL to 1 selects the timer mode. This mode provides periodic interrupts at the selected time interval. A time interval can also be initiated by writing a 1 to bit CNTCL in the WDTCTL register.

When the WDT is configured to operate in timer mode, the WDTIFG flag is set after the selected time interval, and it requests a standard interrupt service. The WDT interrupt flag is a single-source interrupt flag and is automatically reset when it is serviced. The enable bit remains unchanged. In interval-timer mode, the WDT interrupt-enable bit and the GIE bit must be set to allow the WDT to request an interrupt. The interrupt vector address in timer mode is different from that in watchdog mode.

Note: Watchdog Timer, Changing the Time Interval

Changing the time interval without clearing the WDT CNT may result in an unexpected and immediate system reset or interrupt. The time interval must be changed together with a counter-clear command using a single instruction (for example, MOV #05A0Ah,&WDTCTL).

Changing the clock source during normal operation may result in an incorrect interval. The timer should be halted before changing the clock source.

9.1.3.3 Operation in Low-Power Modes

The MSP430 devices have several low-power modes. Different clock signals are available in different low-power modes. The requirements of the user's application and the type of clocking circuit on the MSP430 device determine how the Watchdog Timer and clocking signals should be configured. Review the device data sheet and clock-system chapter to determine the clocking circuit, clock signals, and low-power modes available. For example, the WDT should not be configured in watchdog mode with SMCLK as its clock source if the user wants to use low-power mode 3 because SMCLK is not active in LPM3, therefore the WDT would not function properly.

The WDT hold condition can also be used to support low power operation. The hold condition can be used in conjunction with low-power modes when needed.

9.1.3.4 Software Example

The following example illustrates the watchdog-reset operation.

```

; After RESET or power-up, the WDTCTL register and WDCNT
; are cleared and the initial operating conditions are
; watchdog mode with a time interval of ~32 ms.
;
; As long as watchdog mode is selected, watchdog reset has
; to be done periodically through an instruction e.g.:
;
; .....
; .....
MOV    #WDTPW+WDCNTCL,&WDTCTL
;
; To change to timer mode and a time interval of 250 ms,
; the following instruction sequence can be used:
;
MOV    #WDTPW+WDCNTCL+WDTTMSEL+WDTISO,&WDTCTL
        ; Clear WDCNT and
        ; select 250 ms and timer
        ; mode
; .....
; .....
; Note: The time interval and clear of WDCNT should be
;       modified within one instruction to avoid
;       unexpected reset or interrupt

```

Timer_A

This section describes the basic functions of the MSP430 general-purpose 16-bit Timer_A. All capture/compare blocks (CCR) are identical. All MSP430x1xx devices have three CCRs (Timer_A3) implemented.

Note: Use of the Word Count

Throughout this chapter, the word *count* is used in the text. As used in these instances, it refers to the literal act of counting. It means that the counter must be in the process of counting for the action to take place. If a particular value is directly written to the counter, then the associated action will not take place. For example, the CCR0 interrupt flag is set when the timer *counts up to* the value in CCR0. The counter *must count* from CCR0–1 to CCR0. If the CCR0 value were simply written directly to the timer with software, the interrupt flag would *not* be set, even though the values in the timer and the CCR0 registers are the same.

Topic	Page
10.1 Introduction	10-2
10.2 Timer_A Operation	10-4
10.3 Timer Modes	10-7
10.4 Capture/Compare Blocks	10-13
10.5 The Output Unit	10-19
10.6 Timer_A Registers	10-24
10.7 Timer_A UART	10-33

10.1 Introduction

Timer_A is an extremely versatile timer made up of :

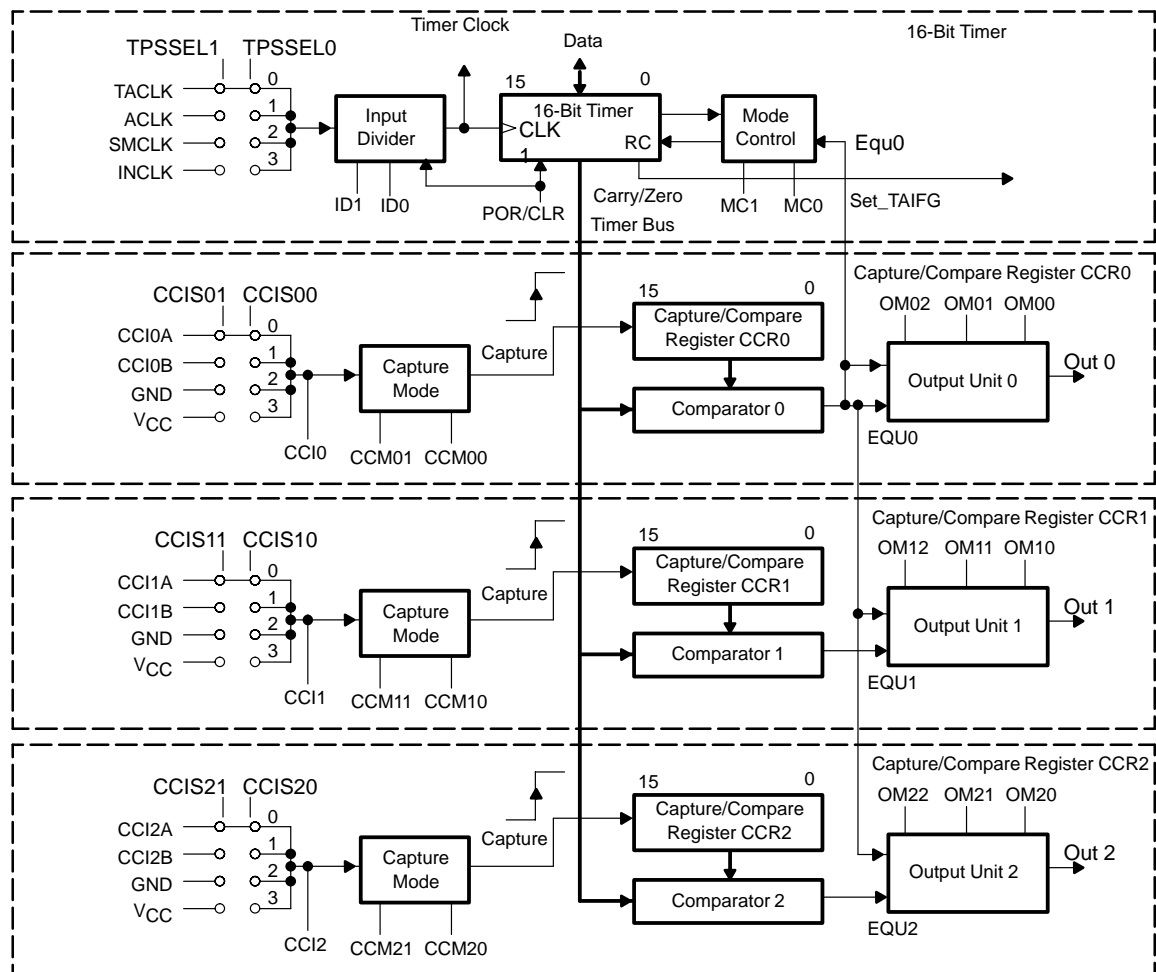
- ☐ 16-bit counter with 4 operating modes
- ☐ Selectable and configurable clock source
- ☐ Three or five independently configurable capture/compare registers with configurable inputs
- ☐ Three or five individually configurable output modules with 8 output modes

Timer_A can support multiple, simultaneous, timings; multiple capture/compares; multiple output waveforms such as PWM signals; and any combination of these. Also, each capture/compare register has hardware support for implementing serial communications such as UART protocol (see section 10.7).

Additionally, Timer_A has extensive interrupt capabilities. Interrupts may be generated from the counter on overflow conditions and from each of the capture/compare registers on captures or compares. Each capture/compare block is individually configurable and can produce interrupts on compares or on rising, falling, or both edges of an external capture signal.

The block diagram of Timer_A is shown in Figure 10–1.

Figure 10–1. Timer_A Block Diagram



10.2 Timer_A Operation

The 16-bit timer has 4 modes of operation selectable with the MC0 and MC1 bits in the TACTL register. The timer increments or decrements (depending on mode of operation) with each rising edge of the clock signal. The timer can be read or written to with software. Additionally, the timer can generate an interrupt with its ripple-carry output when it overflows.

10.2.1 Timer Mode Control

The timer has four modes of operation as shown in Figure 10–2 and described in Table 10–1: stop, up, continuous, and up/down. The operating mode is software selectable with the MC0 and MC1 bits in the TACTL register.

Figure 10–2. Mode Control

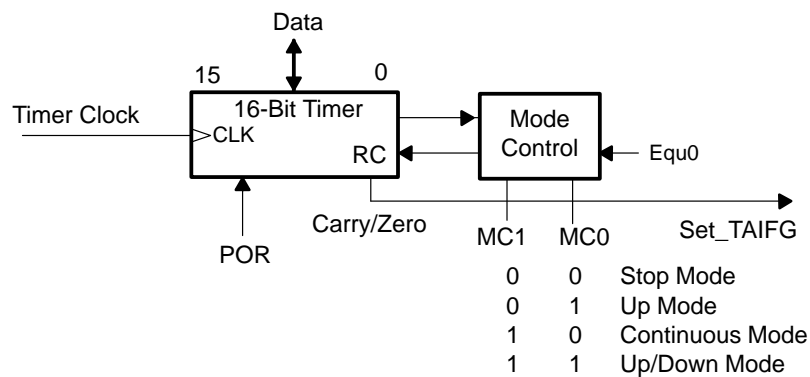


Table 10–1. Timer Modes

Mode Control		Mode	Description
MC1	MC0		
0	0	Stop	The timer is halted.
0	1	Up	The timer counts upward until value is equal to value of compare register CCR0.
1	0	Continuous	The timer counts upward continuously.
1	1	Up/Down	The timer counts up until the timer value is equal to compare register 0 and then it counts down to zero.

10.2.2 Clock Source Select and Divider

The timer clock can be sourced from internal clocks (i.e. ACLK or SMCLK) or from an external source (TACLK) as shown in Figure 10–3. The clock source is selectable with the SSEL0 and SSEL1 bits in the TACTL register. It is important to note that when changing the clock source for the timer, errant timings can occur. For this reason stopping the timer before changing the clock source is recommended.

The selected clock source may be passed directly to the timer or divided by 2, 4, or 8, as shown in Figure 10–4. The ID0 and ID1 bits in the TACTL register select the clock division. Note that the input divider is reset by a POR signal (see chapter 3, *System, Resets, Interrupts, and Operating Modes* for more information on the POR signal) or by setting the CLR bit in the TACTL register. Otherwise, the input divider remains unchanged when the timer is modified. The state of the input divider is invisible to software.

Figure 10–3. Schematic of 16-Bit Timer

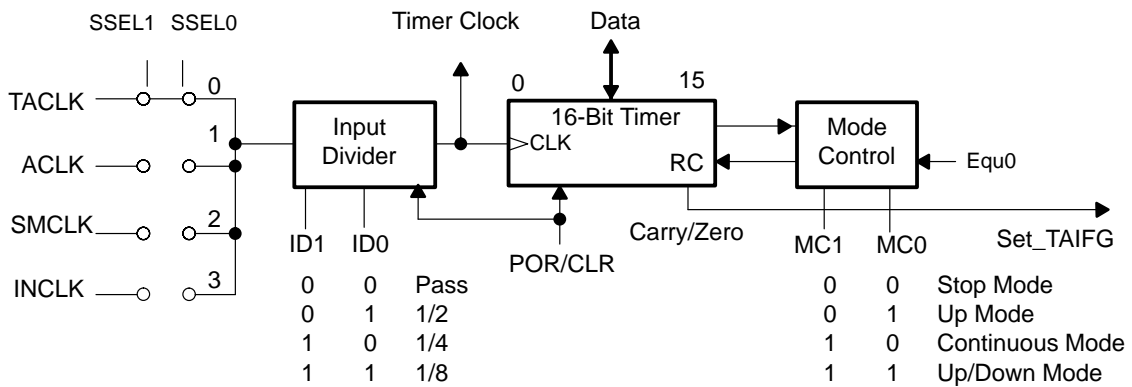
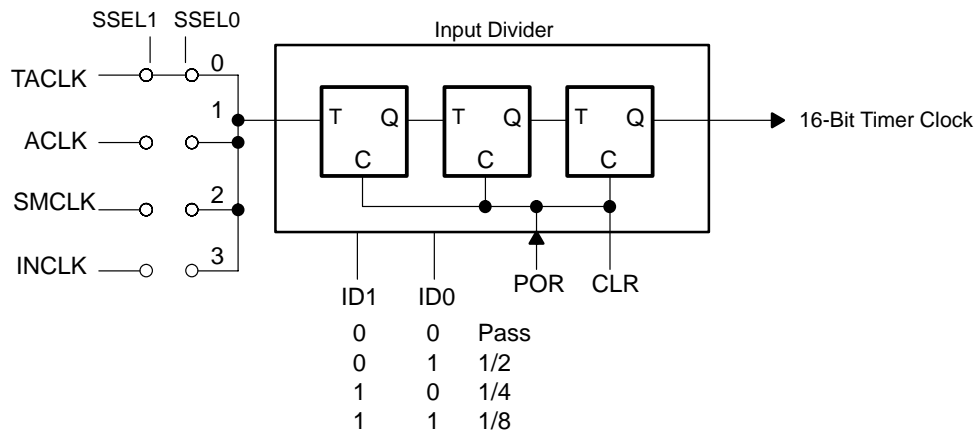


Figure 10–4. Schematic of Clock Source Select and Input Divider



10.2.3 Starting the Timer

The timer may be started or restarted in a variety of ways:

- ☐ Release Halt Mode: The timer *counts* in the selected direction when a timer mode other than stop mode is selected with the MCx bits.
- ☐ Halted by CCR0 = 0, restarted by CCR0 > 0 when the mode is either up or up/down: When the timer mode is selected to be either up or up/down, the timer may be stopped by writing 0 to capture/compare register 0 (CCR0). The timer may then be restarted by writing a nonzero value to CCR0. In this scenario, the timer starts incrementing in the up direction from zero.
- ☐ Setting the CLR bit in TACTL register: Setting the CLR bit in the TACTL register clears the timer value and input clock divider value. The timer increments upward from zero with the next clock cycle as long as stop-mode is not selected with the MCx bits.
- ☐ TAR is loaded with 0: When the counter (TAR register) is loaded with zero with a software instruction the timer increments upward from zero with the next clock cycle as long as stop-mode is not selected with the MCx bits.

10.3 Timer Modes

10.3.1 Timer—Stop Mode

Stopping and starting the timer is done simply by changing the mode control bits (MCx). The value of the timer is not affected.

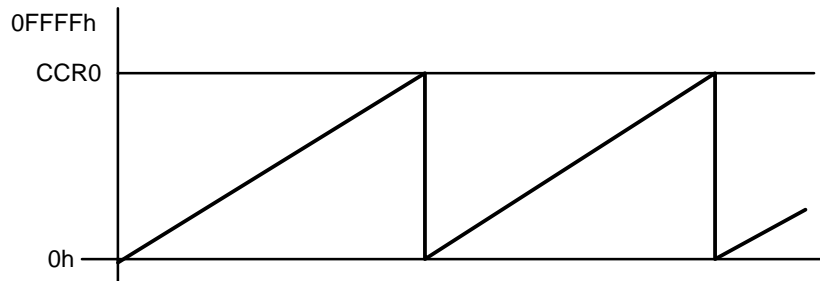
When the timer is stopped from up/down mode and then restarted in up/down mode, the timer counts in the same direction as it was counting before it was stopped. For example, if the timer is in up/down mode and counting in the down direction when the MCx bits are reset, when they are set back to the up/down direction, the timer starts counting in the down direction from its previous value. If this is not desired in an application, the CLR bit in the TACTL register can be used to clear this direction memory feature.

10.3.2 Timer—Up Mode

The up mode is used if the timer period must be different from the 65,536 (16-bit) clock cycles of the continuous mode period. The capture/compare register CCR0 data define the timer period.

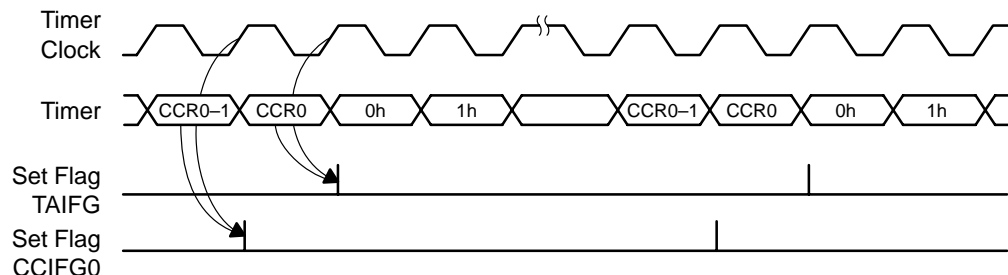
The counter *counts* up to the content of compare register CCR0, as shown in Figure 10–5. When the timer value and the value of compare register CCR0 are equal (or if the timer value is greater than the CCR0 value), the timer restarts counting from zero.

Figure 10–5. Timer Up Mode



Flag CCIFG0 is set when the timer equals the CCR0 value. The TAIFG flag is set when the timer *counts* from CCR0 to zero. All interrupt flags are set independently of the corresponding interrupt enable bit, but an interrupt is requested only if the corresponding interrupt enable bit and the GIE bit are set. Figure 10–6 shows the flag set cycle.

Figure 10–6. Up Mode Flag Setting



10.3.2.1 Timer in Up Mode—Changing the Period Register CCR0 Value

Changing the timer period register CCR0 while the timer is running can be a little tricky. When the new period is greater than or equal to the old period, the timer simply *counts* up to the new period and no special attention is required (see Figure 10–7). However, when the new period is less than the old period, the phase of the timer clock during the CCR0 update affects how the timer reacts to the new period.

If the new, smaller period is written to CCR0 during a high phase of the timer clock, then the timer rolls to zero (or begins counting down when in the up/down mode) on the next rising edge of the timer clock. However, if the new, smaller period is written during a low phase of the timer clock, then the timer continues to increment with the old period for one more clock cycle before adopting the new period and rolling to zero (or beginning counting down). This is shown in Figure 10–8.

Figure 10–7. New Period > Old Period

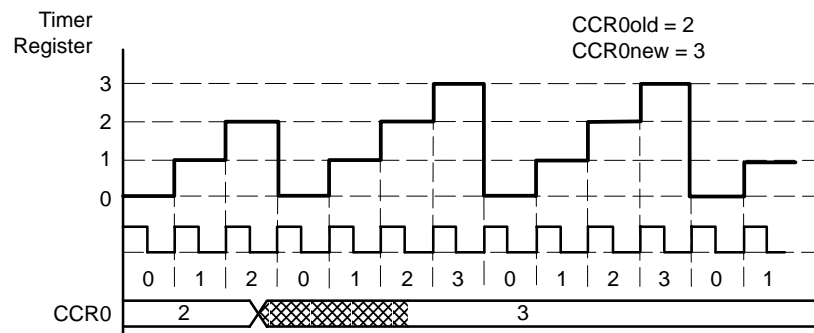
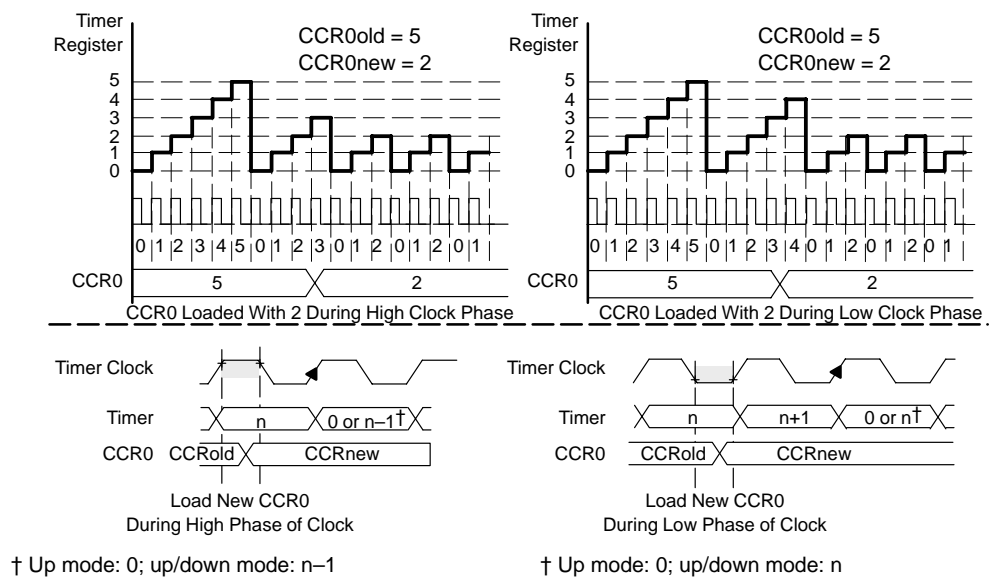


Figure 10–8. New Period < Old Period



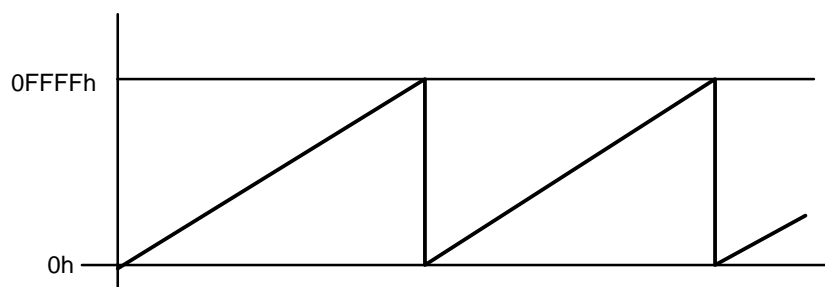
10.3.3 Timer—Continuous Mode

The continuous mode is used if the timer period of 65,536 clock cycles is used for the application. A typical application of the continuous mode is to generate multiple, independent timings. In continuous mode, the capture/compare register CCR0 works in the same way as the other compare registers.

The capture/compare registers and different output modes of each output unit are useful to capture timer data based on external events or to generate various different types of output signals. Examples of the different output modes used with timer-continuous mode are shown in Figure 10–25.

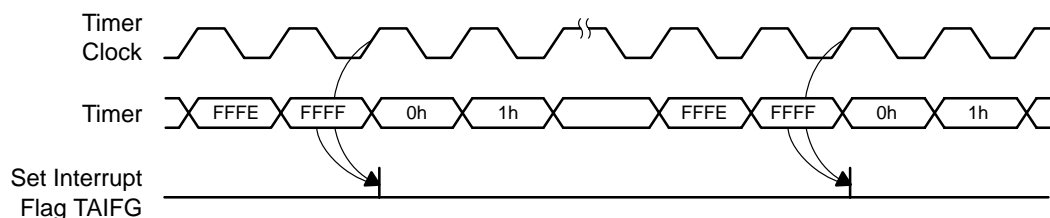
In continuous mode, the timer starts counting from its present value. The counter counts up to 0FFFFh and restarts by counting from zero as shown in Figure 10–9.

Figure 10–9. Timer—Continuous Mode



The TAIFG flag is set when the timer *counts* from 0FFFFh to zero. The interrupt flag is set independently of the corresponding interrupt enable bit, as shown in Figure 10–10. An interrupt is requested if the corresponding interrupt enable bit and the GIE bit are set.

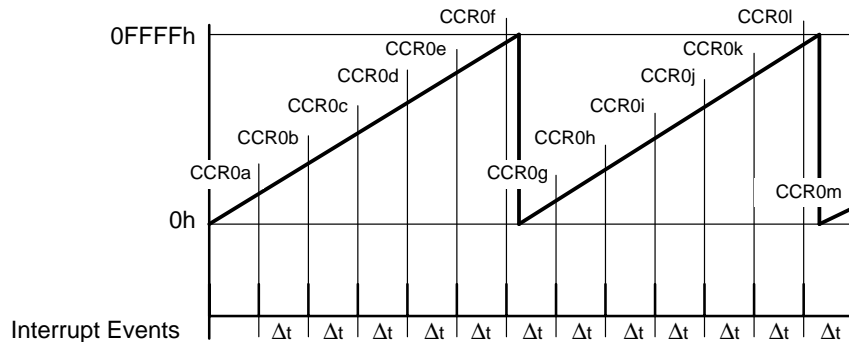
Figure 10–10. Continuous Mode Flag Setting



10.3.3.1 Timer—Use of the Continuous Mode

The continuous mode can be used to generate time intervals for the application software. Each time an interval is completed, an interrupt can be generated. In the interrupt service routine of this event, the time until the next event is added to capture/compare register CCRx as shown in Figure 10–11. Up to five independent time events can be generated using all five capture/compare blocks.

Figure 10–11. Output Unit in Continuous Mode for Time Intervals

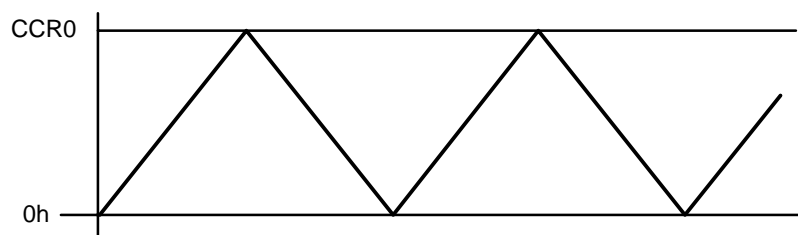


Time intervals can be produced with other modes as well, where CCR0 is used as the period register. Their handling is more complex since the sum of the old CCRx data and the new period can be higher than the CCR0 value. When the sum CCRxold plus Δt is greater than the CCR0 data, the CCR0 value must be subtracted to obtain the correct time interval. The period is twice the value in the CCR0 register.

10.3.4 Timer—Up/Down Mode

The up/down mode is used if the timer period must be different from the 65,536 clock cycles, and if symmetrical pulse waveform generation is needed. In up/down mode, the timer counts up to the content of compare register CCR0, then back down to zero, as shown in Figure 10–12. The period is twice the value in the CCR0 register.

Figure 10–12. Timer Up/Down Mode



The up/down mode also supports applications that require dead times between output signals. For example, to avoid overload conditions, two outputs driving an H-bridge must never be in a high state simultaneously. In the following example (see Figure 10–13), the t_{dead} is:

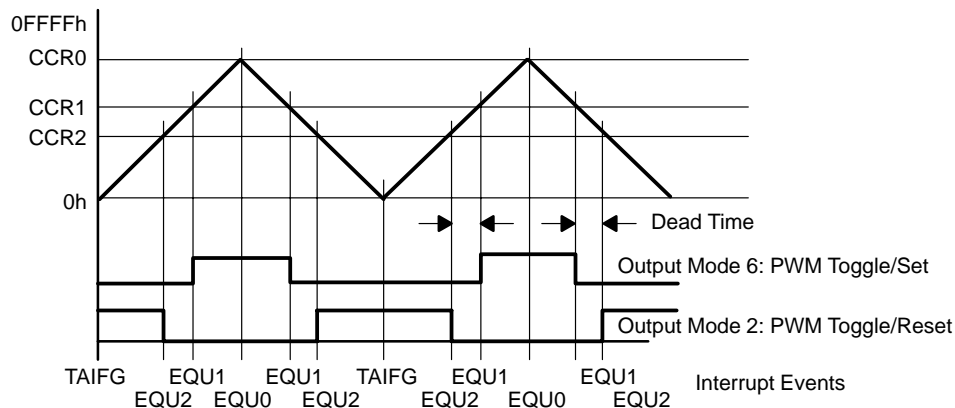
$$t_{dead} = t_{timer} \times (CCR1 - CCR2) =$$

With: t_{dead} Time during which both outputs need to be inactive

t_{timer} Cycle time of the timer clock

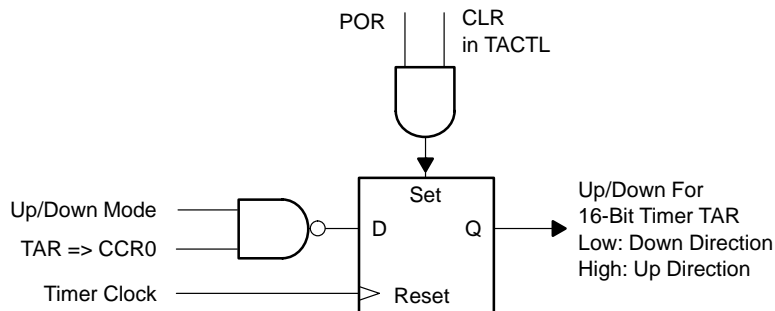
CCRx Content of capture/compare register x

Figure 10–13. Output Unit in Up/Down Mode (II)



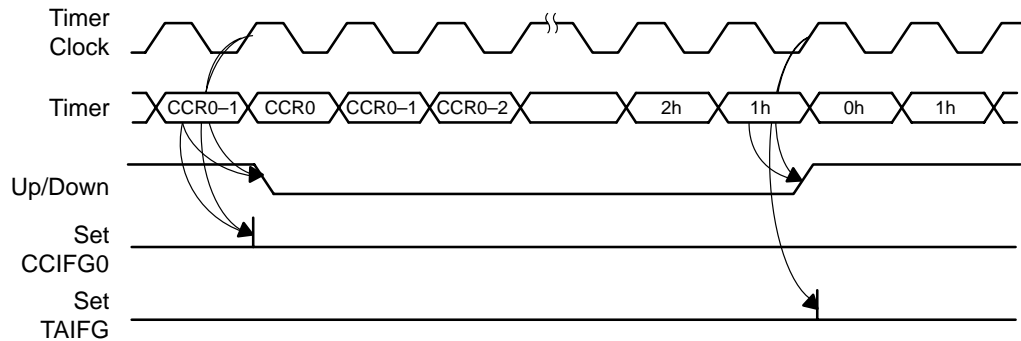
The count direction is always latched with a flip-flop (Figure 10–14). This is useful because it allows the user to stop the timer and then restart it in the same direction it was counting before it was stopped. For example, if the timer was counting down when the MCx bits were reset, then it will continue counting in the down direction if it is restarted in up/down mode. If this is not desired, the CLR bit in the TACTL register must be used to clear the direction. Note that the CLR bit affects other setup conditions of the timer. Refer to Section 10.6 for a discussion of the Timer_A registers.

Figure 10–14. Timer Up/Down Direction Control



In up/down mode, the interrupt flags (CCIFG0 and TAIFG) are set at equal time intervals (Figure 10–15). Each flag is set only once during the period, but they are separated by 1/2 the timer period. CCIFG0 is set when the timer *counts* from CCR0–1 to CCR0, and TAIFG is set when the timer completes *counting* down from 0001h to 0000h. Each flag is capable of producing a CPU interrupt when enabled.

Figure 10–15. Up/Down Mode Flag Setting

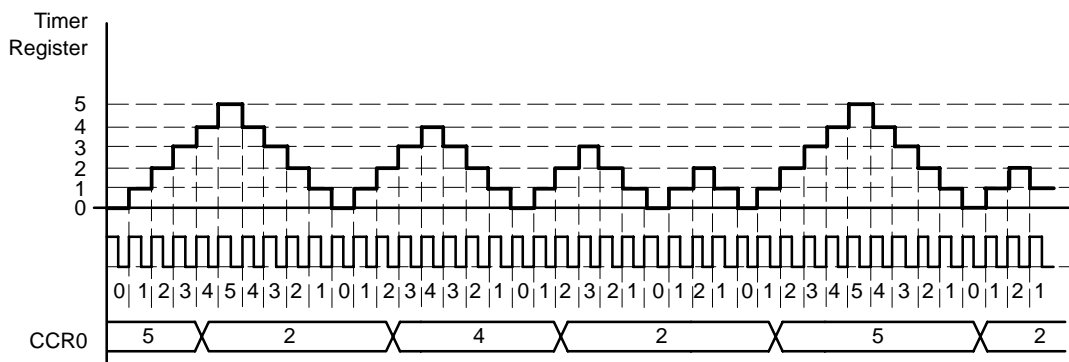


10.3.4.1 Timer In Up/Down Mode—Changing the Value of Period Register CCR0

Changing the period value while the timer is running in up/down mode is even trickier than in up mode. Like in up mode, the phase of the timer clock when CCR0 is changed affects the timer's behavior. Additionally, in up/down mode, the direction of the timer also affects the behavior.

If the timer is counting in the up direction when the new period is written to CCR0, the conditions in the up/down mode are identical to those in the up mode. See Section 10.3.2.1 for details. However, if the timer is counting in the down direction when CCR0 is updated, it continues its descent until it reaches zero. The new period takes effect only after the counter finishes counting down to zero. See Figure 10–16.

Figure 10–16. Altering CCR0—Timer in Up/Down Mode



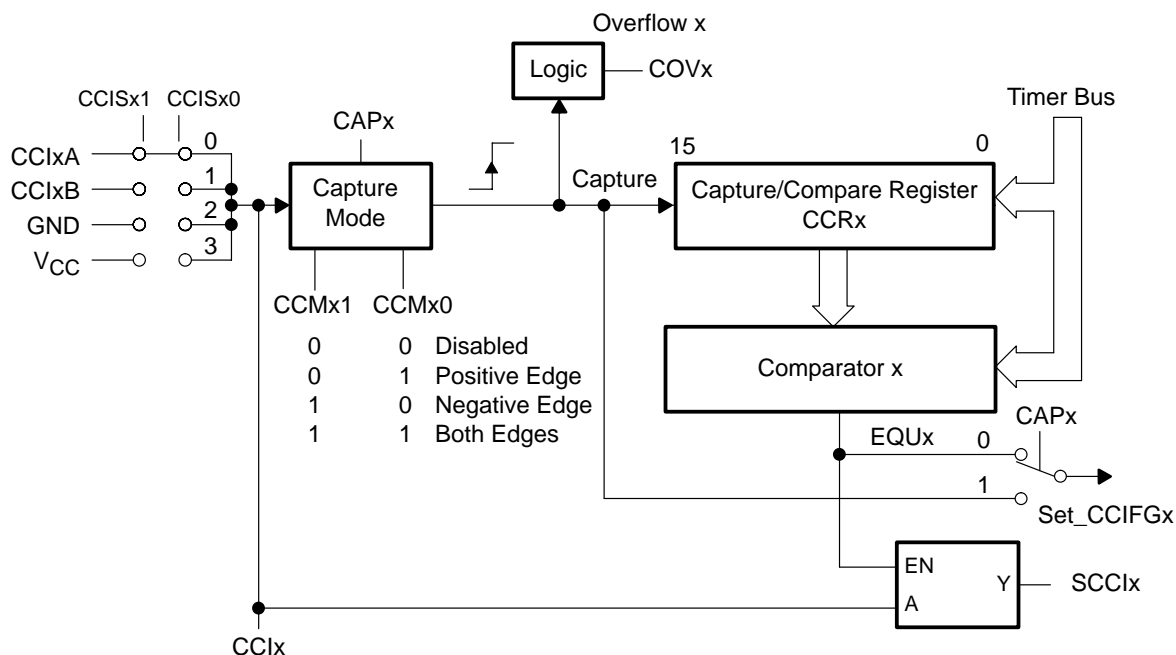
10.4 Capture/Compare Blocks

Three or five (depending on device) identical capture/compare blocks (shown in Figure 10–17) provide flexible control for real-time processing. Any one of the blocks may be used to capture the timer data at an applied event, or to generate time intervals. Each time a capture occurs or a time interval is completed, interrupts can be generated from the applicable capture/compare register. The mode bit CAPx, in control word CCTLx, selects the compare or capture operation and the capture mode bits CCMx1 and CCMx0 in control word CCTLx define the conditions under which the capture function is performed.

Both the interrupt enable bit CCIEx and the interrupt flag CCIFGx are used for capture and compare modes. CCIEx enables the corresponding interrupt. CCIFGx is set on a capture or compare event.

The capture inputs CCIxA and CCIxB are connected to external pins or internal signals. MSP430x1xx devices may have different signals connected to CCIxA and CCIxB. The data sheet should always be consulted to determine the Timer_A connections for a particular device.

Figure 10–17. Capture/Compare Blocks



10.4.1 Capture/Compare Block—Capture Mode

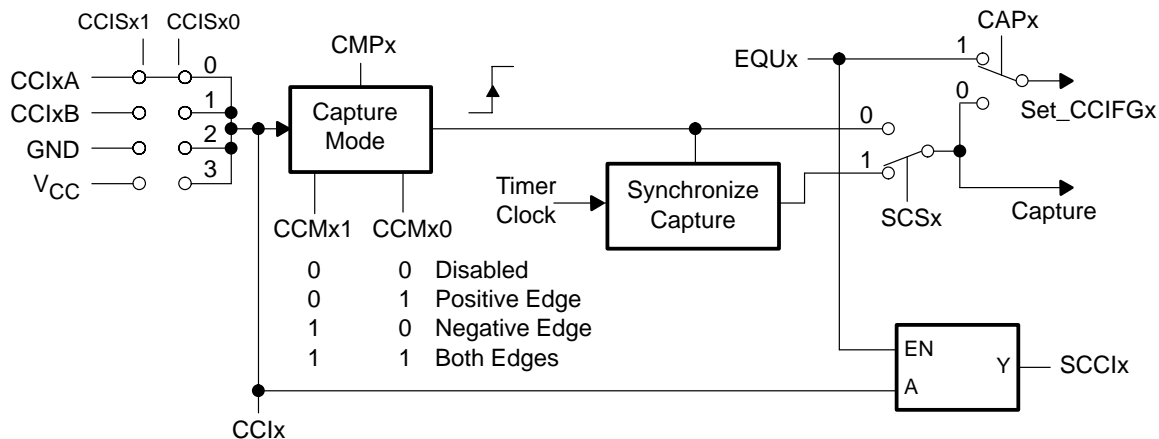
The capture mode is selected if the mode bit CAPx, located in control word CCTLx, is set. The capture mode is used to fix time events. It can be used for speed computations or time measurements. The timer value is copied into the capture register (CCRx) with the selected edge (positive, negative, or both) of the input signal. Captures may also be initiated by software as described in section 10.4.1.1.

If a capture is performed:

- ☐ The interrupt flag CCIFGx, located in control word CCTLx, is set.
- ☐ An interrupt is requested if both interrupt enable bits CCIEx and GIE are set.

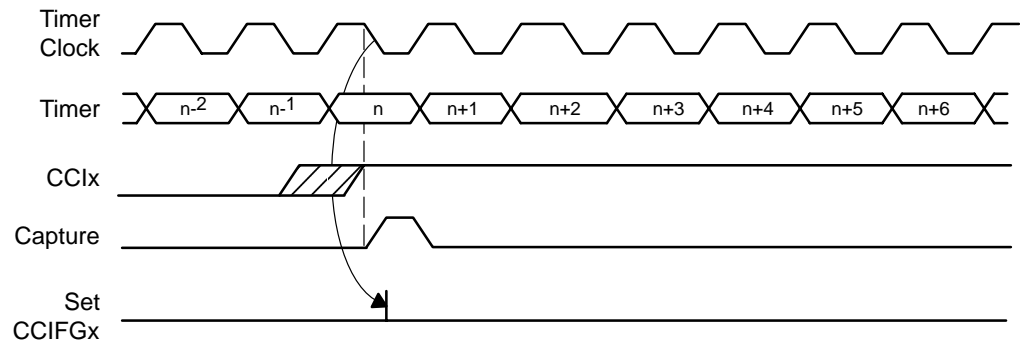
The input signal to the capture/compare block is selected using control bits CCISx1 and CCISx0, as shown in Figure 10–18. The input signal can be read at any time by the software by reading bit CCIx. The input signal may also be latched with compare signal EQUx (see SCSx bit below) when in compare mode. This feature was designed specifically to support implementing serial communications with Timer_A. See section 10.7 for more details on using Timer_A as a UART.

Figure 10–18. Capture Logic Input Signal



The capture signal can also be synchronized with the timer clock to avoid race conditions between the timer data and the capture signal. This is illustrated in Figure 10–19. The bit SCSx in capture/compare control register CCTLx selects the capture signal synchronization.

Figure 10–19. Capture Signal



Applications with slow timer clocks can use the nonsynchronized capture signal. In this scenario the software can validate the data and correct it if necessary as shown in the following example:

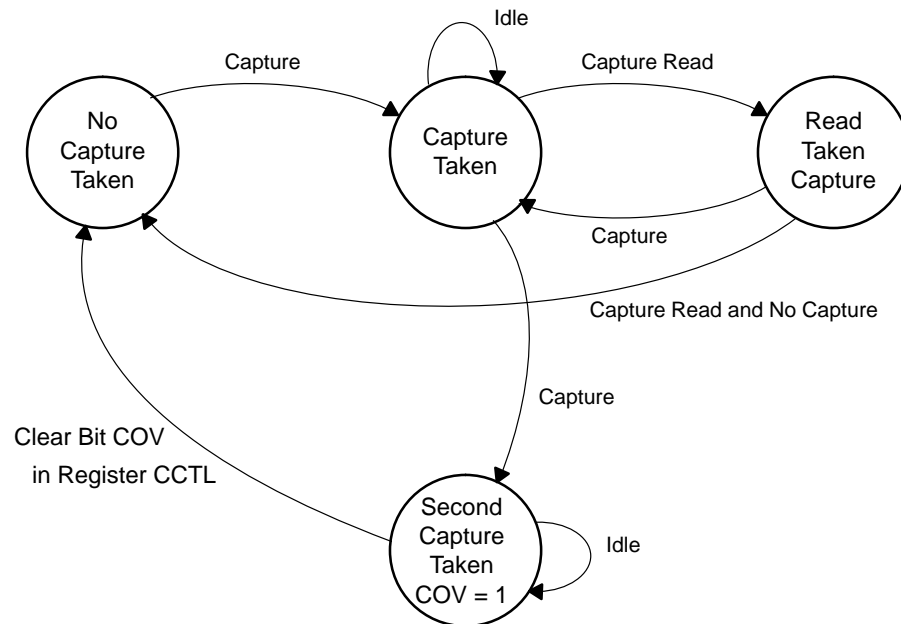
```

; Software example for the handling of asynchronous
; capture signals
;
; The data of the capture/compare register CCRx are taken
; by the software in the according interrupt routine
; - they are taken only after a CCIFG was set.
; The timer clock is much slower than the system clock
; SMCLK.
;
CCRx_Int_hand...           ; Start of interrupt
                           ; handler
...
...
CMP    &CCRx,&TAR          ; Test if the data
                           ; CCRX = TAR
JEQ    Data_Valid
MOV    &TAR,&CCRx          ; The data in CCRx is
                           ; wrong, use the timer data
Data_Valid ...             ; The data in CCRx are valid
...
...
RETI
;

```

Overflow logic is provided with each capture/compare register to flag the user if a second capture is performed before data from the first capture was read successfully. Bit COVx in register CCTLx is set when this occurs as shown in Figure 10–20.

Figure 10–20. Capture Cycle



Overflow bit COVx is reset by the software as described in the following example:

```

; Software example for the handling of captured data
; looking for overflow condition
;
; The data of the capture/compare register CCRx are taken
; by the software and immediately with the next
; instruction the overflow bit is tested and a decision is
; made to proceed regularly or with an error handler
;
CCRx_Int_hand ... ; Start of handler Interrupt
...
...
MOV    &CCRx,RAM_Buffer
BIT    #COV,&CCTLx
JNZ    Overflow_Hand
...
...
...
RETI
Overflow_Hand BIC    #COV,&CCTLx ; reset capture
                                ; overflow flag
                                ; get back to lost
                                ; synchronization
...
...
; RETI

```

Note: Capture With Timer Halted

The capture should be disabled when the timer is halted. The sequence to follow is: stop the capture, then stop the timer. When the capture function is restarted, the sequence should be: start the capture, then start the timer.

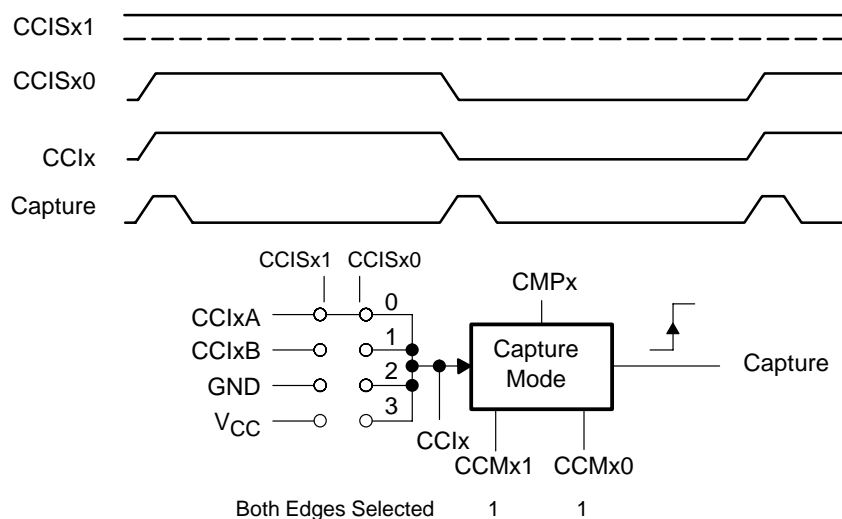
10.4.1.1 Capture/Compare Block, Capture Mode—Capture Initiated by Software

In addition to internal and external signals, captures can be initiated by software. This is useful for various purposes, such as:

- ☐ To measure time used by software routines
- ☐ To measure time between hardware events
- ☐ To measure the system frequency

Two bits, CCISx1 and CCISx0, and the capture mode selected by bits CCMx1 and CCMx0 are used by the software to initiate the capture. The simplest realization is when the capture mode is selected to capture on both edges of CCIx and bit CCISx1 is set. Software then toggles bit CCISx0 to switch the capture signal between V_{CC} and GND, initiating a capture each time the input is toggled, as shown in Figure 10–21.

Figure 10–21. Software Capture Example



The following is a software example of a capture performed by software:

```
; The data of capture/compare register CCRx are taken
; by the software. It is assumed that CCMx1, CCMx0, and
; CCISx1 bits are set. Bit CCIS0 selects the CCIx
; signal to be high or low.
;
...
...
XOR    #CCISx0, &CCTLx
...
...
...
```

10.4.2 Capture/Compare Block—Compare Mode

The compare mode is selected if the CAPx bit, located in control word CCTLx, is reset. In compare mode all the capture hardware circuitry is inactive and the capture-mode overflow logic is inactive.

The compare mode is most often used to generate interrupts at specific time intervals or used in conjunction with the output unit to generate output signals such as PWM signals. If the timer becomes equal to the value in compare register x, then:

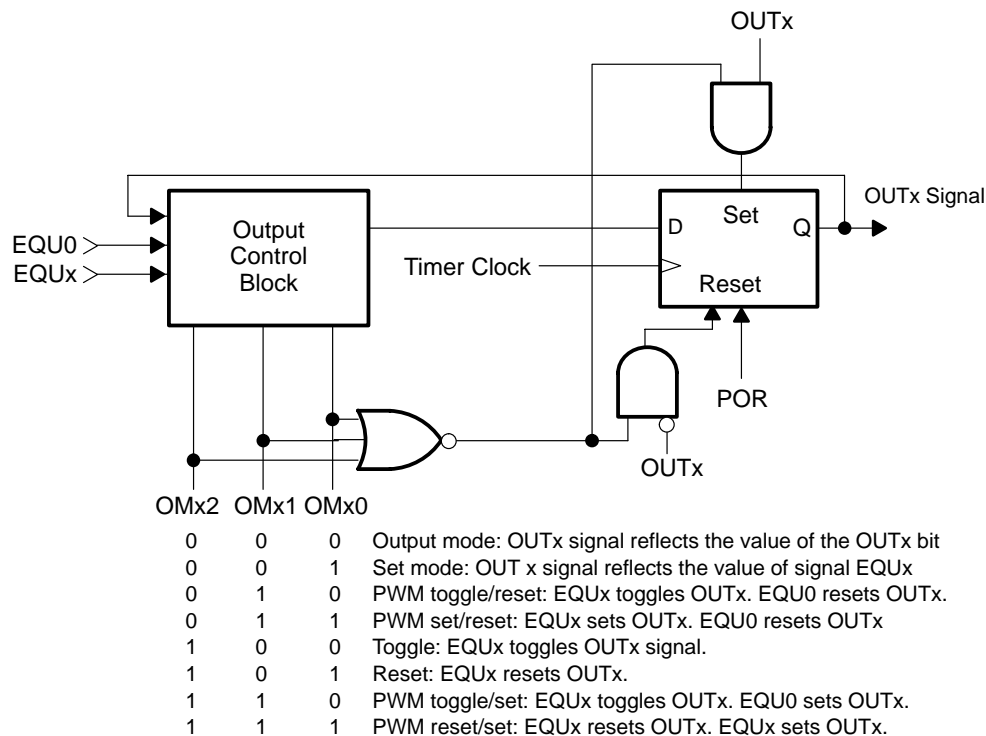
- ☐ Interrupt flag CCIFGx, located in control word CCTLx, is set.
- ☐ An interrupt is requested if interrupt enable bits CCIEx and GIE are set.
- ☐ Signal EQUx is output to the output unit. This signal affects the output OUTx, depending on the selected output mode.

The EQU0 signal is true when the timer value is greater or equal to the CCR0 value. The EQU1 to EQU4 signals are true when the timer value is equal to the corresponding CCR1 to CCR4 values.

10.5 The Output Unit

Each capture/compare block contains an output unit shown in Figure 10–22. The output unit is used to generate output signals such as PWM signals. Each output unit has 8 operating modes that can generate a variety of signals based on the EQU0 and EQUx signals. The output mode is selected with the Omx bits located in the CCTLx register.

Figure 10–22. Output Unit



Note: OUTx signal updates with rising edge of timer clock for all modes except mode 0.
Modes 2, 3, 6, 7 not useful for output unit 0.

10.5.1 Output Unit—Output Modes

The output modes are defined by the OMx bits and are discussed below. The OUTx signal is changed with the rising edge of the timer clock for all modes except mode 0. Output modes 2, 3, 6, and 7 are not useful for output unit 0.

Output mode 0: Output mode:

The output signal OUTx is defined by the OUTx bit in control register CCTLx. The OUTx signal updates immediately upon completion of writing the bit information.

Output mode 1: Set mode:

The output is set when the timer value becomes equal to capture/compare data CCRx. It remains set until a reset of the timer, or until another output mode is selected that controls the output.

Output mode 2: PWM toggle/reset mode:

The output is toggled when the timer value becomes equal to capture/compare data CCRx. It is reset when the timer value becomes equal to CCR0.

Output mode 3: PWM set/reset mode:

The output is set when the timer value becomes equal to capture/compare data CCRx. It is reset when the timer value becomes equal to CCR0.

Output mode 4: Toggle mode:

The output is toggled when the timer value becomes equal to capture/compare data CCRx. The output period is double the timer period.

Output mode 5: Reset mode:

The output is reset when the timer value becomes equal to capture/compare data CCRx. It remains reset until another output mode is selected that controls the output.

Output mode 6: PWM toggle/set mode:

The output is toggled when the timer value becomes equal to capture/compare data CCRx. It is set when the timer value becomes equal to CCR0.

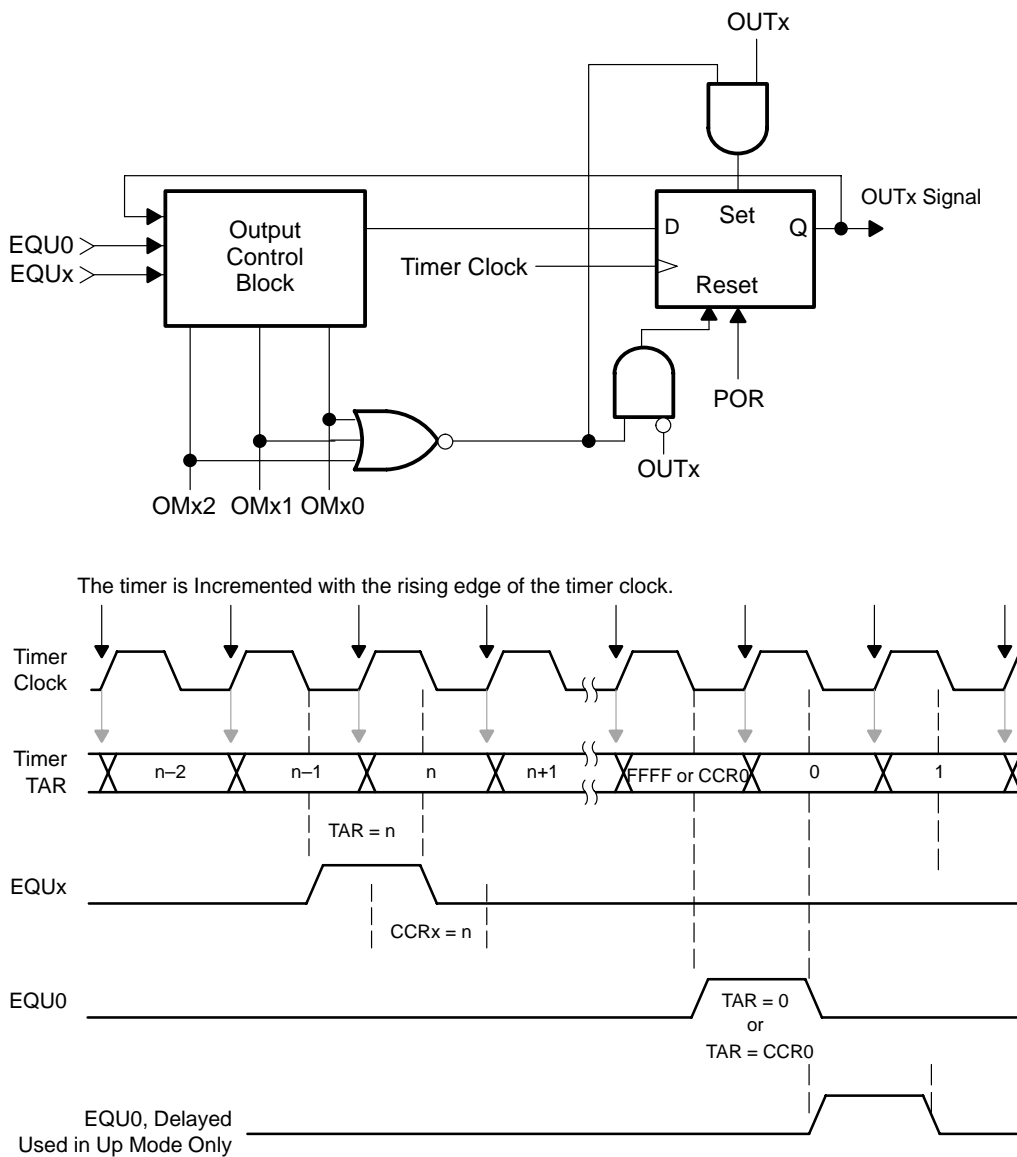
Output mode 7: PWM toggle/set mode:

The output is reset when the timer value becomes equal to capture/compare data CCRx. It is set when the timer value becomes equal to CCR0.

10.5.2 Output Control Block

The output control block prepares the value of the OUTx signal, which is latched into the OUTx flip-flop with the next positive timer clock edge, as shown in Figure 10–23 and Table 10–2. The equal signals EQUx and EQU0 are sampled during the negative level of the timer clock, as shown in Figure 10–23.

Figure 10–23. Output Control Block



EQU0 delayed is used in up mode, not EQU0. EQU0 is active high when TAR = CCR0. EQU0 delayed is active high when TAR = 0.

Table 10–2. State of OUTx at Next Rising Edge of Timer Clock

Mode	EQU0	EQUx	D
0	x	x	x(OUTx bit)
1	x	0	OUTx (no change)
	x	1	1 (set)
2	0	0	OUTx (no change)
	0	1	OUTx (toggle)
	1	0	0 (reset)
	1	1	1 (set)
3	0	0	OUTx (no change)
	0	1	1 (set)
	1	0	0 (reset)
	1	1	1 (set)
4	x	0	OUTx (no change)
	x	1	OUTx (toggle)
5	x	0	OUTx (no change)
	x	1	0 (reset)
6	0	0	OUTx (no change)
	0	1	OUTx (toggle)
	1	0	1 (set)
	1	1	0 (reset)
7	0	0	OUTx (no change)
	0	1	0 (reset)
	1	0	1 (set)
	1	1	0 (reset)

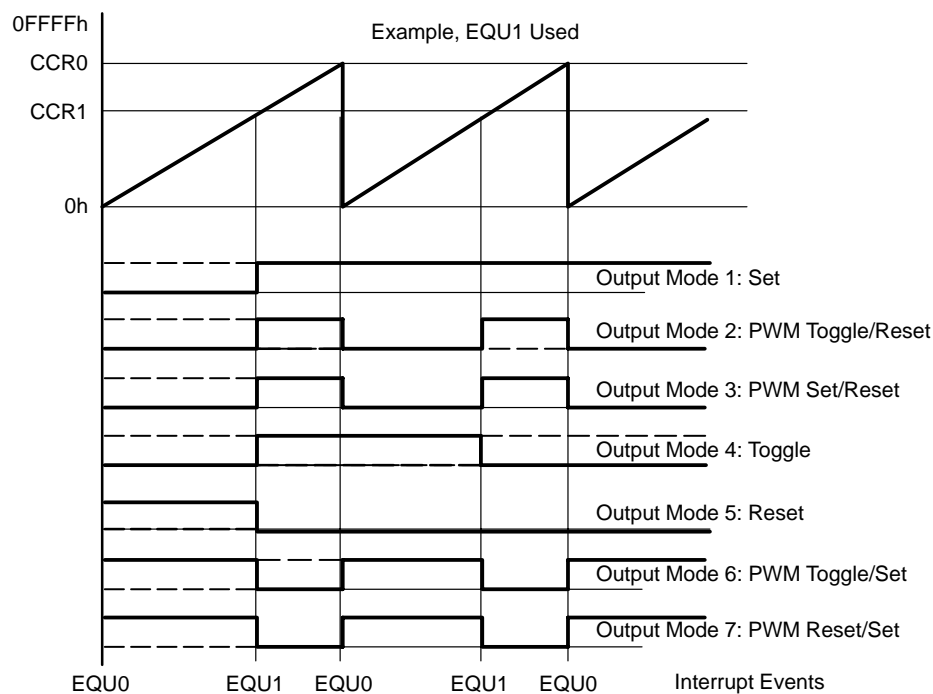
10.5.3 Output Examples

The following are some examples of possible output signals using the various timer and output modes.

10.5.3.1 Output Examples—Timer in Up Mode

The OUTx signal is changed when the timer *counts* up to the CCRx value, and rolls from CCR0 to zero, depending on the output mode, as shown in Figure 10–24.

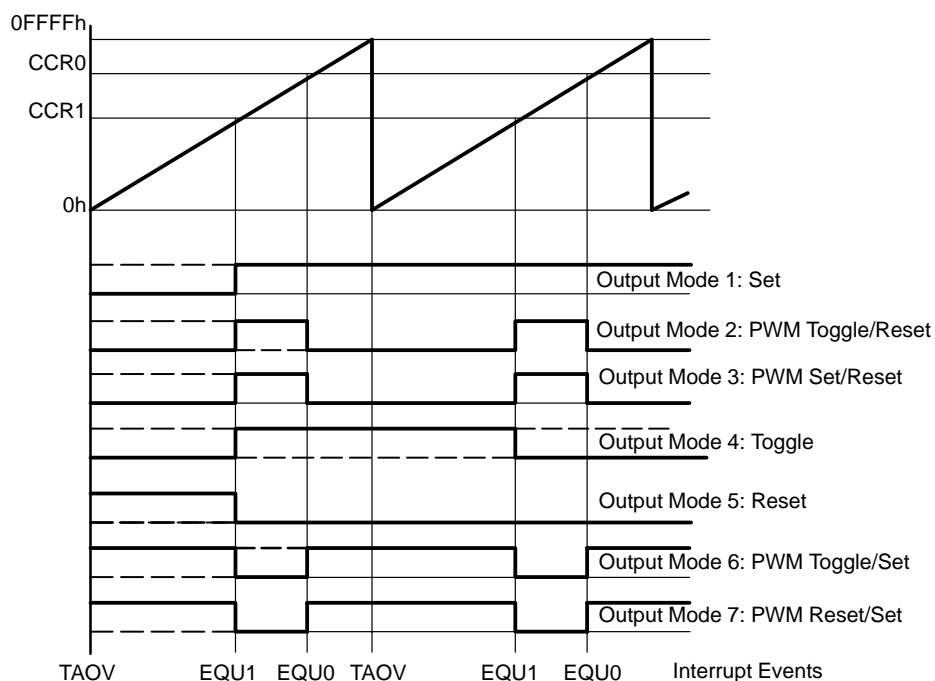
Figure 10–24. Output Examples—Timer in Up Mode



10.5.3.2 Output Examples—Timer in Continuous Mode

The OUTx signal is changed when the timer reaches the CCRx and CCR0 values, depending on the output mode, as shown in Figure 10–25.

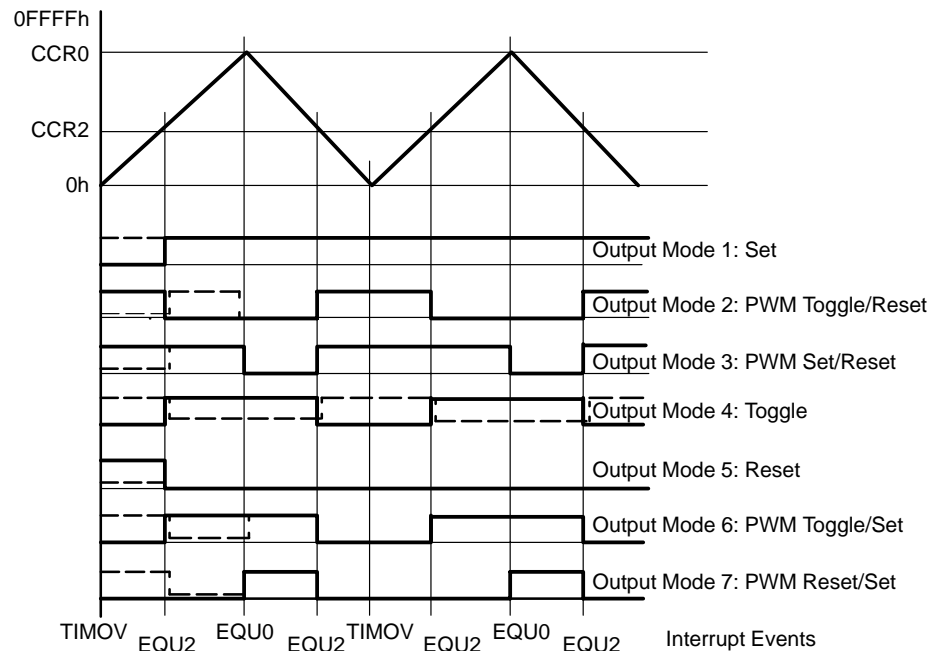
Figure 10–25. Output Examples—Timer in Continuous Mode



10.5.3.3 Output Examples—Timer in Up/Down Mode

The OUTx signal changes when the timer equals CCRx in either count direction and when the timer equals CCR0, depending on the output mode, as shown in Figure 10–26.

Figure 10–26. Output Examples—Timer in Up/Down Mode (I)



10.6 Timer_A Registers

The Timer_A registers, described in Table 10–3, are word-structured and must be accessed using word instructions.

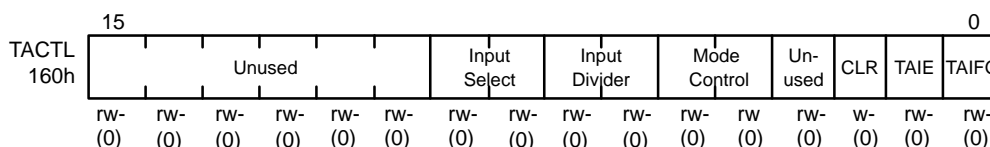
Table 10–3. Timer_A Registers

Register	Short Form	Register Type	Address	Initial State
Timer_A control	TACTL	Read/write	160h	POR reset
Timer_A register	TAR	Read/write	170h	POR reset
Cap/com control 0	CCTL0	Read/write	162h	POR reset
Capture/compare 0	CCR0	Read/write	172h	POR reset
Cap/com control 1	CCTL1	Read/write	164h	POR reset
Capture/compare 1	CCR1	Read/write	174h	POR reset
Cap/com control 2	CCTL2	Read/write	166h	POR reset
Capture/compare 2	CCR2	Read/write	176h	POR reset

10.6.1 Timer_A Control Register TACTL

The timer and timer operation control bits are located in the timer control register (TACTL) shown in Figure 10–27. All control bits are reset automatically by the POR signal, but are not affected by the PUC signal. The control register must be accessed using word instructions.

Figure 10–27. Timer_A Control Register TACTL



- Bit 0: TAIFG: This flag indicates a timer overflow event.
 Up mode: TAIFG is set if the timer *counts* from CCR0 value to 0000h.
 Continuous mode: TAIFG is set if the timer *counts* from 0FFFFh to 0000h.
 Up/down mode: TAIFG is set if the timer *counts* down from 0001h to 0000h.
- Bit 1: Timer overflow interrupt enable (TAIE) bit. An interrupt request from the timer overflow bit is enabled if this bit is set, and is disabled if reset.
- Bit 2: Timer clear (CLR) bit. The timer and input divider are reset with the POR signal, or if bit CLR is set. The CLR bit is automatically reset and is always read as zero. The timer starts in the upward direction with the next valid clock edge, unless halted by cleared mode control bits.
- Bit 3: Not used
- Bits 4, 5: Mode control: Table 10–4 describes the mode control bits.

Table 10–4. Mode Control

MC1	MC0	Count Mode	Description
0	0	Stop	Timer is halted.
0	1	Up to CCR0	Timer counts up to CCR0 and restarts at 0.
1	0	Continuous up	Timer counts up to 0FFFFh and restarts at 0.
1	1	Up/down	Timer continuously <i>counts</i> up to CCR0 and back down to 0.

Bits 6, 7: Input divider control bits. Table 10–5 describes the input divider control bits.

Table 10–5. Input Clock Divider Control Bits

ID1	ID0	Operation	Description
0	0	/1	Input clock source is passed to the timer.
0	1	/2	Input clock source is divided by two.
1	0	/4	Input clock source is divided by four.
1	1	/8	Input clock source is divided by eight.

Bits 8, 9: Clock source selection bits. Table 10–6 describes the clock source selections.

Table 10–6. Clock Source Selection

SSEL1	SSEL0	O/P Signal	Comment
0	0	TACLK	See data sheet device description.
0	1	ACLK	Auxiliary clock ACLK is used.
1	0	SMCLK	System clock SMCLK.
1	1	INCLK	See device description in data sheet.

Bits 10 to 15: Unused

Note: Changing Timer_A Control Bits

If the timer operation is modified by the control bits in the TACTL register, the timer should be halted during this modification. Critical modifications are the input select bits, input divider bits, and the timer clear bit. Asynchronous clocks, input clock, and system clock can result in race conditions where the timer reacts unpredictably.

The recommended instruction flow is:

- 1) Modify the control register and stop the timer.
- 2) Start the timer operation.

For example:

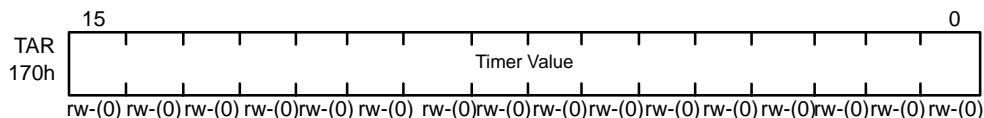
MOV #01C6,&TACTL ; ACLK/8, timer stopped, timer cleared

BIS #10h,&TACTL ; Start timer with up mode

10.6.2 Timer_A Register TAR

The TAR register is the value of the timer.

Figure 10–28. TAR Register



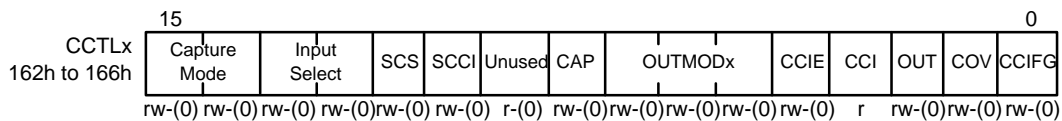
Note: Modifying Timer_A Register TAR

When ACLK, SMCLK, or the external clock TACLK or INCLK is selected for the timer clock, any write to timer register TAR should occur while the timer is not operating; otherwise, the results may be unpredictable. In this case, the timer clock is asynchronous to the CPU clock MCLK and critical race conditions exist.

10.6.3 Capture/Compare Control Register CCTLx

Each capture/compare block has its own control word CCTLx, shown in Figure 10–29. The POR signal resets all bits of CCTLx; the PUC signal does not affect these bits.

Figure 10–29. Capture/Compare Control Register CCTLx



Bit 0: Capture/compare interrupt flag CCIFGx

Capture mode:

If set, it indicates that a timer value was captured in the CCRx register.

Compare mode:

If set, it indicates that a timer value was equal to the data in the CCRx register.

CCIFG0 flag:

CCIFG0 is automatically reset when the interrupt request is accepted.

CCIFG1 to CCIFG4 flags:

The flag that caused the interrupt is automatically reset after the TAIV word is accessed. If the TAIV register is not accessed, the flags must be reset with software.

No interrupt is generated if the corresponding interrupt enable bit is reset, but the flag will be set. In this scenario, the flag must be reset by the software.

Setting the CCIFGx flag with software will request an interrupt if the interrupt-enable bit is set.

Bit 1: Capture overflow flag COV

Compare mode selected, CAP = 0:

Capture signal generation is reset. No compare event will set COV bit.

Capture mode selected, CAP = 1:

The overflow flag COV is set if a second capture is performed before the first capture value is read. The overflow flag must be reset with software. It is not reset by reading the capture value.

Bit 2: The OUTx bit determines the value of the OUTx signal if the output mode is 0.

- Bit 3: Capture/compare input signal CCIx:
The selected input signal (CCIxA, CCIxB, V_{CC} , or GND) can be read by this bit. See Figure 10–18.
- Bit 4: Interrupt enable CCIEx: Enables or disables the interrupt request signal of capture/compare block x. Note that the GIE bit must also be set to enable the interrupt.
0: Interrupt disabled
1: Interrupt enabled
- Bits 5 to 7: Output mode select bits:
Table 10–7 describes the output mode selections.

Table 10–7. Capture/Compare Control Register Output Mode

Bit Value	Output Mode	Description
0	Output only	The OUTx signal reflects the value of the OUTx bit
1	Set	EQUx sets OUTx
2	PWM toggle/reset	EQUx toggles OUTx. EQU0 resets OUTx.
3	PWM set/reset	EQUx sets OUTx. EQU0 resets OUTx
4	Toggle	EQUx toggles OUTx signal.
5	Reset	EQUx resets OUTx.
6	PWM toggle/set	EQUx toggles OUTx. EQU0 sets OUTx.
7	PWM reset/set	EQUx resets OUTx. EQU0 sets OUTx.

Note: OUTx updates with rising edge of timer clock for all modes except mode 0. Modes 2, 3, 6, 7 not useful for output unit 0.

- Bit 8: CAP sets capture or compare mode.
0: Compare mode
1: Capture mode
- Bit 9: Read only, always read as 0.
- Bit 10: SCCIx bit:
The selected input signal (CCIxA, CCIxB, V_{CC} , or GND) is latched with the EQUx signal into a transparent latch and can be read via this bit.
- Bit 11: SCSx bit:
This bit is used to synchronize the capture input signal with the timer clock.
0: asynchronous capture
1: synchronous capture
- Bits 12, 13: Input select, CCIS0 and CCIS1:
These two bits define the capture signal source. These bits are not used in compare mode.
0 Input CCIxA is selected
1 Input CCIxB is selected
2 GND
3 V_{CC}

Bits 14, 15: Capture mode bits:

Table 10–8 describes the capture mode selections.

Table 10–8. Capture/Compare Control Register Capture Mode

Bit Value	Capture Mode	Description
0	Disabled	The capture mode is disabled.
1	Positive Edge	Capture is done with rising edge.
2	Negative Edge	Capture is done with falling edge.
3	Both Edges	Capture is done with both rising and falling edges.

Note: Simultaneous Capture and Capture Mode Selection

Captures must not be performed simultaneously with switching from compare to capture mode. Otherwise, the result in the capture/compare register will be unpredictable.

The recommended instruction flow is:

1) Modify the control register to switch from compare to capture.

2) Capture

For example:

BIS #CAP,&CCTL2 ; Select capture with register CCR2

XOR #CCIS1,&CCTL2 ; Software capture: CCIS0 = 0

; Capture mode = 3

10.6.4 Timer_A Interrupt Vector Register

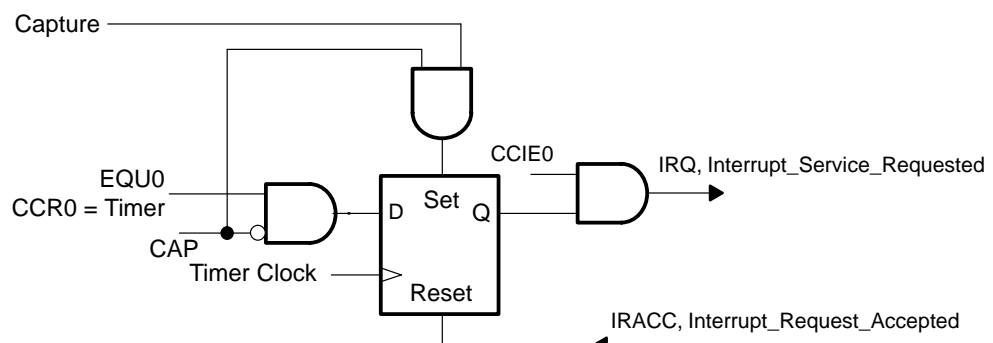
Two interrupt vectors are associated with the 16-bit Timer_A module:

- ☐ CCR0 interrupt vector (highest priority)
- ☐ TAIV interrupt vector for flags CCIFG1–CCIFGx and TAIFG.

10.6.4.1 CCR0 Interrupt Vector

The interrupt flag associated with capture/compare register CCR0, as shown in Figure 10–30, is set if the timer value is equal to the compare register value.

Figure 10–30. Capture/Compare Interrupt Flag



Capture/compare register 0 has the highest Timer_A interrupt priority, and uses its own interrupt vector.

10.6.4.2 Vector Word, TAIFG, CCIFG1 to CCIFG4 Flags

The CCIFGx (other than CCIFG0) and TAIFG interrupt flags are prioritized and combined to source a single interrupt as shown in Figure 10–31. The interrupt vector register TAIV (shown in Figure 10–32) is used to determine which flag requested an interrupt.

Figure 10–31. Schematic of Capture/Compare Interrupt Vector Word

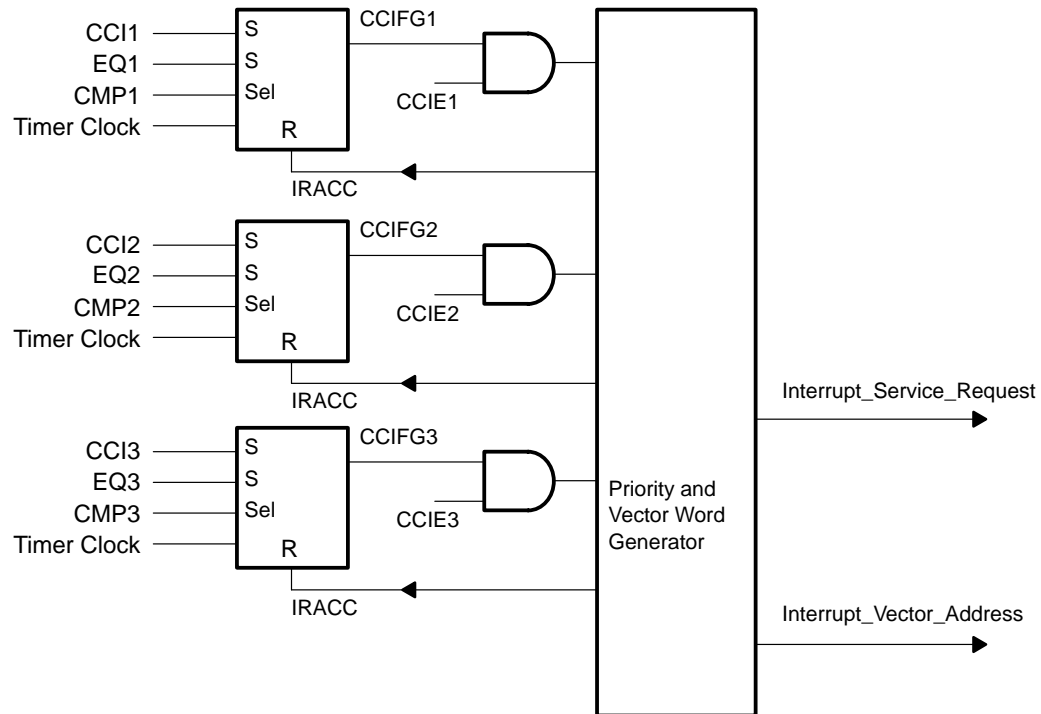
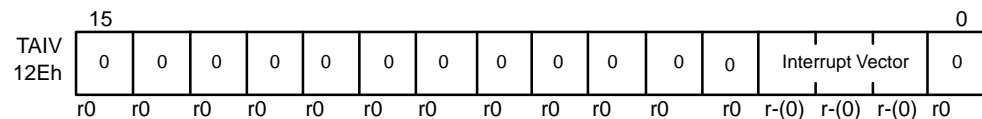


Figure 10–32. Vector Word Register



The flag with the highest priority generates a number from 2 to 12 in the TAIV register as shown in Table 10–9. (If the value of the TAIV register is 0, no interrupt is pending.) This number can be added to the program counter to automatically enter the appropriate software routine without the need for reading and evaluating the interrupt vector. The software example in section 10.6.4.3 shows this technique.

Table 10–9. Vector Register TAIV Description

Interrupt Priority	Interrupt Source	Short Form	Vector Register TAIV Contents
Highest [†]	Capture/compare 1	CCIFG1	2
	Capture/compare 2	CCIFG2	4
	Reserved		6
	Reserved		8
	Timer overflow	TAIFG	10
	Reserved		12
Lowest	Reserved		14
	No interrupt pending		0

[†] Highest pending interrupt other than CCIFG0. CCIFG0 is always the highest priority Timer_A interrupt.

Accessing the TAIV register automatically resets the highest pending interrupt flag. If another interrupt flag is set, then another interrupt will be immediately generated after servicing the initial interrupt. For example, if both CCIFG1 and CCIFG2 are set, when the interrupt service routine accesses the TAIV register (either by reading it or by adding it directly to the PC), CCIFG1 will be reset automatically. After the RETI instruction of the interrupt service routine is executed, the CCIFG2 flag will generate another interrupt.

Note: Writing to Read-Only Register TAIV

Register TAIV should not be written to. If a write operation to TAIV is performed, the interrupt flag of the highest-pending interrupt is reset. Therefore, the requesting interrupt event is missed. Additionally, writing to this read-only register results in increased current consumption as long as the write operation is active.

10.6.4.3 Timer Interrupt Vector Register, Software Example

The following software example describes the use of vector word TAIV and the handling overhead. The numbers at the right margin show the necessary cycles for every instruction. The example is written for continuous mode: the time difference to the next interrupt is added to the corresponding compare register.

```

; Software example for the interrupt part                                Cycles
;
; Interrupt handler for Capture/Compare Module 0.
; The interrupt flag CCIFG0 is reset automatically
;
TIMMOD0    ...                ; Start of handler Interrupt latency 6
            RETI                5
;
; Interrupt handler for Capture/Compare Modules 1 to 4.
; The interrupt flags CCIFGx and TAIFG are reset by
; hardware. Only the flag with the highest priority
; responsible for the interrupt vector word is reset.
TIM_HND    $                  ; Interrupt latency                    6
            ADD    &TAIV,PC    ; Add offset to Jump table          3
            RETI                ; Vector 0: No interrupt            5
            JMP     TIMMOD1     ; Vector 2: Module 1                2

```

```

                                JMP    TIMMOD2      ; Vector 4: Module 2      2
                                RETI                ; Reserved                2
                                RETI                ; Reserved                2
;
; Module 5. Timer Overflow Handler: the Timer Register is
; expanded into the RAM location TIMEXT (MSBs)
;
TIMOVH                          ; Vector 10: TIMOV Flag
                                INC    TIMEXT        ; Handle Timer Overflow    4
                                RETI                5
;
TIMMOD2                         ; Vector 4: Module 2
                                ADD    #NN,&CCR2      ; Add time difference            5
                                ...                ; Task starts here
                                RETI                ; Back to main program      5
;
;
TIMMOD1                         ; Vector 2: Module 1
                                ADD    #MM,&CCR1      ; Add time difference            5
                                ...                ; Task starts here
                                RETI                ; Back to main program      5

```

If the CPU clock MCLK was turned off (CPUOFF=1), then two or three additional cycles need to be added for synchronous start of the CPU. The delta of one clock cycle is caused when clocks are asynchronous to the restart of CPU clock MCLK.

The software overhead for different interrupt sources includes interrupt latency and return-from-interrupt cycles (but not the task handling itself), as described:

- ☐ Capture/compare block CCR0 11 cycles
- ☐ Capture/compare blocks CCR1 to CCR4 16 cycles
- ☐ Timer overflow TAIFG 14 cycles

10.6.4.4 Timing Limits

With the TAIV register and the previous software, the shortest repetitive time distance t_{CRmin} between two events using a compare register is:

$$t_{CRmin} = t_{taskmax} + 16 \times t_{cycle}$$

With: $t_{taskmax}$ Maximum (worst case) time to perform the task during the interrupt routine (for example, incrementing a counter)

t_{cycle} Cycle time of the system frequency MCLK

The shortest repetitive time distance t_{CLmin} between two events using a capture register is:

$$t_{CLmin} = t_{taskmax} + 16 \times t_{cycle}$$

10.7 Timer_A UART

The Timer_A is uniquely capable of implementing a UART function, with the following features:

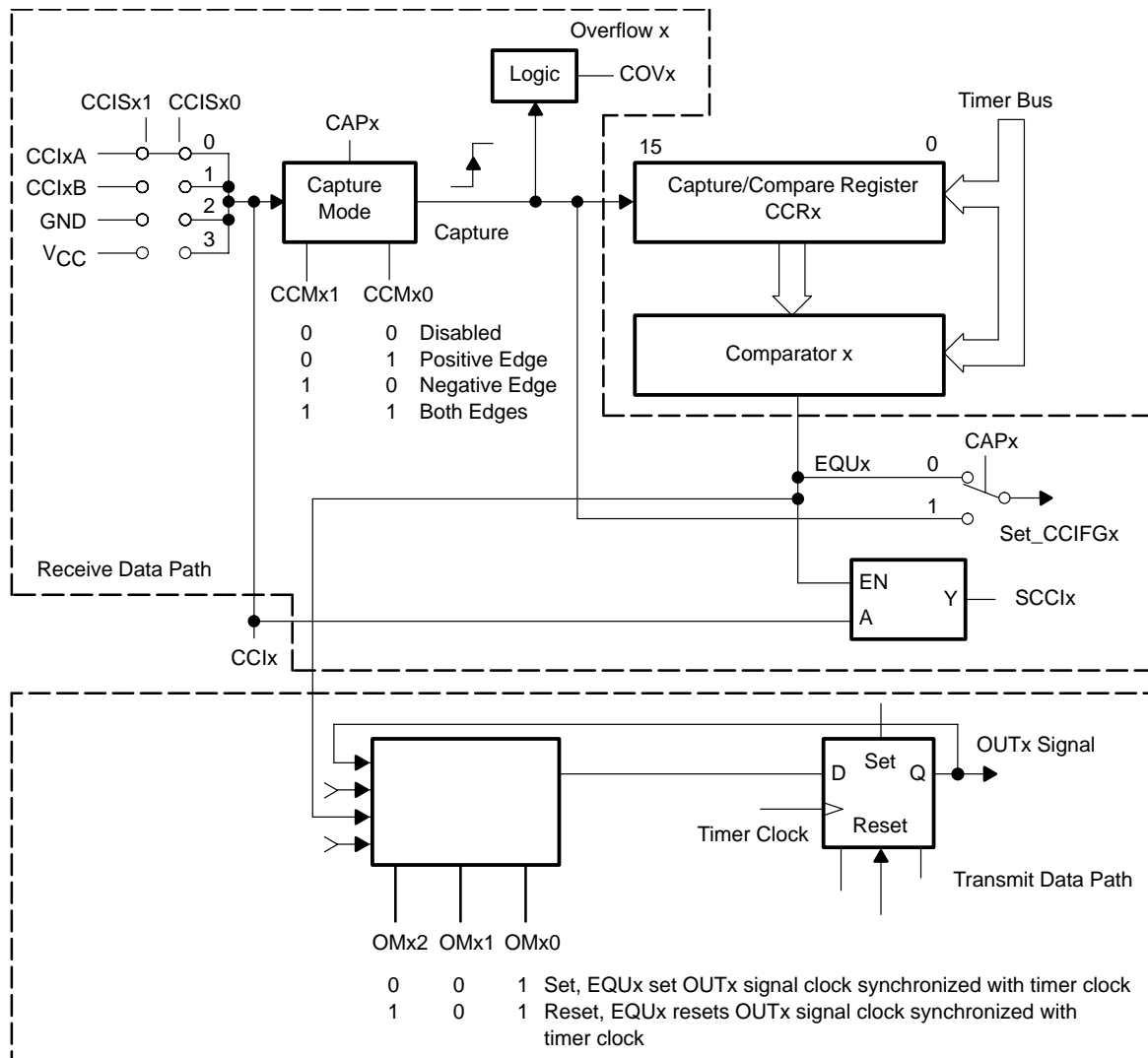
- ☐ Automatic start-bit detection – even from ultralow-power modes
- ☐ Hardware baud-rate generation
- ☐ Hardware latching of RXD and TXD data
- ☐ Baud rates of 75 to 115,200 baud
- ☐ Full-duplex operation

This UART implementation is different from other microcontroller implementations where a UART may be implemented with general-purpose I/O and manual bit manipulation via software polling. Those implementations require great CPU overhead and therefore increase power consumption and decrease the usability of the CPU.

The transmit feature uses one compare function to shift data through the output unit to the selected pin. The baud rate is ensured by reconfiguring the compare data with each interrupt.

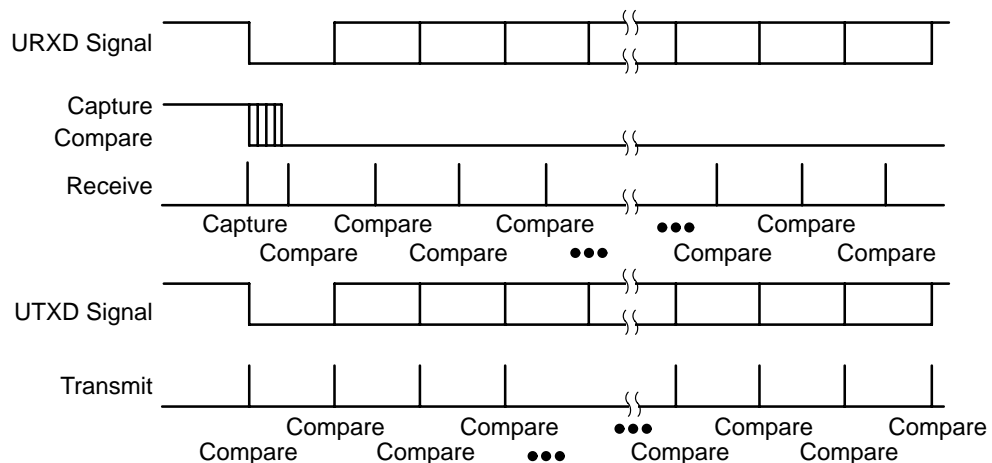
The receive feature uses one capture/compare function to shift pin data into memory through bit SCCIx. The receive start time is recognized by capturing the timer data with the negative edge of the input signal. The same capture/compare block is then switched to compare mode and the receive bits are latched automatically with the EQUx signal. The interrupt routine collects the bits for later software processing. Figure 10–33 illustrates the UART implementation.

Figure 10–33. UART Implementation



One capture/compare block is used when half-duplex communication mode is desired. Two capture/compare blocks are used for full-duplex mode. Figure 10–34 illustrates the capture/compare timing for the UART.

Figure 10–34. *Timer_A UART Timing*



A complete application note including connection diagrams and complete software listing may be found at www.ti.com/sc/msp430.

Timer_B

This section describes the basic functions of the MSP430 general-purpose 16-bit Timer_B. Timer_B implementation differs among MSP430 devices. Always check the device's data sheet to determine the connections and the number of identical capture/compare registers. Also, the data sheets use additional nomenclature to indicate the number of capture/compare registers implemented for a specific device. For example, if *Timer_B3* is discussed in a data sheet, then that device's implementation of Timer_B contains 3 capture/compare registers.

In its default condition, Timer_B operates identically to Timer_A, except the SCCI bit is not implemented on Timer_B.

Note: Use of the Word Count

Throughout this chapter, the word *count* is used in the text. As used in these instances, it refers to the literal act of counting. It means that the counter must be in the process of counting for the action to take place. If a particular value is directly written to the counter, then the associated action will not take place. For example, the CCR0 interrupt flag is set when the timer *counts up to* the value in CCR0 compare latch TBCL0. The counter *must count* from TBCL0 –1 to TBCL0. If the TBCL0 value were simply written directly to the timer with software, the interrupt flag would *not* be set, even though the values in the timer and TBCL0 would be the same.

Topic	Page
11.1 Introduction	11-2
11.2 Timer_B Operation	11-5
11.3 Timer Modes	11-8
11.4 Capture/Compare Blocks	11-15
11.5 The Output Unit	11-21
11.6 Timer_B Registers	11-27

11.1 Introduction

Timer_B is an extremely versatile timer made up of :

- ☐ 16-bit counter with 4 operating modes and four selectable lengths (8-bit, 10-bit, 12-bit, or 16-bit)
- ☐ Selectable and configurable clock source
- ☐ Up to seven independently-configurable capture/compare registers with configurable inputs and double-buffered compare registers.
- ☐ Up to seven individually-configurable output modules with eight output modes

Timer_B can support multiple, simultaneous, timings; multiple capture/compares; multiple output waveforms such as PWM signals; and any combination of these. In addition, with the double-buffering of compare data, multiple PWM periods can be updated simultaneously.

Additionally, Timer_B has extensive interrupt capabilities. Interrupts may be generated from the counter on overflow conditions and from each of the capture/compare registers on captures or compares. Each capture/compare block is individually configurable and can produce interrupts on compares or on rising, falling or both edges of an external capture signal.

The block diagram of Timer_B is shown in Figure 11–1.

11.1.1 Similarities and Differences From Timer_A

Timer_B is almost identical to Timer_A (except for a few enhancements noted below) and operates identically to Timer_A in its default condition.

Timer_B is different from Timer_A in the following ways:

- 1) The length of Timer_B is programmable to be 8, 10, 12, or 16 bits, whereas Timer_A is only a 16-bit timer.
- 2) The SCCI bit functionality of the capture/compare registers of Timer_A is not implemented in Timer_B.
- 3) The function of the capture/compare registers for the compare mode of Timer_B has changed slightly.
- 4) On some devices a pin is implemented to put all Timer_B outputs into a high-impedance state. Check the device data sheet for the presence of this pin.

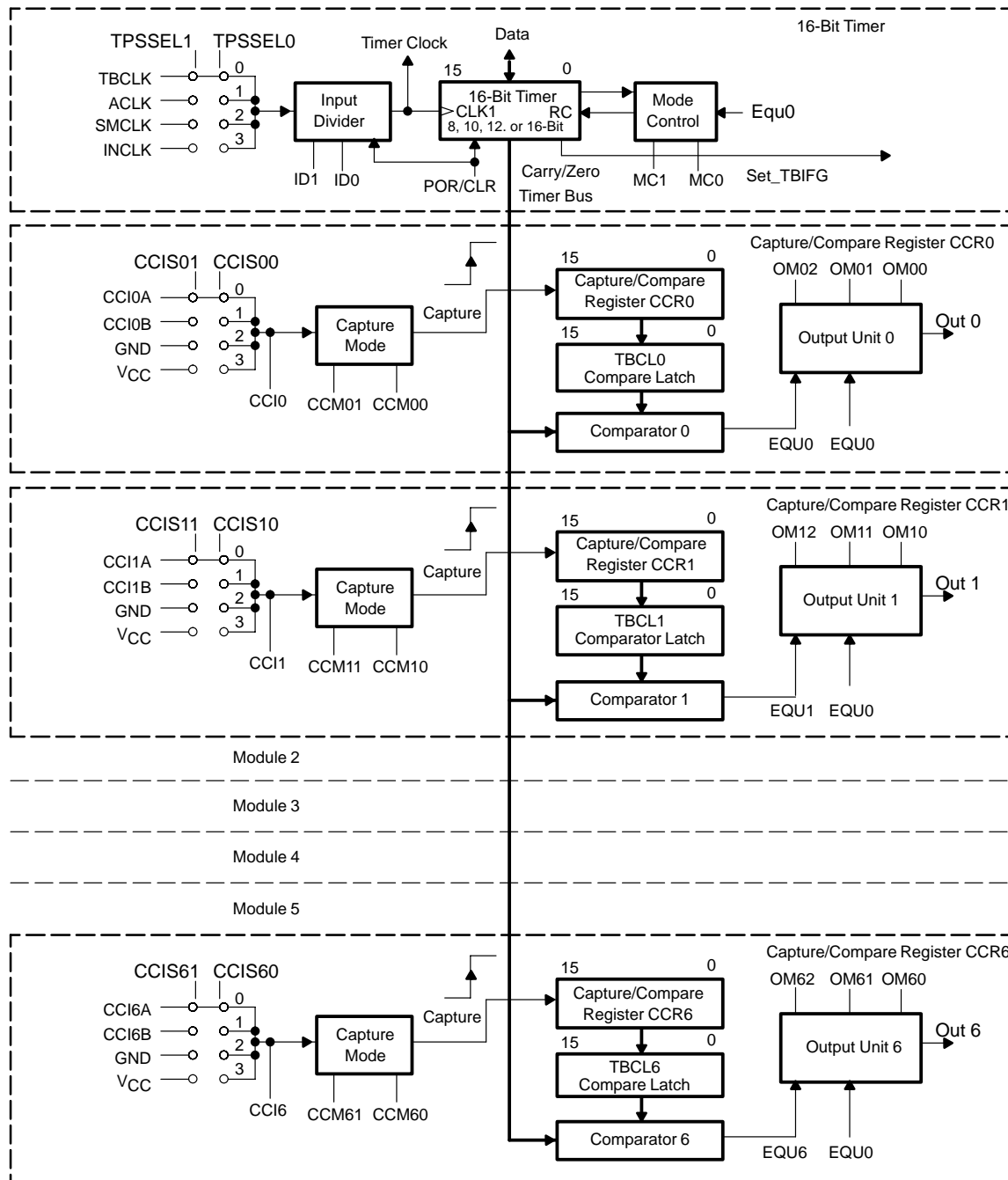
On Timer_A, the capture/compare register CCRx holds the data for the comparison to the timer value. On Timer_B, each CCRx acts as a buffer for a compare latch, and the compare latch holds the data used for the comparison. So, compare data is written to each CCRx in both timers; however, in Timer_B, the compare data is then transferred to the compare latch for the comparison. The timing of the transfer of the compare data from

each CCRx register to the corresponding compare latch (TBCLx) is user-selectable to be either immediate, or on a timer event. See section 11.4.2.1 for a complete discussion on using and configuring the compare latches.

The addition of the compare latch gives the user more control over when exactly a compare period updates. In addition, multiple compare latches may be grouped together allowing the compare period of multiple compare registers to be updated simultaneously. This is useful for example when there is a need to change the period or duty cycle of multiple PWM signals simultaneously.

It is useful to note that in Timer_B's default condition, the compare data is immediately transferred from each CCRx register to the corresponding compare latch. Therefore, in the default condition, the compare mode of Timer_B functions identically to the compare mode of Timer_A.

Figure 11–1. Timer_B Block Diagram



11.2 Timer_B Operation

The 16-bit timer has four modes of operation selectable with the MC0 and MC1 bits in the TBCTL register and four selectable lengths, also configured in the TBCTL register. The timer increments or decrements (depending on mode of operation) with each rising edge of the clock signal. The timer can be read or written to with software. Additionally, the timer can generate an interrupt with its ripple-carry output when it overflows.

11.2.1 Timer Length

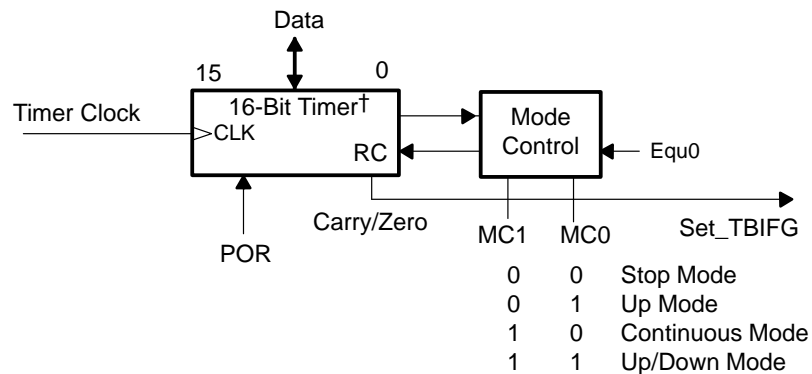
Timer_B is configurable to operate as a true 8-bit, 10-bit, 12-bit, or 16-bit timer. The length of the counter is configured in the TBCTL register. Leading bits are read as zero in 8-bit, 10-bit, and 12-bit mode. Data written to the TBR register in 8-bit, 10-bit, and 12-bit mode will show leading 0s. The maximum count value, $TBR_{(max)}$, for the various lengths is:

Timer_B Configuration	$TBR_{(max)}$
16-bit	0FFFFh
12-bit	0FFFh
10-bit	03FFh
8-bit	0FFh

11.2.2 Timer Mode Control

The timer has four modes of operation as shown in Figure 11–2 and described in Table 11–1: stop, up, continuous, and up/down. The operating mode is software selectable with the MC0 and MC1 bits in the TBCTL register.

Figure 11–2. Mode Control



† Length is selectable for 8-, 10-, 12-, or 16-bit operation.

Table 11–1. Timer Modes

Mode Control		Mode	Description
MC1	MC0		
0	0	Stop	The timer is halted.
0	1	Up	The timer counts upward until its value is equal to the value of compare latch TBCL0. Note: If TBCL0 > TBR _(max) , the counter counts to zero with the next rising edge of timer clock.
1	0	Continuous	The timer counts upward continuously. The maximum value of TBR [TBR _(max)] is: 0FFFFh for 16-bit configuration 00FFFh for 12-bit configuration 003FFh for 10-bit configuration 000FFh for 8-bit configuration
1	1	Up/Down	The timer counts up until the timer value is equal to compare latch 0 and then it counts down to zero. Note: If TBCL0 > TBR _(max) , the counter operates as if it were configured for continuous mode. It will not count down from TBR _(max) to zero.

11.2.3 Clock Source Select and Divider

The timer clock can be sourced from internal clocks (i.e. ACLK, MCLK or SMCLK) or from an external source (TBCLK) as shown in Figure 11–3. The clock source is selectable with the SSEL0 and SSEL1 bits in the TBCTL register. It is important to note, that when changing the clock source for the timer, errant timings can occur. For this reason stopping the timer before changing the clock source is recommended.

The selected clock source may be passed directly to the timer or divided by 2, 4, or 8, as shown in Figure 11–4. The ID0 and ID1 bits in the TBCTL register select the clock division. Note that the input divider is reset by a POR signal or by setting the CLR bit in the TBCTL register (see chapter 3, *System Resets, Interrupts, and Operating Modes*, for more information on the POR signal). Otherwise, the input divider remains unchanged when the timer is modified. The state of the input divider is invisible to software.

Figure 11–3. Schematic of 16-Bit Timer

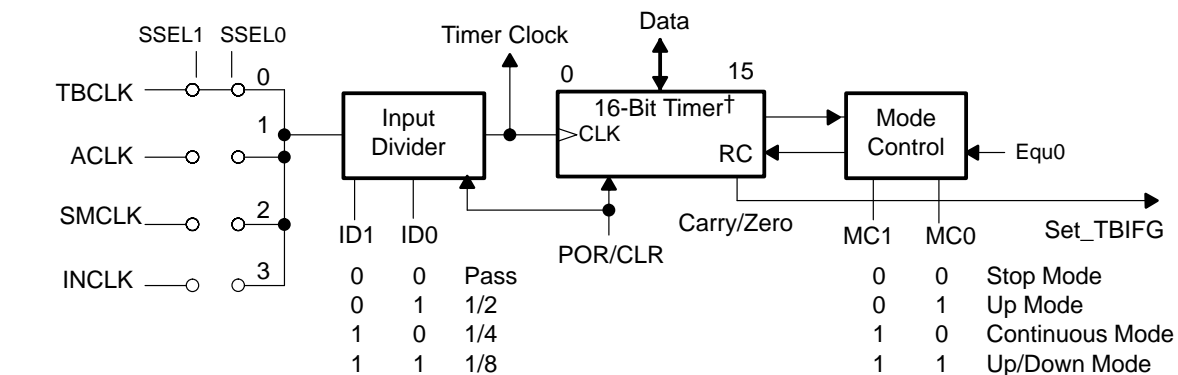
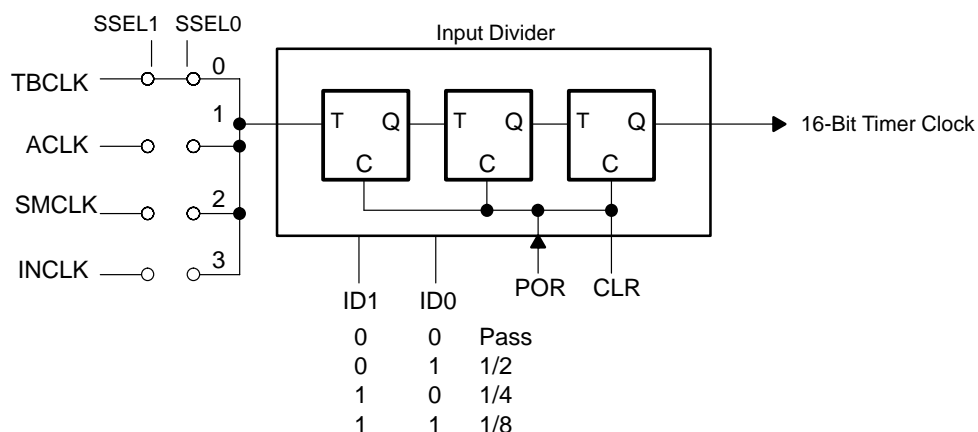


Figure 11–4. Schematic of Clock Source Select and Input Divider



11.2.4 Starting the Timer

The timer may be started or restarted in a variety of ways:

- ☐ Release Halt Mode: The timer *counts* in the selected direction when a timer mode other than stop mode is selected with the MCx bits.
- ☐ Halted by TBCL0 = 0, restarted by TBCL0 > 0 when the mode is either up or up/down: When the timer mode is selected to be either up or up/down, the timer may be stopped by loading 0 in compare latch 0 (TBCL0) via capture/compare register (CCR0). The timer may then be restarted by loading a nonzero value to TBCL0. In this scenario, the timer starts incrementing in the up direction from zero.
- ☐ Setting the CLR bit in TBCTL register: Setting the CLR bit in the TBCTL register clears the timer value and input clock divider value. The timer increments upward from zero with the next clock cycle as long as stop-mode is not selected with the MCx bits.
- ☐ TBR is loaded with 0: When the counter (TBR register) is loaded with zero with a software instruction the timer increments upward from zero with the next clock cycle as long as stop-mode is not selected with the MCx bits.

11.3 Timer Modes

11.3.1 Timer—Stop Mode

Stopping and starting the timer is done simply by changing the mode control bits (MCx). The value of the timer is not affected.

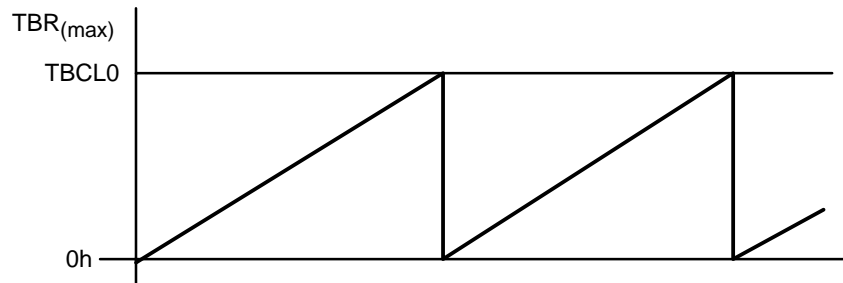
When the timer is stopped from up/down mode and then restarted in up/down mode, the timer counts in the same direction as it was counting before it was stopped. For example, if the timer is in up/down mode and counting in the down direction when the MCx bits are reset, when they are set back to the up/down direction, the timer starts counting in the down direction from its previous value. If this is not desired in an application, the CLR bit in the TBCTL register can be used to clear this direction memory feature.

11.3.2 Timer—Up Mode

The up mode is used if the timer period must be different from the $TBR_{(max)}$ clock cycles of the continuous mode periods. The capture/compare register CCR0 data defines the timer period.

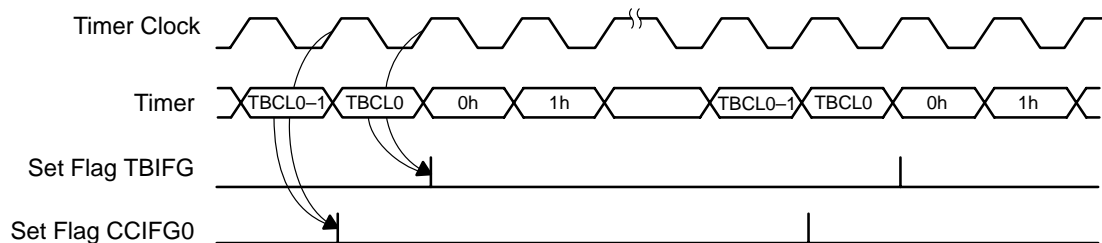
The counter *counts* up to the content of compare latch TBCL0, as shown in Figure 11–5. When the timer value and the value of compare latch TBCL0 are equal (or if the timer value is greater than the TBCL0 value), the timer restarts counting from zero.

Figure 11–5. Timer Up Mode



Flag CCIFG0 is set when the timer equals the TBCL0 value. The TBIFG flag is set when the timer *counts* from TBCL0 to zero. All interrupt flags are set independently of the corresponding interrupt enable bit, but an interrupt is requested only if the corresponding interrupt enable bit and the GIE bit are set. Figure 11–6 shows the flag set cycle.

Figure 11–6. Up Mode Flag Setting



11.3.2.1 Timer in Up Mode—Changing the Period Register TBCL0 Value, Immediate Mode for TBCL0

Changing the timer period register TBCL0 while the timer is running and when the transfer mode from CCR0 is *immediate* can be a little tricky. When the new period is greater than or equal to the old period, the timer simply counts up to the new period and no special attention is required (see Figure 11–7). However, when the new period is less than the old period, the phase of the timer clock during the TBCL0 update affects how the timer reacts to the new period.

If the new, smaller period is transferred from CCR0 to TBCL0 during a high phase of the timer clock, then the timer rolls to zero (or begins counting down when in the up/down mode) on the next rising edge of the timer clock. However, if the new, smaller period is written during a low phase of the timer clock, then the timer continues to increment with the old period for one more clock cycle before adopting the new period and rolling to zero (or beginning counting down). This is shown in Figure 11–8.

Note:

If $TBCL0 > TBR_{(max)}$, the counter rolls to zero with the next rising edge of timer clock.

Figure 11–7. New Period > Old Period

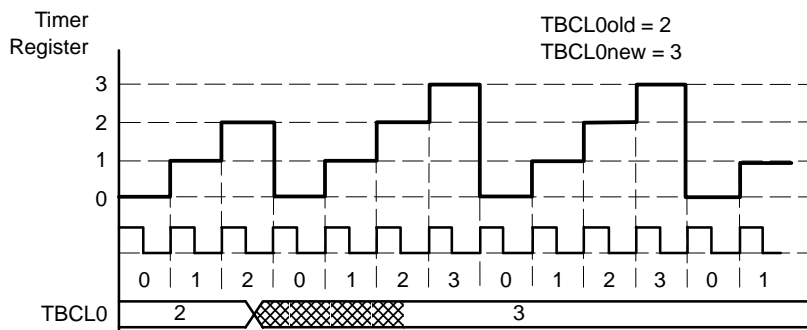
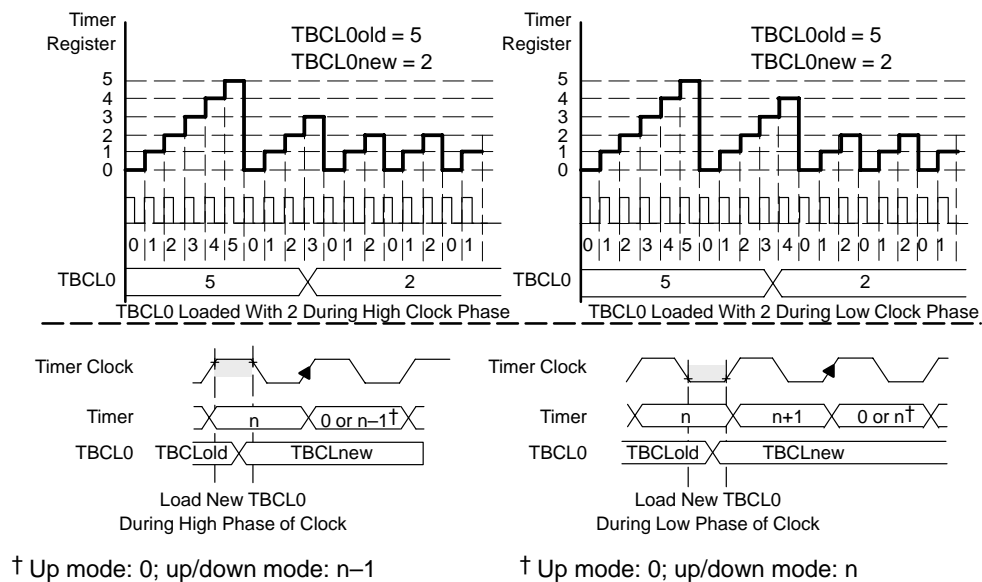


Figure 11–8. *New Period < Old Period*



11.3.3 Timer—Continuous Mode

The continuous mode is used if the timer period of $TBR_{(max)}$ clock cycles is used for the application. A typical application of the continuous mode is to generate multiple, independent timings. In continuous mode, the capture/compare block 0 works in the same way as the other capture/compare blocks.

The capture/compare blocks and different output modes of each output unit are useful to capture timer data based on external events or to generate various different types of output signals. Examples of the different output modes used with timer-continuous mode are shown in Figure 11–25.

In continuous mode, the timer starts counting from its present value. The counter counts up to $TBR_{(max)}$ and restarts by counting from zero as shown in Figure 11–9.

The maximum value of TBR [$\text{TBR}_{(\max)}$] in continuous mode is:

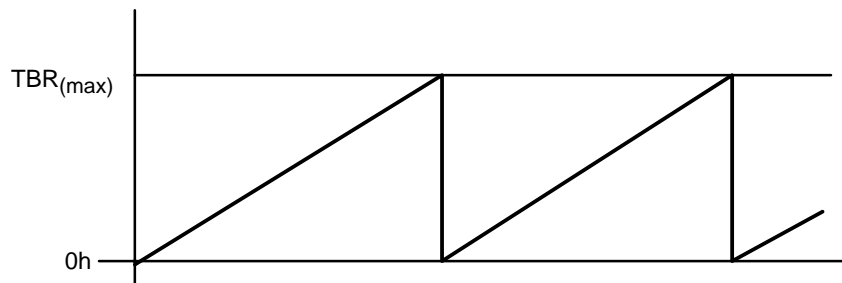
0FFFFh for 16-bit configuration

00FFFh for 12-bit configuration

003FFh for 10-bit configuration

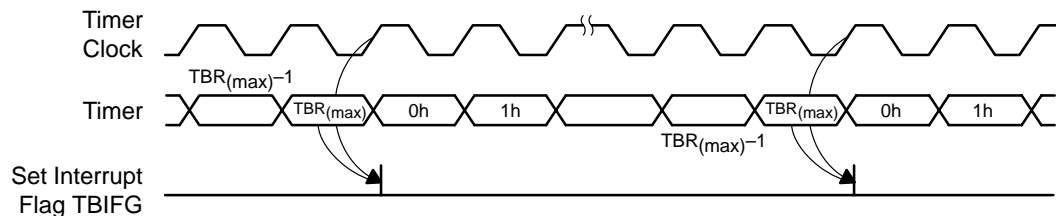
000FFh for 8-bit configuration

Figure 11–9. Timer Continuous Mode



The TBIFG flag is set when the timer *counts* from $TBR_{(max)}$ to zero. The interrupt flag is set independently of the corresponding interrupt enable bit, as shown in Figure 11–10. An interrupt is requested if the corresponding interrupt enable bit and the GIE bit are set.

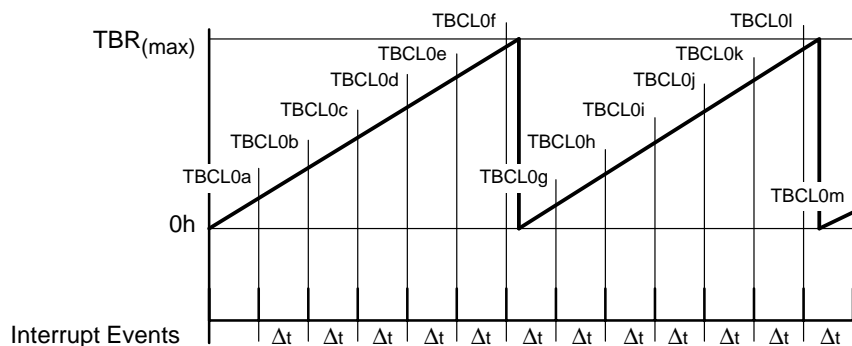
Figure 11–10. Continuous Mode Flag Setting



11.3.3.1 Timer—Use of the Continuous Mode

The continuous mode can be used to generate time intervals for the application software. Each time an interval is completed, an interrupt can be generated. In the interrupt service routine of this event, the time until the next event is added to capture/compare register CCRx (and subsequently compare latch TBCLx) as shown in Figure 11–11. Up to seven independent time events can be generated using all seven capture/compare blocks.

Figure 11–11. Output Unit in Continuous Mode for Time Intervals



Time intervals can be produced with other modes as well, where capture/compare block 0 is used to determine the period. Their handling is more complex since the sum of the old CCRx data and the new period can be higher than the TBCL0 value. When the sum $CCR_{xold} + \Delta t$ is greater than the TBCL0 data, the old CCR0 value must be subtracted to obtain the correct time interval.

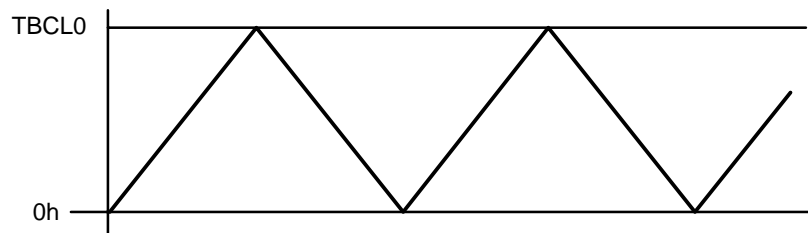
11.3.4 Timer—Up/Down Mode

The up/down mode is used if the timer period must be different from the $TBR_{(max)}$ clock cycles, and if symmetrical pulse waveform generation is needed. In up/down mode, the timer counts up to the content of compare latch TBCL0, then back down to zero, as shown in Figure 11–12. The period is twice the value in the TBCL0 latch.

Note:

If $TBCL0 > TBR_{(max)}$, the counter operates as if it were configured for continuous mode. It will not count down from $TBR_{(max)}$ to zero.

Figure 11–12. Timer Up/Down Mode



The up/down mode also supports applications that require dead times between output signals. For example, to avoid overload conditions, two outputs driving an H-bridge must never be in a high state simultaneously. In the following example (see Figure 11–13), the t_{dead} is:

$$t_{dead} = t_{timer} \times (TBCL1 - TBCL3) =$$

With: t_{dead} Time during which both outputs need to be inactive

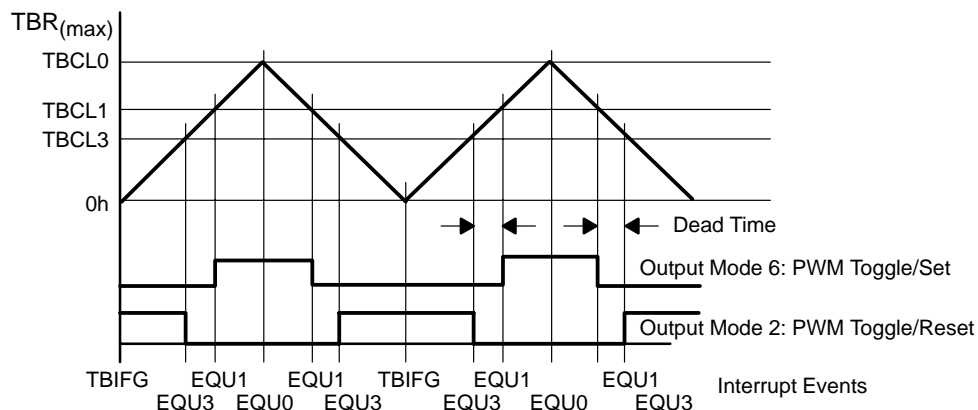
t_{timer} Cycle time of the timer clock

TBCLx Content of compare latch x

Note:

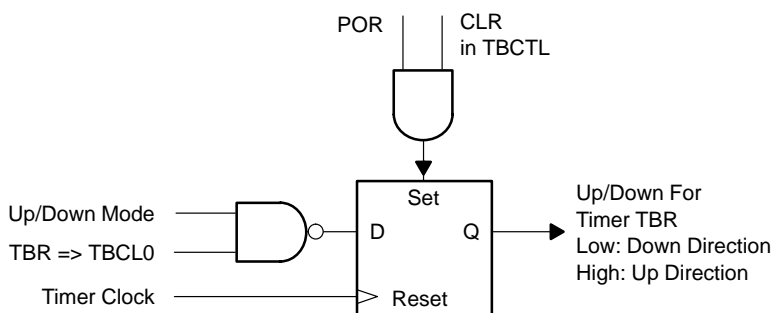
The dead time is ensured by the ability to simultaneously load the compare latches.

Figure 11–13. Output Unit in Up/Down Mode (II)



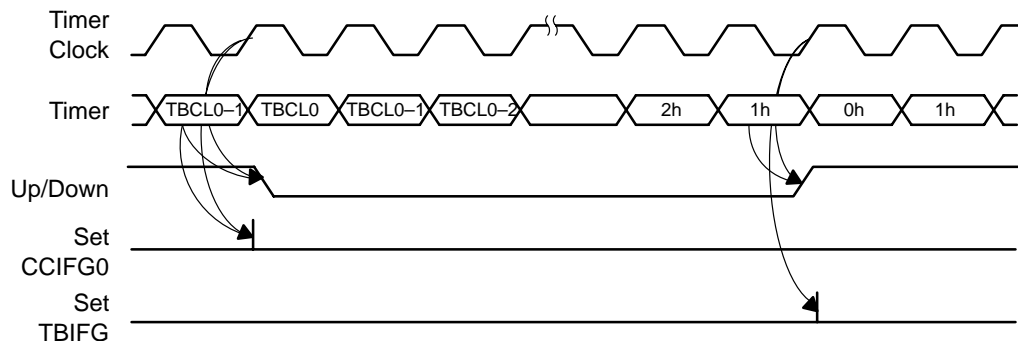
The count direction is always latched with a flip-flop (Figure 11–14). This is useful because it allows the user to stop the timer and then restart it in the same direction it was counting before it was stopped. For example, if the timer was counting down when the MCx bits were reset, then it will continue counting in the down direction if it is restarted in up/down mode. If this is not desired, the CLR bit in the TBCTL register must be used to clear the direction. Note that the CLR bit affects other setup conditions of the timer. Refer to Section 11.6 for a discussion of the Timer_B registers.

Figure 11–14. Timer Up/Down Direction Control



In up/down mode, the interrupt flags (CCIFG0 and TBIFG) are set at equal time intervals (Figure 11–15). Each flag is set only once during the period, but they are separated by 1/2 the timer period. CCIFG0 is set when the timer *counts* from TBCL0–1 to TBCL0, and TBIFG is set when the timer completes *counting* down from 0001h to 0000h. Each flag is capable of producing a CPU interrupt when enabled.

Figure 11–15. Up/Down Mode Flag Setting



11.3.4.1 Timer In Up/Down Mode—Changing the Value of Period Register TBCL0, Immediate Mode for TBCL0

Changing the period value while the timer is running in up/down mode and the transfer mode for TBCL0 is *immediate* is even trickier than in up mode. Like in up mode, the phase of the timer clock when TBCL0 is changed affects the timer's behavior. Additionally, in up/down mode, the direction of the timer also affects the behavior.

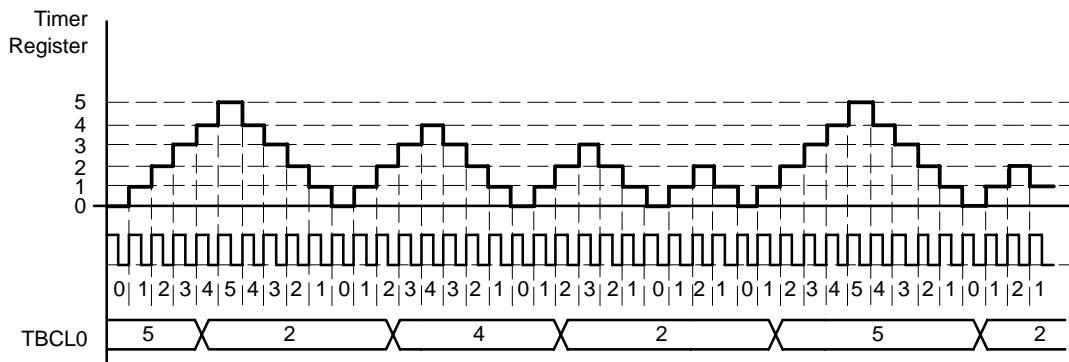
If the timer is counting in the up direction when the new period is transferred from CCR0 to TBCL0, the conditions in the up/down mode are identical to

those in the up mode. See Section 11.3.2.1 for details. However, if the timer is counting in the down direction when TBCL0 is updated, it continues its descent until it reaches zero. The new period takes effect only after the counter finishes counting down to zero. See Figure 11–16.

Note:

If $TBCL0 > TBR_{(max)}$, the counter operates as if it were configured for continuous mode. It will not count down from $TBR_{(max)}$ to zero.

Figure 11–16. Altering TBCL0—Timer in Up/Down Mode



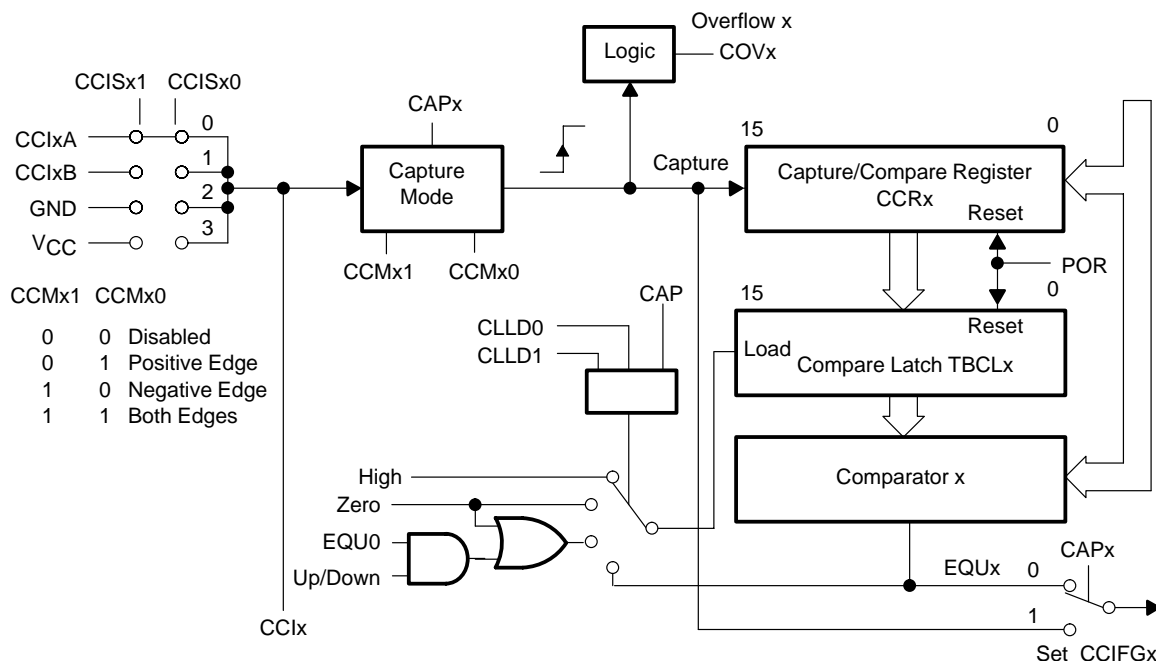
11.4 Capture/Compare Blocks

Seven identical capture/compare blocks (shown in Figure 11–17) provide flexible control for real-time processing. Any one of the blocks may be used to capture the timer data at an applied event, or to generate time intervals. Each time a capture occurs or a time interval is completed, interrupts can be generated from the applicable capture/compare register. The mode bit CAPx, in control word CCTLx, selects the compare or capture operation and the capture mode bits CCMx1 and CCMx0 in control word CCTLx define the conditions under which the capture function is performed.

Both the interrupt enable bit CCIEx and the interrupt flag CCIFGx are used for capture and compare modes. CCIEx enables the corresponding interrupt. CCIFGx is set on a capture or compare event.

The capture inputs CCIA and CCIB are connected to external pins or internal signals. Different MSP430 devices may have different signals connected to CCIA and CCIB. The data sheet should always be consulted to determine the Timer_B connections for a particular device.

Figure 11–17. Capture/Compare Blocks



11.4.1 Capture/Compare Block—Capture Mode

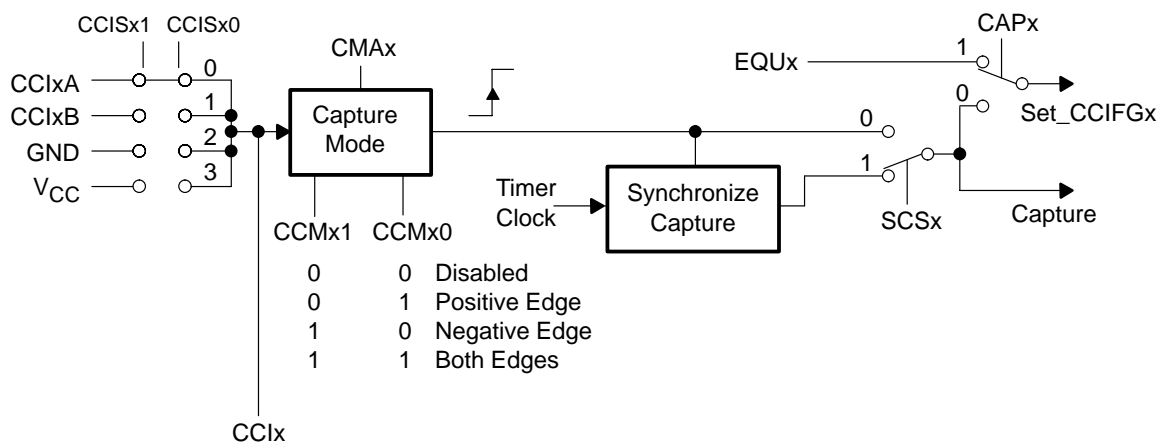
The capture mode is selected if the mode bit CAPx, located in control word CCTLx, is set. The capture mode is used to fix time events. It can be used for speed computations or time measurements. The timer value is copied into the capture register (CCRx) with the selected edge (positive, negative, or both) of the input signal. Captures may also be initiated by software as described in section 11.4.1.1.

If a capture is performed:

- ☐ The interrupt flag CCIFGx, located in control word CCTLx, is set.
- ☐ An interrupt is requested if both interrupt enable bits CCIEx and GIE are set.

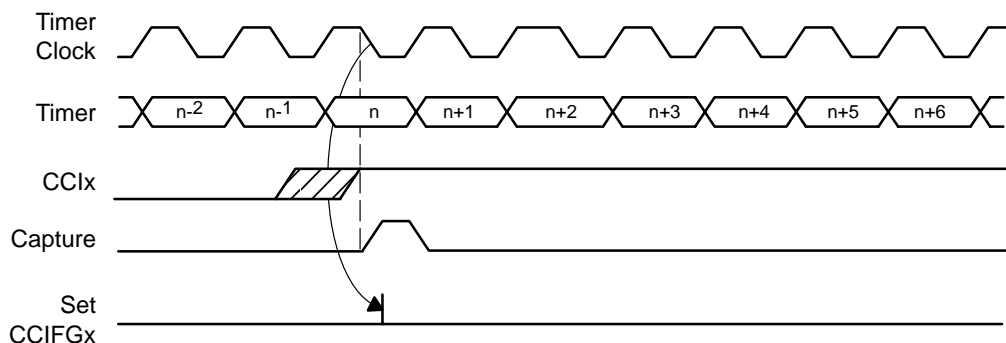
The input signal to the capture/compare block is selected using control bits CCISx1 and CCISx0, as shown in Figure 11–18. The input signal can be read at any time by the software by reading bit CCIx.

Figure 11–18. Capture Logic Input Signal



The capture signal can also be synchronized with the timer clock to avoid race conditions between the timer data and the capture signal. This is illustrated in Figure 11–19. The bit SCSx in capture/compare control register CCTLx selects the capture signal synchronization.

Figure 11–19. Capture Signal



Applications with slow timer clocks can use the nonsynchronized capture signal. In this scenario the software can validate the data and correct it if necessary as shown in the following example:

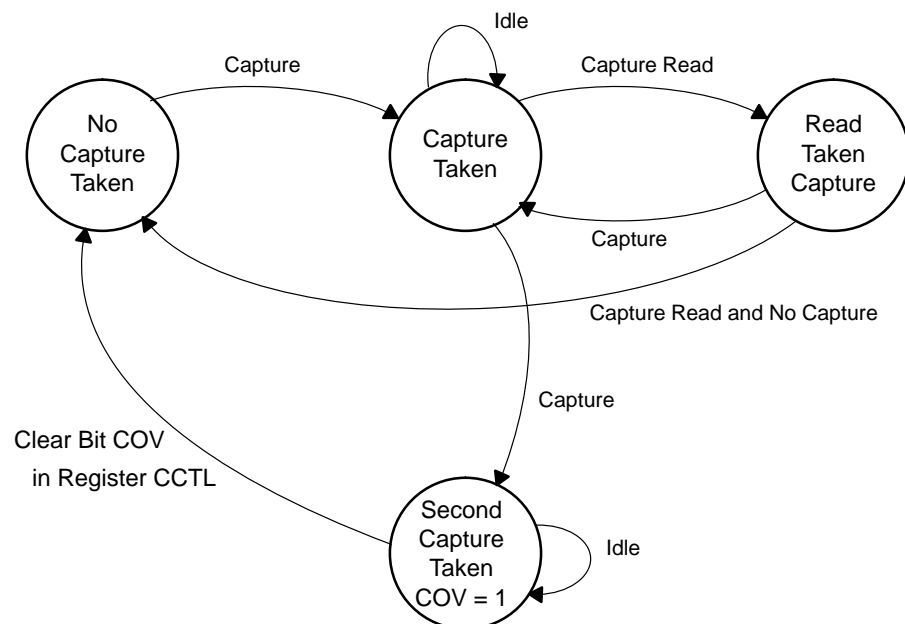
```

; Software example for the handling of asynchronous
; capture signals
;
; The data of the capture/compare register CCRx are taken
; by the software in the according interrupt routine
; - they are taken only after a CCIFG was set.
; The timer clock is much slower than the system clock
; MCLK.
;
CCRx_Int_hand...           ; Start of interrupt
                           ; handler
...
...
CMP    &CCRx,&TBR          ; Test if the data
                           ; CCRX = TBR
JEQ    Data_Valid
MOV    &TBR,&CCRx          ; The data in CCRx is
                           ; wrong, use the timer data
Data_Valid ...            ; The data in CCRx are valid
...
...
RETI
;

```

Overflow logic is provided with each capture/compare register to flag the user if a second capture is performed before data from the first capture was read successfully. Bit COVx in register CCTLx is set when this occurs as shown in Figure 11–20.

Figure 11–20. Capture Cycle



Overflow bit COVx is reset by the software as described in the following example:

```

; Software example for the handling of captured data
; looking for overflow condition
;
; The data of the capture/compare register CCRx are taken
; by the software and immediately with the next
; instruction the overflow bit is tested and a decision is
; made to proceed regularly or with an error handler
;
CCRx_Int_hand    ...      ; Start of handler Interrupt
                ...
                ...
                MOV      &CCRx, RAM_Buffer
                BIT       #COV, &CCTLx
                JNZ      Overflow_Hand
                ...
                ...      ; correct capture data
                ...
                RETI
Overflow_Hand    BIC      #COV, &CCTLx ; reset capture
                ; overflow flag
                ; get back to lost
                ; synchronization
                ...
                ; Proceed
;
                RETI

```

Note: Capture With Timer Halted

The capture should be disabled when the timer is halted. The sequence to follow is: stop the capture, then stop the timer. When the capture function is restarted, the sequence should be: start the capture, then start the timer.

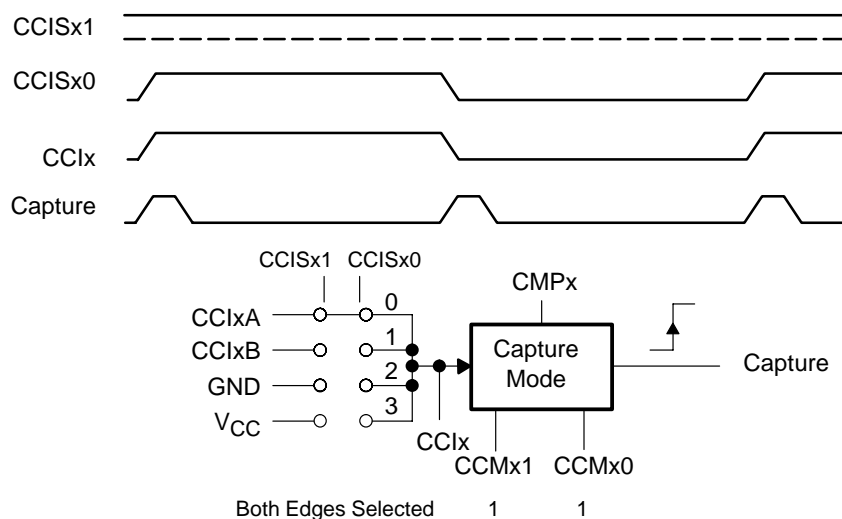
11.4.1.1 Capture/Compare Block, Capture Mode—Capture Initiated by Software

In addition to internal and external signals, captures can be initiated by software. This is useful for various purposes, such as:

- ☐ To measure time used by software routines
- ☐ To measure time between hardware events
- ☐ To measure the system frequency

Two bits, CCISx1 and CCISx0, and the capture mode selected by bits CCMx1 and CCMx0 are used by the software to initiate the capture. The simplest realization is when the capture mode is selected to capture on both edges of CClx and bit CCISx1 is set. Software then toggles bit CCISx0 to switch the capture signal between V_{CC} and GND, initiating a capture each time the input is toggled, as shown in Figure 11–21.

Figure 11–21. Software Capture Example



The following is a software example of a capture performed by software:

```

; The data of capture/compare register CCRx are taken
; by the software. It is assumed that CCMx1, CCMx0, and
; CCISx1 bits are set. Bit CCIS0 selects the CCIx
; signal to be high or low.
;
;
...
XOR    #CCISx0, &CCTLx
...

```

11.4.2 Capture/Compare Block—Compare Mode

The compare mode is selected if the CAPx bit, located in control word CCTLx, is reset. In compare mode all the capture hardware circuitry is inactive and the capture-mode overflow logic is inactive.

The compare mode is most often used to generate interrupts at specific time intervals or used in conjunction with the output unit to generate output signals such as PWM signals.

The compare data is double-buffered. The software writes the compare data to the capture/compare register, but the data is transferred to the compare latch TBCLx to be compared by the compare logic. The transfer of the compare data from the CCRx register to the compare latch is user-selectable to be either immediate or dependent upon a timer event. This double buffering allows the user to update multiple compare values simultaneously. This is useful for example with PWM signals where the period or duty cycle of multiple signals needs to be updated simultaneously. See section 11.4.2.1 for more discussion on how to use and configure the compare latches.

If the timer becomes equal to the value in compare latch TBCLx, then:

- ☐ Interrupt flag CCIFGx, located in control word CCTLx, is set.
- ☐ An interrupt is requested if interrupt enable bits CCIEx and GIE are set.
- ☐ Signal EQUx is output to the output unit. This signal affects the output OUTx, depending on the selected output mode.

The EQU0 signal is true when the timer value is greater or equal to the TBCL0 value. The EQU1 to EQUx signals are true when the timer value is equal to the corresponding TBCL1 to TBCLx values.

11.4.2.1 Capture/Compare Block—Compare Mode—Compare Latch TBCLx

The compare logic uses the data in the compare latch for its comparison with the timer value. The compare data is first written by software to the capture/compare register CCRx and then automatically transferred to the compare latch on a user-selectable load event. The load event is selected with the CLLDx bits in each CCTLx register.

In addition, the compare latches may be grouped together so that each compare latch in a group is updated simultaneously on the load event. All compare latches may be grouped together in a single group, or they may be grouped in groups of two or three compare latches. The grouping is configured with the TBCLGRP bits in the TBCTL register. When using groups, the CLLDx bits of the lowest numbered CCRx register in the group determine the load event for each compare latch of the group except when all 7 compare latches are grouped together (TBCLGRP=3). For example, if a user selects the compare latches to be grouped in threes, then there are two groups of three: TBCL1, TBCL2, and TBCL3 form one group, and TBCL4, TBCL5, and TBCL6 form the other group. In this scenario, the CLLDx bits for TBCL1 determine the load event for the first group, and the CLLDx bits for TBCL4 determine the load event for the second group. The CLLDx bits in CCTL2, CCTL3, CCTL5, and CCTL6 are unused. When all compare latches are grouped together (TBCLGRP=3), then the CLLDx bits in TBCL1 determine the load event.

When using groups, two conditions must exist for the compare latches to be loaded. First, all CCRx registers of the group must be updated (except when using immediate mode); second, the load event must occur. This means that if a user intends to retain any CCRx register data of a group when updating the group, the old data must be written to the CCRx register again. Otherwise, the compare latches will not be updated.

The CLLDx bits in the applicable CCTLx register select the load event. There are four choices for the load event:

- ☐ Immediate
- ☐ When TBR *counts* to 0
- ☐ Continuous mode or up mode – when TBR *counts* to 0
Up/down mode – when TBR *counts* to TBCL0 or *counts* to 0
- ☐ When TBR *counts* to TBCLx

The groupings and load conditions are summarized below in Table 11–2.

Table 11–2. Compare Latch Operating Modes

TBCLGRP	CLLDx From Lowest TBCCTLx in Group (see Note 1)	Counter Mode MCx	Load Conditions†(load TBCCR _x data to compare latch TBCL _x)						
			x = 0	x = 1	x = 2	x = 3	x = 4	x = 5	x = 6
0	0	0–3	Immediate	Immediate	Immediate	Immediate	Immediate	Immediate	Immediate
	1	1–3	TBR counts to 0	TBR counts to 0	TBR counts to 0	TBR counts to 0	TBR counts to 0	TBR counts to 0	TBR counts to 0
	2	1,2	TBR counts to 0	TBR counts to 0	TBR counts to 0	TBR counts to 0	TBR counts to 0	TBR counts to 0	TBR counts to 0
		3	TBR counts to 0 or to TBCL0	TBR counts to 0 or to TBCL0	TBR counts to 0 or to TBCL0	TBR counts to 0 or to TBCL0	TBR counts to 0 or to TBCL0	TBR counts to 0 or to TBCL0	TBR counts to 0 or to TBCL0
	3	1–3	TBR counts to TBCL0	TBR counts to TBCL1	TBR counts to TBCL2	TBR counts to TBCL3	TBR counts to TBCL4	TBR counts to TBCL5	TBR counts to TBCL6
1	0	0–3	Immediate	TBCL1, TBCL2 loaded immediately when the corresponding TBCCR _x register is loaded		TBCL3, TBCL4 loaded immediately when the corresponding TBCCR _x register is loaded		TBCL5, TBCL6 loaded immediately when the corresponding TBCCR _x register is loaded	
	1	1–3	TBR counts to 0	TBCL1, TBCL2 updated simultaneously when TBR counts to 0		TBCL3, TBCL4 updated simultaneously when TBR counts to 0		TBCL5, TBCL6 updated simultaneously when TBR counts to 0	
	2	1,2	TBR counts to 0	TBCL1, TBCL2 updated simultaneously when TBR counts to 0		TBCL3, TBCL4 updated simultaneously when TBR counts to 0		TBCL5, TBCL6 updated simultaneously when TBR counts to 0	
		3	TBR counts to 0 or to TBCL0	TBCL1, TBCL2 updated simultaneously when TBR counts to 0 or to TBCL0		TBCL3, TBCL4 updated simultaneously when TBR counts to 0 or to TBCL0		TBCL5, TBCL6 updated simultaneously when TBR counts to 0 or to TBCL0	
	3	1–3	TBR counts to TBCL0	TBR counts to TBCL1	TBR counts to TBCL2	TBR counts to TBCL3	TBR counts to TBCL4	TBR counts to TBCL5	TBR counts to TBCL6

† Timer_B3 has only three CCR blocks: TBCCR0, TBCCR1, and TBCCR2. The load conditions for TBCL3/4/5/6 are not relevant and can be ignored.

Table 11–2. Compare Latch Operating Modes (Continued)

TBCLGRP	CLLDx From Lowest TBCCTLx in Group (see Note 1)	Counter Mode MCx	Load Conditions (load TBCCR _x data to compare latch TBCL _x)						
			x = 0	x = 1	x = 2	x = 3	x = 4	x = 5	x = 6
2 [†]	0	0–3	Immediate	TBCL1, TBCL2, TBCL3 loaded immediately when the corresponding TBCCR _x register is loaded			TBCL4, TBCL5, TBCL6 loaded immediately when the corresponding TBCCR _x register is loaded		
	1	1–3	TBR counts to 0	TBCL1, TBCL2, TBCL3 updated simultaneously when TBR counts to 0			TBCL4, TBCL5, TBCL6 updated simultaneously when TBR counts to 0		
	2	1,2	TBR counts to 0	TBCL1, TBCL2, TBCL3 updated simultaneously when TBR counts to 0			TBCL4, TBCL5, TBCL6 updated simultaneously when TBR counts to 0		
		3	TBR counts to 0 or to TBCL0	TBCL1, TBCL2, TBCL3 updated simultaneously when TBR counts to 0 or to TBCL0			TBCL4, TBCL5, TBCL6 updated simultaneously when TBR counts to 0 or to TBCL0		
	3	1–3	TBR counts to TBCL0	TBR counts to TBCL1	TBR counts to TBCL2	TBR counts to TBCL3	TBR counts to TBCL4	TBR counts to TBCL5	TBR counts to TBCL6
3 [‡]	0	0–3	TBCL0, TBCL1, TBCL2, TBCL3, TBCL4, TBCL5, TBCL6 Loaded immediately when the corresponding TBCCR _x register is loaded.						
	1	1–3	TBCL0, TBCL1, TBCL2, TBCL3, TBCL4, TBCL5, TBCL6 updated simultaneously when TBR counts to 0						
	2	1,2	TBCL0, TBCL1, TBCL2, TBCL3, TBCL4, TBCL5, TBCL6 updated simultaneously when TBR counts to 0						
		3	TBCL0, TBCL1, TBCL2, TBCL3, TBCL4, TBCL5, TBCL6 updated simultaneously when TBR counts to 0 or to TBCL0						
	3	1–3	TBR counts to TBCL0	TBR counts to TBCL1	TBR counts to TBCL2	TBR counts to TBCL3	TBR counts to TBCL4	TBR counts to TBCL5	TBR counts to TBCL6

[†] Timer_B3 has only three CCR blocks: No triple group is possible with 3 CCR's. If TBCLGRP=2 then it is treated as TBCLGRP=1.

[‡] Timer_B3 has only three CCR blocks: TBCCR0, TBCCR1, and TBCCR2 are one group (TBCLGRP=3, CLLDx={0, 1, 2}).

- Notes:**
- 1) When using groups, load mode for the group is selected with the CLLD_x bits of the lowest numbered TBCCTL_x register in the group (except when TBCLGRP=3). For example, when grouped by 2, the CLLD_x bits of TBCCTL3 determine the load mode for TBCL3 and TBCL4. When grouped by 3, the CLLD_x bits of TBCCTL4 determine the load mode for TBCL4, TBCL5, and TBCL6, etc. When TBCLGRP=3 the CLLD_x bits from TBCTL1 are used.
 - 2) When using groups, all TBCCR_x registers must be updated with new data before the load will take place (except when using immediate mode), even if new data = old data. When using immediate mode, each compare latch is updated immediately when its corresponding TBCCR_x register is updated.
 - 3) When using groups, different load modes may be selected for each group. For example, when grouped by 3, immediate mode may be selected (via CLLD_x bits in TBCCTL1) for TBCL1, TBCL2, and TBCL3, and mode 2 may be selected (via CLLD_x bits in TBCCTL4) for TBCL4, TBCL5, and TBCL6.

11.5.1 Output Unit – Output Modes

The output modes are defined by the OMx bits and are discussed below. The OUTx signal is changed with the rising edge of the timer clock for all modes except mode 0. Output modes 2, 3, 6, and 7 are not useful for output unit 0.

Output mode 0: Output mode:

The output signal OUTx is defined by the OUTx bit in control register CCTLx. The OUTx signal updates immediately upon completion of writing the bit information.

Output mode 1: Set mode:

The output is set when the timer value becomes equal to compare data TBCLx. It remains set until a reset of the timer, or until another output mode is selected and controls the output.

Output mode 2: PWM toggle/reset mode:

The output is toggled when the timer value becomes equal to compare data TBCLx. It is reset when the timer value becomes equal to TBCL0.

Output mode 3: PWM set/reset mode:

The output is set when the timer value becomes equal to compare data TBCLx. It is reset when the timer value becomes equal to TBCL0.

Output mode 4: Toggle mode:

The output is toggled when the timer value becomes equal to compare data TBCLx. The output period is double the timer period.

Output mode 5: Reset mode:

The output is reset when the timer value becomes equal to compare data TBCLx. It remains reset until another output mode is selected and controls the output.

Output mode 6: PWM toggle/set mode:

The output is toggled when the timer value becomes equal to compare data TBCLx. It is set when the timer value becomes equal to TBCL0.

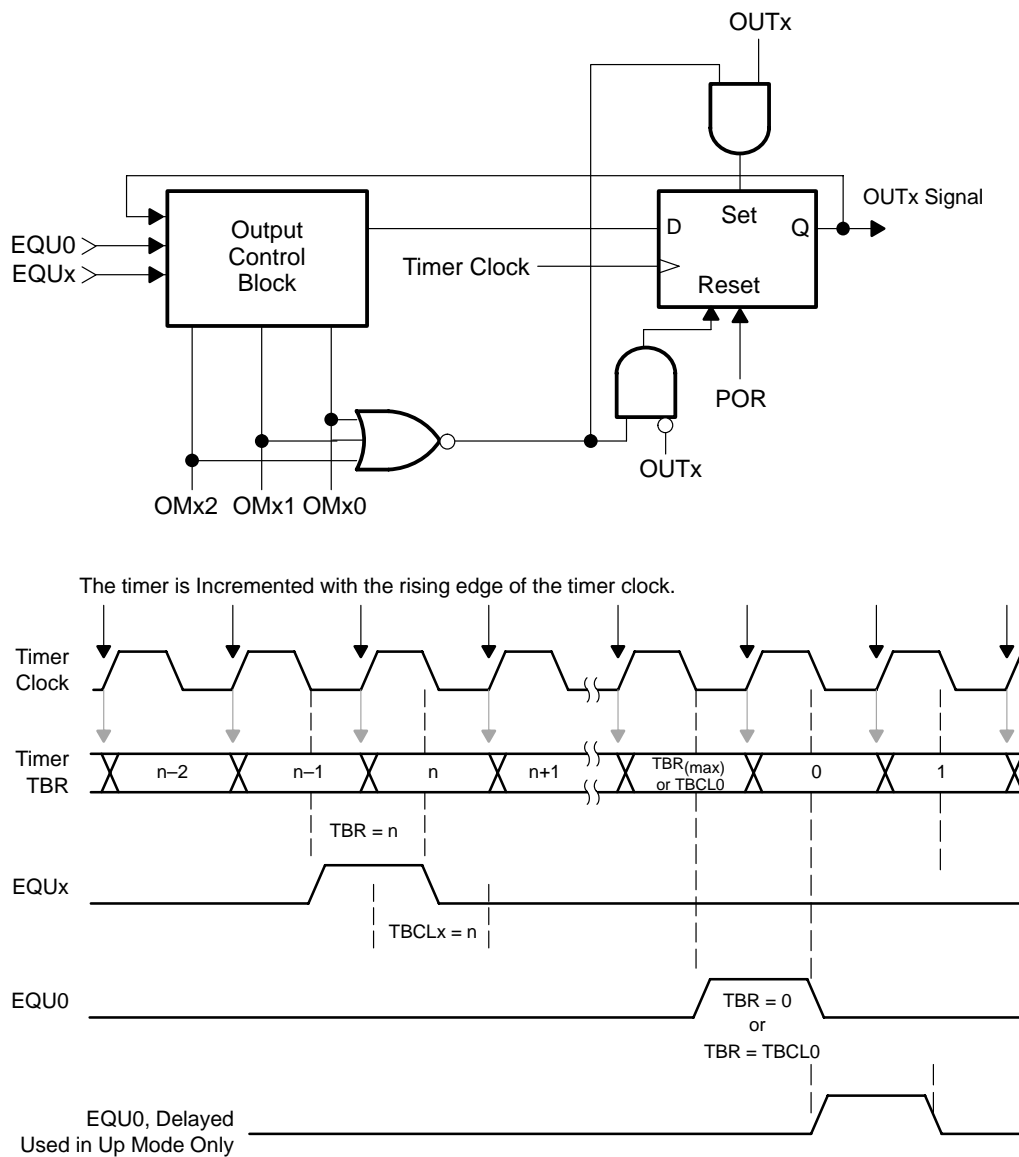
Output mode 7: PWM toggle/set mode:

The output is reset when the timer value becomes equal to compare data TBCLx. It is set when the timer value becomes equal to TBCL0.

11.5.2 Output Control Block

The output control block prepares the value of the OUTx signal, which is latched into the OUTx flip-flop with the next positive timer clock edge, as shown in Figure 11–23 and Table 11–3. The equal signals EQUx and EQU0 are sampled during the negative level of the timer clock, as shown in Figure 11–23.

Figure 11–23. Output Control Block



EQU0 delayed is used in up mode, not EQU0. EQU0 is active high when TBR = TBCL0. EQU0 delayed is active high when TBR = 0.

Table 11–3. State of OUTx at Next Rising Edge of Timer Clock

Mode	EQU0	EQUx	D
0	x	x	x(OUTx bit)
1	x	0	OUTx (no change)
	x	1	1 (set)
2	0	0	OUTx (no change)
	0	1	OUTx (toggle)
	1	0	0 (reset)
	1	1	1 (set)
3	0	0	OUTx (no change)
	0	1	1 (set)
	1	0	0 (reset)
	1	1	1 (set)
4	x	0	OUTx (no change)
	x	1	OUTx (toggle)
5	x	0	OUTx (no change)
	x	1	0 (reset)
6	0	0	OUTx (no change)
	0	1	OUTx (toggle)
	1	0	1 (set)
	1	1	0 (reset)
7	0	0	OUTx (no change)
	0	1	0 (reset)
	1	0	1 (set)
	1	1	0 (reset)

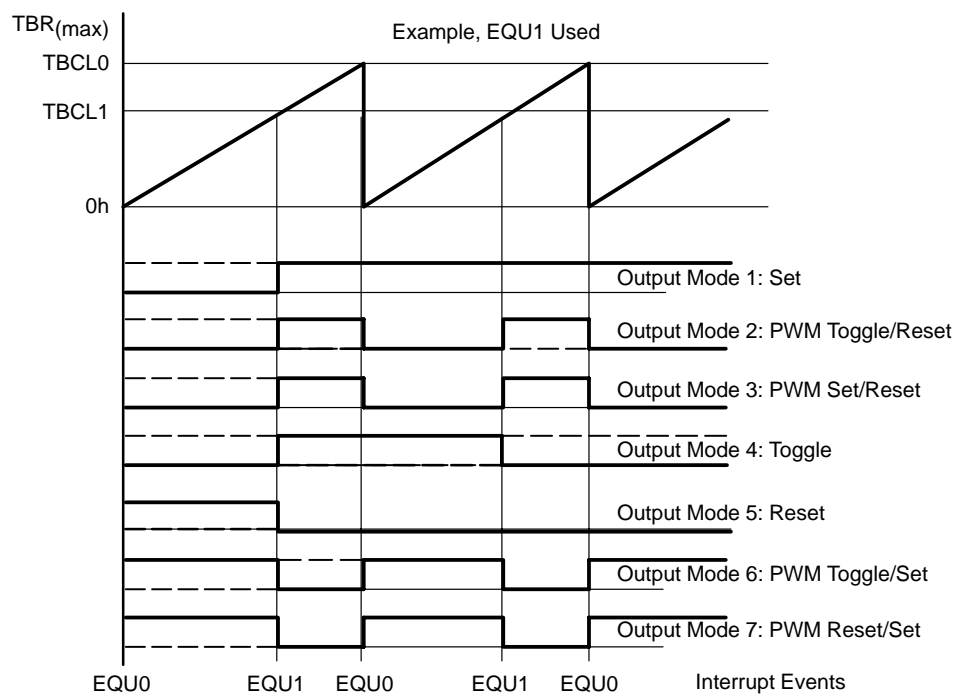
11.5.3 Output Examples

The following are some examples of possible output signals using the various timer and output modes.

11.5.3.1 Output Examples—Timer in Up Mode

The OUTx signal is changed when the timer *counts* up to the TBCLx value, and rolls from TBCL0 to zero, depending on the output mode, as shown in Figure 11–24.

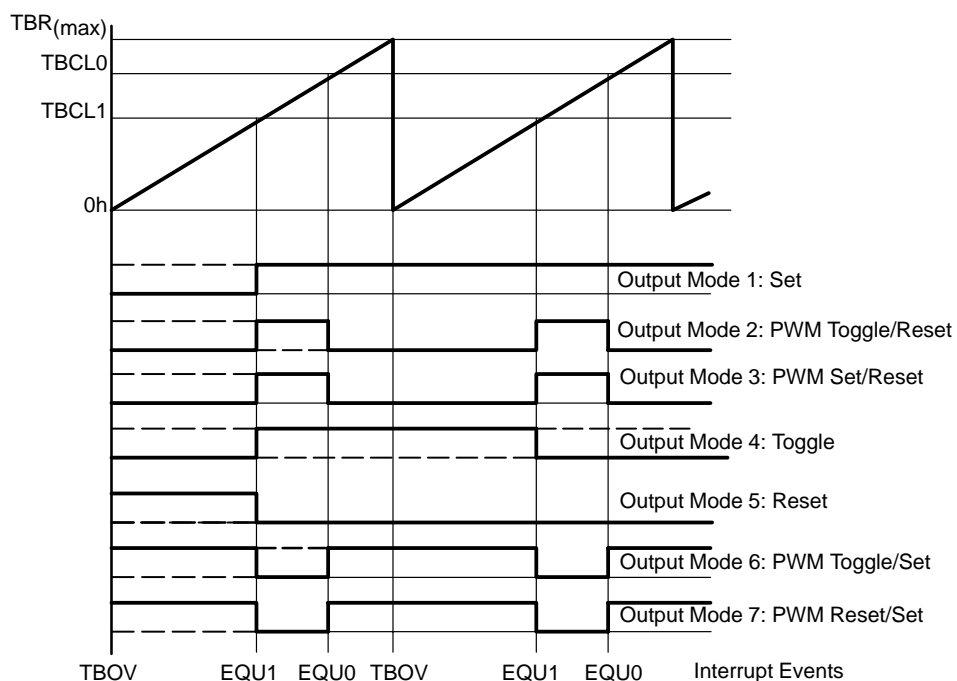
Figure 11–24. Output Examples—Timer in Up Mode



11.5.3.2 Output Examples—Timer in Continuous Mode

The OUTx signal is changed when the timer reaches the TBCLx and TBCL0 values, depending on the output mode, as shown in Figure 11–25.

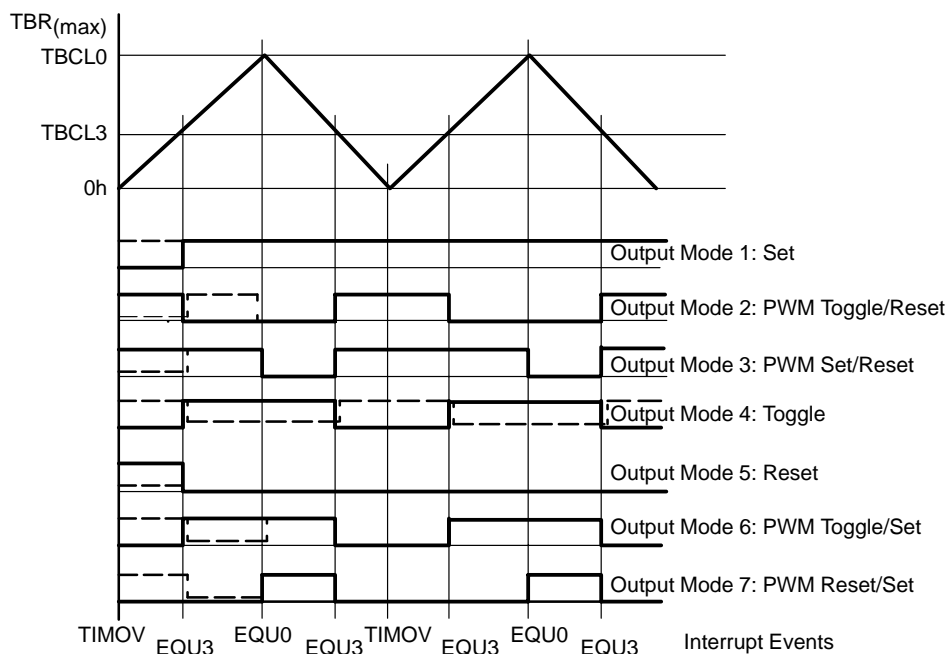
Figure 11–25. Output Examples—Timer in Continuous Mode



11.5.3.3 Output Examples – Timer in Up/Down Mode

The OUTx signal changes when the timer equals TBCLx in either count direction and when the timer equals TBCL0, depending on the output mode, as shown in Figure 11–26.

Figure 11–26. Output Examples – Timer in Up/Down Mode (I)



11.6 Timer_B Registers

The Timer_B registers, described in Table 11–4, are word structured and must be accessed using word instructions.

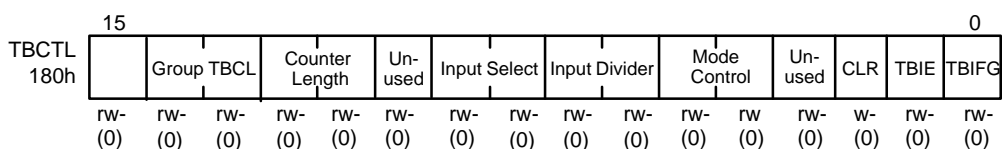
Table 11–4. Timer_B Registers

Register	Short Form	Register Type	Address	Initial State
Timer_B control	TBCTL	Read/write	180h	POR reset
Timer_B register	TBR	Read/write	190h	POR reset
Cap/com control 0	CCTL0	Read/write	182h	POR reset
Capture/compare 0	CCR0	Read/write	192h	POR reset
Cap/com control 1	CCTL1	Read/write	184h	POR reset
Capture/compare 1	CCR1	Read/write	194h	POR reset
Cap/com control 2	CCTL2	Read/write	186h	POR reset
Capture/compare 2	CCR2	Read/write	196h	POR reset
Cap/com control 3	CCTL3	Read/write	188h	POR reset
Capture/compare 3	CCR3	Read/write	198h	POR reset
Cap/com control 4	CCTL4	Read/write	18Ah	POR reset
Capture/compare 4	CCR4	Read/write	19Ah	POR reset
Capture/compare 5	CCTL5	Read/write	18Ch	POR reset
Capture/compare 5	CCR5	Read/write	19Ch	POR reset
Capture/compare 6	CCTL6	Read/write	18Eh	POR reset
Capture/compare 6	CCR6	Read/write	19Eh	POR reset
Interrupt vector	TBIV	Read	11Eh	(POR reset)

11.6.1 Timer_B Control Register TBCTL

The timer and timer operation control bits are located in the timer control register (TBCTL) shown in Figure 11–27. All control bits are reset automatically by the POR signal, but are not affected by the PUC signal. The control register must be accessed using word instructions.

Figure 11–27. Timer_B Control Register TBCTL



- Bit 0: TBIFG: This flag indicates a timer overflow event.
- Up mode: TBIFG is set if the timer *counts* from TBCL0 value to 0000h.
- Continuous mode: TBIFG is set if the timer *counts* from TBR_(max) to 0000h.
- Up/down mode: TBIFG is set if the timer *counts* down from 0001h to 0000h.
- Bit 1: Timer overflow interrupt enable (TBIE) bit. An interrupt request from the timer overflow bit is enabled if this bit is set, and is disabled if reset.

Bit 2: Timer clear (CLR) bit. The timer and input divider are reset with the POR signal, or if bit CLR is set. The CLR bit is automatically reset and is always read as zero. The timer starts in the upward direction with the next valid clock edge, unless halted by cleared mode control bits.

Bit 3: Not used

Bits 4, 5: Mode control: Table 11–5 describes the mode control bits.

Table 11–5. Mode Control

MC1	MC0	Count Mode	Description
0	0	Stop	Timer is halted.
0	1	Up to CCR0	Timer counts up to TBCL0 and restarts at 0. Note: If TBCL0 > TBR _(max) , the counter counts to zero with the next rising edge of timer clock.
1	0	Continuous up	Timer counts up to TBR _(max) and restarts at 0. The maximum value of TBR [TBR _(max)] is: 0FFFFh for 16-bit configuration 00FFFh for 12-bit configuration 003FFh for 10-bit configuration 000FFh for 8-bit configuration
1	1	Up/down	Timer continuously counts up to CCR0 and back down to 0. Note: If CCR0 > TBR _(max) , the counter operates as if it were configured for continuous mode. It will not count down from TBR _(max) to zero.

Bits 6, 7: Input divider control bits. Table 11–6 describes the clock-divider bits.

Table 11–6. Input Clock Divider Control Bits

ID1	ID0	Operation	Description
0	0	/1	Input clock source is passed to the timer.
0	1	/2	Input clock source is divided by two.
1	0	/4	Input clock source is divided by four.
1	1	/8	Input clock source is divided by eight.

Bits 8, 9: Clock source selection bits. Table 11–7 describes the clock source selections.

Table 11–7. Clock Source Selection

SSEL1	SSEL0	O/P Signal	Comment
0	0	TBCLK	See data sheet device description
0	1	ACLK	Auxiliary clock ACLK is used
1	0	SMCLK	System clock SMCLK
1	1	INCLK	See device description in data sheet

- Bit 10: Unused
- Bits 11, 12: Configure 16-bit timer (TBR) for 8-bit, 10-bit, 12-bit, or 16-bit operation
- CNTL = 0: 16-bit length, $TBR_{(max)}$ is 0FFFFH
 CNTL = 1: 12-bit length, $TBR_{(max)}$ is 0FFFH
 CNTL = 2: 10-bit length, $TBR_{(max)}$ is 03FFH
 CNTL = 3: 8-bit length, $TBR_{(max)}$ is 0FFH
- Bits 13, 14: Load compare latches, individually or in groups. The load signal is controlled via the CLLDx bits located in the appropriate capture/compare control register CCTLx.
- TBCLGRP = 0: load individually
 Load of the shadow registers is defined in each individual CCTLx register by bits CLLDx. The CLLD bits in each CCTLx register define the operating mode for the shadow registers.
- TBCLGRP = 1: Three groups are selected (TBCL1 + TBCL2, TBCL3 + TBCL4, TBCL5 + TBCL6):
 TBCL1 + TBCL2: The CLLD bits in CCTL1 define the operating mode.
 TBCL3 + TBCL4: The CLLD bits in CCTL3 define the operating mode.
 TBCL5 + TBCL6: The CLLD bits in CCTL5 define the operating mode.
- TBCLGRP = 2: Two groups are selected (TBCL1 + TBCL2 + TBCL3, TBCL4 + TBCL5 + TBCL6):
 TBCL1 + TBCL2 + TBCL3: The CLLD bits in CCTL1 define the operating mode.
 TBCL4 + TBCL5 + TBCL6: The CLLD bits in CCTL4 define the operating mode.
- TBCLGRP = 3: One group is selected (all TBCLx registers):
 The CLLD bits in CCTL1 define the operating mode for all shadow registers.
- Bit 15: Unused

Note: Changing Timer_B Control Bits

If the timer operation is modified by the control bits in the TBCTL register, the timer should be halted during this modification. Critical modifications are the input select bits, input divider bits, and the timer clear bit. Asynchronous clocks, input clock, and system clock can result in race conditions where the timer reacts unpredictably.

The recommended instruction flow is:

- 1) Modify the control register and stop the timer with one instruction.
- 2) Start the timer operation.

For example:

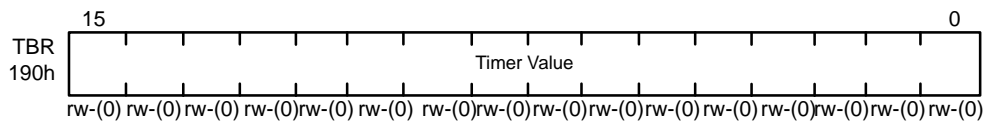
MOV #0286h,&TBCTL ; ACLK/8, timer stopped, timer cleared

BIS #10h,&TBCTL ; Start timer with up mode

11.6.2 Timer_B Register TBR

The TBR register is the value of the timer.

Figure 11–28. TBR Register

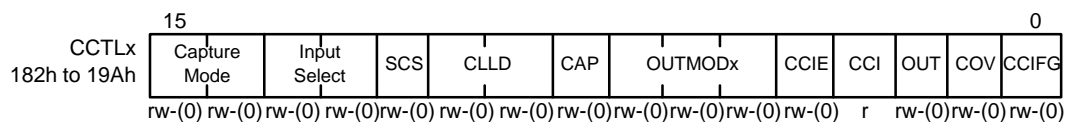
**Note: Modifying Timer_B Register TBR**

When ACLK, SMCLK, or the external clock TBCLK or INCLK is selected for the timer clock, any write to timer register TBR should occur while the timer is not operating; otherwise, the results may be unpredictable. In this case, the timer clock is asynchronous to the CPU clock MCLK and critical race conditions exist.

11.6.3 Capture/Compare Control Register CCTLx

Each capture/compare block has its own control word CCTLx, shown in Figure 11–29. The POR signal resets all bits of CCTLx; the PUC signal does not affect these bits.

Figure 11–29. Capture/Compare Control Register CCTLx



- Bit 0: Capture/compare interrupt flag CCIFGx
 Capture mode:
 If set, it indicates that a timer value was captured in the CCRx register.
 Compare mode:
 If set, it indicates that a timer value was equal to the data in the TBCLx latch.
 CCIFG0 flag:
 CCIFG0 is automatically reset when the interrupt request is accepted.
 CCIFG1 to CCIFGx flags:
 The flag that caused the interrupt is automatically reset after the TBIV word is accessed. If the TBIV register is not accessed, the flags must be reset with software.
 No interrupt is generated if the corresponding interrupt enable bit is reset, but the flag will be set. In this scenario, the flag must be reset by the software.
 Setting the CCIFGx flag with software will request an interrupt if the interrupt-enable bit is set.
- Bit 1: Capture overflow flag COV
 Compare mode selected, CAP = 0:
 Capture signal generation is reset. No compare event will set COV bit.
 Capture mode selected, CAP = 1:
 The overflow flag COV is set if a second capture is performed before the first capture value is read. The overflow flag must be reset with software. It is not reset by reading the capture value.
- Bit 2: The OUTx bit determines the value of the OUTx signal if the output mode is 0.
- Bit 3: Capture/compare input signal CCIx:
 The selected input signal (CCIxA, CCIxB, V_{CC}, or GND) can be read by this bit. See Figure 11–18.
- Bit 4: Interrupt enable CCIEx: Enables or disables the interrupt request signal of capture/compare block x. Note that the GIE bit must also be set to enable the interrupt.
 0: Interrupt disabled
 1: Interrupt enabled
- Bits 5 to 7: Output mode select bits:
 Table 11–7 describes the output mode selections.

Table 11–8. Capture/Compare Control Register Output Mode

Bit Value	Output Mode	Description
0	Output only	The OUTx signal reflects the value of the OUTx bit
1	Set	EQUx sets OUTx
2	PWM toggle/reset	EQUx toggles OUTx. EQU0 resets OUTx.
3	PWM set/reset	EQUx sets OUTx. EQU0 resets OUTx
4	Toggle	EQUx toggles OUTx signal.
5	Reset	EQUx resets OUTx.
6	PWM toggle/set	EQUx toggles OUTx. EQU0 sets OUTx.
7	PWM reset/set	EQUx resets OUTx. EQU0 sets OUTx.

Note: OUTx updates with rising edge of timer clock for all modes except mode 0. Modes 2, 3, 6, 7 not useful for output unit 0.

Bit 8: CAP sets capture or compare mode.

0: Compare mode

1: Capture mode

Bits 9, 10: CLLD: Select load source for compare latch TBCLx (also see description of bits TBCLGRP, 13 and 14, in TBCTL)
 CLLD = 0: Immediate
 CLLD = 1: Load CCRx data to TBCLx when TBR counts to 0
 CLLD = 2: UP/DOWN mode: load CCRx data to TBCLx when TBR *counts* to TBCL0 or to 0
 Continuous mode or UP-mode: load CCRx data to TBCLx when TBR counts to 0
 CLLD = 3: CCRx data are loaded to TBCLx when TBR *counts* to TBCLx

Bit 11: SCSx bit:

This bit is used to synchronize the capture input signal with the timer clock.

0: asynchronous capture

1: synchronous capture

Bits 12, 13: Input select, CCIS0 and CCIS1:
 These two bits define the capture signal source. These bits are not used in compare mode.

0 Input CClxA is selected

1 Input CClxB is selected

2 GND

3 V_{CC}

Bits 14, 15: Capture mode bits:

Table 11–8 describes the capture mode selections.

Table 11–9. Capture/Compare Control Register Capture Mode

Bit Value	Capture Mode	Description
0	Disabled	The capture mode is disabled.
1	Pos. Edge	Capture is done with rising edge.
2	Neg. Edge	Capture is done with falling edge.
3	Both Edges	Capture is done with both rising and falling edges.

Note: Simultaneous Capture and Capture Mode Selection

Captures must not be performed simultaneously with switching from compare to capture mode. Otherwise, the result in the capture/compare register will be unpredictable.

The recommended instruction flow is:

- 1) Modify the control register to switch from compare to capture.
- 2) Capture

For example:

```

BIS #CAP,&CCTL2      ; Select capture with register CCR2
XOR #CCIS1,&CCTL2    ; Software capture:      CCIS0 = 0
                                     ;          Capture mode = 3

```

11.6.4 Timer_B Interrupt Vector Register

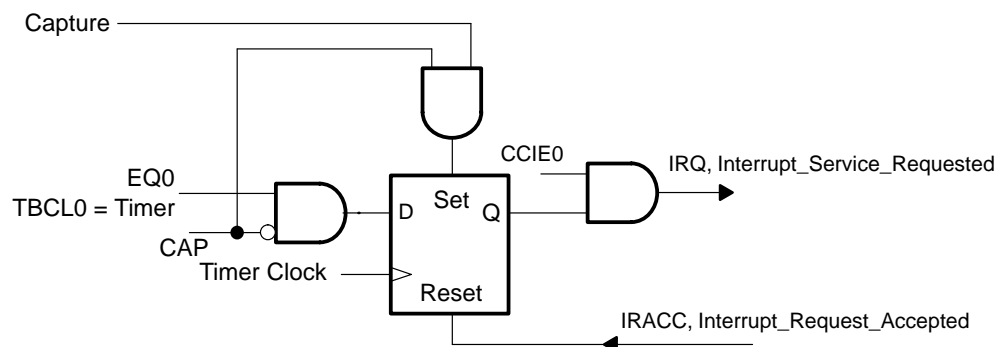
Two interrupt vectors are associated with the 16-bit Timer_B module:

- ☐ CCR0 interrupt vector (highest priority)
- ☐ TBIV interrupt vector for flags CCIFG1–CCIFGx and TBIFG.

11.6.4.1 CCR0 Interrupt Vector

The interrupt flag associated with capture/compare register CCR0, as shown in Figure 11–30, is set if the timer value is equal to the compare register value.

Figure 11–30. Capture/Compare Interrupt Flag



Capture/compare register 0 has the highest Timer_B interrupt priority, and uses its own interrupt vector.

11.6.4.2 Vector Word, TBIFG, CCIFG1 to CCIFGx Flags

The CCIFGx (other than CCIFG0) and TBIFG interrupt flags are prioritized and combined to source a single interrupt as shown in Figure 11–31. The interrupt vector register TBIV (shown in Figure 11–32) is used to determine which flag requested an interrupt.

Figure 11–31. Schematic of Capture/Compare Interrupt Vector Word

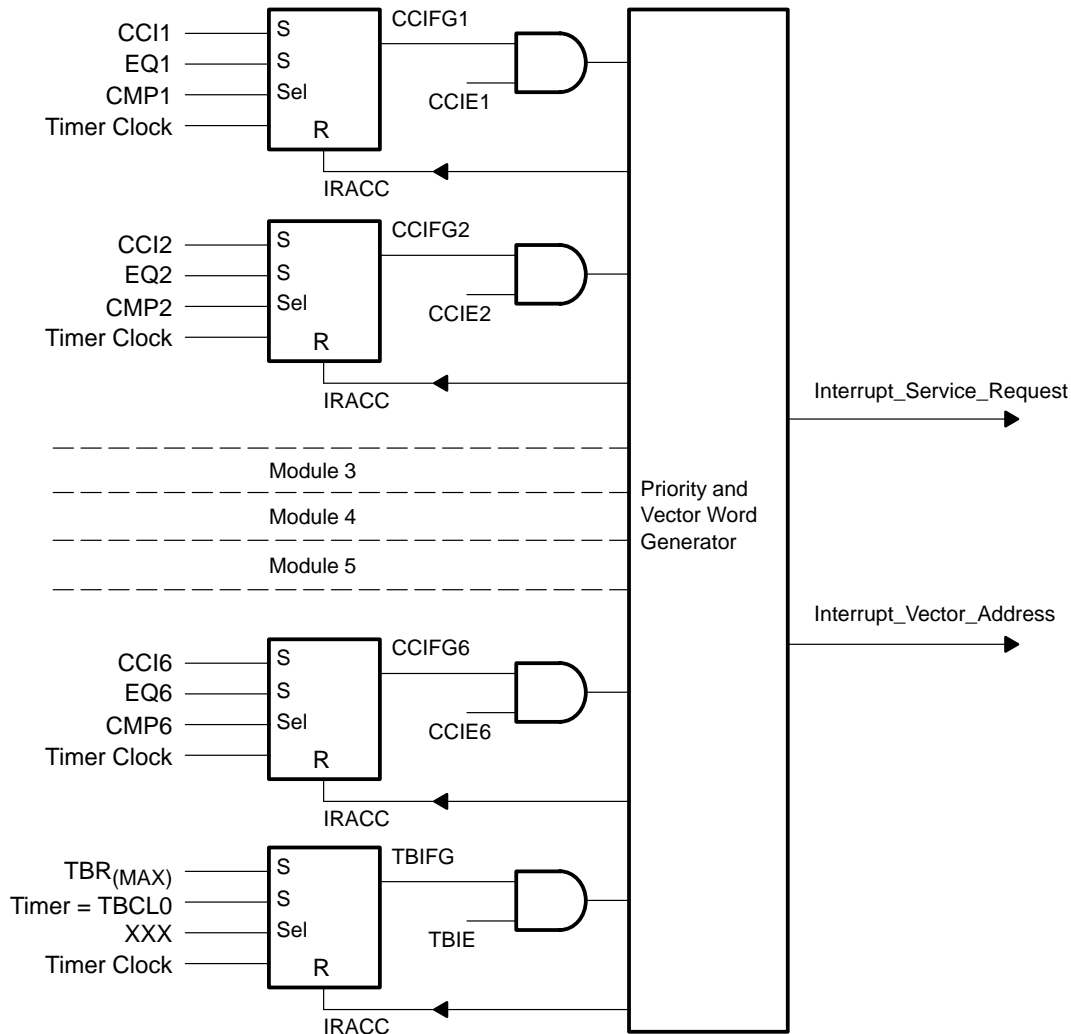
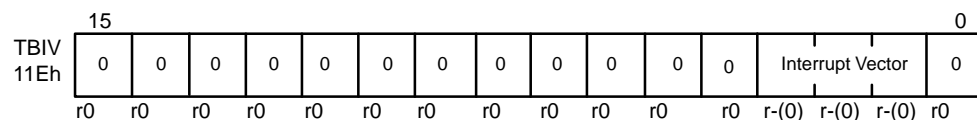


Figure 11–32. Vector Word Register



The flag with the highest priority generates a number from 2 to 14 in the TBIV register as shown in Table 11–9. (If the value of the TBIV register is 0, no interrupt is pending.) This number can be added to the program counter to automatically enter the appropriate software routine without the need for reading and evaluating the interrupt vector. The software example in section 11.6.4.3 shows this technique.

Table 11–10. Vector Register TBIV Description

Interrupt Priority	Interrupt Source	Short Form	Vector Register TBIV Contents
Highest [†]	Capture/compare 1	CCIFG1	2
	Capture/compare 2	CCIFG2	4
	Capture/compare 3 [‡]	CCIFG3	6
	Capture/compare 4 [‡]	CCIFG4	8
	Capture/compare 5 [‡]	CCIFG5	10
	Capture/compare 6 [‡]	CCIFG6	12
Lowest	Timer overflow	TBIFG	14
	No interrupt pending		0

[†] Highest pending interrupt other than CCIFG0. CCIFG0 is always the highest priority Timer_B interrupt.

[‡] 14x devices only

Accessing the TBIV register automatically resets the highest pending interrupt flag. If another interrupt flag is set, then another interrupt will be immediately generated after servicing the initial interrupt. For example, if both CCIFG2 and CCIFG3 are set, when the interrupt service routine accesses the TBIV register (either by reading it or by adding it directly to the PC), CCIFG2 will be reset automatically. After the RETI instruction of the interrupt service routine is executed, the CCIFG3 flag will generate another interrupt.

Note: Writing to Read-Only Register TBIV

Register TBIV should not be written to. If a write operation to TBIV is performed, the interrupt flag of the highest-pending interrupt is reset. Therefore, the requesting interrupt event is missed. Additionally, writing to this read-only register results in increased current consumption as long as the write operation is active.

11.6.4.3 Timer Interrupt Vector Register, Software Example, Timer_B7

The following software example describes the use of vector word TBIV of Timer_B3 and the handling overhead. The numbers at the right margin show the necessary cycles for every instruction. The example is written for continuous mode: the time difference to the next interrupt is added to the corresponding compare register.

```

; Software example for the interrupt part                                Cycles
;
; Interrupt handler for Capture/Compare Module 0.
; The interrupt flag CCIFG0 is reset automatically
;
TIMMOD0    ...    ; Start of handler Interrupt latency 6
            RETI    5
;
; Interrupt handler for Capture/Compare Modules 1 to 6.
; The interrupt flags CCIFGx and TBIFG are reset by
; hardware. Only the flag with the highest priority
; responsible for the interrupt vector word is reset.
TIM_HND    $      ; Interrupt latency 6
            ADD     &TBIV,PC    ; Add offset to Jump table 3
            RETI    ; Vector 0: No interrupt 5
            JMP     TIMMOD1    ; Vector 2: Module 1 2
            JMP     TIMMOD2    ; Vector 4: Module 2 2
            JMP     TIMMOD3    ; Vector 6: Module 3 2
            JMP     TIMMOD4    ; Vector 8: Module 4 2
            JMP     TIMMOD5    ; Vector 10: Module 5 2
            JMP     TIMMOD6    ; Vector 12: Module 6 2
;
; Module 7. Timer Overflow Handler: the Timer Register is
; expanded into the RAM location TIMEXT (MSBs)
;
TIMOVH     $      ; Vector 14: TIMOV Flag
            INC     TIMEXT    ; Handle Timer Overflow 4
            RETI    5
;
TIMMOD2     $      ; Vector 4: Module 2
            ADD     #NN,&CCR2  ; Add time difference 5
            ...     ; Task starts here
            RETI    ; Back to main program 5
;
TIMMOD1     $      ; Vector 2: Module 1
            ADD     #MM,&CCR1  ; Add time difference 5
            ...     ; Task starts here
            RETI    ; Back to main program 5
;
; The Module 3 handler shows a way to look if any other
; interrupt is pending: 5 cycles have to be spent, but
; 9 cycles may be saved if another interrupt is pending
;
TIMMOD3     $      ; Vector 6: Module 3
            ADD     #PP,&CCR3  ; Add time difference 5
            ...     ; Task starts here
            JMP     TIM_HND    ; Look for pending interrupts 2
;

```


11.6.4.4 Timer Interrupt Vector Register, Software Example, Timer_B3

The following software example describes the use of vector word TBIV of Timer_B3 and the handling overhead. The numbers at the right margin show the necessary cycles for every instruction. The example is written for continuous mode: the time difference to the next interrupt is added to the corresponding compare register.

```

; Software example for the interrupt part                                Cycles
;
; Interrupt handler for Capture/Compare Module 0.
; The interrupt flag CCIFG0 is reset automatically
;
TIMMOD0    ...                ; Start of handler Interrupt latency 6
           RETI                5
;
; Interrupt handler for Capture/Compare Modules 1 to 6.
; The interrupt flags CCIFGx and TBIFG are reset by
; hardware. Only the flag with the highest priority
; responsible for the interrupt vector word is reset.
TIM_HND    $                  ; Interrupt latency 6
           ADD    &TBIV,PC      ; Add offset to Jump table 3
           RETI                ; Vector 0: No interrupt 5
           JMP    TIMMOD1       ; Vector 2: Module 1 2
           JMP    TIMMOD2       ; Vector 4: Module 2 2
           RETI                ; Vector 6
           RETI                ; Vector 8
           RETI                ; Vector 10
           RETI                ; Vector 12
;
; Timer Overflow Handler: the Timer Register is expanded
; into the RAM location TIMEXT (MSBs)
;
TIMOVH     INC    TIMEXT        ; Handle Timer Overflow 4
           RETI                5
;
TIMMOD2     ADD    #NN,&CCR2     ; Add time difference 5
           ...                ; Task starts here
           RETI                ; Back to main program 5
;
; The Module 1 handler shows a way to look if any other
; interrupt is pending: 5 cycles have to be spent, but
; 9 cycles may be saved if another interrupt is pending
;
TIMMOD1     ADD    #PP,&CCR1     ; Add time difference 5
           ...                ; Task starts here
           JMP    TIM_HND       ; Look for pending interrupts 2

```

If the FLL (on applicable devices) is turned off, then two additional cycles need to be added for a synchronous start of the CPU and system clock MCLK.

If the CPU clock MCLK was turned off in devices with the Basic Clock Module (CPUOFF=1), then 2 or 3 additional cycles need to be added for synchronous start of the CPU. The delta of one clock cycle is caused when clocks are asynchronous to the restart of CPU clock MCLK.

The software overhead for different interrupt sources includes interrupt latency and return-from-interrupt cycles (but not the task handling itself), as described:

<input type="checkbox"/> Capture/compare block CCR0	11 cycles
<input type="checkbox"/> Capture/compare blocks CCR1 to CCR6	16 cycles
<input type="checkbox"/> Timer overflow TBIFG	14 cycles

11.6.4.5 Timing Limits

With the TBIV register and the previous software, the shortest repetitive time distance t_{CRmin} between two events using a compare register is:

$$t_{CRmin} = t_{taskmax} + 16 \times t_{cycle}$$

With: $t_{taskmax}$ Maximum (worst case) time to perform the task during the interrupt routine (for example, incrementing a counter)

t_{cycle} Cycle time of the system frequency MCLK

The shortest repetitive time distance t_{CLmin} between two events using a capture register is:

$$t_{CLmin} = t_{taskmax} + 16 \times t_{cycle}$$

USART Peripheral Interface, UART Mode

The universal synchronous/asynchronous receive/transmit (USART) serial-communication peripheral supports two serial modes with one hardware configuration. These modes shift a serial bit stream in and out of the MSP430 at a programmed rate or at a rate defined by an external clock. The first mode is the universal asynchronous receive/transmit (UART) communication protocol; the second is the serial peripheral interface (SPI) protocol (discussed in Chapter 13).

Bit SYNC in control register UCTL (U0CTL for USART0 or U1CTL for USART1) selects the required mode:

SYNC = 0: UART – asynchronous mode selected
 SYNC = 1: SPI – synchronous mode selected

The '12xx and '13x have one USART, named USART0. The '14x has two USARTs implemented: USART0 and USART1.

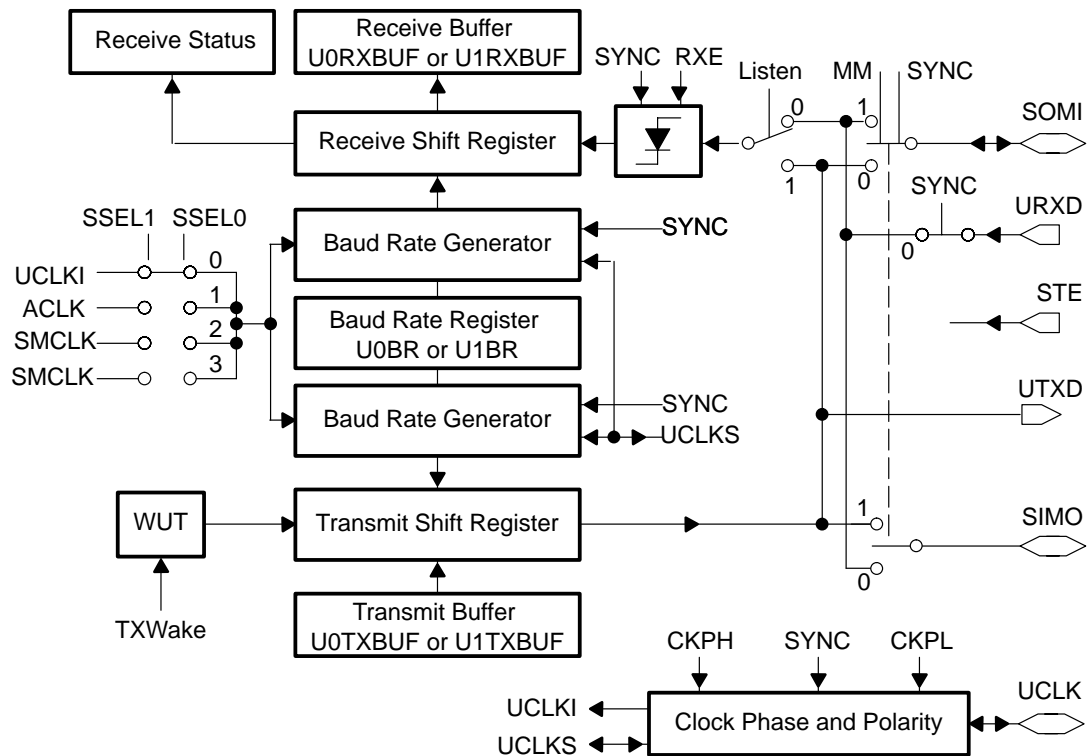
This chapter addresses the UART mode.

Topic	Page
12.1 USART Peripheral Interface	12-2
12.2 USART Peripheral Interface, UART Mode	12-3
12.3 Asynchronous Operation	12-4
12.4 Interrupt and Enable Functions	12-11
12.5 Control and Status Registers	12-15
12.6 Utilizing Features of Low-Power Modes	12-23
12.7 Baud Rate Considerations	12-26

12.1 USART Peripheral Interface

The USART peripheral interface connects to the CPU as a byte peripheral module. It connects the MSP430 to the external system environment with three or four external pins. Figure 12–1 shows the USART peripheral interface module.

Figure 12–1. Block Diagram of USART



12.2 USART Peripheral Interface, UART Mode

The USART peripheral interface is a serial channel that shifts a serial bit stream of 7 or 8 bits in and out of the MSP430. The UART mode is chosen when control bit SYNC in the USART control register (U0CTL for USART0 or U1CTL for USART1) is reset.

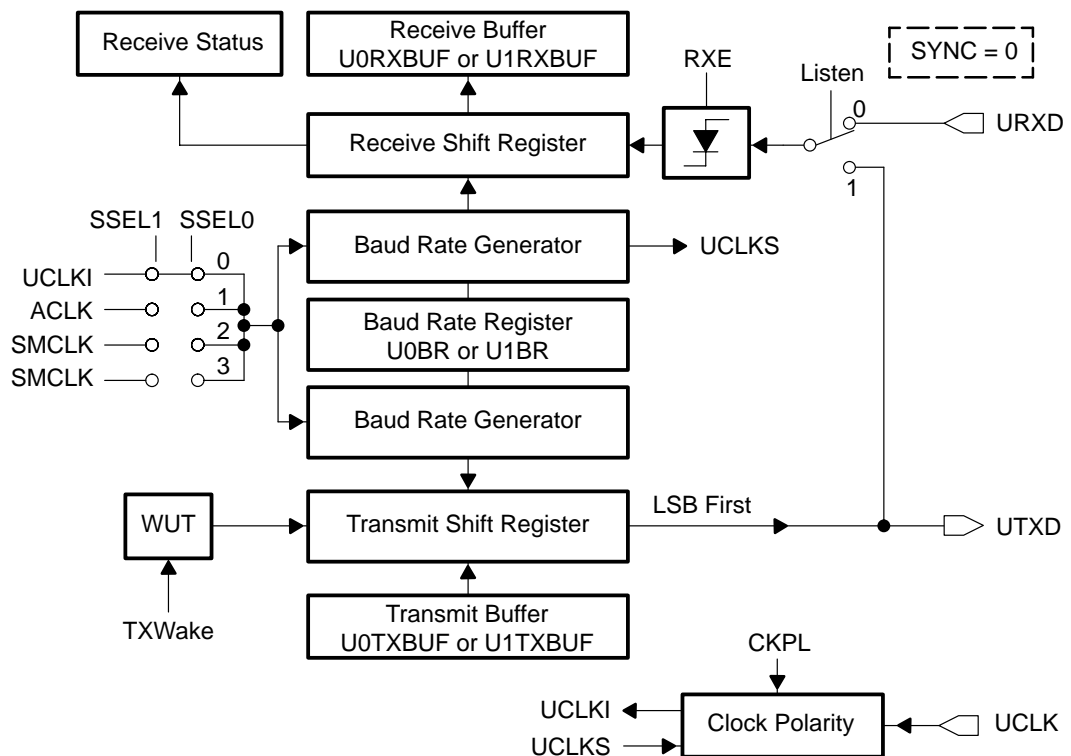
12.2.1 UART Serial Asynchronous Communication Features

Some of the UART features include:

- ☐ Asynchronous formats that include idle line/address bit-communication protocols
- ☐ Two shift registers that shift a serial data stream into URXD and out of UTXD
- ☐ Data that is transmitted/received with the LSB first
- ☐ Programmable transmit and receive bit rates
- ☐ Status flags

Figure 12–2 shows the USART in UART mode.

Figure 12–2. Block Diagram of USART—UART Mode



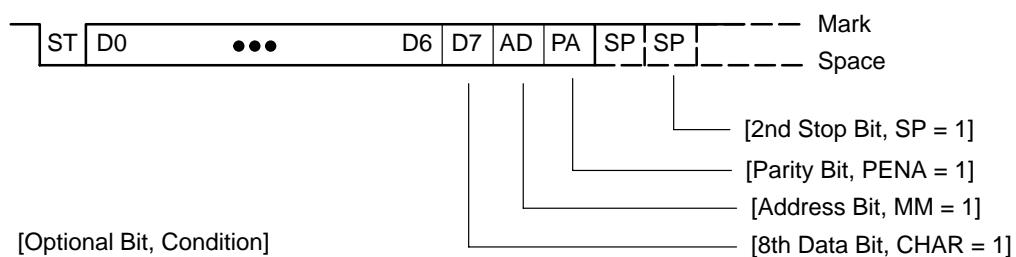
12.3 Asynchronous Operation

In the asynchronous mode, the receiver synchronizes itself to frames but the external transmitting and receiving devices do not use the same clock source; the baud rate is generated locally.

12.3.1 Asynchronous Frame Format

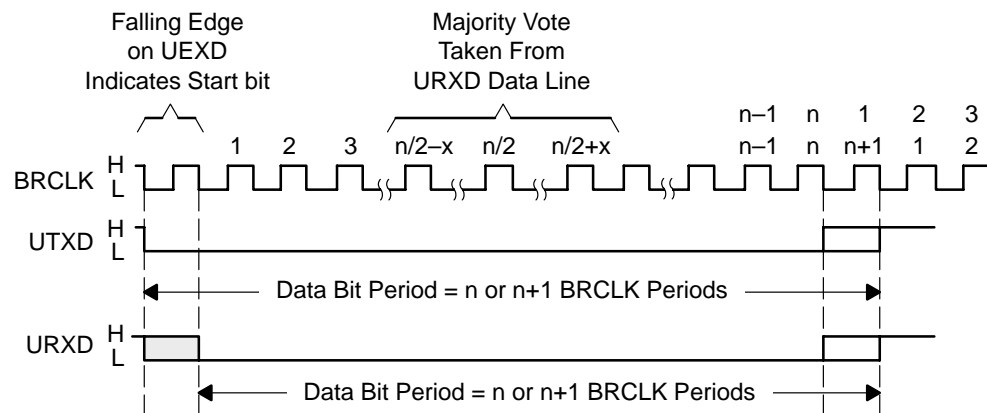
The asynchronous frame format, shown in Figure 12–3, consists of a start bit, seven or eight data bits, an even/odd/no parity bit, an address bit in address bit mode, and one or two stop bits. The bit period is defined by the selected clock source and the data in the baud rate registers.

Figure 12–3. Asynchronous Frame Format



The receive (RX) operation is initiated by the receipt of a valid start bit. It begins with a negative edge at URXD, followed by the taking of a majority vote from three samples where two of the samples must be zero. These samples occur at $n/2-X$, $n/2$, and $n/2+X$ of the BRCLK periods following the negative edge. This sequence provides false start-bit rejection, and also locates the center of the bits in the frame, where the bits can be read on a majority basis. The timing of X is $1/32$ to $1/63$ times that of the BRCLK, depending on the division rate of the baud rate generator and provides complete coverage of at least two BRCLK periods. Figure 12–4 shows an asynchronous bit format.

Figure 12–4. Asynchronous Bit Format Example for n or $n + 1$ Clock Periods



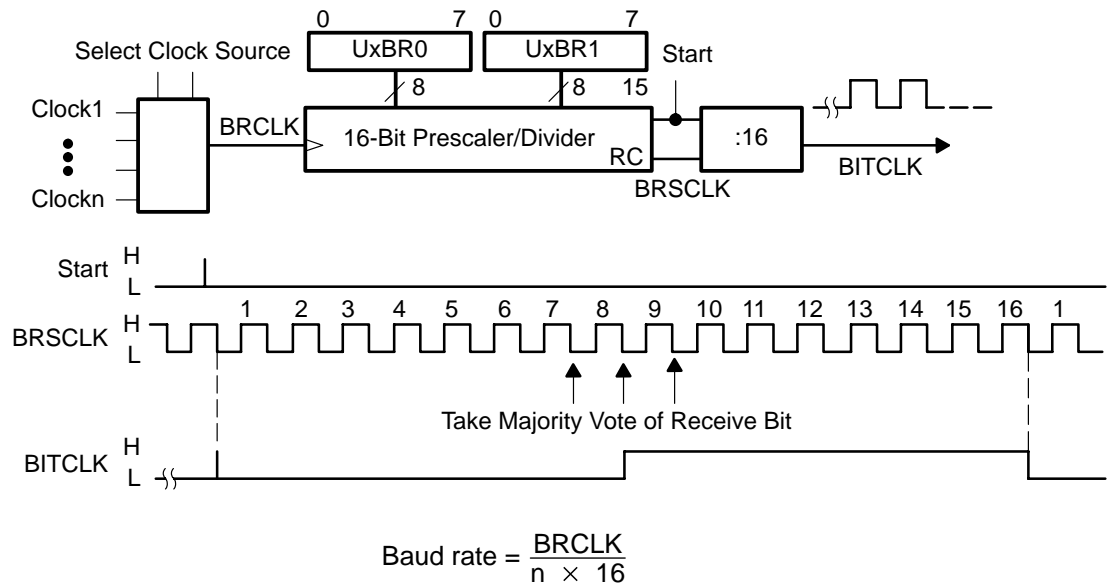
12.3.2 Baud Rate Generation in Asynchronous Communication Format

Baud rate generation in the MSP430 differs from other standard serial-communication interface implementations.

12.3.2.1 Typical Baud Rate Generation

Typical baud-rate generation uses a prescaler from any clock source and a fixed, second-clock divider that is usually divide-by-16. Figure 12–5 shows a typical baud-rate generation.

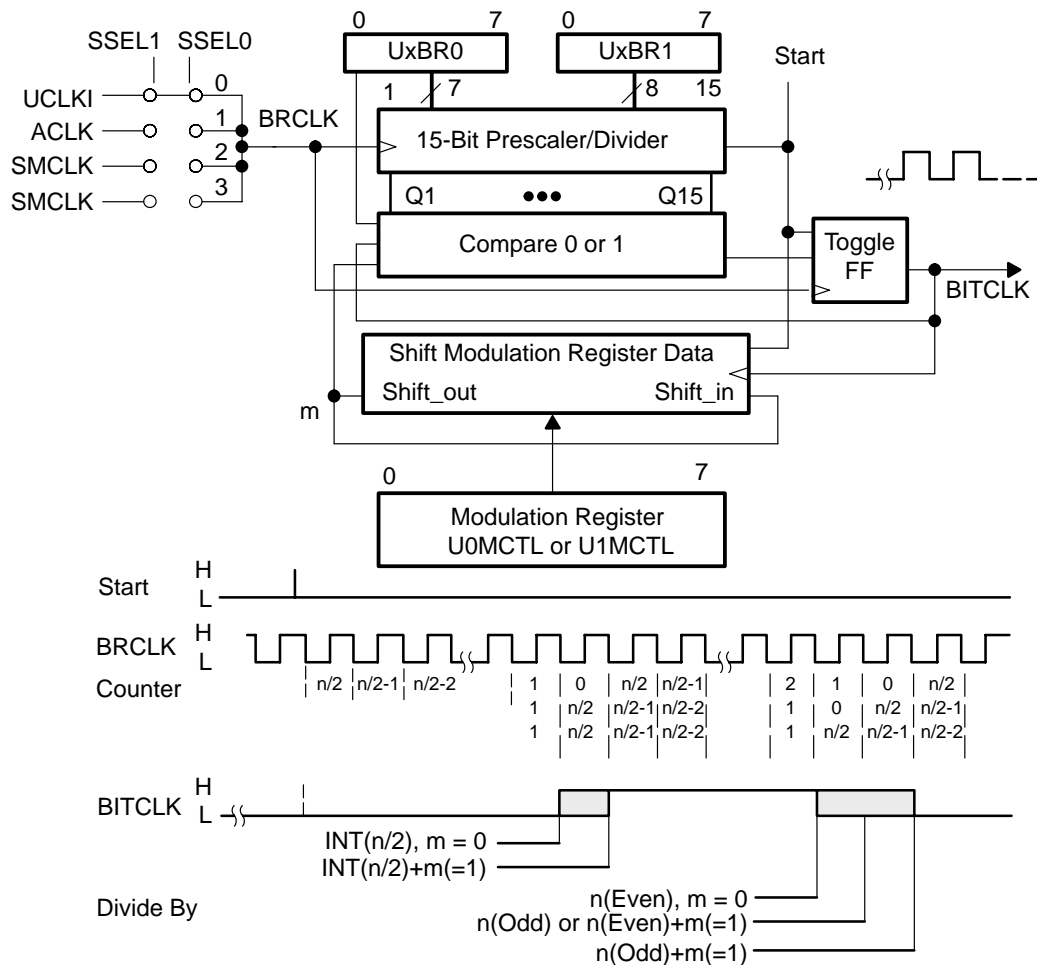
Figure 12–5. Typical Baud-Rate Generation Other Than MSP430



Typical baud-rate schemes often require specific crystal frequencies or cannot generate some baud rates required by some applications. For example, division factors of 18 are not possible, nor are noninteger factors such as 13.67.

12.3.2.2 MSP430 Baud Rate Generation

The MSP430 baud rate generator uses one prescaler/divider and a modulator as shown in Figure 12–6. This combination works with crystals whose frequencies are not multiples of the standard baud rates, allowing the protocol to run at maximum baud rate with a watch crystal (32,768 Hz). This technique results in power advantages because sophisticated, MSP430 low-power operations are possible.

Figure 12–6. MSP430 Baud Rate Generation Example for n or $n + 1$ Clock Periods

The modulation register LSB is first used for modulation, which begins with the start bit. A set modulation bit increases the division factor by one.

Example 12–1. 4800 Baud

Assuming a clock frequency of 32,768 Hz for the BRCLK signal and a required baud rate of 4800, the division factor is 6.83. The baud rate generation in the MSP430 USART uses a factor of six plus a modulation register load of 6Fh (0110 1111). The divider runs the following sequence: 7 – 7 – 7 – 7 – 6 – 7 – 7 – 6 and so on. The sequence repeats after all eight bits of the modulator are used.

Example 12–2. 19,200 Baud

Assuming a clock frequency of 1.04 MHz ($32 \times 32,768$ Hz) for the BRCLK signal and a required baud rate of 19,200, the division factor is 54.61. The baud rate generation in the MSP430 USART uses a factor of 54 (36h) plus a modulation register load of 0D5h. The divider runs the following sequence: 55 – 54 – 55 – 54 – 55 – 54 – 55 – 55, and so on. The sequence repeats after all eight bits of the modulator are used.

12.3.3 Asynchronous Communication Formats

The USART module supports two multiprocessor communication formats when asynchronous mode is used. These formats can transfer information between many microcomputers on the same serial link. Information is transferred as a block of frames from a particular source to one or more destinations. The USART has features that identify the start of blocks and suppress interrupts and status information from the receiver until a block start is identified. In both multiprocessor formats, the sequence of data exchanged with the USART module is based on data polling, or on the use of the receive interrupt features.

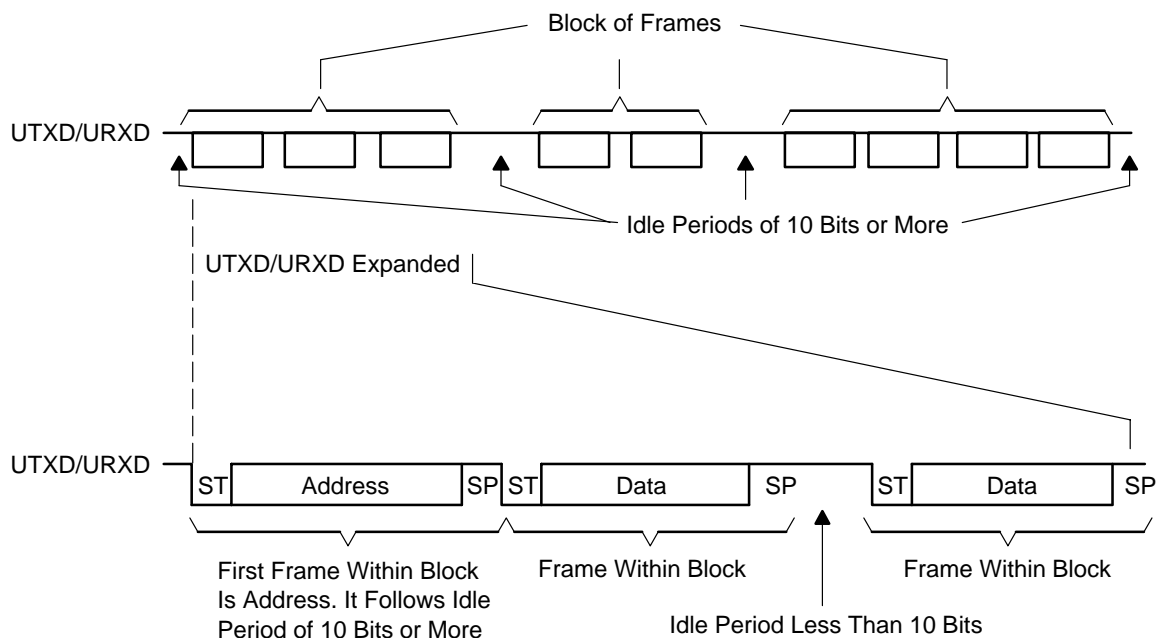
Both of the asynchronous multiprocessor formats—idle-line and address-bit—allow efficient data transfer between multiple communication systems. They can also minimize the activity of the system to save current consumption or processing resources.

The control register bit MM defines the address bit or idle-line multiprocessor format. Both use the wake-up-on-transfer mode by activating the TXWake bit (address feature function) and RXWake bit. The URXWIE and URXIE bits control the transmit and receive features of these asynchronous communication formats.

12.3.4 Idle-Line Multiprocessor Format

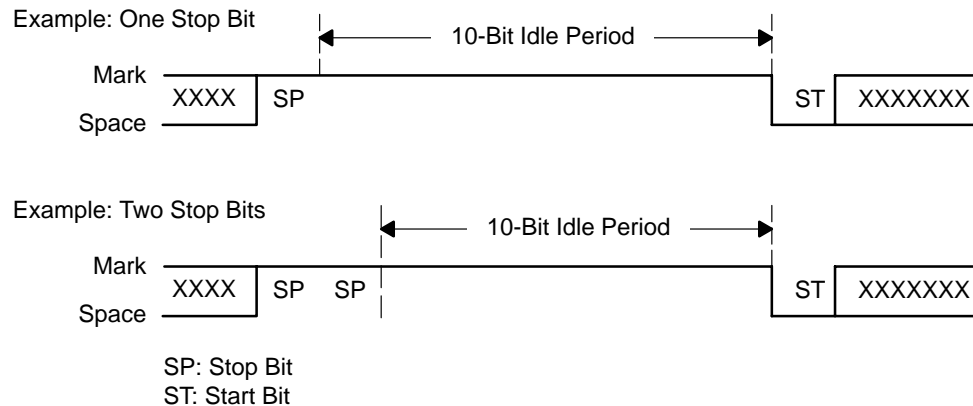
In the idle-line multiprocessor format, shown in Figure 12–7, blocks of data are separated by an idle time. An idle-receive line is detected when ten or more 1s in a row are received after the first stop bit of a character.

Figure 12–7. Idle-Line Multiprocessor Format



When two stop bits are used for the idle line, as shown in Figure 12–8, the second one is counted as the first mark bit of the idle period. The first character received after an idle period is an address character. The RXWake bit can be used as an address tag for the character. In the idle-line multiprocessor format, the RXWake bit is set when a received character is an address character and is transferred into the receive buffer.

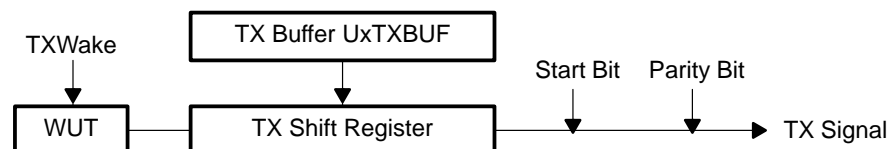
Figure 12–8. USART Receiver Idle Detect



Normally, if the USART URXWIE bit is set in the receive control register, characters are assembled as usual by the receiver. They are not, however, transferred to the receiver buffer, UxRXBUF, nor are interrupts generated. When an address character is received, the receiver is temporarily activated to transfer the character to UxRXBUF and to set the URXIFG interrupt flag. Applicable error status flags are set. The application software can validate the received address. If there is a match, the application software further processes the data and executes the operation. If there is no match, the processor waits for the next address character to arrive. The URXWIE bit is not modified by the USART: it must be modified manually to receive nonaddress or address characters.

In idle-line multiprocessor format, a precise idle period can be generated to create efficient address character identifiers. The wake-up temporary (WUT) flag is an internal flag and is double-buffered with TXWake. When the transmitter is loaded from UxTXBUF, WUT is loaded from TXWake, and the TXWake bit is reset as shown in Figure 12–9.

Figure 12–9. Double-Buffered WUT and TX Shift Register



The following procedure sends out an idle frame to identify an address character:

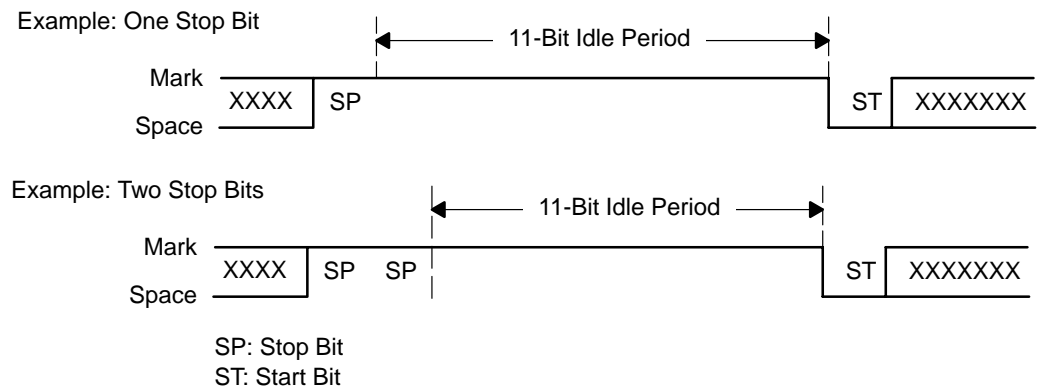
- 1) Set the TXWake bit and then write any word (don't care) to the UxTXBUF (UTXIFG must be set).

When the transmitter shift register is empty, the contents of UxTXBUF are shifted to the transmit shift register and the TXWake value is shifted to WUT.

- 2) Set bit WUT, which suppresses the start, data, and parity bits and transmits an idle period of exactly 11 bits, as shown in Figure 12–10.

The next data word, shifted out of the serial port after the address-character identifying idle period, is the second word written to the UxTXBUF after the TXWake bit has been set. The first data word written is suppressed while the address identifier is sent out and ignored thereafter. Writing the first don't care word to UxTXBUF is necessary to shift the TXWAKE bit to WUT and generate an idle-line condition.

Figure 12–10. USART Transmitter Idle Generation

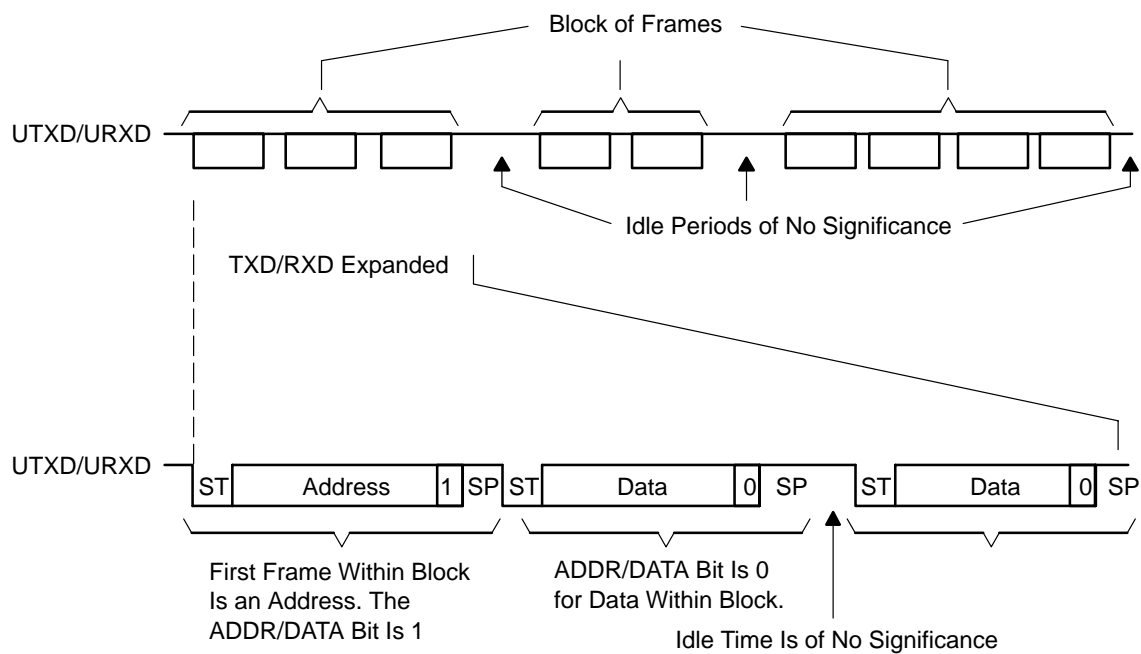


12.3.5 Address-Bit Multiprocessor Format

In the address-bit multiprocessor format shown in Figure 12–11, characters contain an extra bit used as an address indicator. The first character in a block of data carries an address bit which indicates that the character is an address. The RXWake bit is set when a received character is an address character. It is transferred into the receive buffer (receive conditions are true).

Usually, if the USART URXWIE bit is set, data characters are assembled by the receiver but are not transferred to the receiver buffer UxRXBUF, nor are interrupts generated. When a character that has an address bit set is received, the receiver is temporarily activated to transfer the character to UxRXBUF and to set the URXIFG. Error status flags are set as applicable. The application software processes the succeeding operation to optimize resource handling or reduce current consumption. The application software can validate the received address. If there is a match, the processor can read the remainder of the data block. If there is not a match, the processor waits for the next address character to arrive.

Figure 12–11. Address-Bit Multiprocessor Format



In the address-bit multiprocessor mode, the address bit of a character can be controlled by writing to the TXWake bit. The value of the TXWake bit is loaded into the address bit of that character each time a character is transferred from transmit buffer UxTXBUF to the transmitter. The TXWake bit is then cleared by the USART.

12.4 Interrupt and Enable Functions

The USART peripheral interface serves two main interrupt sources for transmission and reception. Two interrupt vectors serve receive and transmit events.

The interrupt control bits and flags and enable bits of the USART peripheral interface are located in the SFR registers. They are discussed in Table 12–1. See the peripheral file map in Appendix A for the exact bit locations.

Table 12–1. USART Interrupt Control and Enable Bits—UART Mode

Receive interrupt flag	URXIFG [‡]	Initial state reset (by PUC/SWRST)
Receive interrupt enable	URXIE [‡]	Initial state reset (by PUC/SWRST)
Receive enable [†]	URXE [‡]	Initial state reset (by PUC)
Transmit interrupt flag	UTXIFG [‡]	Initial state set (by PUC/SWRST)
Transmit interrupt enable	UTXIE [‡]	Initial state reset (by PUC/SWRST)
Transmit enable [†]	UTXE [‡]	Initial state reset (by PUC)

[†] Different for SPI mode, see Chapter 13

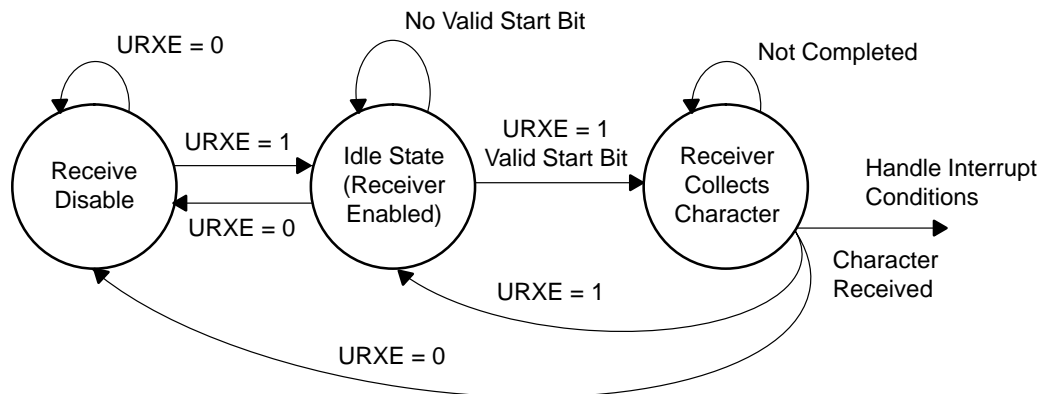
[‡] Suffix .0 for USART0 and .1 for USART1

The USART receiver and transmitter operate independently, but use the same baud rate.

12.4.1 USART Receive Enable Bit

The receive enable bit URXE, shown in Figure 12–12, enables or disables receipt of the bit stream on the URXD data line. Disabling the USART receiver stops the receive operation after completion of receiving the character, or stops immediately if no receive operation is active. Start-bit detection is also disabled.

Figure 12–12. State Diagram of Receiver Enable



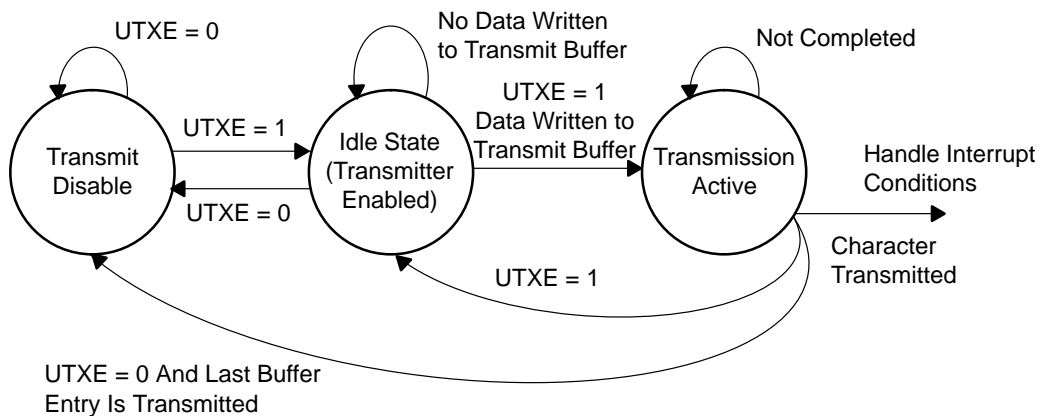
Note: URXE Reenabled, UART Mode

Because the receiver is completely disabled, reenabling the receiver is asynchronous to any data stream on the communication line. Synchronization can be performed by looking for an idle line condition before receiving a character.

12.4.2 USART Transmit Enable Bit

The transmit enable bit UTXE, shown in Figure 12–13, enables or disables a character transmission on the serial-data line. If this bit is reset, the transmitter is disabled, but any active transmission does not halt until the data in the transmit shift register and the transmit buffer are transmitted. Data written to the transmit buffer before UTXE has been reset may be modified or overwritten—even after UTXE is reset—until it is shifted to the transmit shift register. For example, if software writes a byte to the transmit buffer and then resets UTXE, the byte written to the transmit buffer will be transmitted and may be modified or overwritten until it is transferred into the transmit shift register. However, after the byte is transferred to the transmit shift register, any subsequent writes to UxTXBUF while UTXE is reset will not result in transmission, but UxTXBUF will be updated with the new value.

Figure 12–13. State Diagram of Transmitter Enable



When UTXE is reset and the current transmission is completed, new data written to the transmit buffer will not be transmitted. Once the UTXE bit is set, the data in the transmit buffer are immediately loaded into the transmit shift register and character transmission is started.

Note: Writing to UxTXBUF, UART Mode

Data should never be written to transmit buffer UxTXBUF when the buffer is not ready (UTIFG=0) and when the transmitter is enabled (UTXE is set). Otherwise, the transmission may have errors.

Note: Write to UxTXBUF/Reset of Transmitter, UART Mode

Disabling the transmitter should be done only if all data to be transmitted has been moved to the transmit shift register. Data is moved from UxTXBUF to the transmit shift register on the next bit clock after the shift register is ready.

```

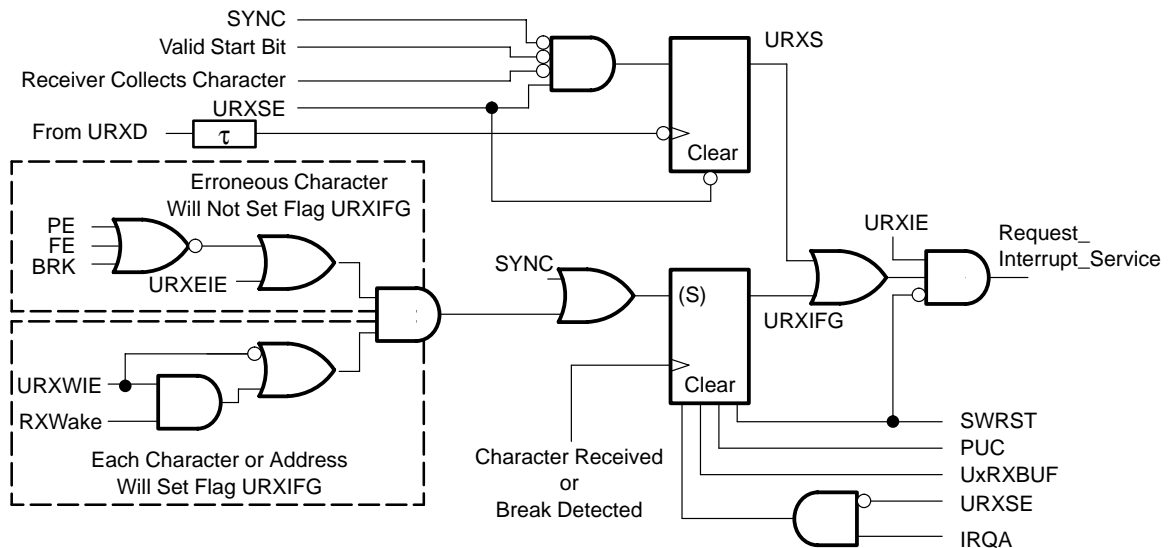
MOV.B #..., &U0TXBUF
BIC.B #UTXE.0, &ME2      ; If BITCLK < MCLK then the
                          ; transmitter might be stopped
                          ; before the buffer is loaded
                          ; into the transmitter shift
                          ; register
  
```

12.4.3 USART Receive Interrupt Operation

In the receive interrupt operation, shown in Figure 12–14, the receive interrupt flag URXIFG is set or is unchanged each time a character is received and loaded into the receive buffer:

- ❑ Erroneous characters (parity, frame, or break error) do not set interrupt flag URXIFG when URXEIE is reset: URXIFG is unchanged.
- ❑ All types of characters (URXWIE = 0), or only address characters (URXWIE = 1), set the interrupt flag URXIFG. When URXEIE is set, erroneous characters can also set the interrupt flag URXIFG.

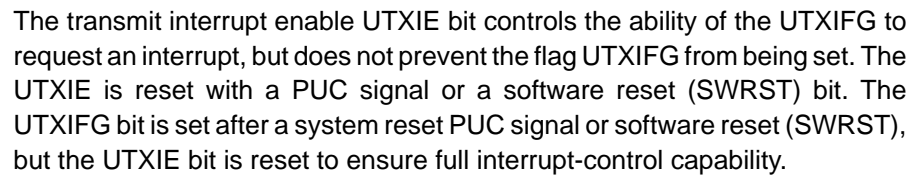
Figure 12–14. Receive Interrupt Operation



URXIFG is reset by a system reset PUC signal, or with a software reset (SWRST). URXIFG is reset automatically if the interrupt is served (URXSE = 0) or the receive buffer UxRXBUF is read. A set receive interrupt flag URXIFG indicates that an interrupt event is waiting to be served. A set receive interrupt enable bit URXIE enables serving a waiting interrupt request. Both the receive interrupt flag URXIFG and the receive interrupt enable bit URXIE are reset with the PUC signal and a SWRST.

Signal URXIFG can be accessed by the software, whereas signal URXS cannot. When both interrupt events—character receive action and receive start detection—are enabled by the software, the flag URXIFG indicates that a character was received but the start-detect interrupt was not. Because the interrupt software handler for the receive start detection resets the URXSE bit, this clears the URXS bit and prevents further interrupt requests from URXS. The URXIFG should already be reset since no set condition was active during URXIFG latch time.

Figure 12–15. Transmit Interrupt Operation



12.5 Control and Status Registers

The USART control and status registers are byte structured and should be accessed using byte processing instructions (suffix B). Table 12–3 lists the registers and their access modes.

Table 12–2. USART0 Control and Status Registers

Register	Short Form	Register Type	Address	Initial State
USART control	U0CTL	Read/write	070h	See section 12.5.1.
Transmit control	U0TCTL	Read/write	071h	See section 12.5.2.
Receive control	U0RCTL	Read/write	072h	See section 12.5.3.
Modulation control	U0MCTL	Read/write	073h	Unchanged
Baud rate 0	U0BR0	Read/write	074h	Unchanged
Baud rate 1	U0BR1	Read/write	075h	Unchanged
Receive buffer	U0RXBUF	Read/write	076h	Unchanged
Transmit buffer	U0TXBUF	Read	077h	Unchanged

Table 12–3. USART1 Control and Status Registers

Register	Short Form	Register Type	Address	Initial State
USART control	U1CTL	Read/write	078h	See section 12.5.1.
Transmit control	U1TCTL	Read/write	079h	See section 12.5.2.
Receive control	U1RCTL	Read/write	07Ah	See section 12.5.3.
Modulation control	U1MCTL	Read/write	07Bh	Unchanged
Baud rate 0	U1BR0	Read/write	07Ch	Unchanged
Baud rate 1	U1BR1	Read/write	07Dh	Unchanged
Receive buffer	U1RXBUF	Read/write	07Eh	Unchanged
Transmit buffer	U1TXBUF	Read	07Fh	Unchanged

All bits are random after a PUC signal, unless otherwise noted by the detailed functional description.

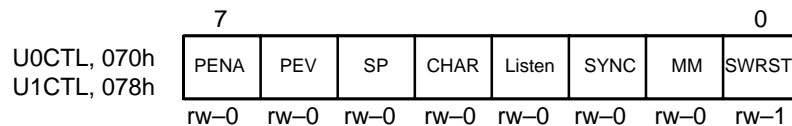
The reset of the USART peripheral interface is performed by a PUC signal or a SWRST. After a PUC signal, the SWRST bit remains set and the USART interface remains in the reset condition until it is disabled by resetting the SWRST bit.

The USART module operates in asynchronous or synchronous mode as defined by the SYNC bit. The bits in the control registers can have different functions in the two modes. All bits in this section are described with their functions in the asynchronous mode (SYNC = 0). Their functions in the synchronous mode are described in Chapter 13, *USART Peripheral Interface, SPI Mode*.

12.5.1 USART Control Register U0CTL, U1CTL

The information stored in the USART control register (U0CTL for USART0 and U1CTL for USART1), shown in Figure 12–16, determines the basic operation of the USART module. The register bits select the communications protocol, communication format, and parity bit. All bits must be programmed according to the selected mode before resetting the SWRST bit to disable the reset.

Figure 12–16. USART Control Register U0CTL, U1CTL



Bit 0: The USART state machines and operating flags are initialized to the reset condition (URXIFG = URXIE = UTXIE = 0, UTXIFG = 1) if the software reset bit is set. Until the SWRST bit is reset, all affected logic is held in the reset state. This implies that after a system reset the USART must be reenabled by resetting this bit. The receive and transmit enable flags URXE and UTXE are not altered by SWRST.

The SWRST bit resets the following bits and flags: URXIE, UTXIE, URXIFG, RXWAKE, TXWAKE, RXERR, BRK, PE, OE, and FE

The SWRST bit sets the following bits: UTXIFG, TXEPT

Note:

The USART initialization sequence should be:

- Initialize per application requirements while leaving SWRST=1
- Clear SWRST
- Enable interrupts if desired.

Bit 1: Multiprocessor mode (address/idle-line wake up)
Two multiprocessor protocols, idle-line and address-bit, are supported by the USART module. The choice of multiprocessor mode affects the operation of the automatic address decoding functions.

MM = 0: Idle-line multiprocessor protocol

MM = 1: Address-bit multiprocessor protocol

The conventional asynchronous protocol uses MM-bit reset.

Bit 2: Mode or function of USART module selected
The SYNC bit selects the function of the USART peripheral interface module. Some of the USART control bits have different functions in UART and SPI mode.

SYNC = 0: UART function is selected

SYNC = 1: SPI function is selected

Bit 3:	<p>The listen bit selects if the transmitted data is fed back internally to the receiver.</p> <p>Listen = 0: No feedback</p> <p>Listen = 1: Transmit signal is internally fed back to the receiver. This is commonly known as loopback mode.</p>
Bit 4:	<p>Character length</p> <p>This register bit selects the length of the character to be transmitted as either 7 or 8 bits. 7-bit characters do not use the eighth bit in UxRXBUF and UxTXBUF. This bit is padded with 0.</p> <p>CHAR = 0: 7-bit data</p> <p>CHAR = 1: 8-bit data</p>
Bit 5:	<p>Number of stop bits</p> <p>This bit determines the number of stop bits transmitted. The receiver checks for one stop bit only.</p> <p>SP = 0: one stop bit</p> <p>SP = 1: two stop bits</p>
Bit 6:	<p>Parity odd/even</p> <p>If the PENA bit is set (parity bit is enabled), the PEV bit defines odd or even parity according to the number of odd or even 1 bits (in both the transmitted and received characters), the address bit (address-bit multiprocessor mode), and the parity bit.</p> <p>PEV = 0: odd parity</p> <p>PEV = 1: even parity</p>
Bit 7:	<p>Parity enable</p> <p>If parity is disabled, no parity bit is generated during transmission or expected during reception. A received parity bit is not transferred to the UxRXBUF with the received data as it is not considered one of the data bits. In address-bit multiprocessor mode, the address bit is included in the parity calculation.</p> <p>PEN = 0: Parity disable</p> <p>PEN = 1: Parity enable</p>

Note: Mark and Space Definitions

The mark condition is identical to the signal level in the idle state. Space is the opposite signal level: the start bit is always space.

12.5.2 Transmit Control Register U0TCTL, U1TCTL

The transmit control register shown in Figure 12–17 controls the USART hardware associated with the transmit operation.

Figure 12–17. Transmitter Control Register U0TCTL, U1TCTL

	7						0	
U0TCTL, 071h U1TCTL, 078h	Unused	CKPL	SSEL1	SSEL0	URXSE	TXWake	Unused	TXEPT
	rw-0	rw-0	rw-0	rw-0	rw-0	rw-0	rw-0	rw-1

Bit 0: The transmitter empty (TXEPT) flag is set when the transmitter shift register and UxTXBUF are empty, and is reset when data is written to UxTXBUF. It is set by a SWRST.

Bit 1: Unused

Bit 2: The TXWake bit controls the transmit features of the multiprocessor communication modes. Each transmission—started by loading the UxTXBUF—uses the state of the TXWake bit to initialize the address-identification feature. It must not be cleared—the USART hardware clears this bit once it is transferred to the WUT; a SWRST also clears the TXWake bit.

Bit 3: The receive-start edge-control bit, if set, requests a receive interrupt service. For a successful interrupt service, the corresponding enable bits URXIE and GIE must be set. The advantage of this bit is that it starts the controller clock system, including MCLK, along with the interrupt service, and keeps it running by modifying the mode control bits. If the selected clock source is activated, then the receive operation starts, even from low-power modes.

Bits 4, 5: Source select 0 and 1
The source select bit defines which clock source is used for baud-rate generation:

SSEL1, SSEL0	0	External clock, UCLKI
	1	ACLK
	2, 3	SMCLK

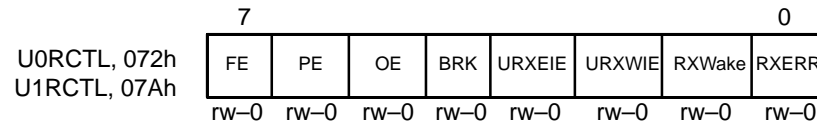
Bit 6: Clock polarity CKPL
The CKPL bit controls the polarity of the UCLKI signal.
CKPL = 0: The UCLKI signal has the same polarity as the UCLK signal.
CKPL = 1: The UCLKI signal has an inverted polarity to the UCLK signal.

Bit 7: Unused

12.5.3 Receiver Control Register U0RCTL, U1RCTL

The receiver-control register shown, in Figure 12–18, controls the USART hardware associated with the receiver operation and holds error and wake-up conditions modified by the latest character written to the receive buffer (UxRXBUF). Once any one of the bits FE, PE, OE, BRK, RXERR, or RXWake is set, none are reset by receiving another character. The bits are reset by accessing the receive buffer, by a USART software reset (SWRST), by a system reset PUC signal, or by an instruction.

Figure 12–18. Receiver-Control Register U0RCTL, U1RCTL



Bit 0: The receive error bit (RXERR) indicates that one or more error flags (FE, PE, OE, or BRK) is set. It is not reset when the error flags are cleared by instruction.

Bit 1: Receiver wake-up detect
 The RXWake bit is set when a received character is an address character and is transferred into the receive buffer.
 Address-bit multiprocessor mode: RXWake is set when the address bit is set in the character received.
 Idle-line multiprocessor mode: RXWake is set if an idle URXD line is detected (11 bits of mark level) in front of the received character.

RXWake is reset by accessing the receive buffer (UxRXBUF), by a USART software reset, or by a system-reset PUC signal.

Bit 2: The receive wake-up interrupt-enable bit (URXWIE) selects the type of character to set the interrupt flag (URXIFG):
 URXWIE = 0: Each character received sets the URXIFG
 URXWIE = 1: Only characters that are marked as address characters set the interrupt flag URXIFG. It operates identically in both multiprocessor modes.

The wake-up interrupt enable feature depends on the receive erroneous-character feature. See also Bit 3, URXEIE.

Bit 3: The receive erroneous-character interrupt-enable bit URXEIE selects whether an erroneous character is to set the interrupt flag URXIFG.

URXEIE = 0: Each erroneous character received does not alter the interrupt flag URXIFG.

URXEIE = 1: All characters can set the interrupt flag URXIFG as described in Table 12–4, depending on the conditions set by the URXWIE bit.

Table 12–4. Interrupt Flag Set Conditions

URXEIE	URXWIE	Char. w/Error	Char. Address	Description Flag URXIFG After a Character Is Received
0	X	1	X	Unchanged
0	0	0	X	Set
0	1	0	0	Unchanged
0	1	0	1	Set
1	0	X	X	Set (Receives all characters)
1	1	X	0	Unchanged
1	1	X	1	Set

- Bit 4: The break detect bit (BRK) is set when a break condition occurs and the URXEIE bit is set. The break condition is recognized if the RXD line remains continuously low for at least 10 bits, beginning after a missing first stop bit. It is not cleared by receipt of a character after the break is detected, but is reset by a SWRST, a system reset, or by reading the UxRXBUF. The receive interrupt flag URXIFG is set if a break is detected.
- Bit 5: The overrun error flag bit OE is set when a character is transferred into the UxRXBUF before the previous character is read out. The previous character is overwritten and lost. OE is reset by a SWRST, a system reset, or by reading the UxRXBUF.
- Bit 6: The parity error flag bit PE is set when a character is received with a mismatch between the number of 1s and its parity bit. The parity checker includes the address bit, used in the address-bit multiprocessor mode, in the calculation. The flag is disabled if parity generation and detection are not enabled. In this case the flag is read as 0. It is reset by a SWRST, a system reset, or by reading the UxRXBUF.
- Bit 7: The framing error flag bit FE is set when a character is received with a 0 stop bit and is loaded into the receive buffer. Only the first stop bit is checked when more than one is used. The missing stop bit indicates that the start-bit synchronization is lost and the character is incorrectly framed. FE is reset by a SWRST, a system reset, or by reading the UxRXBUF.

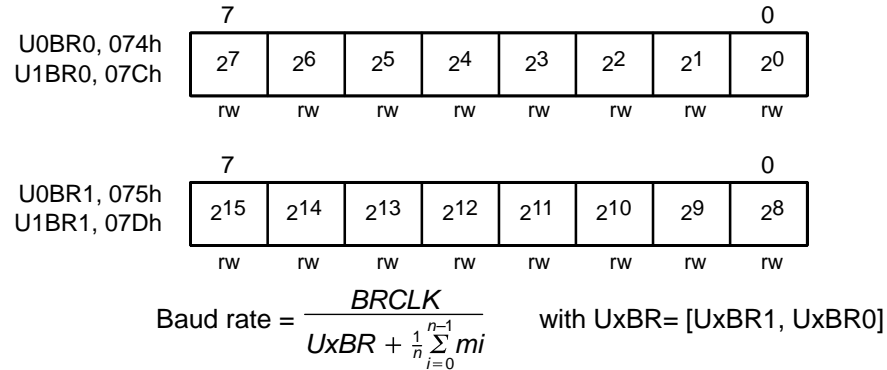
Note: Receive Status Control Bits

The receive status control bits FE, PE, OE, BRK, and RXWake are set by the hardware according to the conditions of the characters received. Once the bits are set, they remain set until the software resets them directly, or there is a reading of the receive buffer. False character interpretation or missing-interrupt capability can result in uncleared error bits.

12.5.4 Baud Rate Select and Modulation Control Registers

The baud-rate generator uses the content of the baud-rate select registers UxBR0 and UxBR1 shown in Figure 12–19, with the modulation control register to generate the serial data-stream bit timing.

Figure 12–19. USART Baud Rate Select Register



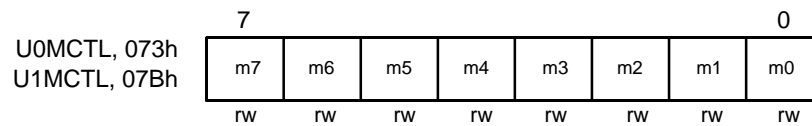
The baud-rate control register range is: $3 \leq UxBR < 0FFFFh$

Note:

Unpredictable receive and transmission occur if $UxBR < 3$.

The modulation control register, shown in Figure 12–20, ensures proper timing generation with the UxBR0 and UxBR1, even with crystal frequencies that are not integer multiples of the required baud rate.

Figure 12–20. USART Modulation Control Register



The timing of the running bit is expanded by one clock cycle of the baud-rate-divider input clock if bit m_i is set.

Each time a bit is received or transmitted, the next bit in the modulation control register determines the present bit timing. The first bit time in the protocol—the start bit time—is determined by UxBR plus m_0 ; the next bit is determined by UxBR plus m_1 , and so on.

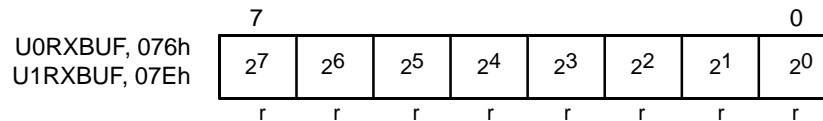
The modulation sequence is:

$$m_0 - m_1 - m_2 - m_3 - m_4 - m_5 - m_6 - m_7 - m_0 - m_1 - m_2 - \dots$$

12.5.5 Receive-Data Buffer U0RXBUF, U1RXBUF

The receive-data buffer, shown in Figure 12–21, contains previous data from the receiver shift register. Reading the receive-data buffer resets the receive-error bits, the RXWake bit, and the interrupt flag (URXIFG).

Figure 12–21. USART0 Receive Data Buffer U0RXBUF, U1RXBUF



In seven-bit length mode, the MSB of the UxRXBUF is always reset.

The receive data buffer is loaded with the recently-received character as described in Table 12–5, when receive and control conditions are true.

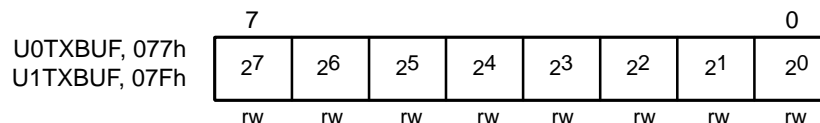
Table 12–5. Receive Data Buffer Characters

URXEIE	URXWIE	Load UxRXBUF With:	PE	FE	BRK
0	1	Error-free address characters	0	0	0
1	1	All address characters	X	X	X
0	0	Error-free characters	0	0	0
1	0	All characters	X	X	X

12.5.6 Transmit Data Buffer U0TXBUF, U1TXBUF

The transmit data buffer, shown in Figure 12–22, contains current data to be transmitted.

Figure 12–22. Transmit Data Buffer U0TXBUF, U1TXBUF



The UTXIFG flag indicates that the UxTXBUF buffer is ready to accept another character for transmission.

The transmission is initialized by writing data to UxTXBUF. The data is moved to transmit shift register and transmission is started on the next bit clock after the transmit shift register is empty and UTXBUF is loaded.

Note: Writing to UxTXBUF

Writing data to the transmit-data buffer must only be done if buffer UxTXBUF is empty; otherwise, an unpredictable character can be transmitted.

12.6 Utilizing Features of Low-Power Modes

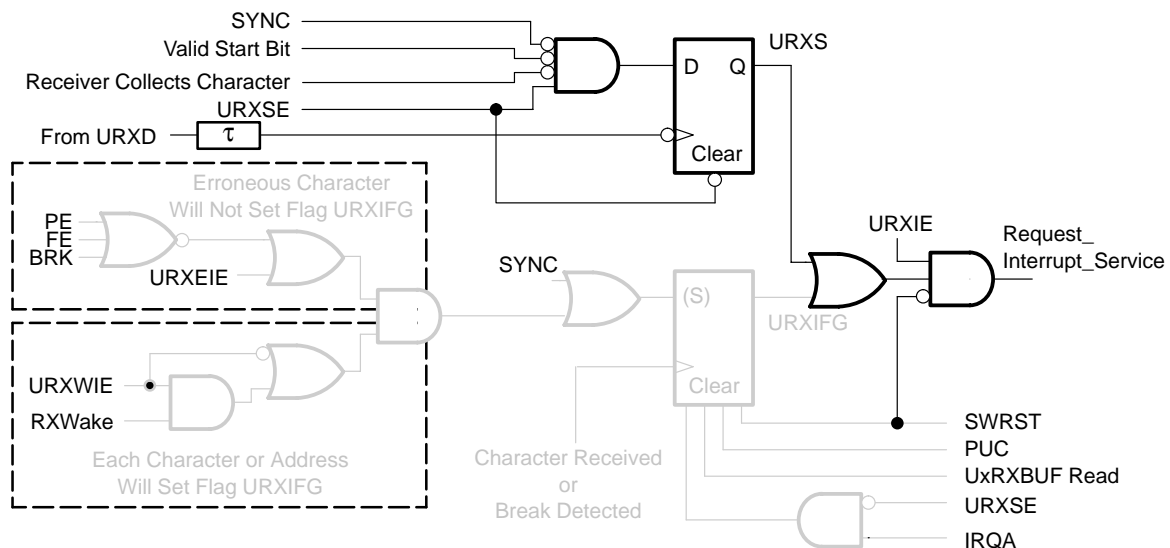
There are several functions or features of the USART that support the ultralow-power architecture of the MSP430. These include:

- ☐ Support system start up from any processor mode by sensing of UART frame-start condition
- ☐ Use the lowest input clock frequency for the required baud rate
- ☐ Support multiprocessor modes to reduce use of MSP430 resources

12.6.1 Receive-Start Operation From UART Frame

The most effective use of start detection in the receive path is achieved when the baud-rate clock runs from SMCLK. In this configuration, the MSP430 can be put into a low-power mode with SMCLK disabled. The receive-start condition is the negative edge from the signal on pin URXD. Each time the negative edge triggers the interrupt flag URXS, it requests a service when enable bits URXIE and GIE are set. This wakes the MSP430 and the system returns to active mode, supporting the USART transfer.

Figure 12–23. Receive-Start Conditions



Three character streams do not set the interrupt flag (URXIFG):

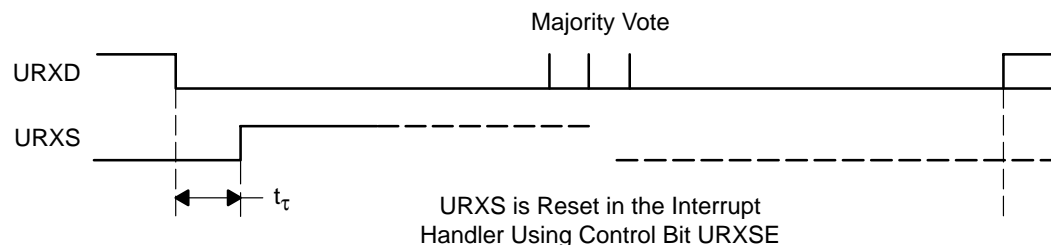
- ☐ Erroneous characters (URXEIE = 0)
- ☐ Address characters (URXWIE = 1)
- ☐ Invalid start-bit detection

The interrupt software should handle these conditions.

12.6.1.1 Start Conditions

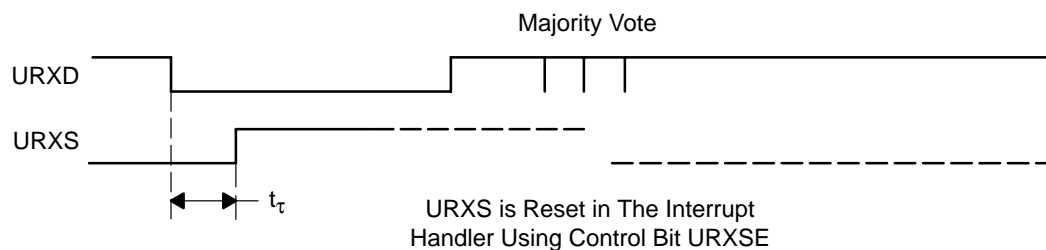
The URXD signal feeds into the USART module by first going into a deglitch circuit. Glitches cannot trigger the receive-start condition flag URXS, which prevents the module from being started from small glitches on the URXD line. Because glitches do not start the system or the USART module, current consumption is reduced in noisy environments. Figure 12–24 shows the accepted receive-start timing condition.

Figure 12–24. Receive-Start Timing Using URXS Flag, Start Bit Accepted



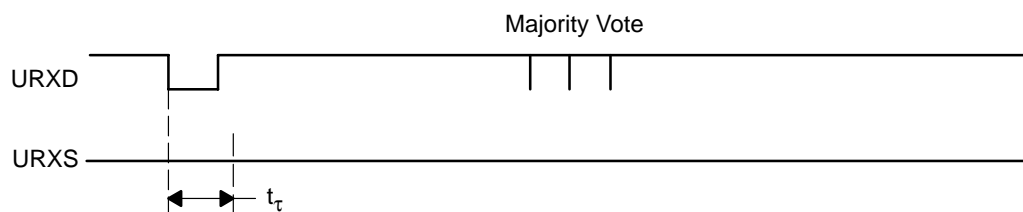
The UART stops receiving a character when the URXD signal exceeds the deglitch time t_τ but the majority vote on the signal fails to detect a start bit, as shown in Figure 12–25. The software should handle this condition and return the system to the appropriate low-power mode. The interrupt flag URXIFG is not set.

Figure 12–25. Receive Start Timing Using URXS Flag, Start Bit Not Accepted



Glitches at the URXD line are suppressed automatically and no further activity occurs in the MSP430 as shown in Figure 12–26. The data for the deglitch time t_τ is noted in the corresponding device specification.

Figure 12–26. Receive Start Timing Using URXS Flag, Glitch Suppression



The interrupt handler must reset the URXSE bit in control register UxCTL to prevent further interrupt service requests from the URXS signal and to enable the basic function of the receive interrupt flag URXIFG.

```

*****
*      Interrupt handler for frame start condition and      *
*      Character receive                                     *
*****
U0RX_Int  BIT.B  #URXIFG0,&IFG2  ; test URXIFG signal to
          JNE    ST_COND          ; check if frame start
                                   ; condition
          .....
          .....
ST_COND   BIC.B  #URXSE,&U0TCTL   ; clear ff/signal URXS,
                                   ; stop further interrupt
                                   ; requests
          BIS.B  #URXSE,&U0TCTL   ; Prepare FF_URXS for next
                                   ; frame start bits and set
          .....                  ; the conditions to run the
          .....                  ; clock needed for UART RX

```

Note: Break Detect (BRK) Bit With Halted UART Clock

If the UART operates with the wake-up-on-start-condition mode and switches off the UCLK whenever a character is completely received, a communication line break cannot be detected automatically by the UART hardware. The break detection requires the baud-rate generator BRCLK, but it is stopped upon the missing UCLK.

12.6.2 Maximum Utilization of Clock Frequency vs Baud Rate UART Mode

The current consumption increases linearly with the clock frequency. It should be kept to the minimum required to meet application conditions. Fast communication speed is needed for calibration and testing in manufacturing processes, alarm responses in critical applications, and response time to human requests for information.

The MSP430 USART can generate baud rates up to one third of the clock frequency. An additional modulation of the baud-rate timing adjusts timing for individual bits within a frame. The timing is adjusted from bit to bit to meet timing requirements even when a noninteger division is needed. Baud rates up to 4800 baud can be generated from a 32,768 Hz crystal with maximum errors of 11 percent. Standard UARTs—even with the worst maximum error (–14.6 percent)—can obtain maximum baud rates of 75 baud.

12.6.3 Support of Multiprocessor Modes for Reduced Use of MSP430 Resources

Communication systems can use multiprocessor modes with multiple-character idle-line or address-bit protocols. The first character can be a target address, a message identifier, or can have another definition. This character is interpreted by the software and, if it is of any significance to the application, the succeeding characters are collected and further activities are defined. An insignificant first character would stop activity for the processing device. This application is supported by the wake-up interrupt feature in the receive operation, and sends wake-up conditions along with a transmission. Avoiding activity on insignificant characters reduces consumption of MSP430 resources and the system can remain in the most efficient power-conserving mode.

In addition to the multiprocessor modes, rejecting erroneous characters saves MSP430 resources. This practice prevents interrupt handling of the erroneous characters. The processor waits in the most efficient power-conserving mode until a character is processed.

12.7 Baud Rate Considerations

The MSP430 baud-rate generator uses a divider and a modulator. A given crystal frequency and a required baud rate determines the required division factor N :

$$N = \frac{BRCLK}{\text{baud rate}}$$

The required division factor N usually has an integer part and a fraction. The divider in the baud rate generator realizes the integer portion of the division factor N , and the modulator meets the fractional part as closely as possible. The factor N is defined as:

$$N = UxBR + \frac{1}{n} \sum_{i=0}^{n-1} m_i$$

Where:

- N : Target division factor
- $UxBR$: 16-bit representation of registers $UxBR1$ and $UxBR0$
- i : Actual bit in the frame
- n : Number of bits in the frame
- m_i : Data of the actual modulation bit

$$\text{Baud rate} = \frac{BRCLK}{N} = \frac{BRCLK}{UxBR + \frac{1}{n} \sum_{i=0}^{n-1} m_i}$$

12.7.1 Bit Timing in Transmit Operation

The timing for each individual bit in one frame or character is the sum of the actual bit timings as shown in Figure 12–27. The baud-rate generation error shown in Figure 12–28 in relation to the required ideal timing, is calculated for each individual bit. The relevant error information is the error relative to the actual bit, not the overall relative error.

Figure 12–27. MSP430 Transmit Bit Timing

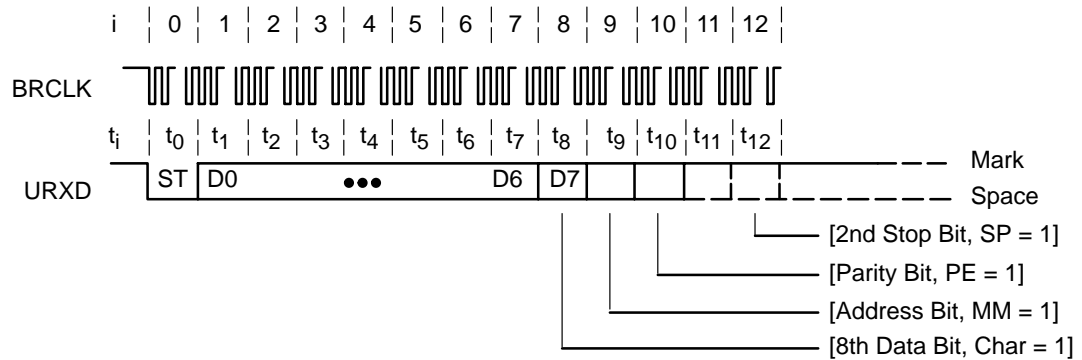
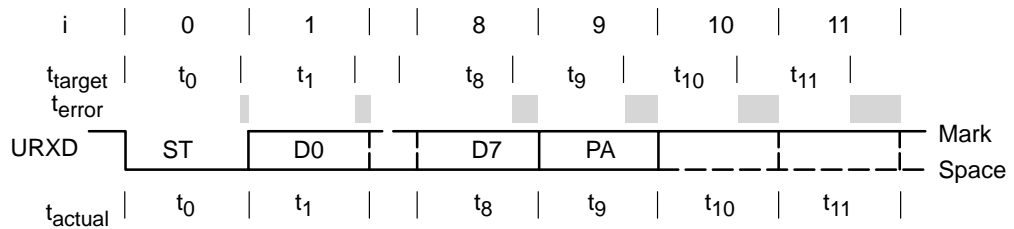


Figure 12–28. MSP430 Transmit Bit Timing Errors



Even small errors per bit (relative errors) can result in large cumulative errors. They must be considered to be cumulative, not relative. The error of an individual bit can be calculated by:

$$\text{Error [\%]} = \frac{\sum_{i=0}^{n-1} t_{\text{actual}_i} - \sum_{i=0}^{n-1} t_{\text{target}_i}}{t_{\text{baud rate}}} \times 100\%$$

or,

$$\text{Error [\%]} = \left\{ \frac{\text{baud rate}}{\text{BRCLK}} \times \left[(i + 1) \times \text{UxBR} + \sum_{i=0}^{n-1} m_i \right] - (i + 1) \right\} \times 100\%$$

With:

baud rate: Required baud rate

BRCLK: Input frequency – selected for UCLK, ACLK, or MCLK

i = 0 for the start bit, 1 for the data bit D0, and so on

UxBR: Division factor in registers UxBR1 and UxBR0

Example 12–3. Error Example for 2400 Baud

The following data are assumed:

Baud rate = 2400
 BRCLK = 32,768 Hz (ACLK)
 UxBR = 13, since the ideal division factor is 13.67
 m = 6Bh: m7=0, m6=1, m5=1, m4=0, m3=1, m2=0, m1=1
 and m0=1

The LSB (m0) of the modulation register is used first.

$$\text{Start bit Error [\%]} = \left(\frac{\text{baud rate}}{\text{BRCLK}} \times ((0 + 1) \times \text{UxBR} + 1) - 1 \right) \times 100\% = 2.54\%$$

$$\text{Data bit D0 Error [\%]} = \left(\frac{\text{baud rate}}{\text{BRCLK}} \times ((1 + 1) \times \text{UxBR} + 2) - 2 \right) \times 100\% = 5.08\%$$

$$\text{Data bit D1 Error [\%]} = \left(\frac{\text{baud rate}}{\text{BRCLK}} \times ((2 + 1) \times \text{UxBR} + 2) - 3 \right) \times 100\% = 0.29\%$$

$$\text{Data bit D2 Error [\%]} = \left(\frac{\text{baud rate}}{\text{BRCLK}} \times ((3 + 1) \times \text{UxBR} + 3) - 4 \right) \times 100\% = 2.83\%$$

$$\text{Data bit D3 Error [\%]} = \left(\frac{\text{baud rate}}{\text{BRCLK}} \times ((4 + 1) \times \text{UxBR} + 3) - 5 \right) \times 100\% = -1.95\%$$

$$\text{Data bit D4 Error [\%]} = \left(\frac{\text{baud rate}}{\text{BRCLK}} \times ((5 + 1) \times \text{UxBR} + 4) - 6 \right) \times 100\% = 0.59\%$$

$$\text{Data bit D5 Error [\%]} = \left(\frac{\text{baud rate}}{\text{BRCLK}} \times ((6 + 1) \times \text{UxBR} + 5) - 7 \right) \times 100\% = 3.13\%$$

$$\text{Data bit D6 Error [\%]} = \left(\frac{\text{baud rate}}{\text{BRCLK}} \times ((7 + 1) \times \text{UxBR} + 5) - 8 \right) \times 100\% = -1.66\%$$

$$\text{Data bit D7 Error [\%]} = \left(\frac{\text{baud rate}}{\text{BRCLK}} \times ((8 + 1) \times \text{UxBR} + 6) - 9 \right) \times 100\% = 0.88\%$$

$$\text{Parity bit Error [\%]} = \left(\frac{\text{baud rate}}{\text{BRCLK}} \times ((9 + 1) \times \text{UxBR} + 7) - 10 \right) \times 100\% = 3.42\%$$

$$\text{Stop bit 1 Error [\%]} = \left(\frac{\text{baud rate}}{\text{BRCLK}} \times ((10 + 1) \times \text{UxBR} + 7) - 11 \right) \times 100\% = -1.37\%$$

$$\text{Stop bit 2 Error [\%]} = \left(\frac{\text{baud rate}}{\text{BRCLK}} \times ((11 + 1) \times \text{UxBR} + 8) - 12 \right) \times 100\% = 1.17\%$$

12.7.2 Typical Baud Rates and Errors

The standard baud rate data needed for the baud rate registers and the modulation register are listed in Table 12–6 for the 32,768-Hz watch crystal (ACLK) and MCLK, assumed to be 32 times the ACLK frequency. The error listed is calculated for the transmit and receive paths. In addition to the error for the receive operation, the synchronization error must be considered.

Table 12–6. Commonly Used Baud Rates, Baud Rate Data, and Errors

Baud Rate	Divide by		ACLK (32,768 Hz)						MCLK (1,048,576 Hz)				
	ACLK	MCLK	UxBR1	UxBR0	UxMCTL	Max. TX Error %	Max. RX Error %	Synchr. RX Error %	UxBR1	UxBR0	UxMCTL	Max. TX Error %	Max. RX Error %
75	436.91	13,981	1	B4	FF	–0.1/0.3	–0.1/0.3	±2	36	9D	FF	0/0.1	±2
110	297.89	9532.51	1	29	FF	0/0.5	0/0.5	±3	25	3C	FF	0/0.1	±3
150	218.45	6990.5	0	DA	55	0/0.4	0/0.4	±2	1B	4E	FF	0/0.1	±2
300	109.23	3495.25	0	6D	22	–0.3/0.7	–0.3/0.7	±2	0D	A7	00	–0.1/0	±2
600	54.61	1747.63	0	36	D5	–1/1	–1/1	±2	06	D3	FF	0/0.3	±2
1200	27.31	873.81	0	1B	03	–4/3	–4/3	±2	03	69	FF	0/0.3	±2
2400	13.65	436.91	0	0D	6B	6/3	–6/3	±4	01	B4	FF	0/0.3	±2
4800	6.83	218.45	0	06	6F	–9/11	–9/11	±7	0	DA	55	0/0.4	±2
9600	3.41	109.23	0	03	4A	–21/12	–21/12	±15	0	6D	03	–0.4/1	±2
19,200		54.61							0	36	6B	–0.2/2	±2
38,400		27.31							0	1B	03	–4/3	±2
76,800		13.65							0	0D	6B	–6/3	±4
115,200		9.10							0	09	08	–5/7	±7

The maximum error is calculated for the receive and transmit modes. The receive-mode error is the accumulated time versus the ideal scanning time in the middle of each bit. The transmit error is the accumulated timing error versus the ideal time of the bit period.

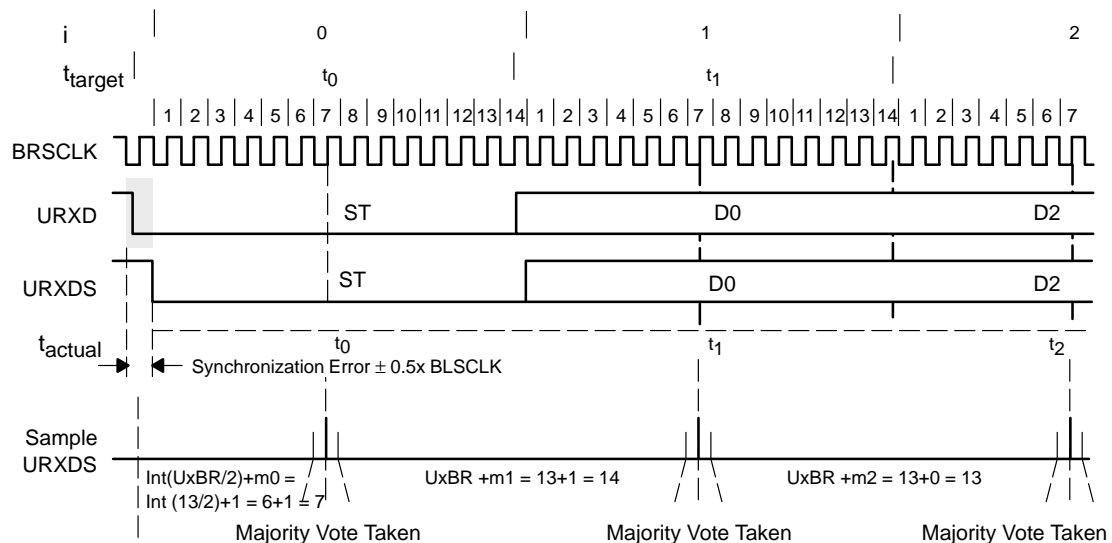
The MSP430 USART peripheral interface allows baud rates nearly as high as the clock rate. It has a low error accumulation as a result of modulating the individual bit timing. In practice, an error margin of 20% to 30% supports standard serial communication.

12.7.3 Synchronization Error

The synchronization error, shown in Figure 12–29, results from the asynchronous timing between the URXD pin data signal and the internal clock system. The receive signal is synchronized with the BRCLK clock. The BRCLK clock is sixteen to thirty-one times faster than the bit timing, as described.

BRCLK = BRCLK	for	N	≤ 1F
BRCLK = BRCLK/2	for	20h	≤ N ≤ 3Fh
BRCLK = BRCLK/4	for	40h	≤ N ≤ 7Fh
BRCLK = BRCLK/8	for	80h	≤ N ≤ FFh
BRCLK = BRCLK/16	for	100	≤ N ≤ 1FF
BRCLK = BRCLK/32	for	200	≤ N ≤ 3FFh
BRCLK = BRCLK/64	for	400	≤ N ≤ 7FFh
BRCLK = BRCLK/128	for	800h	≤ N ≤ FFFh
BRCLK = BRCLK/256	for	1000h	≤ N ≤ 1FFFh
BRCLK = BRCLK/512	for	2000h	≤ N ≤ 3FFFh
BRCLK = BRCLK/1024	for	4000h	≤ N ≤ 7FFFh
BRCLK = BRCLK/2048	for	8000h	≤ N ≤ FFFFh

Figure 12–29. Synchronization Error



The target start-bit detection-baud-rate timing $t_{\text{target}(0)}$ is half the baud-rate timing $t_{\text{baud rate}}$ because the bit is tested in the middle of its period. The target baud rate timing $t_{\text{target}i}$ for all of the other succeeding bits is the baud rate timing $t_{\text{baud rate}}$.

$$\text{Error [\%]} = \frac{t_{\text{actual}0} + t_{\text{target}0}}{0.5 \times t_{\text{target}0}} + \frac{\sum_{i=1}^{n-1} t_{\text{actual}i} - \sum_{i=1}^{n-1} t_{\text{target}i}}{t_{\text{target}i}} \times 100\%$$

OR

$$\text{Error [\%]} = \left(\frac{\text{baud rate}}{\text{BRCLK}} \times \left\{ 2 \times [m0 + \text{int} (UxBR/2)] + \left(i \times UxBR + \sum_{i=1}^{n-1} m_i \right) \right\} - 1 - i \right) \times 100\%$$

Where:

baud rate is the required baud rate

BRCLK is the input frequency—selected for UCLK, ACLK, or MCLK

i = 0 for the start bit, 1 for data bit D0, and so on

UxBR is the division factor in registers UxBR1 and UxBR0

Example 12–4. Synchronization Error—2400 Baud

The following data are assumed:

Baud rate = 2400

BRCLK = 32,768 Hz (ACLK)

UxBR = 13, since the ideal division factor is 13.67

m = 6Bh: m7=0, m6=1, m5=1, m4=0, m3=1, m2=0, m1=1 and m0=1

The LSB (m0) of the modulation register is used first.

$$\text{Start bit Error [\%]} = \left(\frac{\text{baud rate}}{\text{BRCLK}} \times [2x(1 + 6) + (0 \times UxBR + 0 - 0)] - 1 \right) \times 100\% = 2.54\%$$

$$\text{Data bit D0 Error [\%]} = \left(\frac{\text{baud rate}}{\text{BRCLK}} \times [2x(1 + 6) + (1 \times UxBR + 1)] - 1 - 1 \right) \times 100\% = 5.08\%$$

$$\text{Data bit D1 Error [\%]} = \left(\frac{\text{baud rate}}{\text{BRCLK}} \times [2x(1 + 6) + (2 \times UxBR + 1)] - 1 - 2 \right) \times 100\% = 0.29\%$$

$$\text{Data bit D2 Error [\%]} = \left(\frac{\text{baud rate}}{\text{BRCLK}} \times [2x(1 + 6) + (3 \times UxBR + 2)] - 1 - 3 \right) \times 100\% = 2.83\%$$

$$\text{Data bit D3 Error [\%]} = \left(\frac{\text{baud rate}}{\text{BRCLK}} \times [2x(1 + 6) + (4 \times UxBR + 2)] - 1 - 4 \right) \times 100\% = -1.95\%$$

$$\text{Data bit D4 Error [\%]} = \left(\frac{\text{baud rate}}{\text{BRCLK}} \times [2x(1 + 6) + (5 \times UxBR + 3)] - 1 - 5 \right) \times 100\% = 0.59\%$$

$$\text{Data bit D5 Error [\%]} = \left(\frac{\text{baud rate}}{\text{BRCLK}} \times [2x(1 + 6) + (6 \times UxBR + 4)] - 1 - 6 \right) \times 100\% = 3.13\%$$

$$\text{Data bit D6 Error [\%]} = \left(\frac{\text{baud rate}}{\text{BRCLK}} \times [2x(1 + 6) + (7 \times UxBR + 4)] - 1 - 7 \right) \times 100\% = -1.66\%$$

$$\text{Data bit D7 Error [\%]} = \left(\frac{\text{baud rate}}{\text{BRCLK}} \times [2x(1 + 6) + (8 \times UxBR + 5)] - 1 - 8 \right) \times 100\% = 0.88\%$$

$$\text{Parity bit Error [\%]} = \left(\frac{\text{baud rate}}{\text{BRCLK}} \times [2x(1 + 6) + (9 \times UxBR + 6)] - 1 - 9 \right) \times 100\% = 3.42\%$$

$$\text{Stop bit 1 Error [\%]} = \left(\frac{\text{baud rate}}{\text{BRCLK}} \times [2x(1 + 6) + (10 \times UxBR + 6)] - 1 - 10 \right) \times 100\% = -1.37\%$$

$$\text{Stop bit 2 Error [\%]} = \left(\frac{\text{baud rate}}{\text{BRCLK}} \times [2x(1 + 6) + (11 \times UxBR + 7)] - 1 - 11 \right) \times 100\% = -1.17\%$$

USART Peripheral Interface, SPI Mode

The universal synchronous/asynchronous receive/transmit (USART) serial-communication peripheral supports two serial modes with one hardware configuration. These modes shift a serial-bit stream in and out of the MSP430 at a programmed rate or at a rate defined by an external clock. The first mode is the universal asynchronous-receive/transmit (UART) communication protocol (discussed in Chapter 12); the second is the serial peripheral-interface (SPI) protocol.

Bit SYNC in control register U0CTL for UART0 and U1CTL for USART1 selects the required mode:

SYNC = 0: UART—asynchronous mode selected
 SYNC = 1: SPI—synchronous mode selected

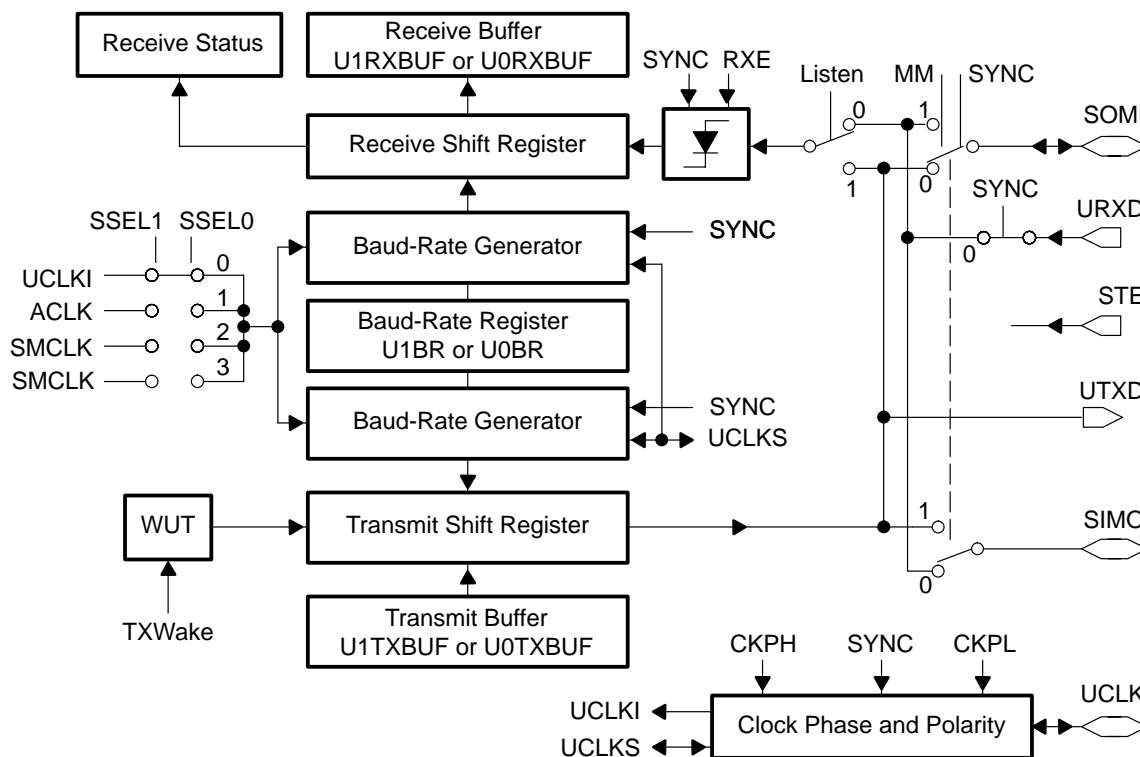
This chapter describes the SPI mode.

Topic	Page
13.1 USART Peripheral Interface	13-2
13.2 USART Peripheral Interface, SPI Mode	13-3
13.3 Synchronous Operation	13-4
13.4 Interrupt and Control Functions	13-9
13.5 Control and Status Registers	13-15

13.1 USART Peripheral Interface

The USART peripheral interface connects to the CPU as a byte-peripheral module. It connects the MSP430 to the external system environment with three or four external pins. Figure 13–1 shows the USART peripheral-interface module

Figure 13–1. Block Diagram of USART



13.2 USART Peripheral Interface, SPI Mode

The USART peripheral interface is a serial channel that shifts a serial bit stream of 7 or 8 bits in and out of the MSP430. The SPI mode is chosen when control bit SYNC in the USART control register (U0CTL for UART0 and U1CTL for USART1) is set.

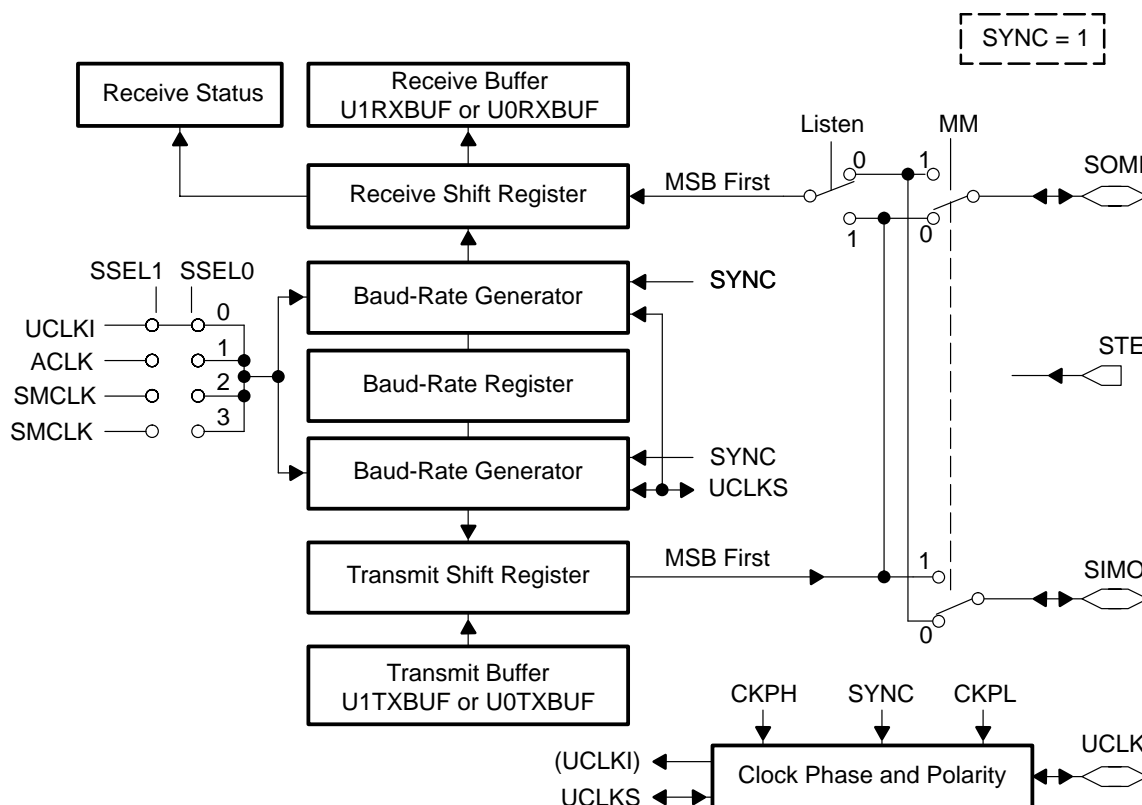
13.2.1 SPI Mode Features

The features of the SPI mode are:

- ☐ Supports three-pin and four-pin SPI operations via SOMI, SIMO, UCLK, and STE
- ☐ Master or slave mode
- ☐ Separate shift registers for receive (UxRXBUF) and transmit (UxTXBUF)
- ☐ Double buffers for receiving and transmitting
- ☐ Has clock-polarity and clock-phase control
- ☐ Has clock-frequency control in master mode
- ☐ Supports a character length of seven or eight bits per character

Figure 13–2 shows the USART module in SPI mode.

Figure 13–2. Block Diagram of USART—SPI Mode



13.3 Synchronous Operation

In USART synchronous mode, data and clock signals transmit and receive serial data. The master supplies the clock and data. The slaves use this clock to shift serial information in and out.

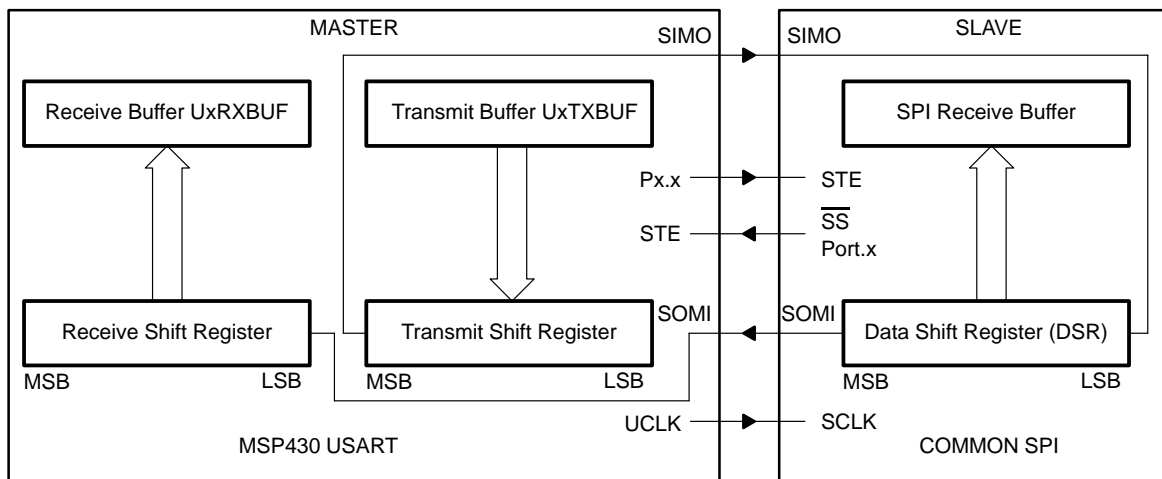
The four-pin SPI mode also uses a control line to enable a slave to receive and transmit data. The line is controlled by the master.

Three or four signals are used for data exchange:

- ☐ **SIMO** Slave in, master out
The direction is defined by SIMODIR (SIMODIR=0, input direction) SIMODIR = [SYNC .and. MM .and. (STC .or. STE)]
Output direction is selected when SPI + Master Mode is selected.
When 4-pin SPI is selected (STC=0) input direction is forced by a low level on external STE pin.
- ☐ **SOMI** Slave out, master in
The direction is defined by SOMIDIR (SIMODIR=0 input direction) SOMIDIR = [SYNC .and. .not.(MM)] .or. [STC .or. .not.(STE)]
Output direction is selected when SPI + Slave Mode is selected.
When 4-pin SPI is selected (STC=0) input direction is forced by a low level on external STE pin.
- ☐ **UCLK** USART clock. The master drives this signal and the slave uses it to receive and transmit data.
The direction is defined by UCLKDIR (UCLKDIR=0 input direction) UCLKDIR = [SYNC .and. MM .and. (STC .or. STE)]
Output direction is selected when SPI + Master Mode is selected.
When 4-pin SPI is selected (STC=0) input direction is forced by a low level on external STE pin.
- ☐ **STE** Slave transmit enable. Used in four-pin mode to control more than one slave in a multiple master and slave system.

The interconnection of the USART in synchronous mode to another device's serial port with one common transmit/receive shift register is shown in Figure 13–3, where MSP430 is master or slave. The operation of both devices is identical.

Figure 13–3. MSP430 USART as Master, External Device With SPI as Slave



The master initiates the transfer by sending the UCLK signal. For the master, data is shifted out of the transmit shift register on one clock edge, and shifted into the receive shift register on the opposite edge. For the slave, the data shifting operation is the same and uses one common register for transmitting and receiving data. Master and slave send and receive data at the same time.

Whether the data is meaningful or dummy data depends on the application software:

- ☐ Master sends data and slave sends dummy data
- ☐ Master sends data and slave sends data
- ☐ Master sends dummy data and slave sends data

Figures 13–4 and 13–5 show an example of a serial synchronous data transfer for a character length of seven bits. The initial content of the receive shift register is 00. The following events occur in order:

- A) Slave writes 98h to the data shift register (DSR) and waits for the master to shift data out.
- B) Master writes B0h to UxTXBUF, which is immediately transferred to the transmit shift register, and starts the transmission.
- C) First character is finished and sets the interrupt flags.
- D) Slave reads 58h from the receive buffer (right justified).
- E) Slave writes 54h to the DSR and waits for the master to shift out data.
- F) Master reads 4Ch from the receive buffer UxRXBUF (right justified).
- G) Master writes E8h to the transmit buffer UxTXBUF and starts the transmission.

Note: If USART is in slave mode, no UCLK is needed after D), until G). However, in master mode, two clocks are used internally (not on UCLK signal) to end transmit/receive of first character and prepare the transmit/receive of the next character.

H) Second character is finished and sets the interrupt flag.

I) Master receives 2Ah and slave receives 74h (right justified).

Figure 13–4. Serial Synchronous Data Transfer

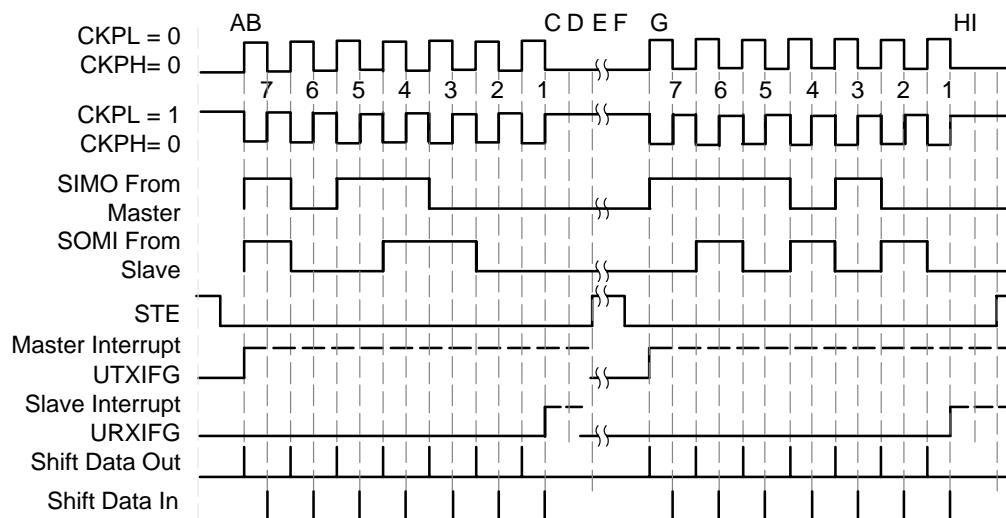
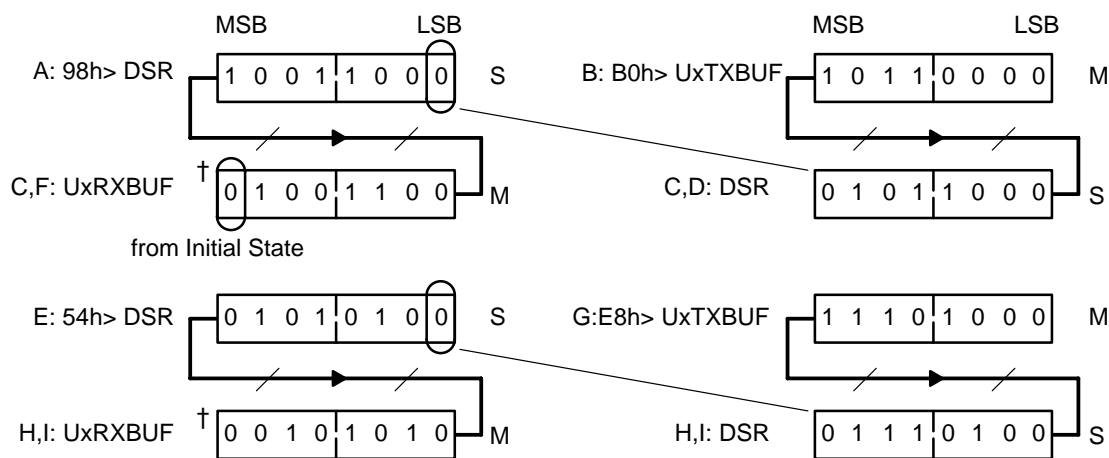


Figure 13–5. Data Transfer Cycle

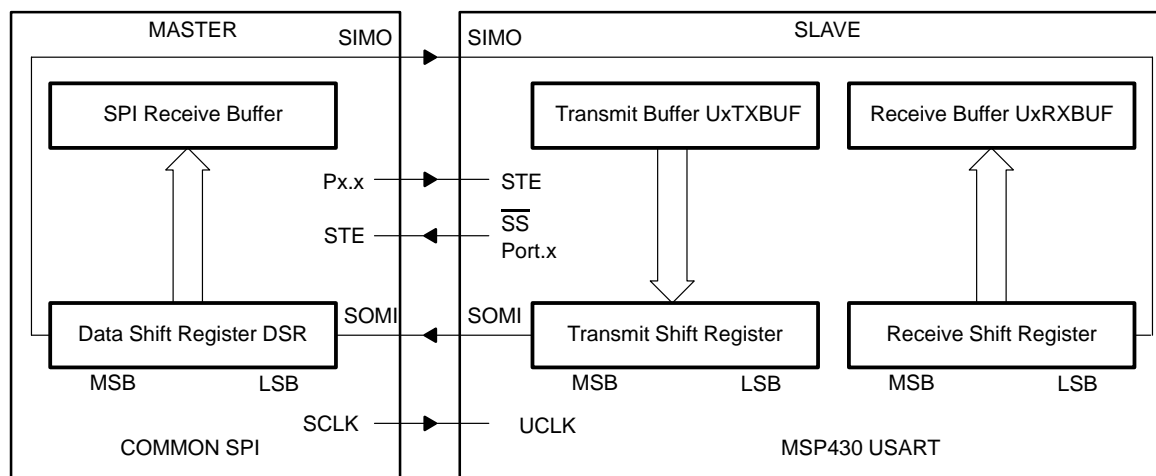


† In 7 bit mode, the MSB of RXBUF is always read as 0.

S: Slave M: Master

Figure 13–6 illustrates the USART module functioning as a slave in a three or four-pin SPI configuration.

Figure 13–6. MSP430 USART as Slave in Three-Pin or Four-Pin Configuration



13.3.1 Master SPI Mode

The master mode is selected when the master-mode bit (MM) in control register UxCTL is set. The USART module controls the serial-communication network by providing UCLK at the UCLK pin. Data is output on the SIMO pin during the first UCLK period and latched from the SOMI pin in the middle of the corresponding UCLK period.

The data written to the transmit buffer (UxTXBUF) is moved to the transmit shift register as soon as the shift register is empty. This initiates the data transfer on the SIMO pin starting with the most-significant bit. At the same time, received data is shifted into the receive shift register and, upon receiving the selected number of bits, the data is transferred to the receive buffer (UxRXBUF) setting the receive interrupt flag (URXIFG). Data is shifted into the receive shift register starting with the most-significant bit. It is stored and right-justified in the receive buffer (UxRXBUF). When previous data is not read from the receive buffer (UxRXBUF), the overrun error bit (OE) is set.

Note: USART Synchronous Master Mode, Receive Initiation

The master writes data to the transmit buffer UxTXBUF to receive a character. The receive starts when the transmit shift register is empty and the data is transferred to it. Receive and transmit operations always take place together, at opposite clock edges.

The protocol can be controlled using the transmit-interrupt flag UTXIFG, or the receive-interrupt flag URXIFG. By using UTXIFG immediately after sending the shift-register data to the slave, the buffer data is transferred to the shift register and the transmission starts. The slave receive timing should ensure that there is a timely pick-up of the data. The URXIFG flag indicates when the data shifts out and in completely. The master can use URXIFG to ensure that the slave is ready to correctly receive the next data.

13.3.1.1 Four-Pin SPI Master Mode

The signal on STE is used by the active master to prevent bus conflicts with another master. The STE pin is an input when the corresponding PnSEL bit (in the I/O registers) selects the module function. The master operates normally while the STE signal is high. Whenever the STE signal is low, for example, when another device makes a request to become master, the actual master reacts such that:

- ☐ The pins that drive the SPI bus lines SIMO and UCLK are set to inputs.
- ☐ The error bit FE and the interrupt flag URXIFG in registers U0CTL and U1CTL, respectively, are set.

The bus conflict is then removed: SIMO and UCLK do not drive the bus lines, and the error flag indicates the system integrity violation to the software. Pins SIMO and UCLK are forced to the input state while STE is in a low state, and they return to the conditions defined by the corresponding control bits when STE returns to a high state.

In the three-pin mode, the STE input signal is not relevant.

13.3.2 Slave SPI Mode

The slave mode is selected when bit MM of the control register is reset and synchronous mode is selected.

The UCLK pin is used as the input for the serial-shift clock supplied by an external master. The data-transfer rate is determined by this clock and not by the internal bit-rate generator. The data, loaded into the transmit shift register through the transmit buffer (UxTXBUF) before the start of UCLK, is transmitted on the SOMI pin using the UCLK supplied from the master. Simultaneously, the serial data applied to the SIMO pin are shifted into the receive shift register on the opposite edge of the clock.

The receive-interrupt flag URXIFG indicates when the data is received and transferred into the receive buffer. The overrun-error bit is set when the previously-received data is not read before the new data is written to the receive buffer.

13.3.2.1 Four-Pin SPI Slave Mode

In the four-pin SPI mode, the STE signal is used by the slave to enable the transmit and receive operations. It is applied from the SPI master. The receive and transmit operations are disabled when the STE signal is high, and enabled when it is low. Whenever the STE signal becomes high, any receive operation in progress is halted and then continues when the STE signal is low again. The STE signal enables one slave to access the data lines. The SOMI is input if STE is set high.

13.4 Interrupt and Control Functions

The USART peripheral interface serves two main interrupt sources for transmission and reception. Two interrupt vectors serve receive and transmit interrupt events.

The interrupt control bits and flags and enable bits of the USART peripheral interface are located in the SFR address range. The bit functions are described below in Table 13–1. See the peripheral-file map in Appendix A for the exact bit locations.

Table 13–1. USART Interrupt Control and Enable Bits—SPI Mode

Receive interrupt flag	URXIFG [‡]	Initial state reset (by PUC/SWRST)
Receive interrupt enable	URXIE [‡]	Initial state reset (by PUC/SWRST)
Receive/transmit enable [†]	USPIIE [‡]	Initial state reset (by PUC)
Transmit interrupt flag	UTXIFG [‡]	Initial state set (by PUC/SWRST)
Transmit interrupt enable	UTXIE [‡]	Initial state reset (by PUC/SWRST)

[†] Different for UART mode, see Chapter 12

[‡] Suffix .0 for USART0 and .1 for USART1

The USART receiver and transmitter operate in parallel and use the same baud-rate generator in synchronous master mode. In synchronous slave mode, the external clock applied to UCLK is used for the receiver and the transmitter. The receiver and transmitter are enabled and disabled together with the USPIIE bit.

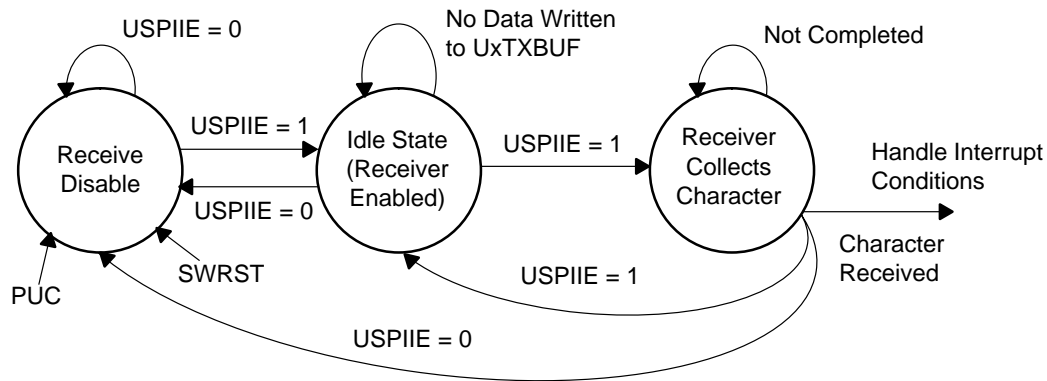
13.4.1 USART Receive/Transmit Enable Bit, Receive Operation

The receive/transmit enable bit (USPIIE) enables or disables collection of the bit stream on the URXD/SOMI data line. Disabling the USART receiver (USPIIE = 0) stops the receive operation after completion, or stops a pending operation if no receive operation is active. In synchronous mode, UCLK does not shift any data into the receiver shift register.

13.4.1.1 Receive/Transmit Enable Bit—MSP430 as Master

The receive operation functions identically for three-pin and four-pin modes, as shown in Figure 13–7, when the MSP430 USART is selected to be the SPI master.

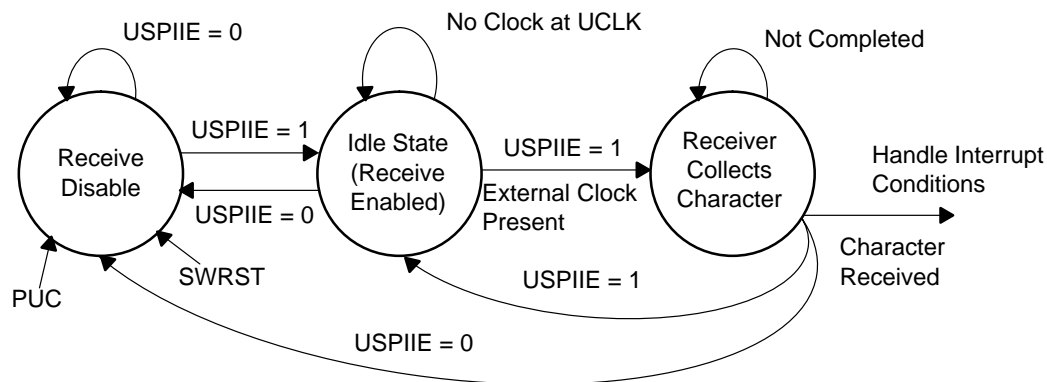
Figure 13–7. State Diagram of Receiver Enable Operation—MSP430 as Master



13.4.1.2 Receive/Transmit Enable Bit—MSP430 as Slave, Three-Pin Mode

The receive operation functions differently for three-pin and four-pin modes when the MSP430 USART module is selected to be the SPI slave. In the three-pin mode, shown in Figure 13–8, no external SPI receive-control signal stops an active receive operation. A PUC signal, a software reset (SWRST), or a receive/transmit enable (USPIIE) signal can stop a receive operation and reset the USART.

Figure 13–8. State Diagram of Receive/Transmit Enable—MSP430 as Slave, Three-Pin Mode



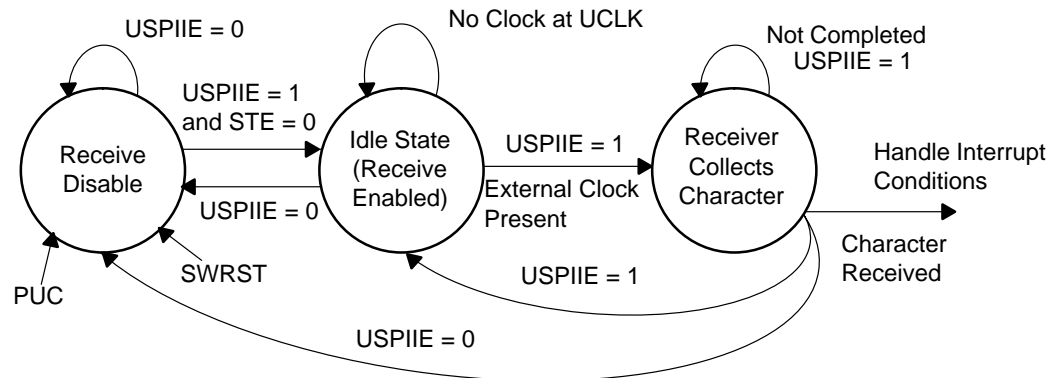
Note: USPIIE Reenabled, SPI Mode

After the receiver is completely disabled, a reenabling of the receiver is asynchronous to any data stream on the communication line. Synchronization to the data stream is handled by the software protocol in three-pin SPI mode.

13.4.1.3 Receive/Transmit Enable Bit—MSP430 as Slave, Four-Pin Mode

In the four-pin mode, shown in Figure 13–9, the external SPI receive-control signal applied to pin STE stops a started receive operation. A PUC signal, a software reset (SWRST), or a receive/transmit enable (USPIIE) can stop a receive operation and reset the operation-control state machine. Whenever the STE signal is set to high, the receive operation is halted.

Figure 13–9. State Diagram of Receive Enable—MSP430 as Slave, Four-Pin Mode



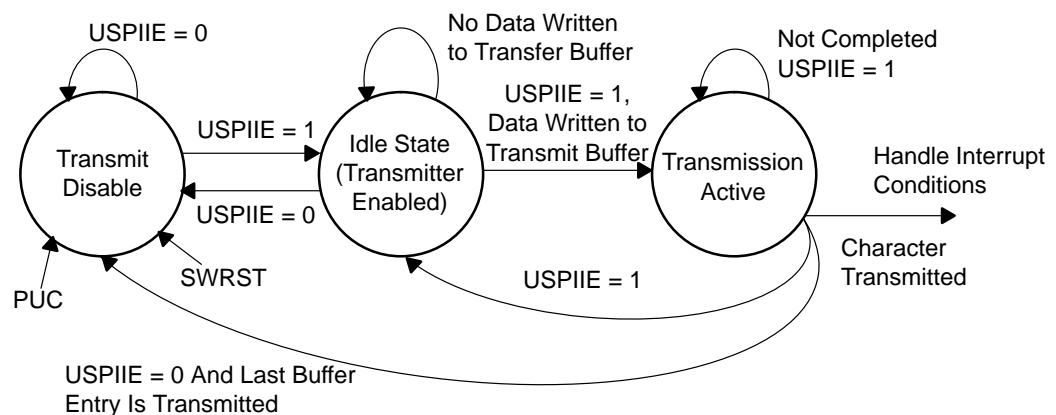
13.4.2 USART Receive/Transmit Enable Bit, Transmit Operation

The receive/transmit enable bit **USPIIE**, shown in Figures 13–10 and 13–11, enables or disables the shifting of a character on the serial data line. If this bit is reset, the transmitter is disabled, but any active transmission does not halt until all data previously written to the transmit buffer is transmitted. If the transmission is completed, any further write operation to the transmitter buffer does not transmit. When the **UxTXBUF** is ready, any pending request for transmission remains, which results in an immediate start of transmission when **USPIIE** is set and the transmitter is empty. A low state on the **STE** signal removes the active master (four-pin mode) from the bus. It also indicates that another master is requesting the active-master function.

13.4.2.1 Receive/Transmit Enable—MSP430 as Master

Figure 13–10 shows the transmit-enable activity when the MSP430 is master.

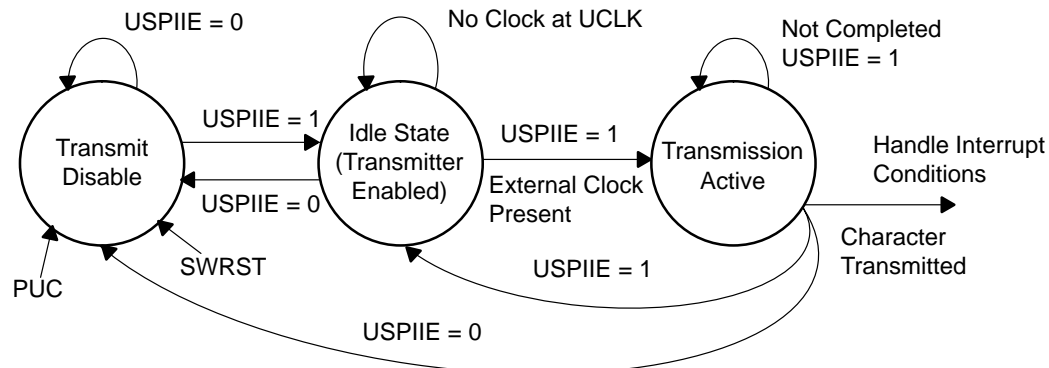
Figure 13–10. State Diagram of Transmit Enable—MSP430 as Master



13.4.2.2 Receive/Transmit Enable, MSP430 is Slave

Figure 13–11 shows the receive/transmit-enable-bit activity when the MSP430 is slave.

Figure 13–11. State Diagram of Transmit Enable—MSP430 as Slave



When USPIIE is reset, any data can be written regularly into the transmit buffer, but no transmission is started. Once the USPIIE bit is set, the data in the transmit buffer are immediately loaded into the transmit shift register and character transmission is started.

Note: Writing to UxTXBUF, SPI Mode

Data should never be written to transmit buffer UxTXBUF when the buffer is not ready (UTXIFG=0) and the transmitter is enabled (USPIIE is set). Otherwise, the transmission may have errors.

Note: Writing to UxTXBUF/Reset of Transmitter, SPI Mode

Disabling of the transmitter should be done only if all data to be transmitted have been moved to the transmit shift register. Data is moved from UTXBUF to the transmit shift register on the next bit clock after the shift register is ready.

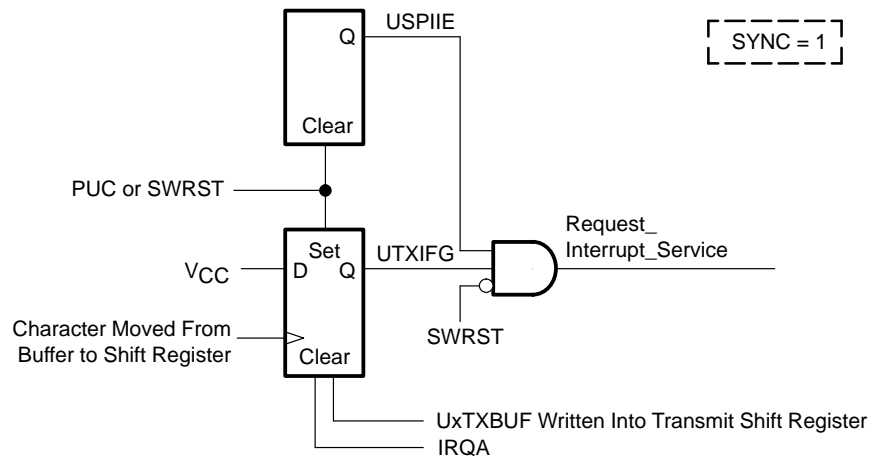
```

MOV.B #....,&U0TXBUF
BIC.B #USPIE0,&ME2      ; If BITCLK < SMCLK then the
                        ; transmitter might be stopped
                        ; before the buffer is loaded
                        ; into the transmitter
                        ; shift register
    
```


13.4.4 Transmit-Interrupt Operation

In the transmit-interrupt operation shown in Figure 13–14, the transmit-interrupt flag UTXIFG is set by the transmitter to indicate that the transmitter buffer UxTXBUF is ready to accept another character. This bit is automatically reset if the interrupt-request service is started or a character is written to the UxTXBUF. This flag activates a transmitter interrupt if bits USPIIE and GIE are set. The UTXIFG is set after a system reset PUC signal, or removal of SWRST.

Figure 13–14. Transmit-Interrupt Operation



The transmit-interrupt enable bit UTXIE controls the ability of the UTXIFG to request an interrupt, but does not prevent the UTXIFG flag from being set. The USPIIE is reset with a PUC signal or a SWRST. The UTXIFG bit is set after a system reset PUC signal or a SWRST, but the USPIIE bit is reset to ensure full interrupt-control capability.

13.5 Control and Status Registers

The USART registers, shown in Table 13–2, are byte structured and should be accessed using byte instructions.

Table 13–2. USART0 Control and Status Registers

Register	Short Form	Register Type	Address	Initial State
USART control	U0CTL	Read/write	070h	See Section 13.5.1
Transmit control	U0CTL	Read/write	071h	See Section 13.5.2
Receive control	U0RCTL	Read/write	072h	See Section 13.5.3
Modulation control	U0MCTL	Read/write	073h	Unchanged
Baud rate 0	U0BR0	Read/write	074h	Unchanged
Baud rate 1	U0BR1	Read/write	075h	Unchanged
Receive buffer	U0RXBUF	Read/write	076h	Unchanged
Transmit buffer	U0TXBUF	Read	077h	Unchanged

Table 13–3. USART1 Control and Status Registers

Register	Short Form	Register Type	Address	Initial State
USART control	U1CTL	Read/write	078h	See Section 13.5.1
Transmit control	U1TCTL	Read/write	079h	See Section 13.5.2
Receive control	U1RCTL	Read/write	07Ah	See Section 13.5.3
Modulation control	U1MCTL	Read/write	07Bh	Unchanged
Baud rate 0	U1BR0	Read/write	07Ch	Unchanged
Baud rate 1	U1BR1	Read/write	07Dh	Unchanged
Receive buffer	U1RXBUF	Read/write	07Eh	Unchanged
Transmit buffer	U1TXBUF	Read	07Fh	Unchanged

All bits are random following the PUC signal, unless otherwise noted by the detailed functional description.

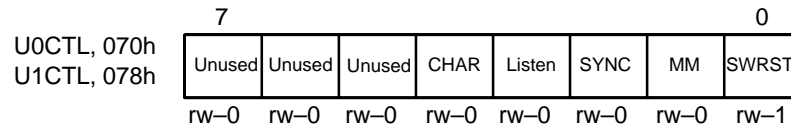
Reset of the USART module is performed by the PUC signal or a SWRST. After a PUC signal, the SWRST bit remains set and the USART module remains in the reset condition. It is disabled by resetting the SWRST bit. The SPI mode is disabled after the PUC signal.

The USART module operates in asynchronous or synchronous mode as defined by the SYNC bit. The bits in the control registers can have different functions in the two modes. All bits are described with their function in the synchronous mode—SYNC = 1. Their function in the asynchronous mode is described in Chapter 12.

13.5.1 USART Control Register

The information stored in the control register, shown in Figure 13–15, determines the basic operation of the USART module. The register bits select the communication mode and the number of bits per character. All bits should be programmed to the desired mode before resetting the SWRST bit.

Figure 13–15. USART Control Register



Bit 0: The USART state machines and operating flags are initialized to the reset condition (URXIFG=USPIIE=0, UTXIFG=1) if the software reset bit is set. Until the SWRST bit is reset, all affected logic is held in the reset state. This implies that after a system reset the USART must be reenabled by resetting this bit.

Note:

The USART initialization sequence should be:

- Initialize per application requirements while leaving SWRST=1
- Clear SWRST
- Enable interrupts if desired.

Bit 1: Master mode is selected when the MM bit is set. The USART module slave mode is selected when the MM bit is reset.

Bit 2: Peripheral module mode select
The SYNC bit sets the function of the USART peripheral-interface module. Some of the USART control bits have different functions in UART and SPI modes.
SYNC = 0: UART function is selected
SYNC = 1: SPI function is selected

Bit 3: The listen bit determines the transmitted data to feed back internally to the receiver. This is commonly called loopback mode.

Bit 4: Character length
This register bit sets the length of the character to be transmitted as either seven or eight bits.
CHAR = 0: 7-bit data
CHAR = 1: 8-bit data

Bit 5: Unused

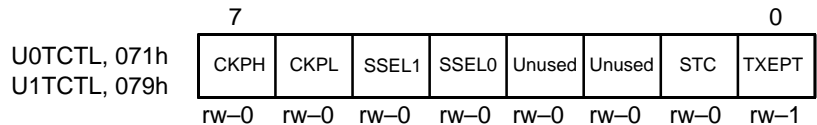
Bit 6: Unused

Bit 7: Unused

13.5.2 Transmit Control Register U0TCTL, U1TCTL

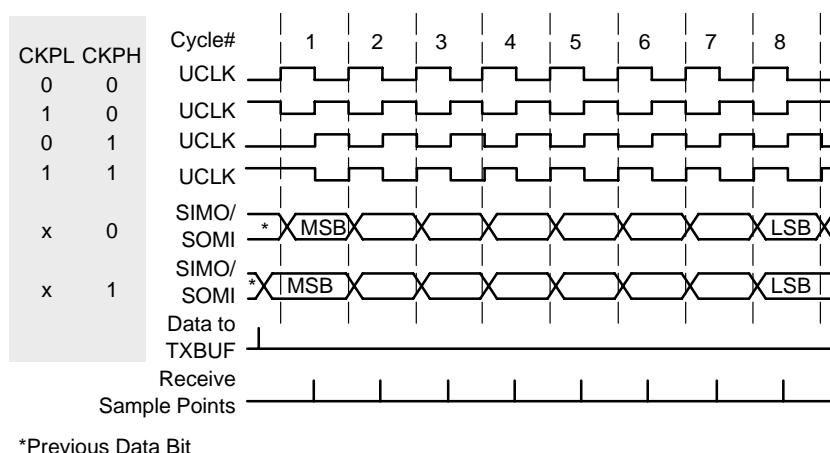
The transmit control register, shown in Figure 13–16, controls the USART hardware associated with transmitter operations.

Figure 13–16. Transmit Control Register U0TCTL, U1TCTL



- Bit 0: Master mode:
The transmitter-empty flag TXEPT is set when the transmitter shift register and UxTXBUF are empty, and reset when data are written to UxTXBUF. It is set again by a SWRST.
- Slave mode:
The transmitter-empty flag TXEPT is not set when the transmitter shift register and UxTXBUF are empty.
- Bit 1: The slave transmit-control bit STC selects if the STE pin is used for master and slave mode:
 STC = 0: The four-pin mode of SPI is selected. The STE signal is used by the master to avoid bus conflicts, or is used in slave mode to control transmit and receive enable.
 STC = 1: The three-pin SPI mode is selected. STE is not used in master or slave mode.
- Bit 2: Unused
- Bit 3: Unused
- Bits 4, 5: Source select 0 and 1
 The source-select bits define which clock source is used for baud-rate generation only when master mode is selected:
 SSEL1,SSEL0 0 External clock UCLK selected
 1 Auxiliary clock ACLK selected
 2, 3 SMCLK
 In master mode (MM = 1), an external clock at UCLK cannot be selected since the master supplies the UCLK signal for any slave. In slave mode, bits SSEL1 and SSEL0 are not relevant. The external clock UCLK is always used.
- Bits 6, 7: Clock polarity CKPL and clock phase CKPH
 The CKPL bit controls the polarity of the SPICLK signal.
 CKPL = 0: The inactive level is low; data is output with the rising edge of UCLK; input data is latched with the falling edge of UCLK.
 CKPL = 1: The inactive level is high; data is output with the falling edge of UCLK; input data is latched with the rising edge of SPICLK.
 The CKPH bit controls the polarity of the SPICLK signal as shown in Figure 13–17.
 CKPH = 0: Normal UCLK clocking scheme
 CKPH = 1: UCLK is delayed by one half cycle

Figure 13–17. USART Clock Phase and Polarity



When operating with the CKPH bit set, the USART (synchronous mode) makes the first bit of data available after the transmit shift register is loaded and before the first edge of the UCLK. In this mode, data is latched on the first edge of UCLK and transmitted on the second edge.

13.5.3 Receive Control Register U0RCTL, U1RCTL

The receive control register, shown in Figure 13–18, controls the USART hardware associated with the receiver operation and holds error conditions.

Figure 13–18. Receive Control Register U0RCTL, U1RCTL

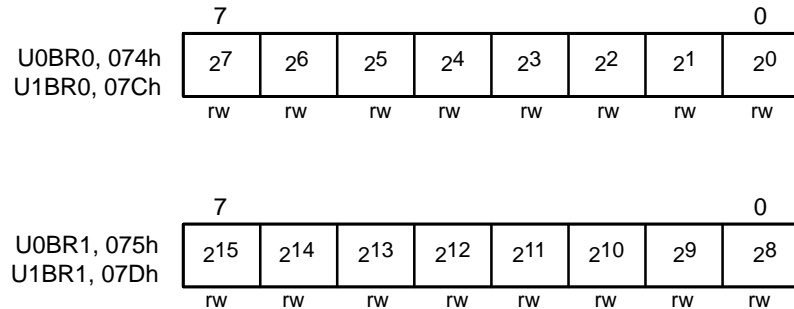
	7						0
U0RCTL, 072h U1RCTL, 07Ah	FE	Undef.	OE	Undef.	Unused	Unused	Undef.
	rw-0	rw-0	rw-0	rw-0	rw-0	rw-0	rw-0

- Bit 0: Undefined, driven by USART hardware
- Bit 1: Undefined, driven by USART hardware
- Bit 2: Unused
- Bit 3: Unused
- Bit 4: Undefined, driven by USART hardware
- Bit 5: The overrun-error-flag bit (OE) is set when a character is transferred to UxRXBUF before the previous character is read. The previous character is overwritten and lost. OE is reset by a SWRST, a system reset, by reading the UxRXBUF, or by an instruction.
- Bit 6: Undefined, driven by USART hardware
- Bit 7: Frame error. The FE bit is set when four-pin mode is selected and a bus conflict stops an active master by applying a negative transition signal to pin STE. FE is reset by a SWRST, a system reset, by reading the UxRXBUF, or by an instruction.

13.5.4 Baud Rate Select and Modulation Control Registers

The baud-rate generator uses the content of baud-rate select registers UxBR1 and UxBR0, shown in Figure 13–19, to generate the serial-data-stream bit timing. The smallest division factor is two.

Figure 13–19. USART Baud-Rate Select Register

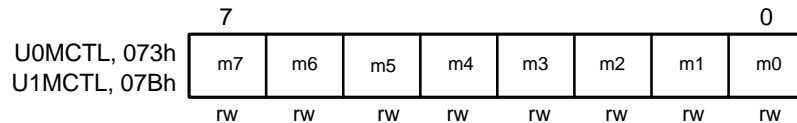


$$\text{Baud rate} = \frac{BRCLK}{UxBR + \frac{1}{n} \sum_{i=1}^n m_i} \quad \text{with } UxBR = [UxBR1, UxBR0]$$

The maximum baud rate that can be selected for transmission in master mode is half of the clock-input frequency of the baud-rate generator. In slave mode, the rate is determined by the external clock applied to UCLK.

The modulation control register, shown in Figure 13–20, is not used for serial synchronous communication. It is best kept in reset mode (bits m0 to m7 = 0).

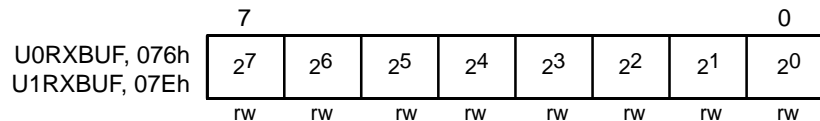
Figure 13–20. USART Modulation Control Register



13.5.5 Receive Data Buffer U0RXBUF, U1RXBUF

The receive data buffer (UxRXBUF), shown in Figure 13–21, contains previous data from the receiver shift register. UxRXBUF is cleared with a SWRST or a PUC signal. Reading UxRXBUF resets the receive-error bits and the receive-interrupt flag URXIFG.

Figure 13–21. Receive Data Buffer U0RXBUF, U1RXBUF

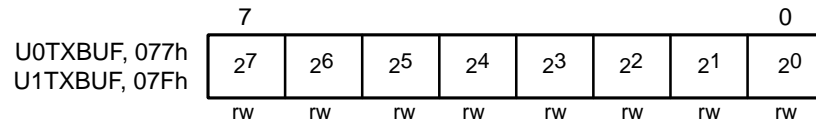


The MSB of the UxRXBUF is always reset in seven-bit-length mode.

13.5.6 Transmit Data Buffer U0TXBUF, U1TXBUF

The transmit data buffer (UxTXBUF), shown in Figure 13–22, contains current data for the transmitter to transmit.

Figure 13–22. Transmit Data Buffer U0TXBUF, U1TXBUF



The UTXIFG bit indicates that UxTXBUF is ready to accept another character for transmission. In master mode, the transmission is initialized by writing data to UxTXBUF. The transmission of this data is started on the next bit clock if the transmit shift register is empty.

When seven-bit character-length is used, the data moved into the transmit buffer must be left-justified since the MSB is shifted out first.

Note: Writing to UxTXBUF

Writing data to the transmit-data buffer must only be done if buffer UxTXBUF is empty; otherwise, an unpredictable character can be transmitted.

Comparator_A

The Comparator_A peripheral module is used to compare analog signals to support various forms of analog-to-digital conversion.

The Comparator_A module includes:

- ☐ Comparator with on/off capability and no input hysteresis
- ☐ Internal analog voltage reference generator
- ☐ Internal reference levels available externally
- ☐ Input multiplexer to exchange the comparator terminals
- ☐ Software-selectable RC-filter at the comparator output
- ☐ One interrupt vector

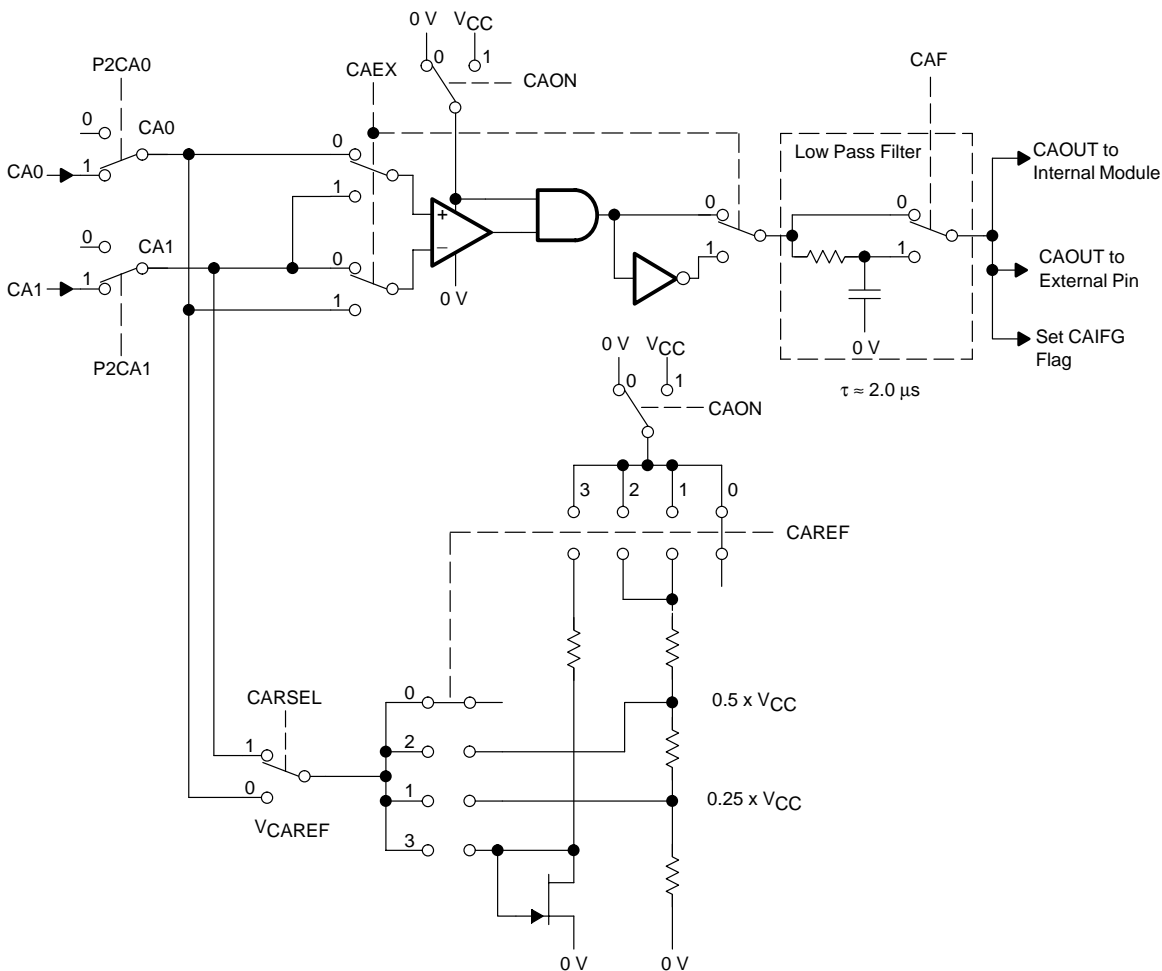
The Comparator_A is implemented in MSP430x11x1, MSP430x12x, MSP430x13x, and MSP430x14x devices.

Topic	Page
14.1 Comparator_A Overview	14-2
14.2 Comparator_A Description	14-3
14.3 Comparator_A Control Registers	14-6
14.4 Comparator_A in Applications	14-9

14.1 Comparator_A Overview

The primary function of the comparator module is to support precision A/D slope-conversion applications, battery-voltage supervision, and monitoring of external analog signals. The comparator is controlled via twelve control bits in registers CACTL1 and CACTL2.

Figure 14–1. Schematic of Comparator_A



The input and output pins of Comparator_A are often multiplexed with other pin functions on the MSP430. Additionally, the internal connections to Comparator_A can differ among MSP430 devices. The data sheet of a desired device should always be consulted to determine the specific connection implementations.

14.2 Comparator_A Description

The comparator_A peripheral module is comprised of several major blocks. These blocks are described in this section.

14.2.1 Input Analog Switches

The input analog switches connect or disconnect the comparator input terminals to associated port pins using the P2CA0 and P2CA1 control bits. Both terminal inputs can be controlled individually. P2CA0 and P2CA1 allow:

- ☐ Application of an external signal to the + and – terminals of the comparator, or
- ☐ Routing of an internal reference voltage (if applied) to a comparator-input terminal as an output on an associated port pin. In this way, the internal reference voltage can be used to bias external circuitry.

Internally, the input switch is constructed as a T-switch to suppress distortion in the signal path. When a comparator terminal is not connected to an external pin, it should be connected to an internal reference-voltage level.

Note: Comparator Input Connection

Ensure that the comparator input terminals are connected to signal, power, or ground level. Otherwise, floating levels may cause unexpected interrupts and current consumption may increase.

14.2.2 Input Multiplexer

Control bit CAEX controls the input multiplexer to select which input signals are connected to the comparator's + and – terminals. Additionally, when the comparator terminals are exchanged, the output signal from the comparator is inverted. This allows the user to determine or compensate for the comparator offset.

14.2.3 The Comparator

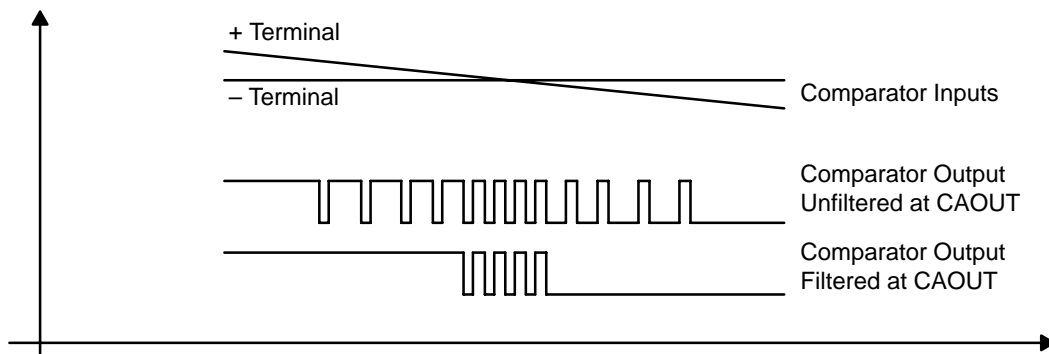
The comparator compares the analog voltages at the + and – input terminals. If the + terminal is more positive than the – terminal, the comparator output will be high (note that the value of signal CAOUT also depends on the value of CAEX). The comparator can be switched on or off using control bit CAON. The comparator should be switched off when not in use to stop its current consumption. When the comparator is switched off, the output is low (note that the value of CAOUT still depends on the value of CAEX, even when the comparator is off).

14.2.4 The Output Filter

The output of the comparator can be used with or without internal filtering. When control bit CAF is set, the output is filtered with an-chip RC-filter. The filter is bypassed when CAF is reset.

A comparator output will oscillate if the voltage difference across the input terminals is small. Internal and external parasitic effects and cross coupling on and between signal lines, power-supply lines, and other parts of the system are responsible for this behavior (see Figure 14–2). The comparator output oscillation reduces accuracy and resolution of the comparison result. Selecting the output filter can reduce errors associated with comparator oscillation.

Figure 14–2. RC-Filter Response at the Output of the Comparator



14.2.5 The Voltage Reference Generator

The voltage reference generator is used to generate V_{CAREF} . V_{CAREF} can be applied to either of the comparator input terminals. Control bits CAREF0 and CAREF1 control the output of the voltage generator. Control bit CARSEL selects the comparator terminal to which V_{CAREF} is applied. If external signals are applied to the comparator input terminals, the internal reference generator should be shut off to reduce current consumption. The divider in the voltage reference generator can generate a fraction of the device's V_{CC} , or a fixed transistor-threshold voltage. This threshold voltage tolerance is specified in the specific device's data sheet.

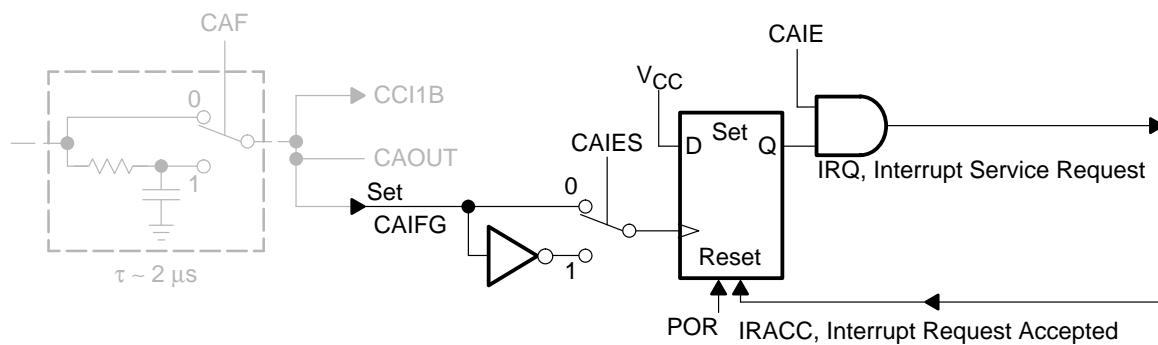
Ratiometric measurement principles that compare unknown values, such as resistive or capacitive sensors, with a known value such as a precision resistor or capacitor, can use an internal reference and achieve accurate results without an absolute V_{CC} . V_{CC} needs to be stable, but not necessarily known. The accuracy of ratiometric measurements is determined by the accuracy of the known resistor or capacitor value.

Absolute measurement principles require a stable V_{CC} to ensure that the voltage reference generated produces accurate reference-voltage levels.

14.2.6 Comparator_A Interrupt Circuitry

One interrupt and one interrupt vector are associated with the Comparator_A (see Figure 14–3). The interrupt flag CAIFG is set on either the rising or falling edge of the comparator output. The interrupt edge-select bit, CAIES, determines which edge of the output signal sets the CAIFG flag. The interrupt-enable bit, CAIE, along with the general interrupt-enable bit (GIE) control if the CAIFG bit generates a CPU interrupt. If both the CAIE and the GIE bits are set, then the CAIFG flag will generate a CPU interrupt request. The CAIFG flag is automatically reset when the CPU interrupt request is serviced. The CAIFG, CAIES, and CAIE bits are all located in the CACTL1 register.

Figure 14–3. Comparator_A Interrupt System



14.3 Comparator_A Control Registers

The Comparator_A module is configured with three module registers as shown in Table 14–1. The module registers are mapped into the lower peripheral file address range where all byte modules are located and should be accessed with byte instructions (suffix B).

Table 14–1. Comparator_A Control Registers

Register	Short Form	Register Type	Address	Initial State
• C_A control register 1:	CACTL1	Read/write	059h	Reset
• C_A control register 2:	CACTL2	Read/write	05Ah	Reset
• C_A port dissipation reg:	CAPD	Read/write	05Bh	Reset

14.3.1 Comparator_A, Control Register CACTL1

The control register CACTL1 is shown and described below.

	7						0	
CACTL1 059h	CAEX	CA RSEL	CA REF1	CA REF0	CAON	CAIES	CAIE	CAIFG
	rw-(0)	rw-(0)	rw-(0)	rw-(0)	rw-(0)	rw-(0)	rw-(0)	rw-(0)

- CAIFG, bit0: The Comparator_A interrupt flag
- CAIE, bit1: The Comparator_A interrupt enable
- CAIES, bit2: The Comparator_A interrupt edge select bit
- 0: The rising edge of the comparator output sets the Comparator_A interrupt flag CAIFG
- 1: The falling edge of the comparator output sets the Comparator_A interrupt flag CAIFG
- CAON, bit3: The comparator is switched on or off. When off, the current consumption of the comparator is stopped. The current consumption of the reference circuitry is enabled or disabled independently.
- 0: The comparator is disabled, current consumption is stopped and the output of the comparator is low.
- 1: The comparator is enabled and active.
- CAREF, bit4,5: 0: Internal reference is switched off. An external reference can be applied.
- 1: 0.25*V_{cc} reference is selected
- 2: 0.50*V_{cc} reference is selected
- 3: Diode reference is selected.
- The diode reference varies with each individual device, temperature and supply voltage. See device data sheet.

- CARSEL, bit6: The internal reference V_{CAREF} , selected by CAREF bits, is applied to the +terminal or –terminal.
- 0: Reference is selected to the +terminal (CAEX = 0) or –terminal (CAEX = 1)
 - 1: Reference is selected to the –terminal (CAEX = 0) or +terminal (CAEX = 1)
- CAEX, bit7: The inputs of the comparator are exchanged. This is used to measure or compensate for the offset of the comparator.

14.3.2 Comparator_A, Control Register CACTL2

The control register CACTL2 is shown and described below.

	7						0	
CACTL2 05Ah	CACTL 2.7	CACTL 2.6	CACTL 2.5	CACTL 2.4	P2CA1	P2CA0	CAF	CAOUT
	rw-(0)	rw-(0)	rw-(0)	rw-(0)	rw-(0)	rw-(0)	rw-(0)	r-(0)

- CAOUT, bit0: The comparator output. Writing to this bit, for example when writing a new register value, has no affect or negative impact.
- CAF, bit1: The comparator output filter is bypassed (CAF=0) or switched into the output path (CAF=1).
- P2CA0, bit2: Pin to CA0
- 0: The external, pin signal is not connected to the Comparator_A
 - 1: The external, pin signal is connected to the Comparator_A
- P2CA1, bit3: Pin to CA1
- 0: The external, pin signal is not connected to the Comparator_A
 - 1: The external, pin signal is connected to the Comparator_A
- Bits 4–7: See device data sheet for implementation.

14.3.3 Comparator_A, Port Disable Register CAPD

Typically, the comparator input and output functions are multiplexed with digital I/O port pins to save pin count on a device. Also, slope A/D applications often utilize multiple digital I/O ports (for charging and discharging) to provide multiple channels of slope A/D conversion. In these multichannel applications, a useful feature of the digital I/O pins is the ability to disable the input buffer. Typically, all channels except the one being converted are disabled, providing a high-impedance input and avoiding current consumption caused by throughput current. (See section 14.4.1)

The typical digital I/O ports on MSP430 do not have the ability to disable the input buffer. However, on devices with the Comparator_A, the capability has been added and is controlled with the CAPD.x bits.

The control bits CAPD.0 to CAPD.7 are initially reset, enabling all the input buffers for the associated port. The port input buffer is disabled if the according CAPD.x bit is set. See device data sheet for port associations.

The ability to disable the input buffer for the device pin applies to up to eight inputs of the associated digital I/O port (check device data sheet for implementation details). For example, the x11x1 devices have CA1 multiplexed on pin P2.4 and CA0 multiplexed on pin P2.3, so the Comparator_A is associated with port P2. On this device, all input buffers associated with all P2 pins (P2.x) may have the capability to be disabled with the CAPD register.

	7						0	
CAPD 05Bh	CAPD.7	CAPD.6	CAPD.5	CAPD.4	CAPD.3	CAPD.2	CAPD.1	CAPD.0
	rw-(0)	rw-(0)	rw-(0)	rw-(0)	rw-(0)	rw-(0)	rw-(0)	rw-(0)

CAPD.x: 0: The input buffer for the pin enabled.
 1: The input buffer for the pin is disabled.

14.4 Comparator_A in Applications

The Comparator_A can be used to:

- ☐ Measure resistive elements
- ☐ Detect external voltage or current levels
- ☐ Measure external voltage and current sources
- ☐ Measure the voltage of a battery used in the system

14.4.1 Analog Signals at Digital Inputs

Typically, Comparator_A inputs are multiplexed with digital I/O pins. When analog signals are applied to these digital CMOS gates, parasitic current can flow from the positive terminal (V_{DD} , V_{CC}) to the negative terminal (V_{SS} , GND). See Figure 14–4. This parasitic current occurs if the input voltage is around the transition level of the input gate.

Figure 14–4. Transfer Characteristic and Power Dissipation in a CMOS Inverter/Buffer

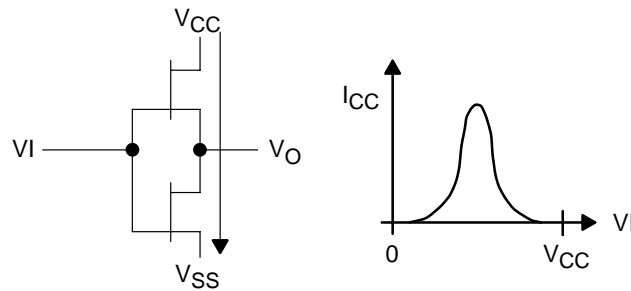
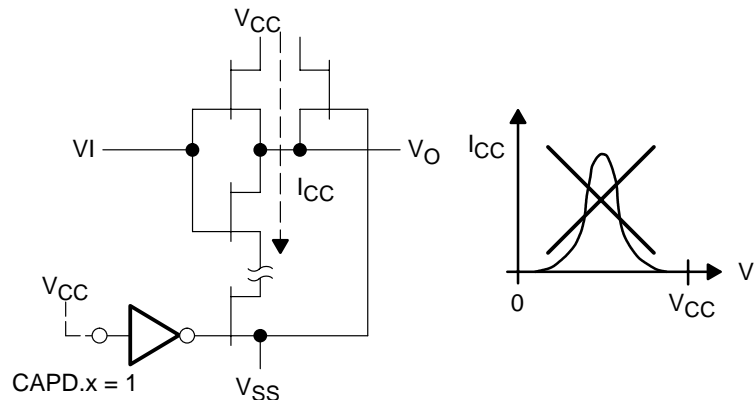


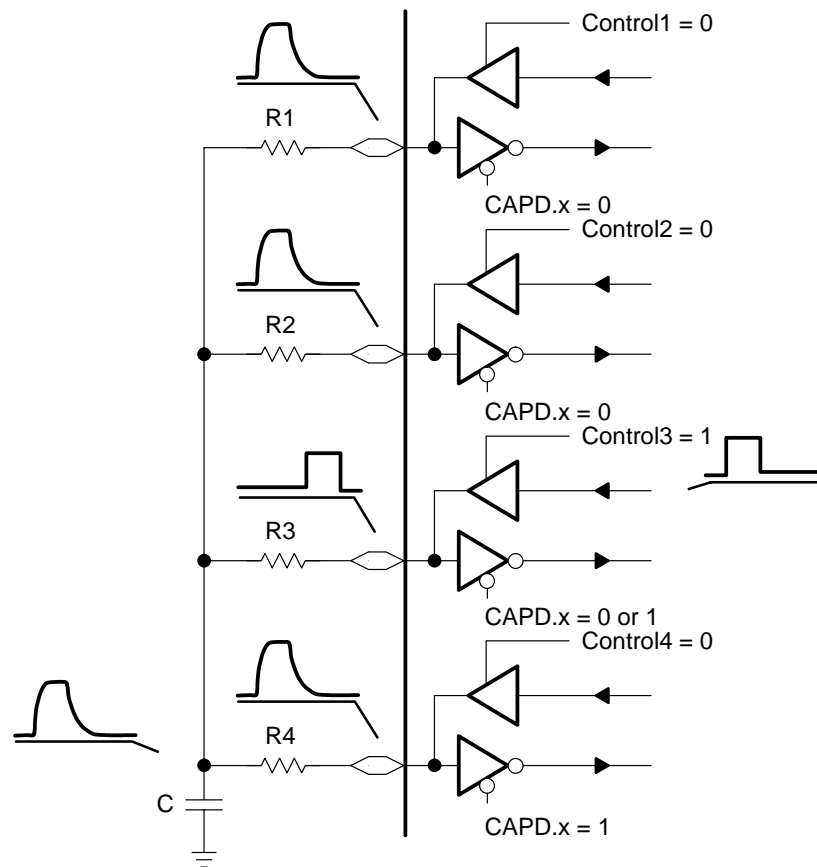
Figure 14–5. Transfer Characteristic and Power Dissipation in a CMOS Gate



MSP430 devices with the Comparator_A module have additional circuitry on the associated digital I/O port pins to allow the input buffers to be disabled (see Figure 14–5). The buffers are enabled or disabled with the CAPD.x bits (see section 14.3.3). Note that the circuitry is added to all pins of the associated I/O port, not just the pins for the Comparator_A inputs.

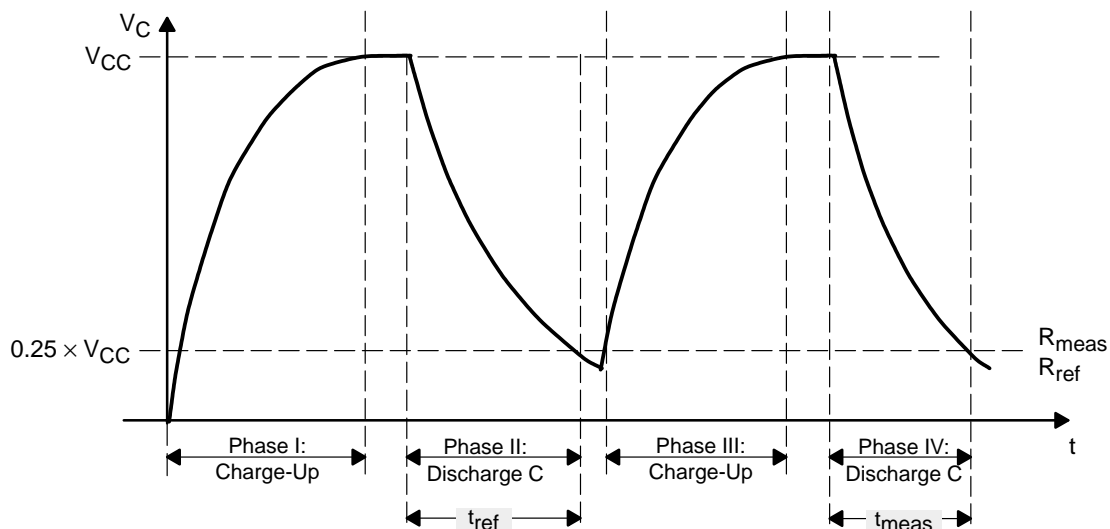
Disabling the input buffer for a specific pin will disable the parasitic current flow and therefore reduce overall current consumption. It is important to disable the buffer for any I/O pin that is not being actively driven if current consumption is critical (see Figure 14–6).

Figure 14–6. Application Example With One Active(Driving R3) and Three Passive Pins With Applied Analog Signals



The specific implementation (which digital inputs/outputs can be controlled by CAPD.x) varies with each MSP430 device configuration. Refer to the specific device's data sheet to see which I/O port is associated with Comparator_A.

Figure 14–8. Timing for Temperature Measurement Systems



MSP430 resources used to calculate the temperature sensed by R_{meas} :

Digital I/O:

- ☐ Two digital outputs to charge and discharge the capacitor. Port pins are set to provide a V_{CC} output (charge a capacitor), reset to discharge a capacitor, and switched to high-impedance (including correct state of CAPD.x bit) when not in use. One output discharges the capacitor via reference resistor R_{ref} , the other output discharges it via R_{meas} .

Comparator_A:

- ☐ The $-$ terminal is connected to a reference level, for example $0.25 \times V_{CC}$.
- ☐ The $+$ terminal is connected to the positive terminal of the capacitor.
- ☐ CAOUT or CAIFG utilized to measure the discharge time.
- ☐ The output filter should be used to minimize multiple switching when the voltages at the comparator inputs are close together.

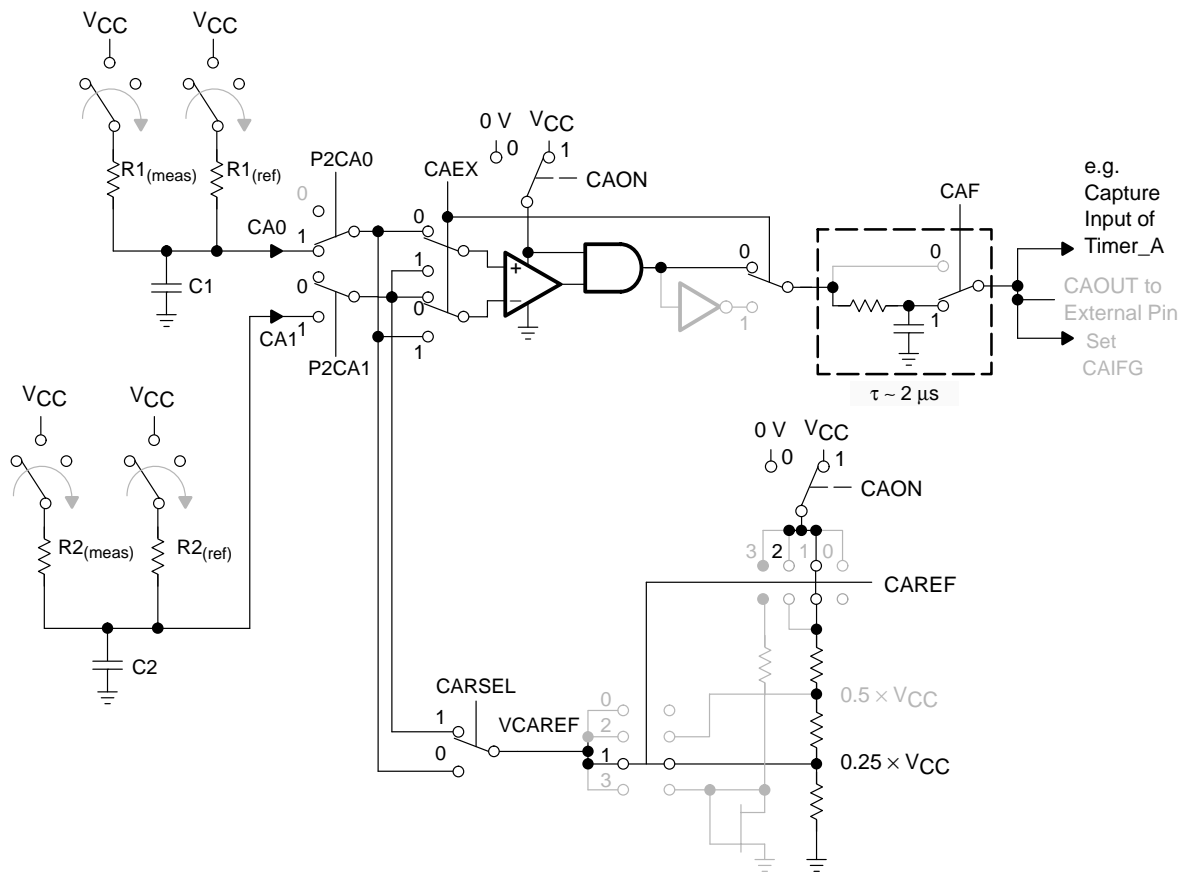
If CAOUT is available as an input to a timer-capture register such as Timer_A, the capacitor discharge time can be measured very precisely, without software polling for a change of CAOUT, by using the timer capture function.

$$R_{meas} = R_{ref} \times \frac{N_{meas}}{N_{ref}} \qquad T_{meas} = f(R_{meas})$$

14.4.3 Measuring Two Independent Resistive Element Systems

It is possible to measure two independent systems with one comparator. The input multiplexer, which is controlled via CAEX, allows the two independent systems to be isolated. See Figure 14–9. An example could be if one temperature sensor has a resistor range of 10 k Ω to 200 k Ω . The other sensor is in the range of 1 k Ω to 1.5 k Ω . Two independent measurement paths are used to optimize individual measurement performance. The conversion principle is identical to the one described in the previous section.

Figure 14–9. Two Independent Temperature Measurement Systems



In Figure 14–10, the active signal paths are shown when the upper independent system is selected for conversion. This example uses the $0.25 \times V_{CC}$ internal reference, and shows the software selectable RC-filter as active.

Figure 14–10. Temperature Measurement Via Temperature Sensor $R1_{(meas)}$

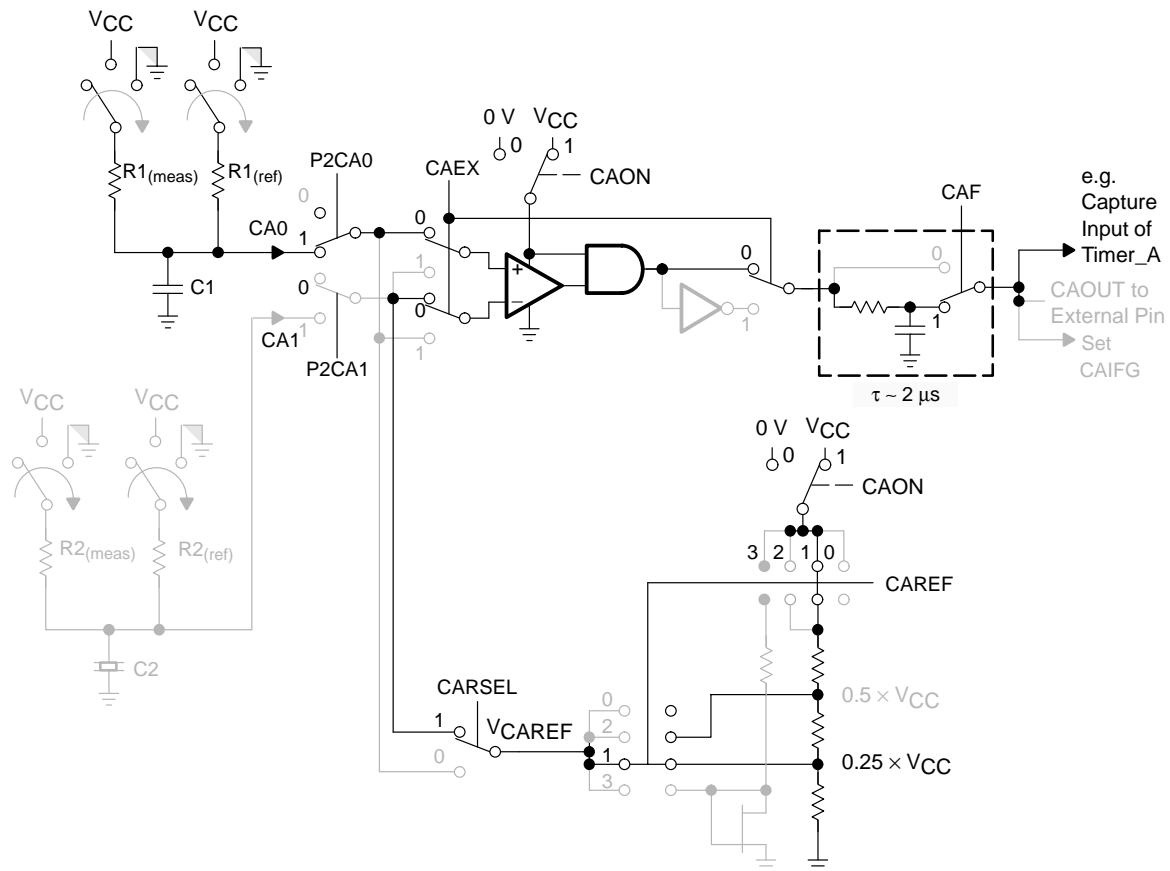
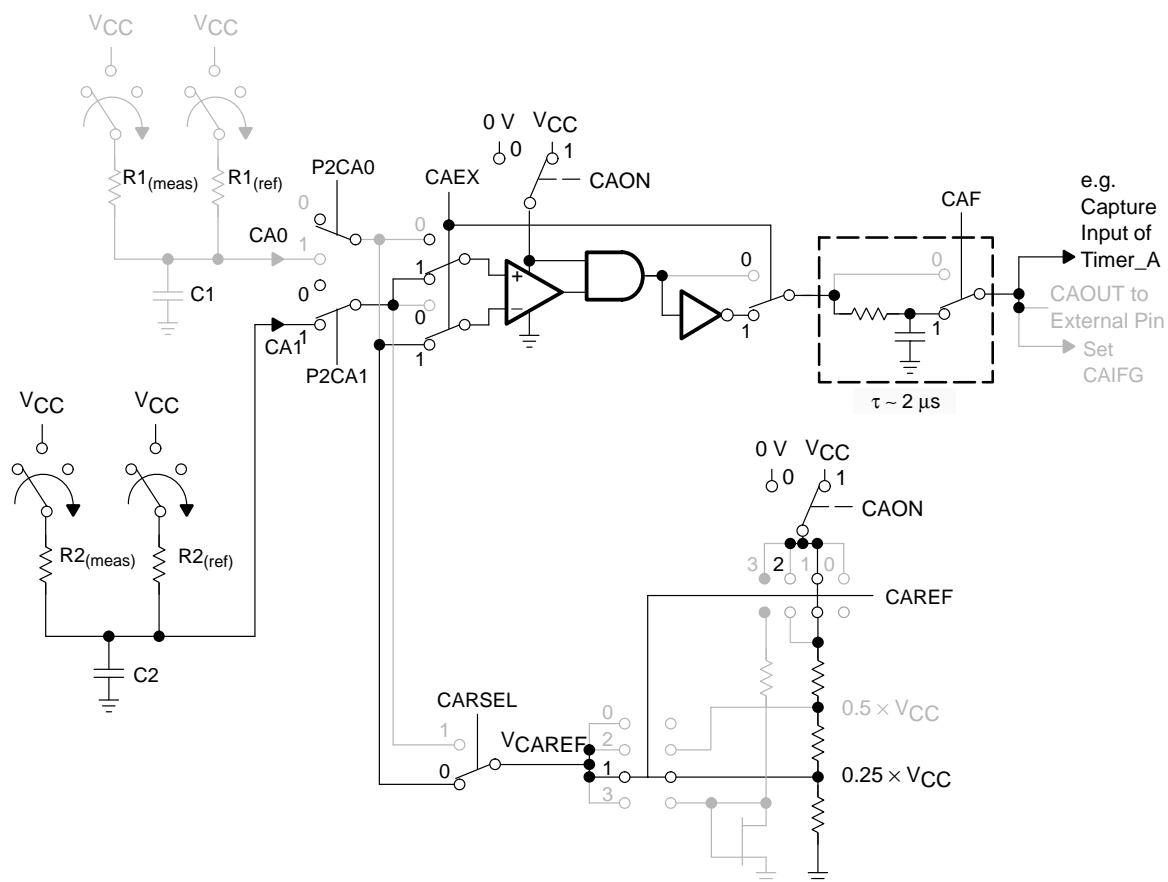


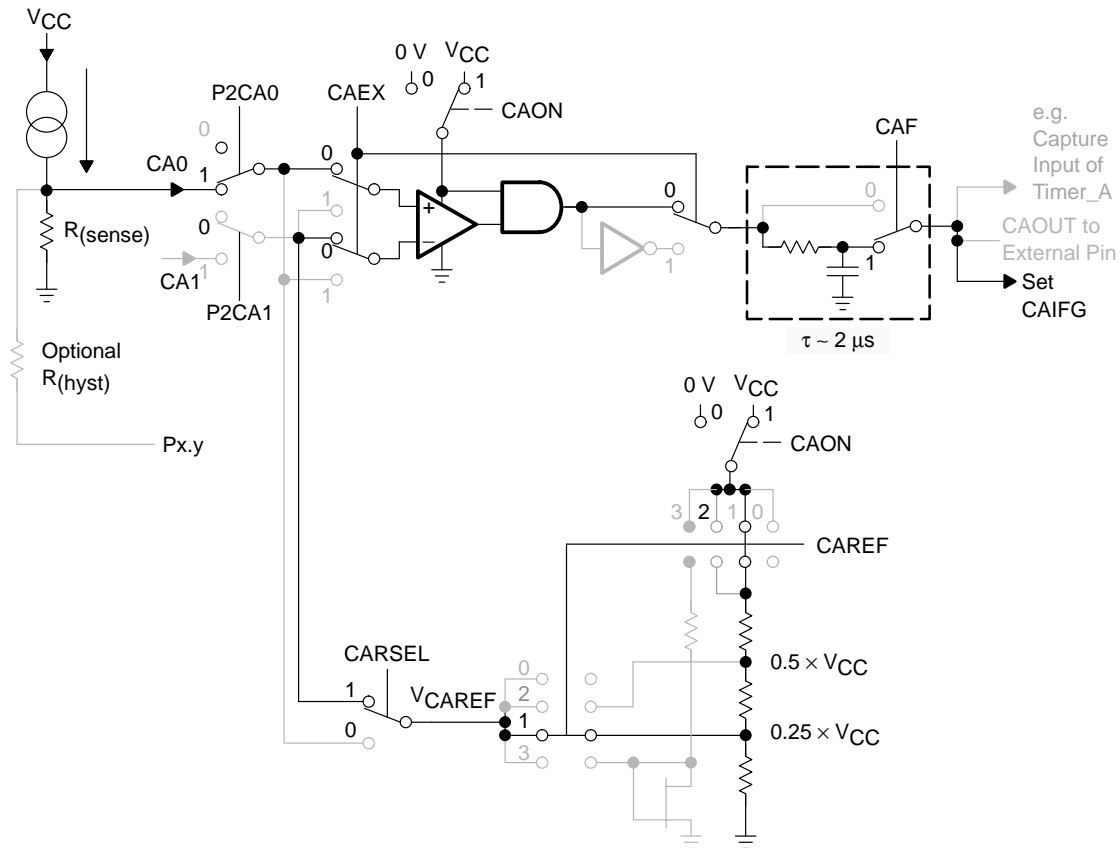
Figure 14–11 shows the active signal paths for the lower independent system. This example uses the $0.25 \times V_{CC}$ internal reference and shows the software selectable RC-filter as active.

Figure 14–11. Temperature Measurement Via Temperature Sensor R2_(meas)



In Figure 14–13 current is transferred to an input voltage by $I \times R_{(\text{sense})}$. The current limit is set for example to $0.25 \times V_{CC}$. The current is below the limit as long as CAOUT is reset.

Figure 14–13. Detect a Current Level Using an Internal Reference Level

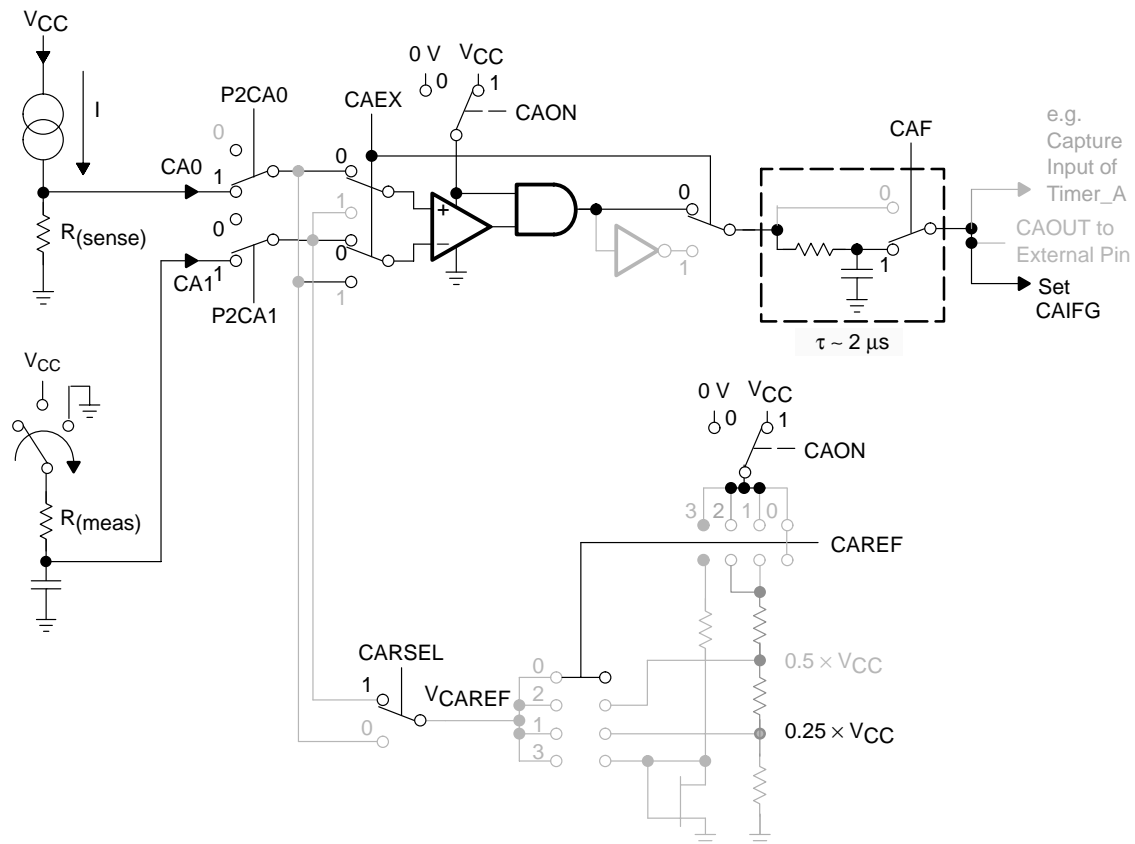


14.4.5 Comparator_A Used to Measure a Current or Voltage Level

In addition to detecting levels, the comparator can be used to measure currents or voltages. To measure a voltage, a known, stable voltage source is used to charge up an RC combination. The time required to charge the combination to a threshold value set by the voltage to be measured is then used to calculate the voltage level (see Figure 14–16). V_{CAREF} can be used as the known stable voltage source if V_{CC} in the user's system meets the required stability and accuracy.

A similar approach is used to measure a current. A known, stable voltage source is again used to charge an RC combination to a threshold value. In this case, the threshold voltage is created by passing the current to be measured through a known resistance (see Figure 14–14).

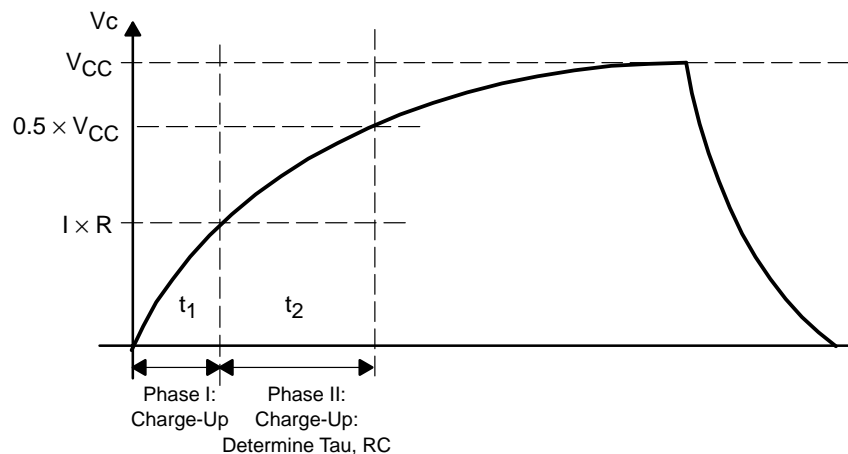
Figure 14–14. Measuring a Current Source



The equation for the current I is:

$$I = \frac{1}{R(\text{sense})} \times V_{CC} \times \left[1 - e^{\frac{t_1 \times \ln 0.5}{t_1 + t_2}} \right]$$

Figure 14–15. *Timing for Measuring a Current Source*

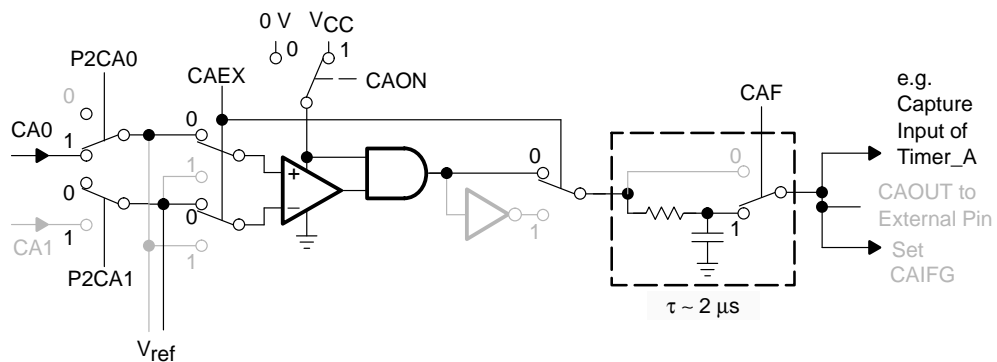


14.4.6 Measuring the Offset Voltage of Comparator_A

The input offset voltage of the comparator varies with each device and also with temperature, supply voltage, and input voltage. If the input voltage is stable (*reference voltage*), it will not influence the offset voltage significantly. To increase the precision of voltage measurements, the comparator offset voltage can be measured by the following steps. To simply compensate for the offset without measuring it, see section 14.4.7

First, execute a conversion with CAEX = 0. V_{CA0} is applied to the + terminal of the comparator, and V_{ref} is applied to the – terminal of the comparator as shown in Figure 14–18.

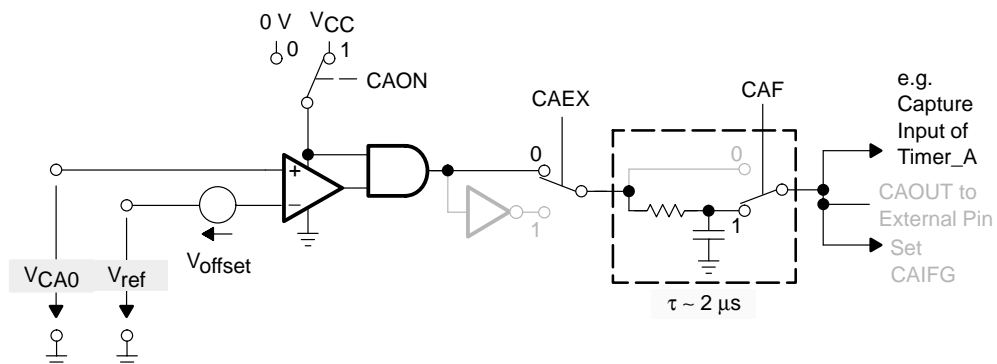
Figure 14–18. Measuring the Offset Voltage of the Comparator, CAEX = 0



The V_{offset} in this configuration is in series with V_{ref} as shown in Figure 14–19.

$$V_{CA0} = V_{ref} + V_{offset}$$

Figure 14–19. Offset Voltage of the Comparator, CAEX = 0



Next, execute a conversion with CAEX = 1. V_{CA0} is applied to the – terminal of the comparator, and V_{ref} is applied to the + terminal of the comparator as shown in Figure 14–20.

14.4.7 Compensating for the Offset Voltage of Comparator_A

Another way to improve the accuracy is to compensate for the effect of input offset voltage without actually measuring it.

When CAEX = 0, the V_{offset} is in series with V_{ref} :

$$V_{\text{CA0}} = V_{\text{ref}} + V_{\text{offset}}$$

When CAEX = 1, the V_{offset} is in series with V_{CA0} :

$$V_{\text{ref}} = V_{\text{CA0}} + V_{\text{offset}} \Rightarrow V_{\text{CA0}} = V_{\text{ref}} - V_{\text{offset}}$$

Adding the result of two conversions (one with each input configuration) and dividing by two will cancel the effect of the offset voltage.

$$\begin{array}{rcl} V_{\text{CA0}} & = & V_{\text{ref}} + V_{\text{offset}} \\ + \quad V_{\text{CA0}} & = & V_{\text{ref}} - V_{\text{offset}} \\ \hline 2 \times V_{\text{CA0}} & = & 2 \times V_{\text{ref}} \end{array} \Rightarrow \frac{N1 + N2}{2} = \text{Conversion without offset}$$

$N = \text{Timer count}$

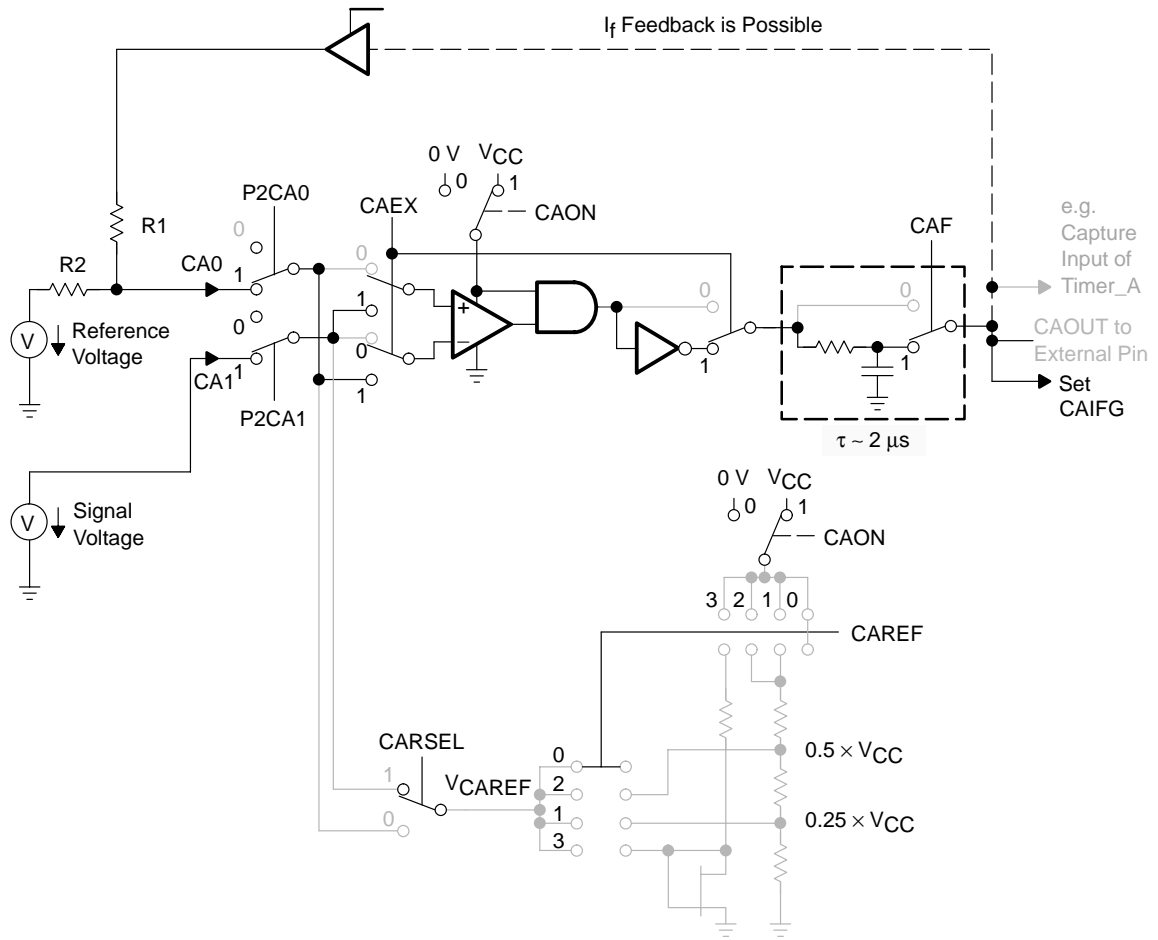
14.4.8 Adding Hysteresis to Comparator_A

When the voltage level applied to the + terminal is close to the voltage level at the – terminal, the output of the comparator may oscillate. This can cause the following two situations:

- ☐ The current consumption increases, since the signal path driven by the comparator output is constantly charged and discharged.
- ☐ The software receives constant requests for service either via interrupt service requests, or after successful polling of CAOUT or CAIFG.

Figure 14–22 shows how to add hysteresis to the comparator to prevent output oscillation.

Figure 14–22. Use CAOUT at an External Pin to Add Hysteresis to the Reference Level



Adding hysteresis can only be done if CAOUT is available externally. Refer to the device's data sheet to determine if CAOUT is available at an external pin.

The hysteresis can be calculated as follows:

$$V_{(hyst)} = \pm \frac{R2}{R1 + R2} \times V_{CC}$$

ADC12

The ADC12 12-bit analog-to-digital converter is a high-speed, extremely versatile analog-to-digital converter implemented on MSP430x13x and MSP430x14x devices. This chapter discusses the ADC12 and how to use it.

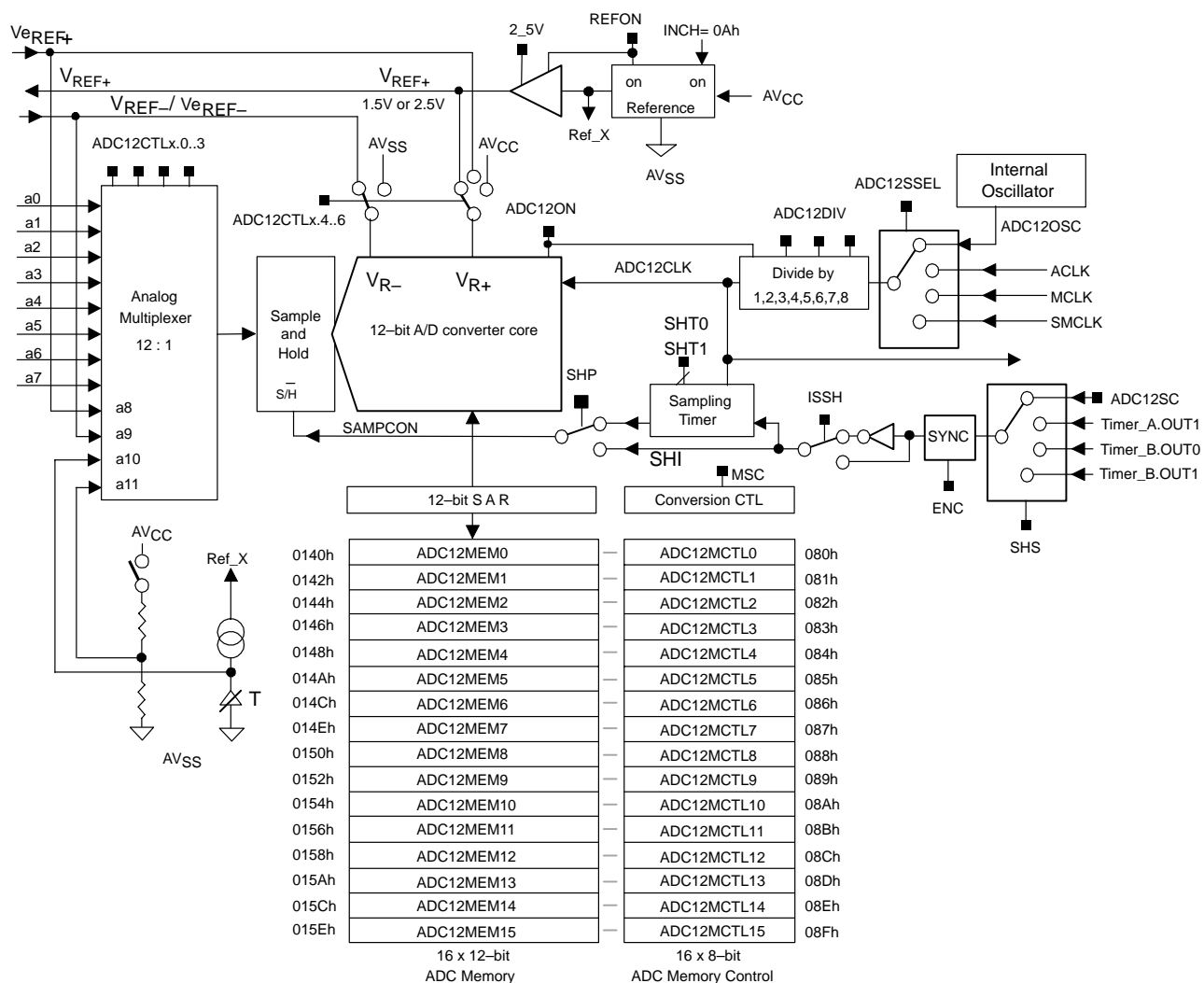
Topic	Page
15.1 Introduction	15-2
15.2 ADC Description and Operation	15-4
15.3 Analog Inputs and Multiplexer	15-6
15.4 Conversion Memory	15-8
15.5 Conversion Modes	15-9
15.6 Conversion Clock and Conversion Speed	15-21
15.7 Sampling	15-22
15.8 ADC12 Control Registers	15-30

15.1 Introduction

The ADC12 12-bit analog-to-digital converter (shown in Figure 15–1) has five main functional blocks that can be individually configured and optimized:

- ☐ ADC core with sample-and-hold
- ☐ Conversion memory and configuration
- ☐ Reference voltage and configuration
- ☐ Conversion clock source select and control
- ☐ Sample timing and conversion control

Figure 15–1. ADC12 Schematic



The ADC12 can convert one of eight external analog inputs, or one of four internal voltages. The four internal channels are used for temperature measurement (via on-chip temperature diode), and for measurement of V_{CC} (via $V_{CC}/2$) and the positive and negative references applied on V_{REF+} and V_{REF-}/V_{REF-} .

The ADC12 can use its internal reference, or it can use external reference(s) or a combination of internal and external reference-voltage levels.

The ADC12 has versatile sample-and-hold circuitry giving the user many options for control of the sample timing. The sample timing may be directly controlled by software (via a control bit), or any one of three internal or external signals (depending on device configuration – see *Sampling* section and check the data sheet for details). Typically, the internal timing signals come from other MSP430 timers such as Timer_A. Additionally, the sample timing may be programmed as a multiple of the ADC12 conversion clock.

As with sample timing, the user has several choices for the ADC12 conversion clock. The ADC12 conversion clock may be chosen from any available internal MSP430 clock, or may be selected from a dedicated oscillator contained in the ADC12 peripheral. Additionally, the chosen clock source may be divided by any factor from 1 to 8.

The ADC12 has four operating modes. It can be configured to perform a single conversion on a single channel, or multiple conversions on a single channel. The ADC12 can also be configured to perform conversions on a sequence-of-channels, running through the sequence once, or repeatedly. When performing conversions on a sequence-of-channels, the sequence is completely definable by the user. For example, a possible sequence-of-channels could be a1–a3–a1–a6–a2, etc. In addition, each channel may be individually configured for which reference(s) are to be used for the conversion.

Conversion results are stored in 16 conversion-memory registers. Each of these registers has its own configuration and control register allowing the user to select the input channel and the reference(s) used for the conversion result that is stored in that register.

Some key and unique features of the ADC12 are:

- ☐ 200-ksps maximum conversion rate
- ☐ 12-bit converter with ± 1 LSB differential nonlinearity (DNL) and ± 1 LSB integral nonlinearity (INL)
- ☐ Built-in sample-and-hold with selectable sampling periods controlled by software (via a control bit), a sampling timer, or by other MSP430 timers
- ☐ On-chip, dedicated RC oscillator – used as an option for sample-and-conversion timing
- ☐ Integrated diode for temperature measurement
- ☐ Eight individually configurable channels for conversion of external signals
- ☐ Four internal channels for conversion of temperature, AV_{CC} , and external references
- ☐ On-chip reference voltages – 1.5 V or 2.5 V, selected by software
- ☐ Selectable internal or external sources for both positive and negative reference-voltage levels (selectable for each channel independently)
- ☐ Selectable conversion clock source

- ❑ Versatile conversion modes including single-channel, repeated single-channel, sequence, and repeated sequence.
- ❑ Sixteen 12-bit registers for storage of conversion results. Each register is individually accessible by software and individually configurable to define the channel and references for its conversion result.
- ❑ ADC core and reference voltage powered down separately

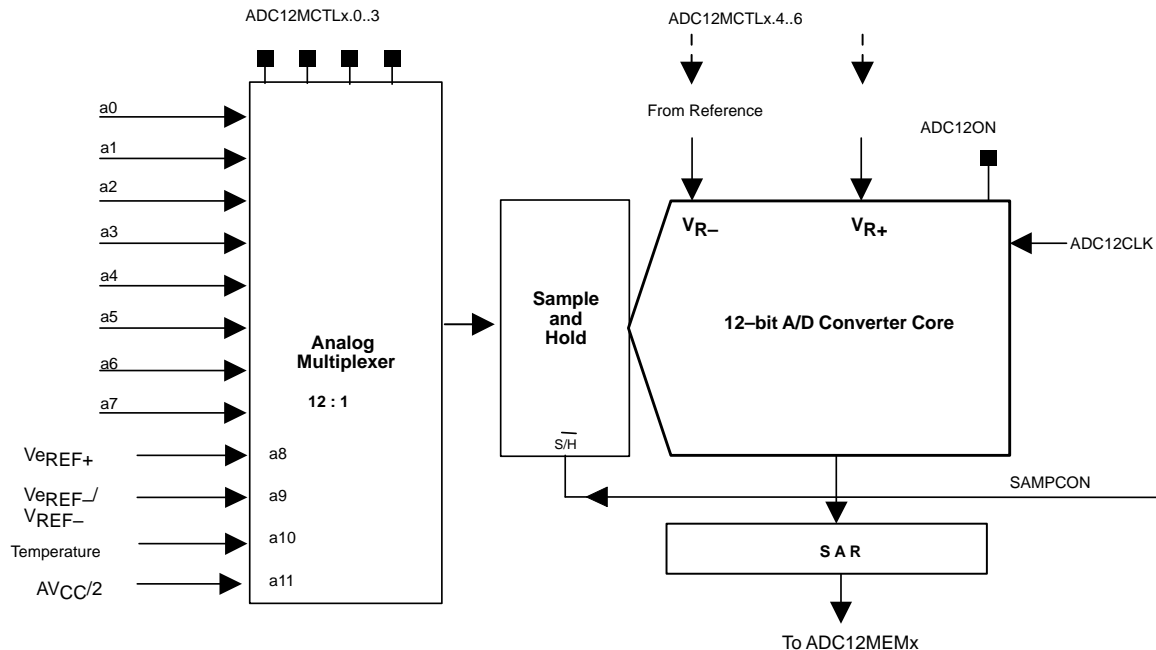
15.2 ADC12 Description and Operation

15.2.1 ADC Core

The ADC core (shown in Figure 15–2) converts the analog input to its 12-bit representation and stores the results in the conversion memory. The core uses two programmable/selectable voltage levels (V_{R+} and V_{R-}) to define the upper and lower limits of the conversion range, and to define the full-scale and zero-scale readings. The digital output is full scale when the input signal is equal to or higher than V_{R+} , and zero when the input signal is equal to or lower than V_{R-} . The input channel and the reference voltage levels (V_{R+} and V_{R-}) are defined in the conversion-control memory. The conversion formula is:

$$N_{ADC} = 4095 \times \frac{V_{in} - V_{R-}}{V_{R+} - V_{R-}}$$

Figure 15–2. ADC Core, Input Multiplexer, and Sample-and-Hold



It is important to note that the 3 LSBs of the conversion are resolved resistively. Therefore, when the 3 LSBs are being resolved during a conversion, approximately 200 μ A will be required from the reference. The user should keep this in mind when choosing and decoupling an external reference. Refer to the device data sheet for more details on ADC12 specifications.

Caution! ADC12 Turnon Time

When the ADC12 is turned on with the ADC12ON bit, the turnon time noted in the data sheet (t_{ADC12ON}) must be observed before a conversion is started. Otherwise, the results will be false.

15.2.2 Reference

The ADC12 A/D converter contains a built-in reference with two selectable reference-voltage levels (1.5 V and 2.5 V). Either of these reference voltages may be applied to V_{R+} of the A/D core and also may be available externally on pin $V_{\text{REF}+}$ (check device data sheet for availability of $V_{\text{REF}+}$ pin). Additionally, an external reference may be supplied for V_{R+} through pin $V_{\text{REF}+}$ (check data sheet for availability of $V_{\text{REF}+}$ pin).

The reference-voltage level for V_{R-} can be selected to be AV_{SS} or may be supplied externally through the $V_{\text{REF-}}/V_{\text{REF-}}$ pin (check device data sheet for $V_{\text{REF-}}/V_{\text{REF-}}$ pin). If the $V_{\text{REF-}}/V_{\text{REF-}}$ pin is not available, then V_{R-} is connected to AV_{SS} .

Configuration of the reference voltage(s) is done with the Sref bits (bits 4, 5, and 6) in the ADC12MCTLx registers. Up to six combinations of positive and negative reference voltages are supported as described in Table 15–1.

If only external references are used, the internal-reference generator can be turned off with the REFON bit to conserve power.

Table 15–1. Reference Voltage Configurations

Sref	Voltage at V_{R+}	Voltage at V_{R-}
0	AV_{CC}	AV_{SS}
1	$V_{\text{REF}+}$ (internal)	AV_{SS}
2,3	$V_{\text{REF}+}$ (external)	AV_{SS}
4	AV_{CC}	$V_{\text{REF-}}/V_{\text{REF-}}$ (internal or external)
5	$V_{\text{REF}+}$ (internal)	$V_{\text{REF-}}/V_{\text{REF-}}$ (internal or external)
6,7	$V_{\text{REF}+}$ (external)	$V_{\text{REF-}}/V_{\text{REF-}}$ (internal or external)

The voltage levels V_{R+} and V_{R-} establish the upper and lower limits of the analog inputs to produce a full-scale and zero-scale reading, respectively. The values of V_{R+} , V_{R-} , and the analog input should not exceed the positive supply or be lower than AV_{SS} , consistent with the absolute maximum ratings specified in the device data sheet. The digital output is full scale when the input signal is equal to or higher than V_{R+} , and zero when the input signal is equal to or lower than V_{R-} .

Warning! Reference Voltage Settling Time

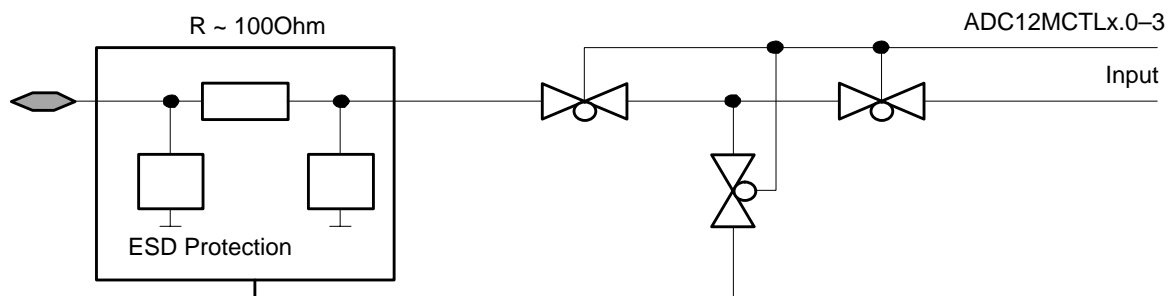
When the built-in reference is turned on with the VREFON bit, the settling timing noted in the data sheet must be observed before starting a conversion. Otherwise, the results will be false until the reference settles. Once all internal and external references have settled, no additional settling time is required when selecting or changing the conversion range for each channel.

15.3 Analog Inputs and Multiplexer

15.3.1 Analog Multiplexer

The eight external analog input channels and four internal signals are selected as the channel for conversion by the analog multiplexer. Channel selection is made for each conversion-memory register with the corresponding ADC12MCTLx register. The input multiplexer is a break-before-make type (shown in Figure 15–3) to reduce input-to-input noise injection resulting from channel switching. The input multiplexer is also a T-switch to minimize the coupling between channels. Channels that are not selected are isolated from the A/D and the intermediate node is connected to analog ground (AV_{SS}) so that the stray capacitance is grounded to help eliminate crosstalk.

Figure 15–3. Analog Multiplexer Channel



Crosstalk can exist because there is always some parasitic coupling capacitance across the switch and between switches. This can take several forms, such as coupling from the input to the output of an off switch, or coupling from an off analog input channel to the output of an adjacent on channel. For high-accuracy conversions, crosstalk interference should be minimized by shielding and other well-known printed-circuit board (PCB) layout techniques.

15.3.2 Input Signal Considerations

During sampling, the analog input signal is applied to the internal capacitor array of the A/D core. Therefore, the charge of the capacitor array is supplied directly by the source. The capacitor array has to be charged completely during the sampling period. Therefore the external source resistances, dynamic impedances, and capacitance of the capacitor array must be matched with the sampling period so the analog signal can settle to within 12-bit accuracy.

Additionally, source impedances also affect the accuracy of the converter. The source signal can drop at the input of the device due to leakage current or averaged dc-input currents (due to input switching currents). For a 12-bit converter, the error in LSBs due to leakage current is:

$$\text{Error(LSBs)} = 4.096 \times (\mu\text{A of leakage current}) \times (\text{k}\Omega \text{ of source resistance}) / (V_{R+} - V_{R-})$$

For example, a 50-nA leakage current with a 10-k Ω source resistance and a 1.5-V V_{REF} gives 1.4 LSBs of error.

These errors due to source impedance also apply to the output impedance of any external-voltage reference source applied to V_{REF+} . The output impedance must be low enough to enable the transients to settle within $0.2/\text{ADCLK}$ and generate leakage current induced errors of $\ll 1\text{LSB}$.

See the *Sampling* section for more details on sample timing and sampling considerations.

15.3.3 Using the Temperature Diode

To use the on-chip temperature diode, the user simply selects the analog input channel to 10. Any other configuration is done as if an external channel was selected, including reference selection, conversion-memory selection, etc.

Selecting the diode channel automatically turns on the on-chip reference generator (see Figure 15–1) as a voltage source for the temperature diode. However, it does not enable the V_{REF+} output or affect the reference selections for the conversion; so, reference selections are the same as with any other channel.

See the device data sheet for the temperature diode specifications.

15.4 Conversion Memory

A typical approach in single-channel converters uses an interrupt request to signal the end of the conversion and requires the conversion data to be moved to another location before another conversion can be performed. However, the ADC12 incorporates 16 conversion-memory registers (ADC12MEMx, see Figure 15–1) allowing the A/D converter to run multiple conversions without software intervention. This increases the system performance by reducing software overhead.

Additionally, each of the 16 conversion-memory registers has an associated control register (ADC12MCTLx) allowing total flexibility for each conversion. The memory-control registers allow the user to specify the channel and reference(s) used for each individual conversion. All other control bits that configure the other operating conditions of the ADC12, such as conversion modes, sample and conversion control signal, ADC clock, and sample timing, are located in control registers ADC12CTL0 and ADC12CTL1. Each conversion-memory register is individually accessible by software in the address range 0140h – 015Eh.

Using the conversion memory involves control bits in two places. First, the CStartAdd bits located in ADC12CTL1 point to the conversion-memory register to be used for single-channel conversions or the first conversion-memory register to be used for a sequence. The conversion-start address (CStartAdd) can be any value from 0h – 0Fh and points to ADC12MEM0 – ADC12MEM15, respectively. Second, the end-of-sequence (EOS) bit in each conversion-memory control register marks the end of an automatic-conversion sequence.

The EOS bit, when set, defines the end of a conversion sequence. When cleared, an internal conversion-memory pointer (not visible to software) is incremented after the current conversion is completed and the conversion result is stored in the conversion memory. The conversion-memory pointer is then prepared to use the next conversion-memory register to store the results of the next conversion. The internal conversion-memory pointer is incremented with each conversion until a set EOS bit is encountered. Note that defining the end of a sequence is independent from defining the mode of operation (see the *Conversion Modes* section), and that the EOS bits are ignored when using single-conversion mode or repeated conversion of a single-channel mode.

Conversion sequences always use sequential conversion-memory registers, can start with any conversion-memory register, and do not necessarily require any EOS bit to be set. For example, if the CONSEQ bits define the mode of operation to be conversion of a sequence (single or repeated), the CStartAdd bits point to conversion-memory register 14, and no EOS bits are set for any of the conversion-memory registers, then the conversion-memory registers will be used in sequential order (14, 15, 0, 1, 2, ... , 14, 15, 0, 1, 2, ... etc.) for each consecutive conversion, and the sequence of conversions will continue until stopped by software. This is useful, for example, in an application that must take advantage of the buffering supplied by the conversion memory but requires more than 16 repeated conversions of a single channel. In this instance the user should set up each memory-control register identically, specifying the same channel and reference(s) for each conversion, and all

EOS bits must be cleared. Once the converter is started, it will continue to run until stopped by software.

15.5 Conversion Modes

The ADC12 has four conversion modes:

- ☐ Single-channel, single-conversion
- ☐ Single-channel, repeated-conversions
- ☐ Sequence-of-channels, single-sequence
- ☐ Sequence-of-channels, repeated-sequence

Each mode is summarized in Table 15–2 and described in detail in the following sections.

Table 15–2. Conversion-Modes Summary

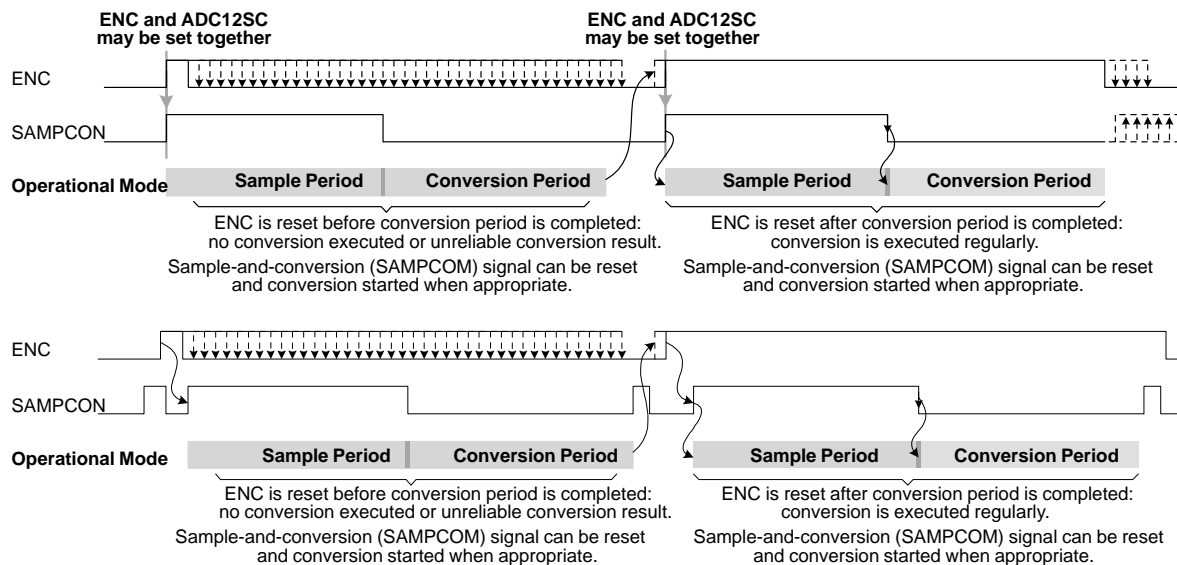
CONVERSION MODE	CONSEQ	OPERATION
Single channel	00	<p>Single conversion from a selected channel</p> <p>X = CStartAdd, points to the conversion start address</p> <p>Result is in ADC12MEMx; interrupt flag is ADC12IFG.x</p> <p>Channel (INCH) and reference voltage (Sref) are selected in ADC12MCTLx</p>
Sequence-of-channels	01	<p>A sequence-of-channels is converted</p> <p>x = CStartAdd; points to the conversion start address</p> <p>The last channel in a sequence (y) is marked with EOS=1 (ADC12MCTLx.7), all other EOS bits in ADC12MCTLx, ADC12MCTL(x+1),..., ADC12MCTL(y–1) are reset.</p> <p>Result is in ADC12MEMx, ADC12MEM(x+1),..., ADC12MEMy</p> <p>Interrupt flags are ADC12IFG.x, ADC12IFG.(x+1),..., ADC12IFG.y</p> <p>More than one sequence is possible</p> <p>Channel (INCH) and reference voltage (Sref) are selected in ADC12MCTLx</p>
Repeat single channel	10	<p>The conversion of one single channel is permanently repeated until repeat is off or ENC is reset</p> <p>x = CStartAdd; points to the conversion start address</p> <p>Result is in ADC12MEMx; interrupt flag is ADC12IFG.x</p> <p>Channel (INCH) and reference voltage (Sref) are selected in ADC12MCTLx</p>
Repeat sequence-of-channels	11	<p>The conversion of a sequence-of-channels is permanently repeated until repeat is off or ENC is reset</p> <p>x = CStartAdd; points to the conversion start address</p> <p>The last channel in a sequence (y) is marked with EOS=1 (ADC12MCTL.7), all other EOS bits in ADC12MCTLx, ADC12MCTL(x+1),..., ADC12MCTL(y–1) are reset</p> <p>Result is in ADC12MEMx, ADC12MEMx+1,...; interrupt flag is ADC12IFG.x, ADC12IFG.x+1,....</p> <p>More than one sequence is possible</p> <p>Channel (INCH) and reference voltage (Sref) are selected in ADC12MCTLx</p>

15.5.1 Single-Channel, Single-Conversion Mode

The single-channel mode converts a single channel once. The channel to be converted is selected by the INCH bits in the conversion-memory control register (ADC12MCTLx) associated with the conversion-memory register pointed to by the CStartAdd bits (located in ADC12CTL1x. The conversion range (V_{R+} , V_{R-}) is configured in the same conversion-memory control register by the Sref bits. The conversion result is stored in conversion-memory register ADC12MEMx pointed to by the CStartAdd bits.

The conversion may be stopped immediately by resetting the enable-conversion bit (ENC, located in ADC12CTL0), but the conversion results will be unreliable, or the conversion may not be performed. This is illustrated in Figure 15–4.

Figure 15–4. Stopping Conversion With ENC Bit



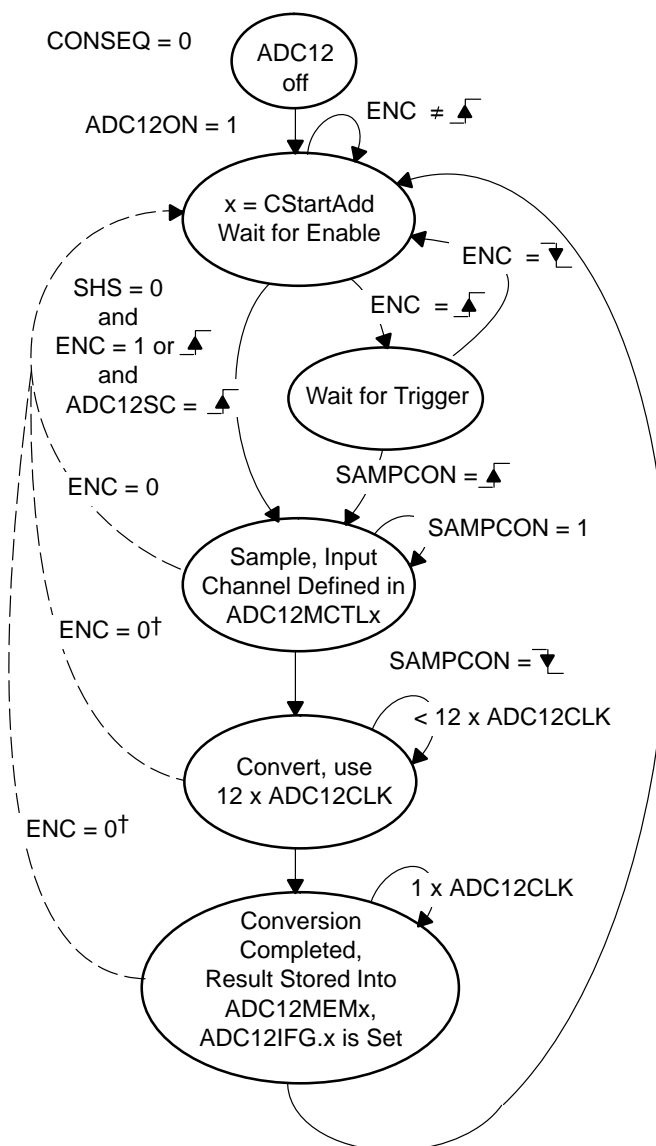
When the conversion is complete and the results are written to the selected conversion-memory register, the corresponding interrupt flag ADC12IFG.x is set, and, if the appropriate interrupt enables are set, an interrupt request is generated (see the *ADC12 Interrupt Vector Register ADC12IV* section).

When software is using the ADC12SC bit to initiate conversion, successive conversions can be initiated by simply setting the ADC12SC bit (the ENC bit can remain set or may be set at the same time as ADC12SC). However, when any other trigger source is being used to start conversions, the ENC bit must be toggled between each conversion. All additional incoming sample-input signals will be ignored until the ENC bit is reset and set again.

The conversion mode may be changed after the conversion begins but before it has completed, and the new mode will take effect after the current conversion has completed. See also the *Switching between Conversion Modes* section.

An illustration of single-channel, single-conversion mode is shown in Figure 15–5.

Figure 15–5. Single-Channel, Single-Conversion Mode



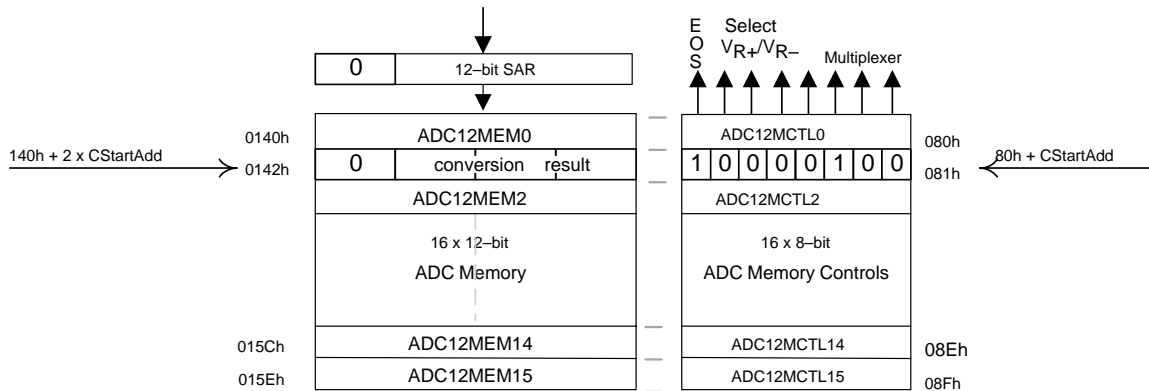
†Conversion result is unpredictable

An example of the conversion-memory setup is shown in Figure 15–6 for single-channel conversion. The example uses the following conditions:

- ☐ Single conversion of channel a4
- ☐ Internal reference voltage with V_{R+} at AV_{CC} and with V_{R-} at AV_{SS}
- ☐ Conversion result to be stored in conversion-memory register ADC12MEM1

This means that control bit CStartAdd in ADC12CTL0 is assigned a value of 1. The channel (INCH=4) and reference voltages (Sref=0) are selected via ADC12MCTL1.

Figure 15–6. Example Conversion-Memory Setup



15.5.2 Sequence-of-Channels Mode

The sequence-of-channels mode converts a sequence of channels. The CStartAdd bits in ADC12CTL1 point to the first conversion-memory register used for the sequence. The results of the remaining conversions in the sequence are stored in sequential conversion-memory registers. For example, if a sequence is three-conversions long and the CStartAdd bits point to conversion-memory register 4, then when the sequence is started, the first conversion result is stored in ADC12MEM4, the second result is stored in ADC12MEM5, and the third result is stored in ADC12MEM6.

When performing sequences of conversions, the channels and references for each conversion are individually configurable via the conversion-memory control register associated with the each conversion-memory register used in the sequence. For example, if a sequence of conversions uses ADC12MEM3 – ADC12MEM6, then the channel and reference(s) for each conversion are individually configurable with ADC12MCTL3 – ADC12MCTL6.

The end of a sequence is marked by the end-of-sequence bit (EOS) in the last conversion-memory control register used in the sequence. Each conversion-memory control register contains an EOS bit. All EOS bits of the conversion-memory control registers used in a sequence must be reset, except for the last one in the sequence. For example, if a sequence starts with ADC12MEM7 and ends with ADC12MEM12, then the EOS bit of registers ADC12MCTL7 – ADC12MCTL11 must be reset and the EOS bit of ADC12MCTL12 must be set. Conversions stop when the end of a sequence is reached.

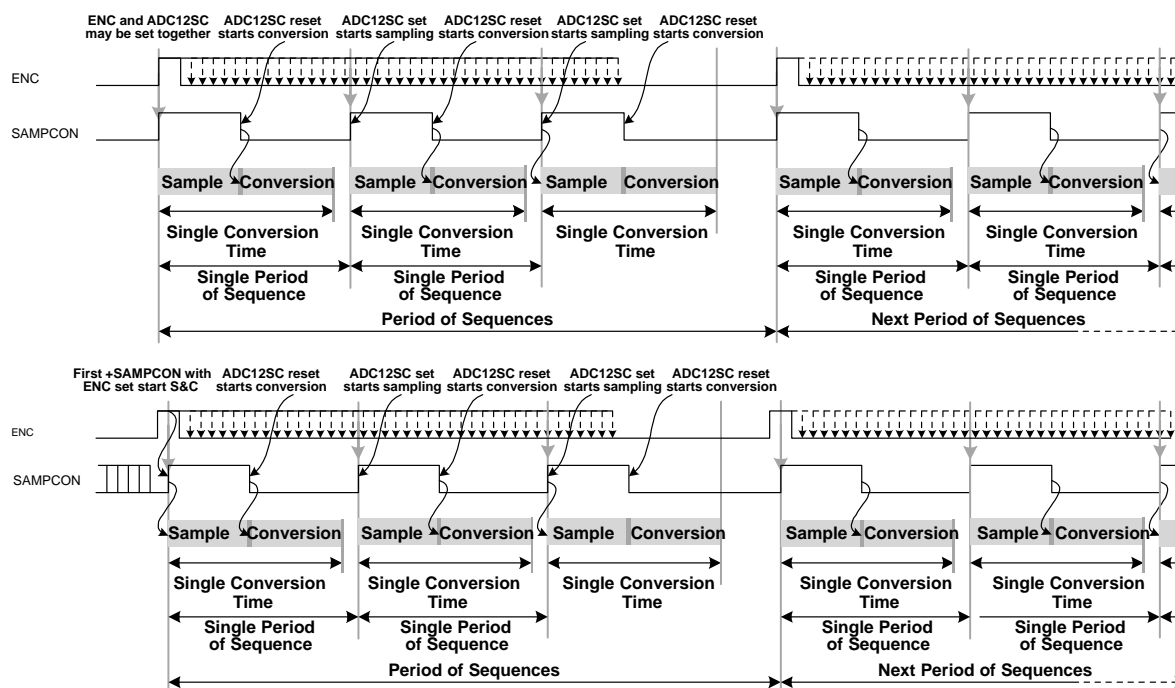
When software is using the ADC12SC bit to initiate a sequence, successive sequences can be initiated by simply setting the ADC12SC bit (the ENC bit can remain set or may be set at the same time as ADC12SC). However, when any other trigger source is being used to start a sequence, the ENC bit must be toggled between each sequence. All additional incoming sample-input signals will be ignored until the ENC bit is reset and set again.

The conversion mode may be changed after the conversion begins but before it has completed, and the new mode will take effect after the current sequence has completed. See also the *Switching between Conversion Modes* section.

If the conversion mode is changed after the sequence begins but before it has completed and the ENC bit is left high, the sequence completes normally, and the new mode takes effect after the sequence completes, unless the new mode is *single-channel single-conversion*. If the new mode is *single-channel single-conversion*, the current sequence-of-channels stops proceeding when no sample-and-conversion is active, or after an active sample-and-conversion is completed. The original sequence may not be completed, but all completed conversion results are valid. See also the *Switching Between Conversion Modes* section.

If the conversion mode is changed after the sequence begins, but before it has completed, and the ENC bit is toggled, then the original sequence completes normally and the new mode takes effect and is started after the original sequence completes – unless the new mode is *single-channel single-conversion*. If the new mode is *single-channel single-conversion*, then the original sequence stops when no sample-and-conversion is active, or after an active sample-and-conversion is completed, or when the ENC bit is reset, whichever comes first. Then, the single conversion begins when the ENC bit is set again. See also the *Switching Between Conversion Modes* section.

Figure 15–7. ENC Does Not Effect Active Sequence



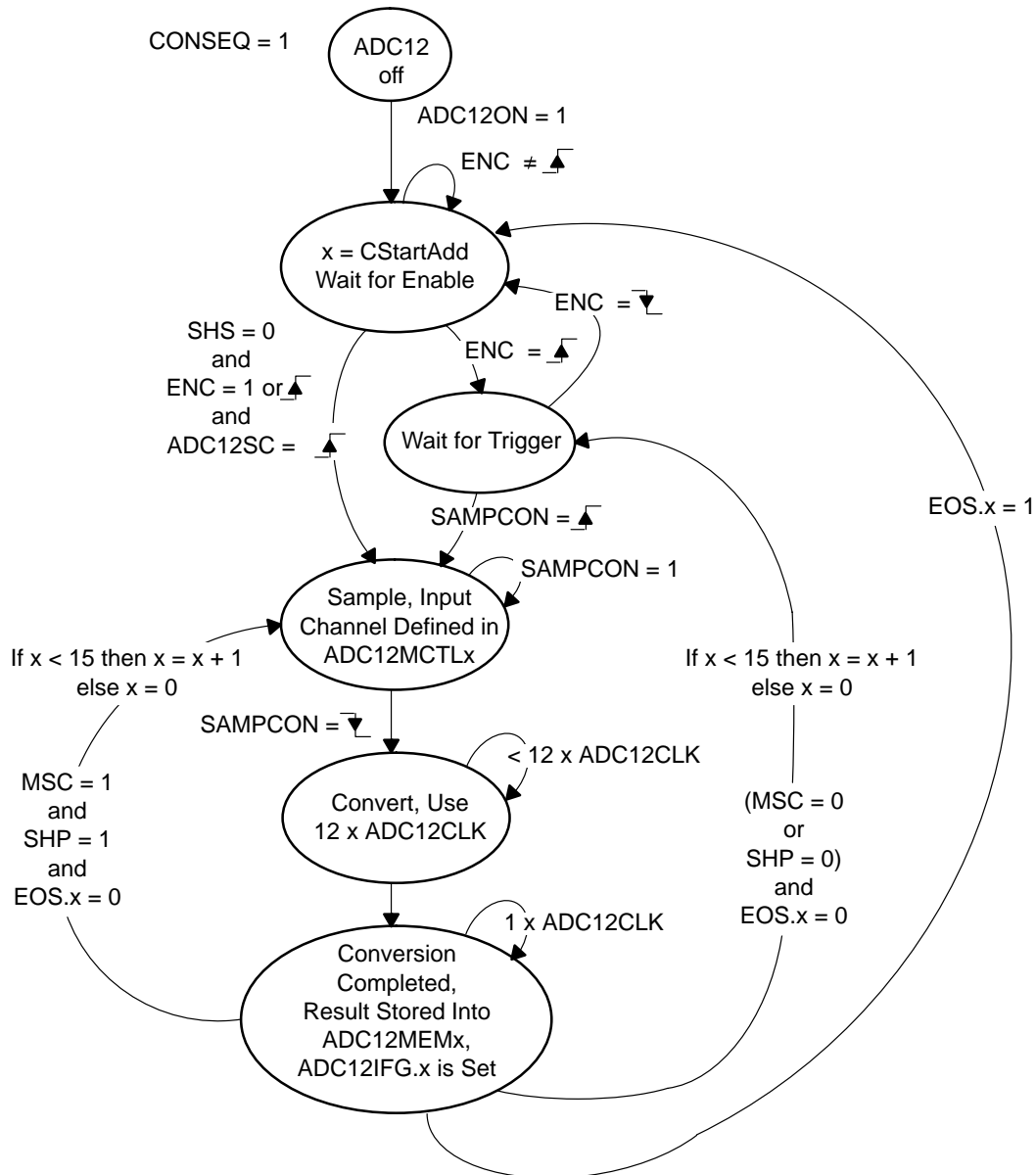
An active sequence may be stopped immediately by selecting *single-channel single-conversion* mode (reset CONSEQ.1 bit) and then resetting the enable-conversion bit ENC. The data in memory register ADC12MEMx is unpredictable and the interrupt flag ADC12IFG.x may or may not be set. This is generally not recommended but may be used as an emergency exit.

Each time a conversion is completed, the results are loaded into the appropriate ADC12MEMx register and the corresponding interrupt flag

ADC12IFG.x is set to indicate completion of the conversion. Additionally, If the appropriate interrupt-enable flags are set, an interrupt request is generated (see the *ADC12 Interrupt Vector Register ADC12IV* section).

An illustration of sequence of channels mode is shown in Figure 15–8.

Figure 15–8. Sequence-of-Channels Mode



x= pointer to conversion memory register (ADC12MEM0..ADC12MEM15) and conversion memory control register (ADC12MCTL0..ADC12MCTL15)

An example showing a sequence of conversions is shown and flow-charted in Figures 15–9 and 15–10. The example shows the sequence a0, a5, a7, a0, a0, a3, and uses ADC12MEM6 for storing the first conversion results. The setup of each conversion in the sequence is:

- ☐ a0, using reference voltages $V_{R+} = AV_{CC}$ and $V_{R-} = AV_{SS}$
- ☐ a5, using reference voltages V_{R+} at V_{REF+} and $V_{R-} = AV_{SS}$
- ☐ a7, using reference voltages V_{R+} at V_{REF+} and $V_{R-} = V_{REF-}/V_{REF-}$
- ☐ a0, using reference voltages $V_{R+} = AV_{CC}$ and $V_{R-} = AV_{SS}$
- ☐ a0, using reference voltages $V_{R+} = AV_{CC}$ and $V_{R-} = AV_{SS}$
- ☐ a3, using reference voltages $V_{R+} = AV_{CC}$ and $V_{R-} = V_{REF-}/V_{REF-}$

Figure 15–9. Sequence-of-Channels Mode Flow

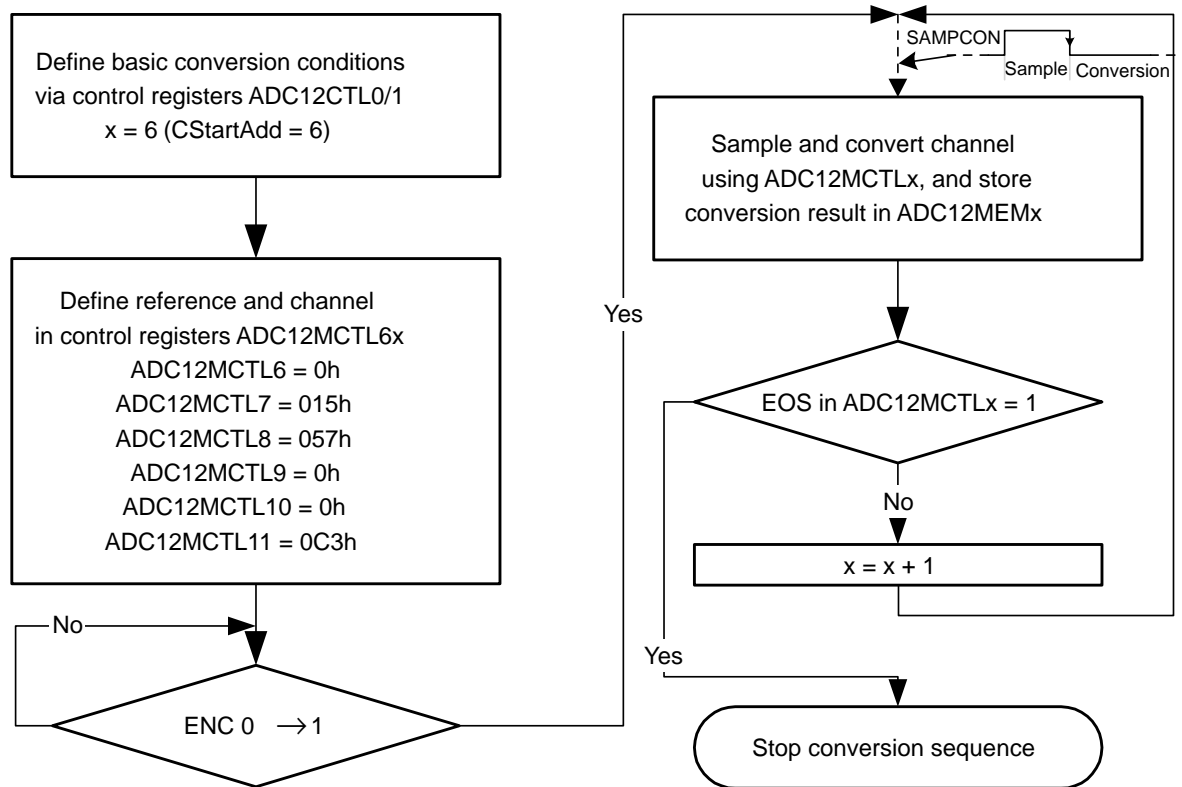
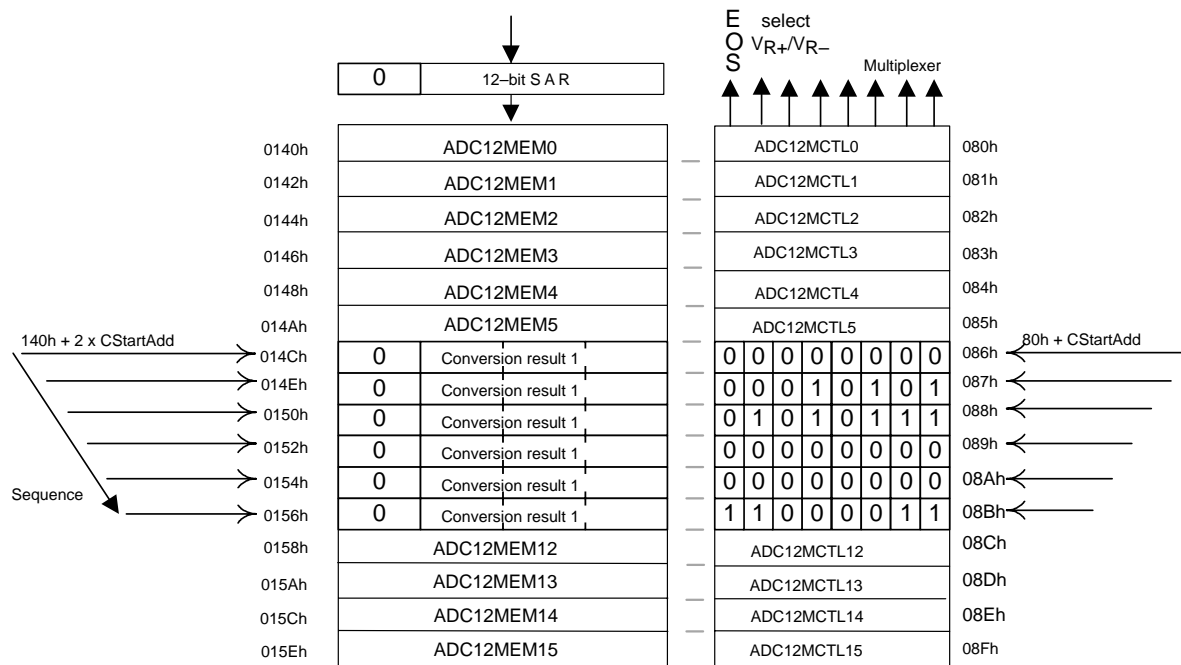


Figure 15–10. Sequence-of-Channels Mode Example



15.5.3 Repeat-Single-Channel Mode

The repeat-single-channel mode is identical to the single-channel mode, except that conversions are repeated on the chosen channel until stopped by software. Each time a conversion is completed, the results are loaded into the appropriate ADC12MEMx register and the corresponding interrupt flag ADC12IFG.x is set to indicate completion of the conversion. Additionally, if the appropriate interrupt-enable flags are set, an interrupt request is generated (see the *ADC12 Interrupt Vector Register ADC12IV* section).

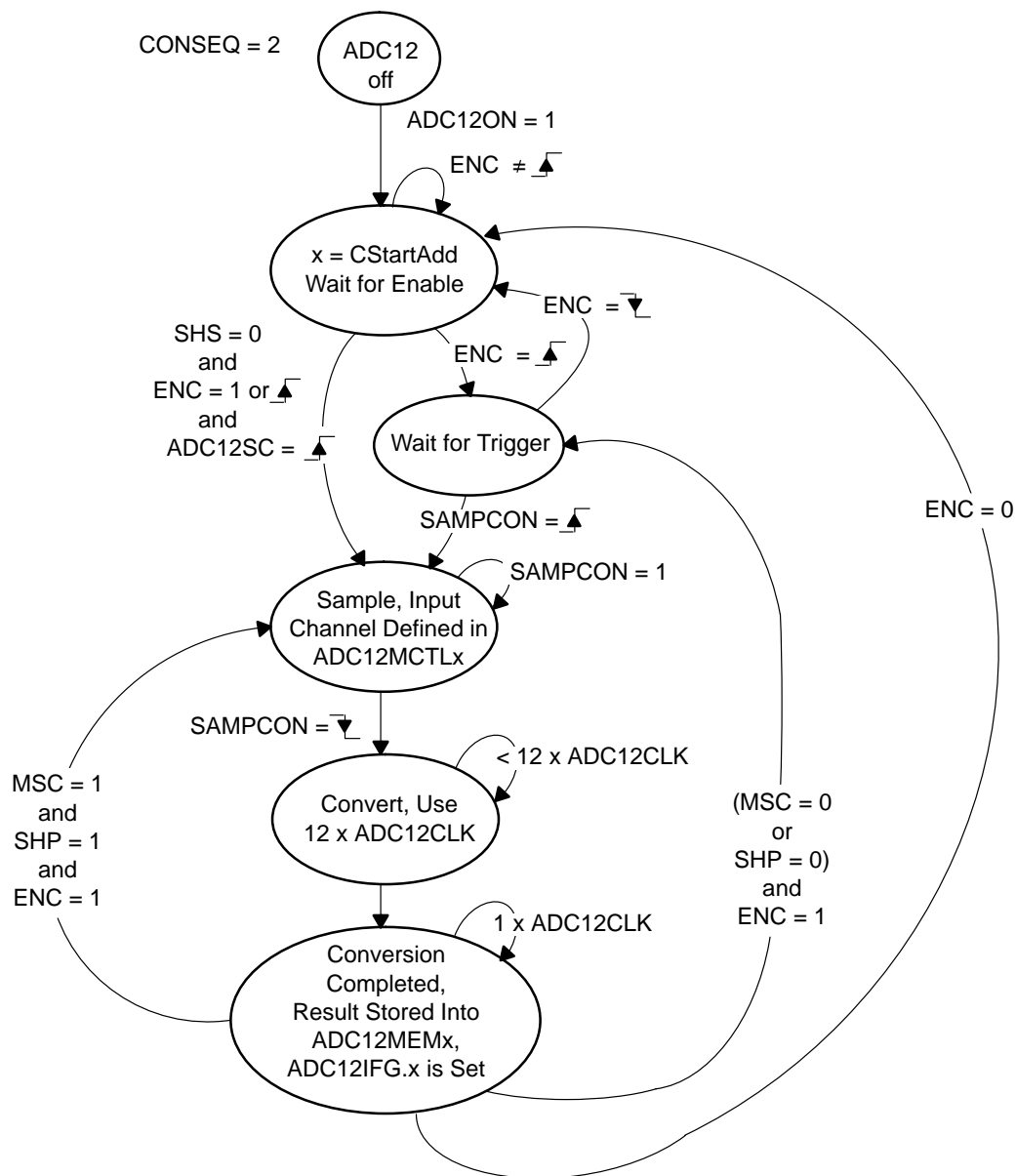
The conversion mode may be changed without first stopping the conversions. When this is done, the new mode takes effect after the current conversion completes (see also the *Switching Between Conversion Modes* section).

There are three ways to stop repeated conversions on a single channel:

- 1) Select single-channel mode instead of repeat-single-channel mode with the CONSEQ bits. When this is done, the current conversion is completed normally, the result is loaded into ADC12MEMx, and the associated interrupt flag ADC12IFG.x is set.
- 2) Reset the ENC bit (ADC12CTL0.1) to stop conversions after the current conversion is completed. Again, the result is loaded into ADC12MEMx and the associated interrupt flag ADC12IFG.x is set.
- 3) Select single-channel mode instead of repeat-single-channel mode and then reset the enable-conversion bit (ENC). When this is done, the current conversion stops immediately. However, the data in memory register ADC12MEMx is unpredictable and the associated interrupt flag ADC12IFG.x may or may not be set. This method is generally not recommended.

An illustration of repeat-single-channel mode is shown in Figure 15–11.

Figure 15–11. Repeat-Single-Channel Mode



15.5.4 Repeat-Sequence-of-Channels Mode

The repeat-sequence-of-channel mode is identical to the sequence-of-channel mode, except the sequence is repeated continuously until stopped by software. Each time a conversion is completed, the results are loaded into the appropriate ADC12MEMx register and the corresponding interrupt flag ADC12IFG.x is set to indicate completion of the conversion. Additionally, If the appropriate interrupt-enable flags are set, an interrupt request is generated (see the *ADC12 Interrupt Vector Register ADC12IV* section).

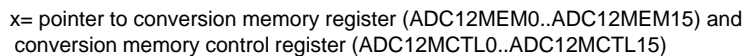
The conversion mode may be changed without first stopping the conversions. When this is done, the new mode takes effect after the current sequence

completes, except when the new mode is repeat-single-channel. In this case, the sequence does not complete and the new mode takes effect immediately (see also the *Switching Between Conversion Modes* section).

There are four ways to stop repeat-sequence-of-channels conversions:

- 1) Select sequence-of-channels mode (CONSEQ = 1) instead of repeated sequence-of-channels mode (CONSEQ = 3). When this is done, the current sequence of conversions is completed normally and no further conversions take place. The conversion results are loaded into registers ADC12MEMx and the corresponding interrupt flags ADC12IFG.x are set.
- 2) Reset ENC bit (ADC12CTL0.1). This stops the conversions after the current sequence is completed. The conversion results of all conversions in the sequence are stored in their appropriate ADC12MEMx register and the associated interrupt flags ADC12IFG.x are set.
- 3) Select repeat-single-channel mode (CONSEQ = 2) instead of the repeat-sequence-of-channel mode, and then select single-channel mode. The current conversion is completed normally. The current conversion result is loaded into register ADC12MEMx and the associated interrupt flags ADC12IFG.x are set. The data for x is somewhere between CStartAdd and the last register of the sequence.
- 4) Select single-channel mode (CONSEQ = 0) and reset enable-conversion bit ENC. The current conversion is stopped immediately. The data in memory register ADC12MEMx is unpredictable and the interrupt flag ADC12IFG.x may or may not be set. This method is generally not recommended.

Figure 15–12. Repeat-Sequence-of-Channels Mode



Changing the mode of operation of the ADC12 while the converter is not actively running is done simply by selecting the new mode of operation with the CONSEQ bits. However, if the conversion mode is changed while the converter is actively running, intermediate and undesirable modes can be accidentally selected if both CONSEQ bits are changed in a single instruction.

Therefore, the following mode changes should be avoided while the converter is running: 0 → 3, 1 → 2, 2 → 1, and 3 → 0.

The intermediate modes are caused by the asynchronous clocks for the CPU and the ADC12. These intermediate modes can be avoided simply by changing only one CONSEQ bit per instruction. For example, to change from mode 0 to mode 3 while the converter is actively running, the following instructions could be used:

```
BIS #CONSEQ_0,&ADC12CTL1    ; Example: 0 → 3, first
.....                      ; step is 0 → 1
BIS #CONSEQ_1,&ADC12CTL1 ... ; second step is 1 → 3
```

Acceptable sequence modifications are: 0 → 1, 0 → 2, 1 → 0, 1 → 3, 2 → 0, 2 → 3, 3 → 1, and 3 → 2.

15.5.6 Power Down

The ADC12 incorporates two bits (ADC12ON and REFON) for power savings. ADC12ON turns on the A/D core and REFON turns on the reference generator. Each bit is individually controllable by software. The ADC12 is turned off completely if both bits are reset. The ADC12 registers are not affected by either of these bits and can be accessed and modified at any time (see the *ADC12 Control Registers* section). Note, however, that ADC12ON and REFON may only be modified if ENC=0.

Additionally, other ADC12 functions are automatically switched on and off as needed—if possible—to realize additional power savings – even while the ADC12 is running.

Caution! Powering Down the Converter

Do not power-down the converter or the reference generator while the converter is active. Conversion results will be false.

It is possible to disable the reference generator and the ADC12 by resetting bits ADC12ON and REFON before an active conversion or sequence of conversions has completed. For example, if the conversion mode is set to sequence-of-channels, and software resets the ENC bit immediately after the sequence begins, the ADC12ON and REFON bits can then be reset before the sequence completes. If this occurs, the ADC12 will be powered down immediately and the conversion results will be false.

Caution! Turning the ADC12 and Voltage Reference On or Off

The following must be considered when .

ADC12 turnon time: when the ADC12 is turned on with the ADC12ON bit, the turnon time noted in the data sheet (t_{ADC12ON}) must be observed before a conversion is started. Otherwise, the results will be false.

Reference-voltage settling Time: When the built-in reference is turned on with the VREFON bit, the settling timing noted in the data sheet must be observed before a conversion is started. Otherwise, the results will be false until the reference settles. Once all internal and external references have settled, no additional settling time is required when selecting or changing the conversion range for each channel.

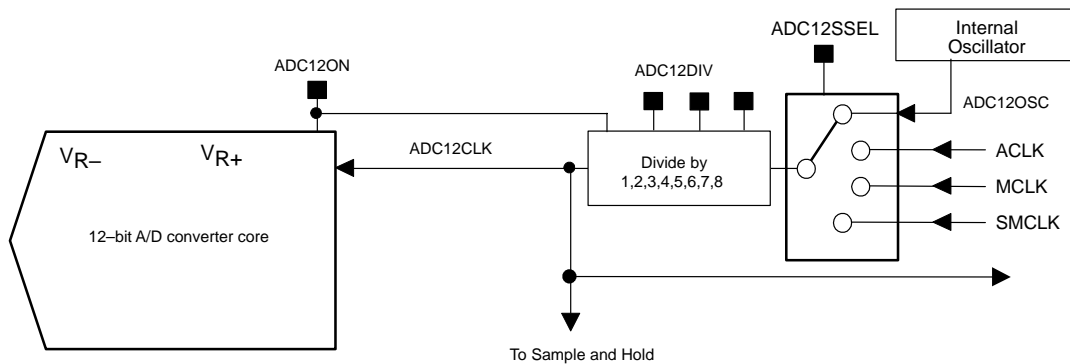
Settling time of external signals: external signals must be settled before performing the first conversion after turning on the ADC12. Otherwise, the conversion results will be false.

15.6 Conversion Clock and Conversion Speed

The conversion clock for the ADC12 (ADC12CLK shown in Figure 15–13) can be selected from several sources and can be divided by any factor from 1 – 8. The ADC12CLK is used for the A/D conversion and to generate the sampling period [if pulse-sampling mode is selected ($\text{SHP}=1$)]. Possible clock sources are the internal oscillator (ADC12OSC), ACLK, MCLK, and SMCLK.

The internal oscillator generates the ADC12OSC signal and is in the 5-MHz range (see device data sheet for specifications). The internal-oscillator frequency will vary with individual devices, supply voltage, and temperature. A stable clock source should be used for the conversion clock when accurate conversion timing is required.

Figure 15–13. The Conversion Clock ADC12CLK



The conversion starts with the falling edge of the sample signal SAMPCON (see the *Sampling* section and Figure 15–14). Thirteen conversion clocks (ADC12CLK) are required to complete a conversion. The conversion time is:

$$t_{\text{conversion}} = 13 \times (\text{ADC12DIV} / f_{\text{ADC12CLK}})$$

Where ADC12DIV is any integer from 1 to 8. The ADC12CLK frequency must not exceed the maximum and minimum frequencies specified in the data sheet. Either violation may result in inaccurate conversion results.

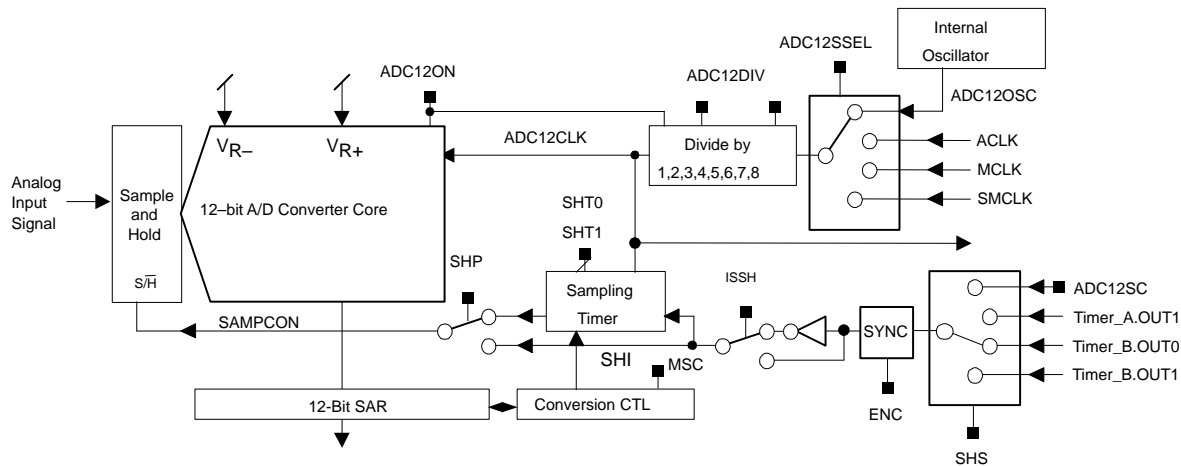
Note: Availability of ADC12CLK During Conversion

Users must ensure that the clock chosen for ADC12CLK remains active until the ADC12 can complete its operation. If the clock is removed while the ADC12 is active, the operation can not be completed and the end-of-conversion feedback to the program is not possible.

15.7 Sampling

The ADC12 sample-and-hold (S/H) circuitry (shown in Figure 15–14) is flexible and configurable. The configuration is done by software via control bits in the ADC12CTL0 and ADC12CTL1 registers. Configuration and operation of the S/H circuitry is discussed in this section.

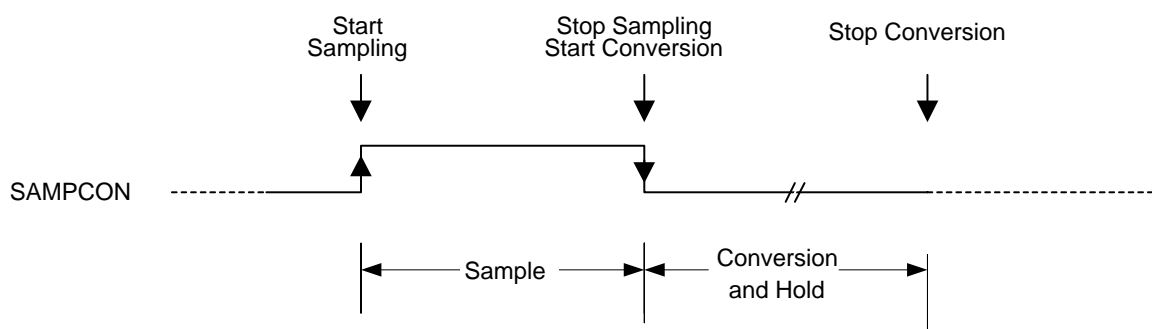
Figure 15–14. The Sample-and-Hold Function



15.7.1 Sampling Operation

The sample-and-hold circuitry samples the analog signal when the sampling signal SAMPCON (see Figure 15–14) is high. Conversion starts immediately with the falling edge of SAMPCON. The sample-and-hold holds the signal value when SAMPCON is low. Conversion takes 13 ADC12CLK cycles (see Figure 15–15).

Figure 15–15. Sample and Conversion, Basic Signal Timing



The analog input signal must be valid and steady during the sampling period in order to obtain an accurate conversion. It is also desirable not to have any digital activity on any adjacent channels during the whole conversion period to ensure that errors due to supply glitching, ground bounce, or crosstalk do not corrupt the conversion results.

In addition, gains and losses in internal charge limit the hold time. The user should ensure that the data sheet limits are not violated. Otherwise, the sampled analog voltage may increase or decrease, resulting in false conversion values.

15.7.2 Sample Signal Input Selection

The SAMPCON signal, which controls sample timing and the start of a conversion, may be sourced by one of several signals. SAMPCON may be sourced directly from one of the signals available at the input selection switch (see Figure 15–16), further called sample-signal input, or from the integrated sampling timer. When the sampling timer is used to source SAMPCON, the sample-signal input is used to trigger the sampling timer.

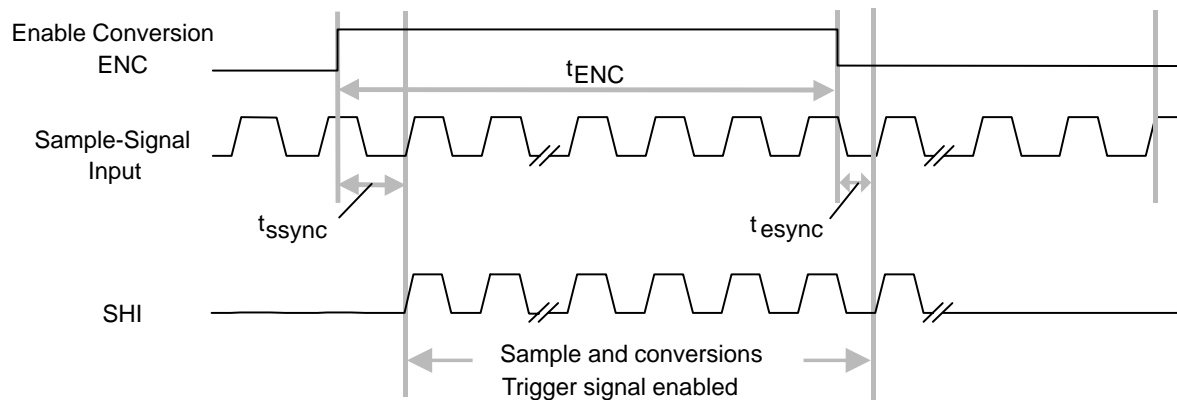
The sample-signal input is selected by the SHS bits in ADC12CTL1. There are four choices for the sample-signal input: ADC12SC, Timer_A.OUT1, Timer_B.OUT0, and Timer_B.OUT1. The polarity of the sample-signal input may be selected by the ISSH bit (see Figure 15–16). Also, the sample-signal input is passed to the sampling timer or to the SAMPCON signal under control of the ENC bit. This is discussed in detail further ahead.

ADC12SC is a control bit located in ADC12CTL0. Its value is set by software. Depending on the selected sampling mode, this bit allows the software to either start a sample-and-conversion (S/C) cycle (SHP=1), or to completely control the sampling period (SHP=0).

The sample-signal input can be asynchronous to a conversion-enable, and is synchronized and enabled by the ENC bit. Without synchronization, the first sampling period after the ENC bit is set could be erroneous, depending on where the ENC bit is set within the cycle of the input signal. In Figure 15–18, for example, note that the ENC bit is set in the middle of a high pulse from the sample-signal input. If the sample-input signal were simply passed directly to the S/H, the first conversion of the example would be erroneous because the first sampling period is too short.

To prevent this problem, synchronization logic is implemented in the sample input selection switch. This ensures that the first sample-and-conversion cycle begins with the first rising edge of the sample-input signal applied *after* the ENC bit is set. Additionally, the last sample-and-conversion begins with the first rising edge of the sample-input signal *after* ENC has been reset.

Figure 15–16. Synchronized Sample and Conversion Signal With Enable Conversion



15.7.3 Sampling Modes

The sampling circuitry has two modes of operation: pulse-sampling mode and extended-sampling mode. In pulse-sampling mode, the sample-signal input (selected by the SHS bits in ADC12CTL1) is used to trigger the internal sampling timer, and the actual sample timing signal (SAMPCON) is then generated by the sampling timer and is an integer multiple of the ADC12CLK signal.

In extended-sampling mode, the sampling-signal input bypasses the sample timer and is used to source SAMPCON directly, therefore completely controlling the sample timing—asynchronously to ADC12CLK. Note that 13 ADC12CLK cycles are still required to complete one conversion.

15.7.3.1 Pulse-Sample Mode

In the pulse-sample mode, the sample-input signal, selected by the SHS bits, triggers the sampling timer with its rising edge. The sampling timer then generates the sample timing. The sampling time is programmable by the SHT0 or SHT1 bits located in ADC12CTL0. When conversion-memory registers ADC12MEM0 to ADC12MEM7 are selected to store the conversion result(s), the SHT0 bits are used to program the sampling time. When conversion-memory registers ADC12MEM8 to ADC12MEM15 are selected for the conversion data, the SHT1 bits are used to program the sampling timing. Therefore, it is possible to program two different sampling times for a sequence of conversions by using both upper and lower conversion-memory registers in the sequence. This feature is useful when different external-source impedance conditions exist and require different sample timings.

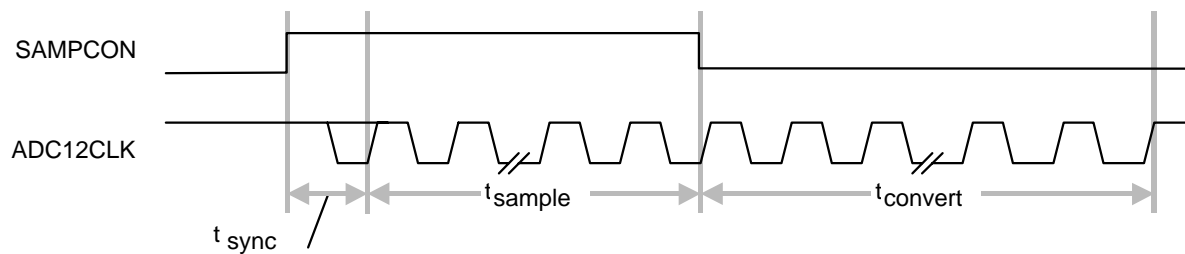
In pulse-sampling mode, sampling time is a multiple of the ADC12CLK x 4, and is calculated by:

$$t_{\text{sample}} = 4 \times t_{\text{ADC12CLK}} \times \text{SHTx}$$

SHTx is determined by bits SHT0 or SHT1 (see table in *Control Registers ADC12CTL0 and ADC12CTL1* section).

The sampling signal SAMPCON remains in the sampling state (high) for the synchronization time t_{sync} and the selected sample time t_{sample} , as shown in Figure 15–17. The conversion takes $13 \times \text{ADC12CLK}$ cycles (t_{convert}). It is important to note that after a sample-and-conversion cycle has been triggered by the sample-input signal, additional triggers (via a rising edge on the sample-input signal) will be missed/ignored until the prior sample-and-conversion cycle is completed.

Figure 15–17. Conversion Timing, Pulse-Sample Mode



An example of the pulse-sample mode configuration is shown in Figure 15–18. The selected input signal source is Timer_B.OUT0. The timing for the example is shown in Figure 15–19.

Figure 15–18. Pulse-Sample Mode Example Configuration

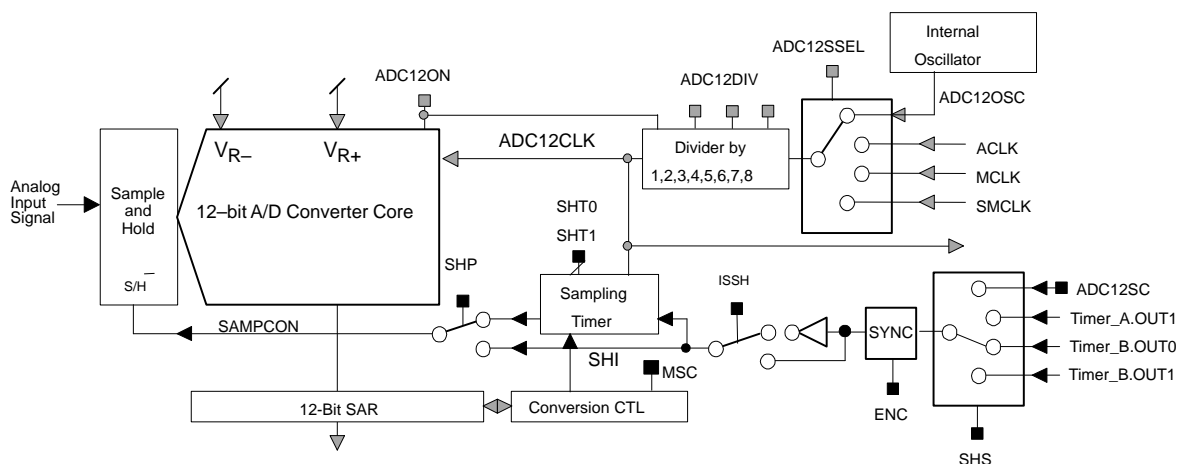
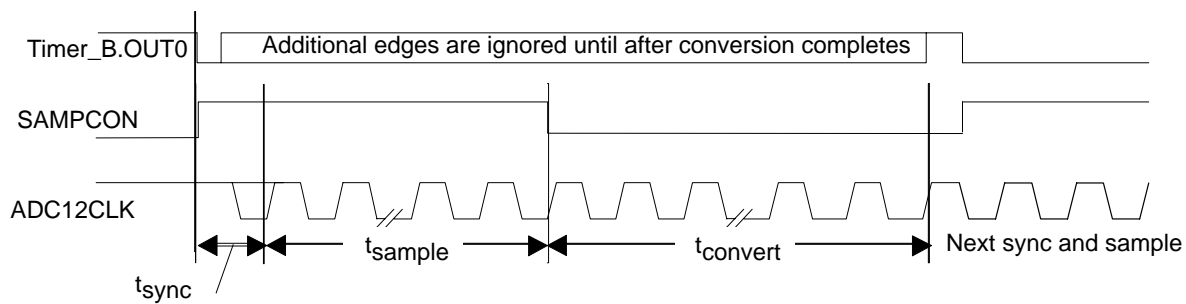


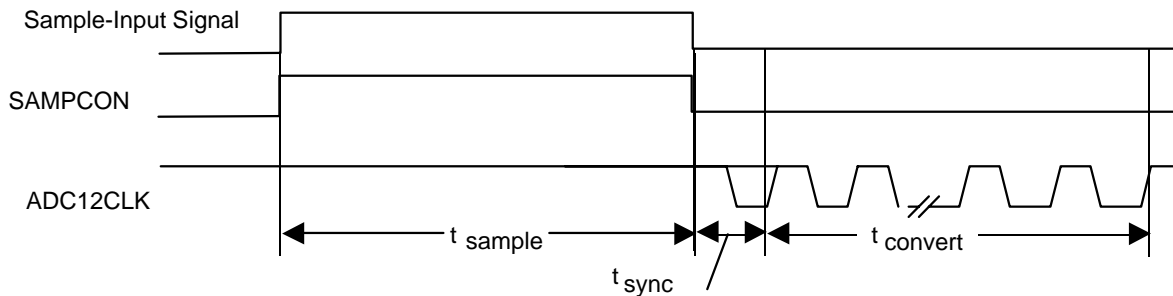
Figure 15–19. Pulse-Sample Mode Example Timing



15.7.3.2 Extended-Sample Mode

In extended-sample mode, the input signal selected by the SHS bits is used to control the sampling (**SAMPCON** signal) directly. The internal sampling timer is not used. As shown in Figure 15–20, the sampling period is active while **SAMPCON** is high. Hold mode is active when **SAMPCON** is low. The conversion starts with the falling edge of **SAMPCON** after a synchronization time t_{sync} . The conversion takes $13 \times \text{ADC12CLK}$ ($t_{convert}$).

Figure 15–20. Conversion Timing for Extended-Sample Mode



The extended-sample mode allows total control of the sampling period and the start of a conversion. The extended-sample mode is useful in applications that require an extended sampling period to accommodate different input-source impedances, or in applications where the maximum sampling period supplied by the internal sampling timer is insufficient.

An example of the extended-sample-mode configuration is shown in Figure 15–21. The selected input signal source is **Timer_B.OUT0**. The timing for the example is shown in Figure 15–22.

Figure 15–23. Use of MSC Bit With Nonrepeated Modes

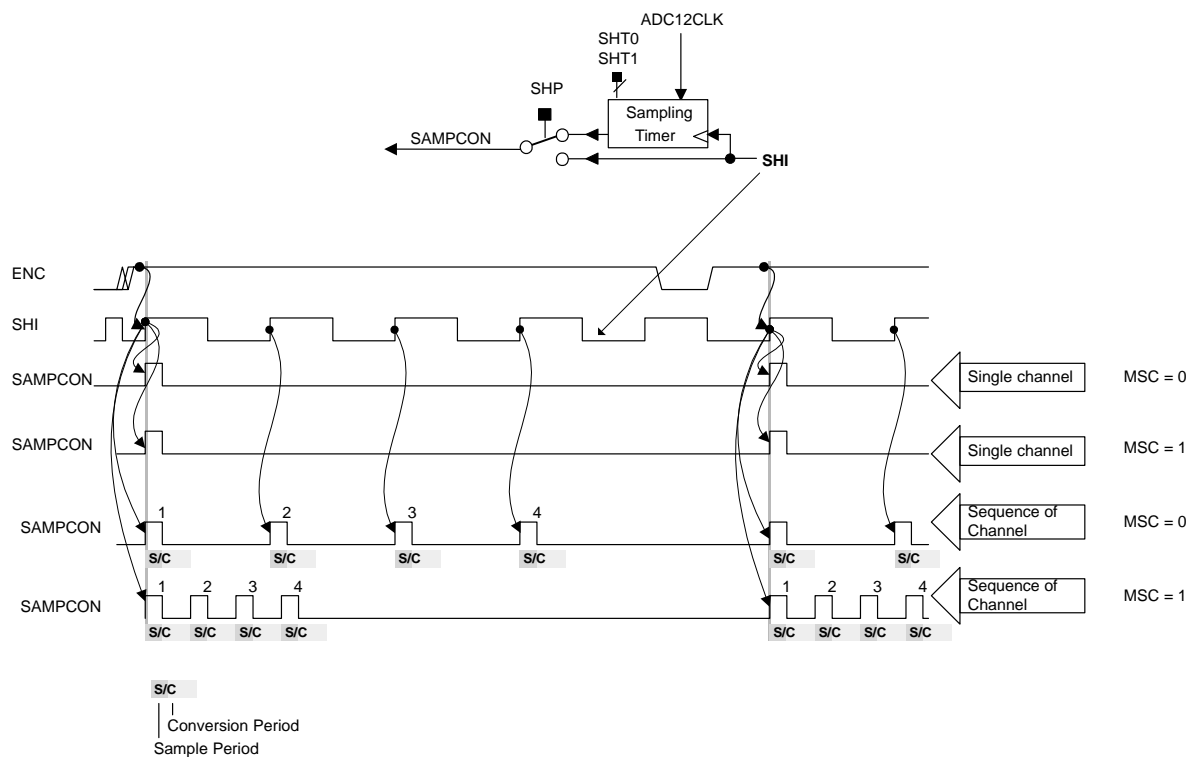
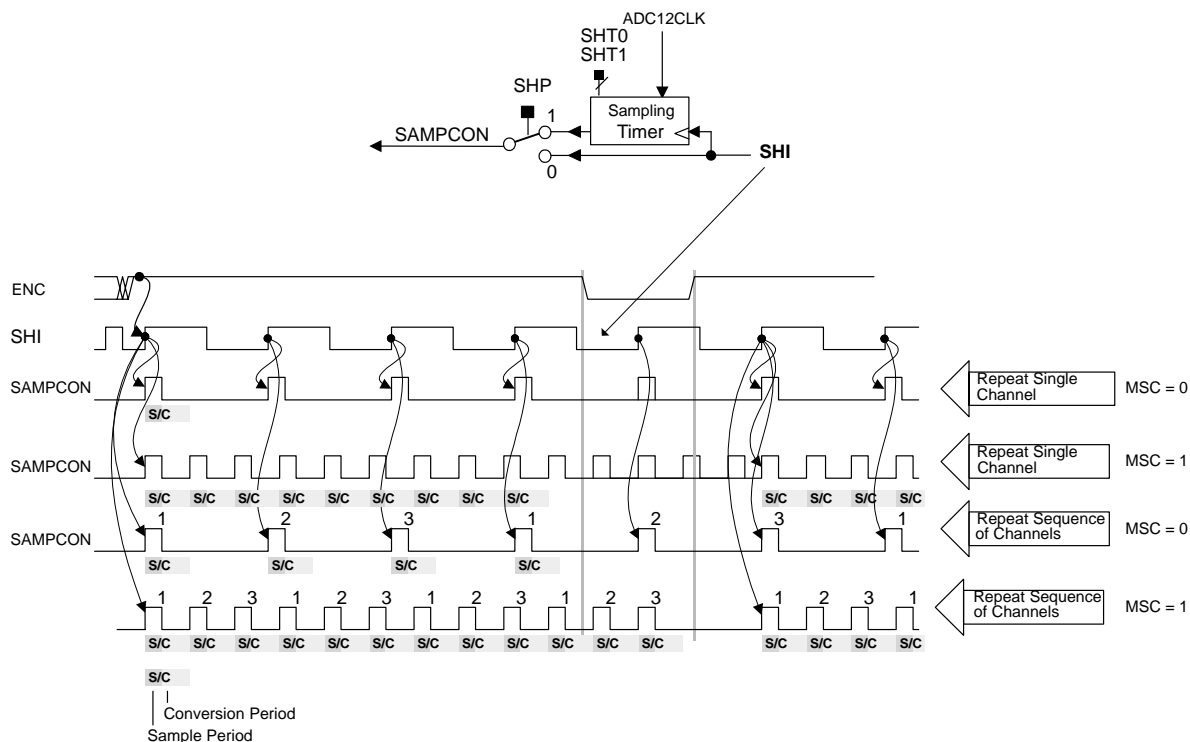


Figure 15–24. Use of MSC Bit With Repeated Modes



15.7.5 Sample Timing Considerations

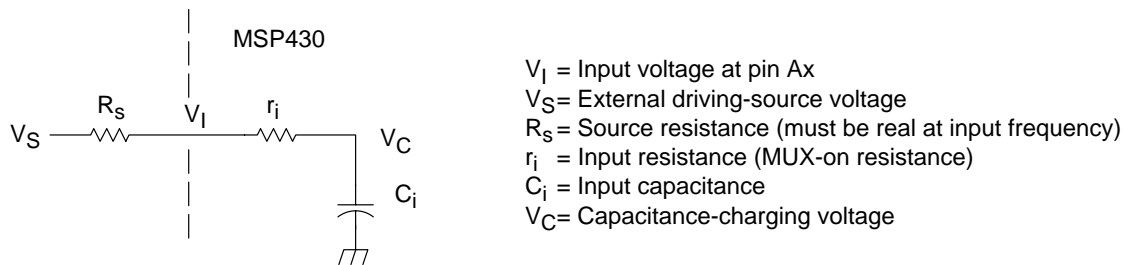
The A/D converter uses the charge redistribution method. Thus, when the inputs are internally switched to sample the input analog signal, the switching action causes displacement currents to flow into and out of the analog inputs. These current spikes or transients occur at the leading and falling edges of the sample pulse, and usually decay and settle before causing any problems because typically the external time constant is less than that presented by the internal effective RC. Internally, the analog inputs see an effective maximum nominal RC of a 30 pF (C-array) capacitor in series with a 2-k Ω resistor (R_{on} of switches). However, if the external dynamic-source impedance is large, then these transients may not settle within the allocated sampling time to ensure 12 bits of accuracy.

It is imperative that the proper sample timing be used for accurate conversions. The next section discusses how to calculate the sample timing.

15.7.5.1 Simplified Sample-Timing Analysis

Using the equivalent circuit shown in Figure 15–25, the time required to charge the analog-input capacitance from 0 to V_S within 1/2 LSB can be derived as follows.

Figure 15–25. Equivalent Circuit



The capacitance-charging voltage is given by:

$$V_C = V_S \left(1 - \exp \left(\frac{-t_c}{R_t \times C_i} \right) \right) \quad (1)$$

Where:

$$R_t = R_S + Z_i$$

$$t_c = \text{Cycle time}$$

The input impedance Z_i is ~1 k Ω at 3.0 V, and is higher (~ 2 k Ω) at 1.8 V. The final voltage to 1/2 LSB is given by:

$$V_C (1/2\text{LSB}) = V_S - \left(\frac{V_S}{8192} \right) \quad (2)$$

Equating equation 1 to equation 2 and solving for cycle time t_c gives:

$$V_S - \left(\frac{V_S}{8192} \right) = V_S \left(1 - \exp \left(\frac{-t_c}{R_t \times C_i} \right) \right) \quad (3)$$

and the time to charge to 1/2 LSB (minimum sampling time) is:

$$t_{ch}(1/2 \text{ LSB}) = R_t \times C_i \times \ln(8192)$$

Where:

$$\ln(8192) = 9.011$$

Therefore, with the values given, the time for the analog input signal to settle is:

$$t_{ch}(1/2 \text{ LSB}) = (R_s + 1 \text{ k}\Omega) \times C_i \times 9.011 \quad (4)$$

This time must be less than the sampling time.

If the pulse-sampling mode is used, the maximum ADC12CLK frequency is:

$$\max[f(\text{ADC12CLK})] = \frac{SHTx}{t_{ch}(1/2 \text{ LSB})} \quad (5)$$

This frequency must not exceed the maximum ADC12CLK frequency specified in the data sheet.


15.8 ADC12 Control Registers

Five control registers, sixteen conversion-memory registers, and sixteen conversion-memory control registers are used to configure the ADC12:

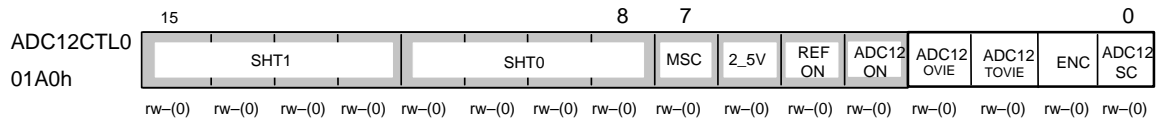
Register	Short Form	Register Type	Address	Initial State
ADC control register 0	ADC12CTL0	Read/write	01A0h	Reset with POR
ADC control register 1	ADC12CTL1	Read/write	01A2h	Reset with POR
ADC interrupt flag register	ADC12IFG	Read/write	01A4h	Reset with POR
ADC interrupt enable register	ADC12IE	Read/write	01A6h	Reset with POR
ADC interrupt vector word	ADC12IV	Read	01A8h	Reset with POR
ADC memory 0 to ADC memory 15	ADC12MEM0 ADC12MEM15	Read	0140h 015Eh	Unchanged
ADC memory control 0 to ADC memory control 15	ADC12MCTL0 ADC12MCTL15	Read	080h 08Fh	Reset with POR

Note: All registers may be accessed by any instruction subject to register-access restrictions.

15.8.1 Control Registers ADC12CTL0 and ADC12CTL1

All control bits of ADC12CTLx are reset during POR. Most of the control bits in registers ADC12CTL0, ADC12CTL1, and ADC12MCTLx can only be modified if ENC is reset. These bits are marked . All other bits can be modified at any time.

The control bits of control register ADC12CTL0 and ADC12CTL1 are:



ADC12SC bit0 Sample and convert. The ADC12SC bit can be used to control the conversion with software if ENC is set. It is recommended to have ISSH=0. If the sampling signal SAMPCON is generated by the sampling timer (SHP=1), changing the ADC12SC bit from 0 to 1 starts the sample-and-conversion operation. When the A/D conversion is complete (BUSY=0) the ADC12SC bit is automatically reset.

If the sample signal is directly controlled by ADC12SC (SHP=0), then the high level of the ADC12SC bit defines the sample time. The conversion starts once it is reset.

All automatic-sequence functions (CONSEQ={1,2,3}) and multiple sample-and-conversion functions (MSC=1) are executed normally. Therefore, when using ADC12SC the software must ensure that the frequency of the timing of the ADC12SC bit meets the applicable timing requirements.

NOTE: The start of a conversion by software (SHS=0, in ADC12CTL1) is possible by setting both ENC and ADC12SC control bits within one instruction.

ENC bit1 Enable conversion. The software (via ADC12SC) or external signals can start a conversion only if the enable-conversion bit ENC is high. Most of the control bits in ADC12CTL0 and ADC12CTL 1, and all bits in ADCMCTL.x may be changed only if ENC is low.

0 : No conversion can be started. This is the initial state.

1 : The first sample and conversion starts with the first rising edge of the SAMPCON signal. The selected operation proceeds as long as ENC is set.

CONSEQ=0, ADC12BUSY=1, ENC= 1 → 0:

In this mode, if ENC is reset, the current conversion is immediately stopped. The conversion results are unpredictable.

CONSEQ≠0, ADC12BUSY=x, ENC= 1 → 0:

In these modes, if ENC is reset, the current conversion or sequence is completed and the conversion results are valid. The conversion activities are stopped after the current conversion or sequence is completed.

ADC12TOVIE	bit2	<p>Conversion-time-overflow interrupt enable.</p> <p>The timing overflow happens if another sample-and-conversion is requested while the current conversion is not completed. This is independent of the conversion modes selected by CONSEQ. If the timing overflow vector is generated and the timing overflow interrupt enable flag ADC12TOVIE and the general interrupt enable bit GIE are set, an interrupt service is requested. There is no individual interrupt flag. See the <i>ADC12 Interrupt Vector Register ADC12IV</i> section for more information on ADC12 interrupts.</p>
ADC12OVIE	bit3	<p>Overflow-interrupt enable. Individual enable for the overflow-interrupt vector.</p> <p>The overflow happens if a conversion result is written into an ADC memory ADC12MEMx but the previous result was not read. An interrupt service is requested if the overflow vector is generated, the overflow-interrupt-enable flag ADC12OVIE is set, and the general-interrupt-enable bit GIE is set. There is no individual interrupt flag. See the <i>ADC12 Interrupt Vector Register ADC12IV</i> section for more information on ADC12 interrupts.</p>
ADC12ON	bit4	<p>Turn on the 12-bit ADC core. Settling-time constraints must be met when the ADC12 core is powered up.</p> <p>0: Power consumption of the core is off. No conversion will be started. 1: ADC core is supplied with power. If no A/D conversion is needed, ADC12ON can be reset to conserve power.</p>
REFON	bit5	<p>Reference voltage ON.</p> <p>0: The internal-reference voltage is switched off. No power is consumed from the reference-voltage generator. 1: The internal-reference voltage is switched on. The reference-voltage generator consumes power. When the reference generator is switched on, the settling time of the reference voltage must be completed before the first sampling and conversion is started.</p>
2_5V	bit6	<p>Reference-voltage level.</p> <p>0: The internal reference voltage is 1.5V, if REFON = 1. 1: The internal reference voltage is 2.5V, if REFON = 1.</p>
MSC	bit7	<p>Multiple sample and conversion. Valid only when the sample timer is selected to generate the SAMPCON signal (SHP=1) and the A/D mode is chosen as repeat-single-channel, sequence-of-channel or repeat-sequence-of-channels (CONSEQ≠0).</p> <p>0: The sampling timer requires a rising edge of the SHI signal to trigger each sample-and-conversion. 1: The first rising edge of the SHI signal triggers the sampling timer, but further sample-and-conversion are performed automatically as soon as the prior conversion is completed—without additional rising edges of SHI. Additional rising edges of SHI are ignored until the sequence has completed or the ENC bit has been toggled (depending on mode).</p>

SHT0 bits 8–11 Sample-and-hold Time0. These bits define the sample timing for conversions whose results are stored in conversion-memory registers ADC12MEM0 to ADC12MEM7.

The sample time is a multiple of the $\text{ADC12CLK} \times 4$:

$$t_{\text{sample}} = 4 \times t_{\text{ADC12CLK}} \times n$$

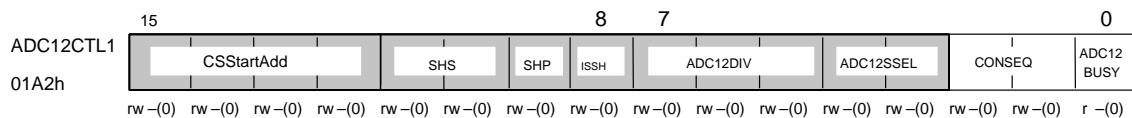
SHT0	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12–15
n	1	2	4	8	16	24	32	48	64	96	128	192	256

SHT1 bits 12–15 Sample-and-hold Time1. These bits define the sample timing for conversions whose results are stored in conversion-memory registers ADC12MEM8 to ADC12MEM15.

The sample time is a multiple of the $\text{ADC12CLK} \times 4$:

$$t_{\text{sample}} = 4 \times t_{\text{ADC12CLK}} \times n$$

SHT1	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12–15
n	1	2	4	8	16	24	32	48	64	96	128	192	256



ADC12BUSY bit0 The ADC12BUSY bit indicates an active sample or conversion operation. It is used specifically when the conversion mode is single-channel-single-conversion, because if the ENC bit is reset in this mode, the conversion stops immediately and the results are invalid. Therefore, the ADC12BUSY bit should be tested to verify that it is 0 before resetting the ENC bit when in single-channel-single-conversion mode.

The busy bit is not useful in all other operating modes because resetting the ENC bit does not immediately affect any other mode.

0: No operation is active.

1: A sample period, conversion or conversion sequence is active.

CONSEQ bits 1–2 The CONSEQ bits select the conversion mode. Repeat mode is on if the CONSEQ.1 is set.

0: Single-channel-single-conversion mode. One single channel is converted once.

1: Sequence-of-channels mode. A sequence of conversions is executed once.

2: Repeat-single-channel mode. Conversions on a single channel are repeated until CONSEQ is set to 0 or 1.

3: Repeat-sequence-of-channels. A sequence of conversions is repeated until CONSEQ is set to 0 or 1.

See also section *Conversion Modes* for additional information.

ADC12SSEL	bits 3–4	Select the clock source for the converter core 0: ADC12 internal oscillator, ADC12OSC 1: ACLK 2: MCLK 3: SMCLK
ADC12DIV	bits 5–7	Select the division rate for the clock source selected by ADC12SSEL bits. 0 to 7: Divide selected clock source by 1 to 8 The divider's output signal name is ADC12CLK. Thirteen of these clocks are required for a conversion.
ISSH	bit8	Invert sample-input signal. 0: The sample-input signal is not inverted. 1: The sample-input signal is inverted.
SHP	bit9	The SHP bit selects the source of the sampling signal (SAMPCON) to be either the output of the sampling timer or the sample-input signal directly. 0: SAMPCON signal is sourced directly from the sample-input signal. 1: SAMPCON signal is sourced from the sampling timer. The rising edge of the sample-input signal triggers the sampling timer.
SHS	bits 10–11	Source select for the sample-input signal. 0: Control bit ADC12SC is selected. 1: Timer_A.OUT1 2: Timer_B.OUT0 3: Timer_B.OUT1
CStartAdd	bits 12–15	Conversion start address CStartAdd is used to define which ADC12 conversion-memory register (ADC12MEMx) is used for a single conversion or for the first conversion in a sequence of conversions. The value of CStartAdd is 0 to 0Fh, corresponding to ADC12MEM0 to ADC12MEM15. Since there is one corresponding conversion-memory control register (ADC12MCTLx) for each conversion-memory register (ADC12MEMx), CStartAdd also points to the corresponding ADC12MCTLx register.

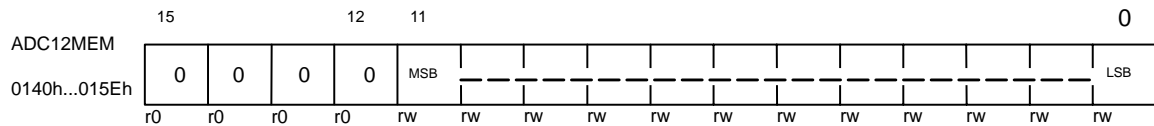
Warning: Modifying ADC Control Register During Active Conversion

The enable conversion control bit (ENC) in the ADC12CTL0 register protects most bits from modification during an active conversion. However, some bits that are necessary for proper completion of active conversions and interrupt enable bits can be modified independently of ENC. The user must use caution when modifying these bits to ensure an active conversion is not corrupted, or to not use corrupted data.

To avoid corrupting any active conversions, stop the conversion, wait for the busy bit to be reset, reset the ENC bit, then modify the control bits.

15.8.2 Conversion-Memory Registers ADC12MEMx

There are sixteen conversion-memory registers ADC12MEMx as follows:



ADC12MEM0, bits 0–15 Conversion results. The 12-bit conversion results are right-justified and the four MSBs are always read as 0.

The ADC12OV interrupt flag will be set in time to indicate that a overflow situation occurred. Software can detect it if it reads the conversion result and then tests for overflow condition. The corresponding interrupt flag is reset if ADC12MEMx is accessed.

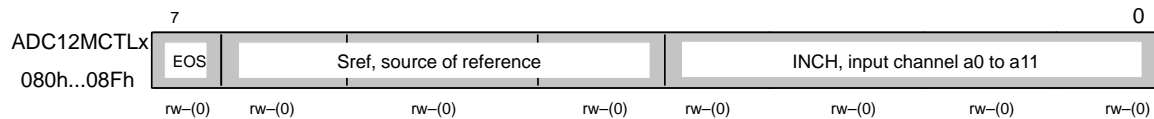
Warning : Software Write to Register ADC12MEMx

Typically, software should not write to the conversion result registers ADC12MEMx. If software writes to one of these registers while the ADC12 is attempting to write to the same register, the data in the register will be unpredictable. If software ensures that it is writing to a conversion result register that is not being accessed by the ADC12, then the write completes normally and the data is written correctly. The associated interrupt flag is reset.

15.8.3 Control Registers ADC12MCTLx

Each conversion-memory register ADC12MEMx has its own control register ADC12CTLx. The conversion-memory registers hold the conversion results, and the control register for each conversion-memory register selects basic conversion conditions such as selecting the analog channel, the reference voltage sources for V_{R+} and V_{R-} , and indicating the end of a sequence.

All control bits in ADC12CTLx are reset during POR (see Chapter 3 for POR details). The control registers ADC12MCTL.x can be modified only if the enable conversion control bit ENC is reset. Any instruction that writes to an ADC12MCTL register while the ENC bit is set will have no effect.



INCH, bits 0–3 The INCH (input channel) bits select one of eight external, or one of four internal analog signals for conversion.

0–7: a0 to a7

8: V_{REF+}

9: V_{REF-}/V_{REF-}

10: Temperature diode

11–15: $(AV_{CC} - AV_{SS}) / 2$

Note: Selecting channel 10 automatically turns on the on-chip reference generator for a voltage source for the temperature diode. However, it does not enable the V_{REF+} output or effect the reference selections for the conversion.

Sref, bits 4–6 The Sref bits select one of six reference voltage combinations used for conversion. The conversion is done between the selected voltage range V_{R+} and V_{R-} .

0: $V_{R+} = AV_{CC}$ and $V_{R-} = AV_{SS}$

1: $V_{R+} = V_{REF+}$ and $V_{R-} = AV_{SS}$

2,3: $V_{R+} = V_{REF+}$ and $V_{R-} = AV_{SS}$

4: $V_{R+} = AV_{CC}$ and $V_{R-} = V_{REF-}/V_{REF-}$

5: $V_{R+} = V_{REF+}$ and $V_{R-} = V_{REF-}/V_{REF-}$

6,7: $V_{R+} = V_{REF+}$ and $V_{R-} = V_{REF-}/V_{REF-}$

EOS, bit 7 The end-of-sequence bit, when set, indicates the last conversion in a sequence of conversions.

Note: A sequence will roll over from ADC12MEM15/ADC12MCTL15 to ADC12MEM0/ADC12MCTL0 if the EOS bit in ADC12MCTL15 is not set.

Note: If none of the EOS bits is set and a sequence-of-channels (CONSEQ={1,3}) is selected, resetting the ENC bit will not stop the sequence. To stop the sequence, first select a single-channel mode (CONSEQ={0,2}) and then reset ENC. See also the ENC bit description.

15.8.4 ADC12 Interrupt Flags ADC12IFG.x and Interrupt-Enable Registers ADC12IEN.x

There are 16 ADC12IFG.x interrupt flags, 16 ADC12IE.x interrupt enable bits, and one interrupt vector word. The interrupt flags and enable bits are associated with the 16 ADC12MEMx registers.

All interrupt flags and interrupt-enable bits are reset during POR.

ADC12IFG															
01A4h															
ADC IFG.15	ADC IFG.14	ADC IFG.13	ADC IFG.12	ADC IFG.11	ADC IFG.10	ADC IFG.9	ADC IFG.8	ADC IFG.7	ADC IFG.6	ADC IFG.5	ADC IFG.4	ADC IFG.3	ADC IFG.2	ADC IFG.1	ADC IFG.0
rw-(0)	rw-(0)	rw-(0)	rw-(0)	rw-(0)	rw-(0)	rw-(0)	rw-(0)	rw-(0)	rw-(0)	rw-(0)	rw-(0)	rw-(0)	rw-(0)	rw-(0)	rw-(0)

ADC12IFG.x, bits 0–15 The ADC12IFG.x interrupt flag is set if a conversion-result register ADC12MEMx is loaded with the result of a conversion. The range for x is 0 to 15.

The interrupt flags are reset if their corresponding ADC12MEMx conversion-result register is accessed. To enable correct handling of overflow conditions, they are not reset by accessing the interrupt vector word ADC12IV. The overflow condition exists if another conversion result is written to ADC12MEMx and the corresponding ADC12IFG.x is not reset.

ADC12IE															
01A6h															
ADC IE.15	ADC IE.14	ADC IE.13	ADC IE.12	ADC IE.11	ADC IE.10	ADC IE.9	ADC IE.8	ADC IE.7	ADC IE.6	ADC IE.5	ADC IE.4	ADC IE.3	ADC IE.2	ADC IE.1	ADC IE.0
rw-(0)	rw-(0)	rw-(0)	rw-(0)	rw-(0)	rw-(0)	rw-(0)	rw-(0)	rw-(0)	rw-(0)	rw-(0)	rw-(0)	rw-(0)	rw-(0)	rw-(0)	rw-(0)

ADC12IE.x, bits 0–15 The ADC12IE.x interrupt-enable bit enables or disables the interrupt-request service generated if the corresponding interrupt flag ADC12IFG.x is set. The range for x is 0 to 15.

15.8.5 ADC12 Interrupt Vector Register ADC12IV

The 12-bit ADC has one interrupt vector to assist the handling of the 18 possible interrupt flags. Each of the 18 interrupt flags is prioritized and a unique vector word is generated according to the highest-pending interrupt. The priorities and corresponding vector-word values are shown in Table 15–3. Overflow flag ADC12OVIFG has the highest priority, followed by timing-overflow flag ADC12TOVIFG, and then by the interrupt flags for each conversion-memory register ADC12IFG.0 to ADC12IFG.15.

The highest-pending interrupt flag generates a number from 0 (no interrupt is pending) to 36. This encoded number can be added to the program counter to automatically enter the software routine for handling each specific interrupt (see software example, section 15.8.5.1).

An interrupt request is immediately generated if an interrupt flag is pending (ADC12IV≠0), if the corresponding interrupt enable bit (ADC12OVIE, ADC12TOVIE, or ADC12IE.x) is set, and if the general interrupt enable bit GIE is set. When an interrupt request is generated, the service is requested by the highest-priority interrupt that is enabled.

It is important to note that ADC12OVIFG and ADC12TOVIFG are reset automatically when either is the highest pending interrupt and the ADC12IV register is accessed. For example, if both are pending simultaneously, ADC12OVIFG will be reset automatically with the first access of ADC12IV, and ADC12TOVIFG will be reset automatically with the next access to the ADC12IV (assuming ADC12OVIFG was not set again). However, flags ADC12IFG.x must be reset by software or reset by accessing the corresponding conversion-memory register ADC12MEMx.

Also note that the flags ADC12OVIFG and ADC12TOVIFG can not be accessed by software. They are visible only via the interrupt vector word ADC12IV data.

Table 15–3. ADC12IV Interrupt-Vector Values

ADC Interrupt Flags ADC12IFG																ADC12TOV	ADC12OV	ADC12IV
15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0			
0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	1	2
x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	1	0	4
x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	1	0	0	6
x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	1	0	0	0	8
:	:	:	:	:	:	:	:	:	:	:	:	:	:	:	:	:	:	:
x	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	34
1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	36

Note: Writing to Read Only Register ADC12IV

When a write to vector word register ADC12IV occurs, the highest-pending interrupt flag is reset. Therefore, the interrupt event is missed.

15.8.5.1 ADC Interrupt Vector Register, Software Example

The following software example shows the use of vector word ADC12IV and the associated software overhead. The numbers at the right margin show the cycles required for every instruction. The example shows a basic interrupt handler structure that can be adopted to individual application requirements.

The software overhead for the different interrupt sources, including interrupt latency and return-from-interrupt cycles (but not the task handling itself), is:

❑ ADC12IFG.0 to ADC12IFG.14, ADC12OV 16 cycles

❑ ADC12IFG.15 14 cycles

```

; Interrupt handler for the 12-bit ADC.
; The flag, which is enabled and has the highest priority,
; determines the interrupt vector word and is reset by
; hardware after accessing (instruction
; ADD &TADC12IV,PC). Flags ADC12OV, ADC12TOV, and
; ADC12IFG.x are reset by hardware.
ADC_HND    $           ; Interrupt latency                                6
            ADD&ADC12IV,PC      ; Add offset to Jump table                3
            RETI              ; Vector 0: No interrupt                    5
            JMP ADC12OV        ; Vector 2: ADC overflow                   2
            JMP ADC12TOV       ; Vector 4: ADC timing overflow            2
            JMP ADC12MOD0      ; Vector 6: ADC12MEM0 was loaded
            .....            ; (ADC12IFG.0)                               2
            JMP ADC12MOD1      ; Vector 8: ADC12MEM1 was loaded
            .....            ; (ADC12IFG.1)                               2
            :
            :
            JMP ADC12MOD13     ; Vector 34: ADC12MEM14 was loaded
            .....            ; (ADC12IFG.14)                             2
            JMP ADC12MOD14     ; Vector 36: ADC12MEM15 was loaded
            .....            ; (ADC12IFG.15)                             2
            ;
; Module 15. Handler for ADC12IFG.15 starts here. Note a JMP
; instruction is not needed to get here because the PC is
; already here after the ADD&ADC12IV,PC instruction.
;
ADC12OV     ...           ; Vector 2: ADC12OV Flag
            ...           ; First instruction to handle ADC12
            ...           ; overflow condition
            RETI              5
            ;
ADC12TOV    ...           ; Vector 4: ADC12OV Flag
            ...           ; First instruction to handle ADC12 timing
            ...           ; overflow condition
            RETI              5
            ;
ADC12MOD2    ...           ; Vector 10: ADC12MEM2 was loaded
            ...           ; (ADC12IFG.2)
            MOV&ADC12MEM2,R6 ; ADC12IFG2 is reset due to access
            ...           ; of ADC memory
            ...           ; Task starts here

```

```

                RETI          ; Back to main program                    5
;
ADC12MOD1      ; Vector 8: ADC12MEM1 was loaded
                ; (ADC12IFG.1)
                ADD&ADC12MEM1,R6 ; ADC12IFG1 is reset due to access
                ; of ADC memory
                ...          ; Task starts here
                RETI          ; Back to main program                    5
; The Module 3 handler shows a way to look if any other
; interrupt is pending: 5 cycles have to be spent, but 9 cycles
; may be saved if another interrupt is pending
;
ADC12MOD0      ; Vector 6: ADC12MEM0 was loaded
                ; (ADC12IFG.0)
                ...          ; First instruction to be executed      x
                ...          ; Task starts here
                JMP ADC12_HND ; With this instruction the software
                ; does not leave the handler; it looks
                ; for pending ADC12 interrupts                        2

```

Note: Basic Clock System

If the CPU clock MCLK is turned off (CPUOff=1), then two or three additional cycles need to be added for synchronous start of the CPU system. The delta of one clock cycle is caused when clocks are asynchronous to the restart of CPU clock MCLK.

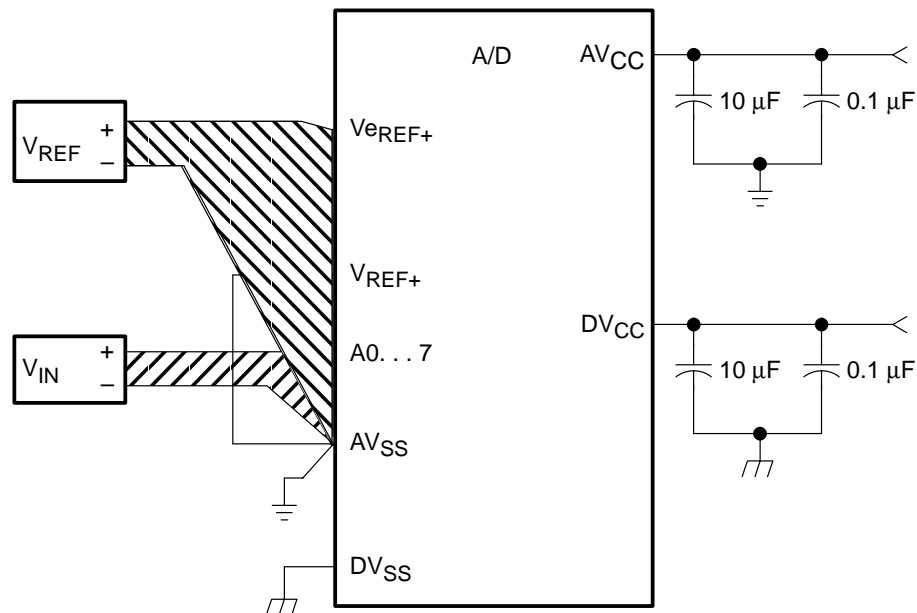
15.9 A/D Grounding and Noise Considerations

As with any high-resolution converter, care and special attention must be paid to the printed-circuit-board layout and the grounding scheme to eliminate ground loops and any unwanted parasitic components/effects and noise. Industry-standard grounding and layout techniques should be followed to reduce these unwanted effects.

Ground Loops are formed when return current from the A/D flows through paths that are common with other analog or digital circuitry. If care is not taken, this current can generate small, unwanted offset voltages that can add to or subtract from the reference or input voltages of the A/D converter. One way to avoid ground loops is to use a star connection scheme for AV_{SS} (shown in Figure 15–26). This way the ground current or reference currents do not flow through any common input leads, eliminating any error voltages.

In addition to grounding, ripple and noise spikes on the power supply lines due to digital switching or switching power supplies can corrupt the conversion result. The ripple can become more dominant by reducing the value of the conversion voltage range ($V_{R+} - V_{R-}$), therefore reducing the value of the LSB and the noise margin. Thus a clean, noise-free setup becomes even more important to achieve the desired accuracy. Adding carefully placed bypass capacitors returned to the respective ground planes can help in reducing ripple in the supply current and minimizing these effects.

Figure 15–26. A/D Grounding and Noise Considerations



ADC10

The ADC10 10-bit analog-to-digital converter is a high-speed, versatile analog-to-digital converter implemented on the MSP430x11x2 and MSP430x12x2. This chapter discusses the ADC10 and how to use it.

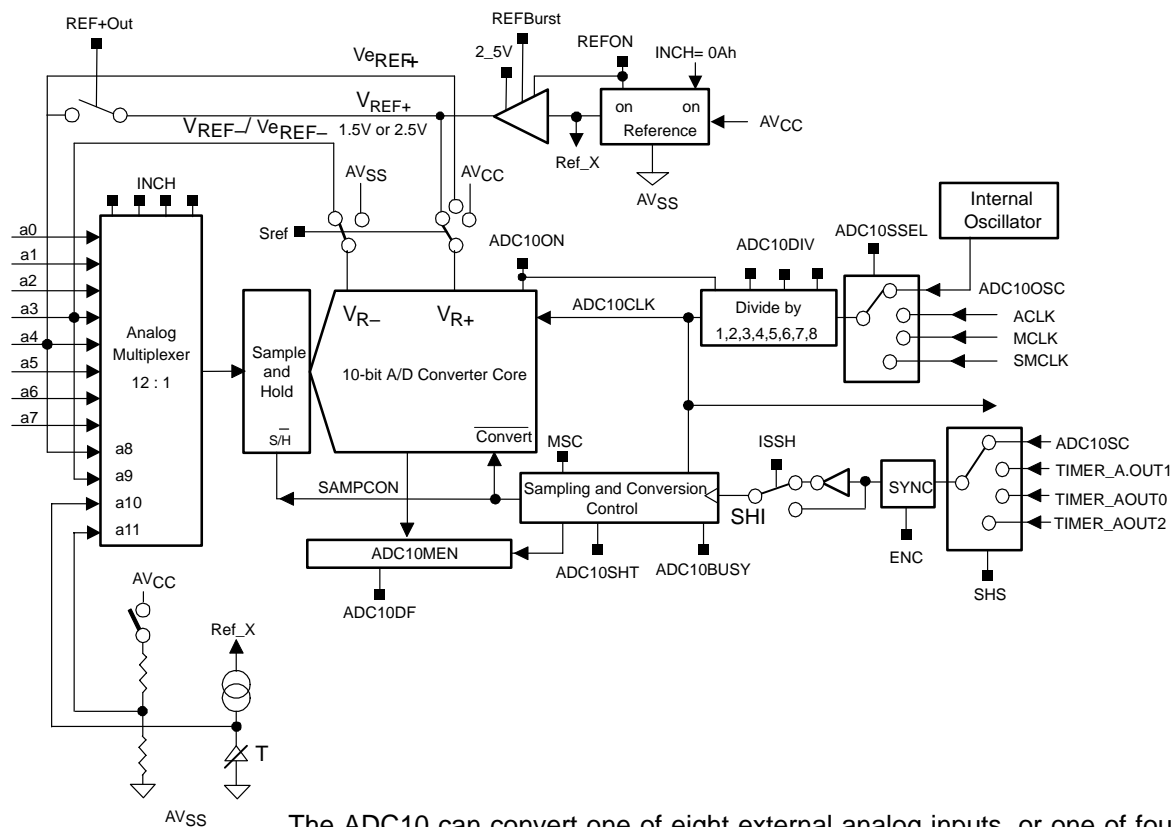
Topic	Page
16.1 Introduction	16-2
16.2 ADC10 Description and Operation	16-4
16.3 Analog Inputs and Multiplexer	16-6
16.4 Conversion Modes	16-8
16.5 Conversion Clock and Conversion Speed	16-17
16.6 Sampling	16-18
16.7 ADC10 Control Registers	16-22
16.8 Data Transfer Control-High-Speed Conversion Support	16-27
16.9 Controlling the Current Consumption of the ADC10 Module	16-39
16.10 A/D Grounding and Noise Considerations	16-44

16.1 Introduction

The ADC10 10-bit analog-to-digital converter (shown in Figure 16–1) has four main functional blocks that can be individually configured and optimized:

- ☐ ADC core with sample-and-hold
- ☐ Reference voltage and configuration
- ☐ Conversion clock source select and control
- ☐ Sample timing and conversion control

Figure 16–1. ADC10 Schematic



The ADC10 can convert one of eight external analog inputs, or one of four internal voltages. The four internal channels are used to measure temperature (via on-chip temperature diode), V_{CC} (via $V_{CC}/2$), and the positive and negative references applied on V_{REF+} and V_{REF-}/V_{REF-} .

The ADC10 can use its internal reference, or it can use external reference(s) or a combination of internal and external reference-voltage levels.

The ADC10 has versatile sample-and-hold circuitry. One sample takes four, eight, sixteen, or sixty-four ADC10CLKs and can be triggered by software (ADC10SC) or by any one of the three signals ADC10I1, ADC10I2, or ADC10I3. Typically, the internal timing signals come from other MSP430 timers such as Timer_A.

As with sample timing, users have several choices for the ADC10 conversion clock. The ADC10 conversion clock may use ACLK, MCLK, or SMCLK, or may be selected from a dedicated oscillator contained in the ADC10 peripheral. Also, the chosen clock source may be divided by any factor from 1 to 8.

The ADC10 has four operating modes. It can be configured to perform a single conversion on a single channel, or multiple conversions on a single channel. The ADC10 can also be configured to perform conversions on a sequence-of-channels, running through the sequence once, or repeatedly.

The conversion result is stored in register ADC10MEM.

Some key and unique features of the ADC10 are:

- ☐ 200-ksps maximum conversion rate
- ☐ 10-bit converter with ± 1 LSB differential nonlinearity (DNL) and ± 1 LSB integral nonlinearity (INL)
- ☐ Built-in sample-and-hold
- ☐ On-chip, dedicated RC oscillator
- ☐ Integrated sensor for temperature measurement
- ☐ Up to ten analog inputs. Two inputs are shared with external applied reference voltages (the number of available analog inputs may differ between devices).
- ☐ Four internal channels for conversion of temperature, AV_{CC} , and external references
- ☐ On-chip reference voltages: 1.5 V or 2.5 V, selected by software
- ☐ Selectable internal or external sources for both positive and negative reference-voltage levels (selectable for each channel independently)
- ☐ Conversion clock source, ADC10OSC (RC-oscillator in ADC10), ACLK, MCLK, or SMCLK
- ☐ Versatile conversion modes including single-channel, repeated single-channel, sequence, and repeated sequence.
- ☐ One register (buffer) loaded after each conversion with the conversion result.
- ☐ ADC core and reference voltage powered down separately

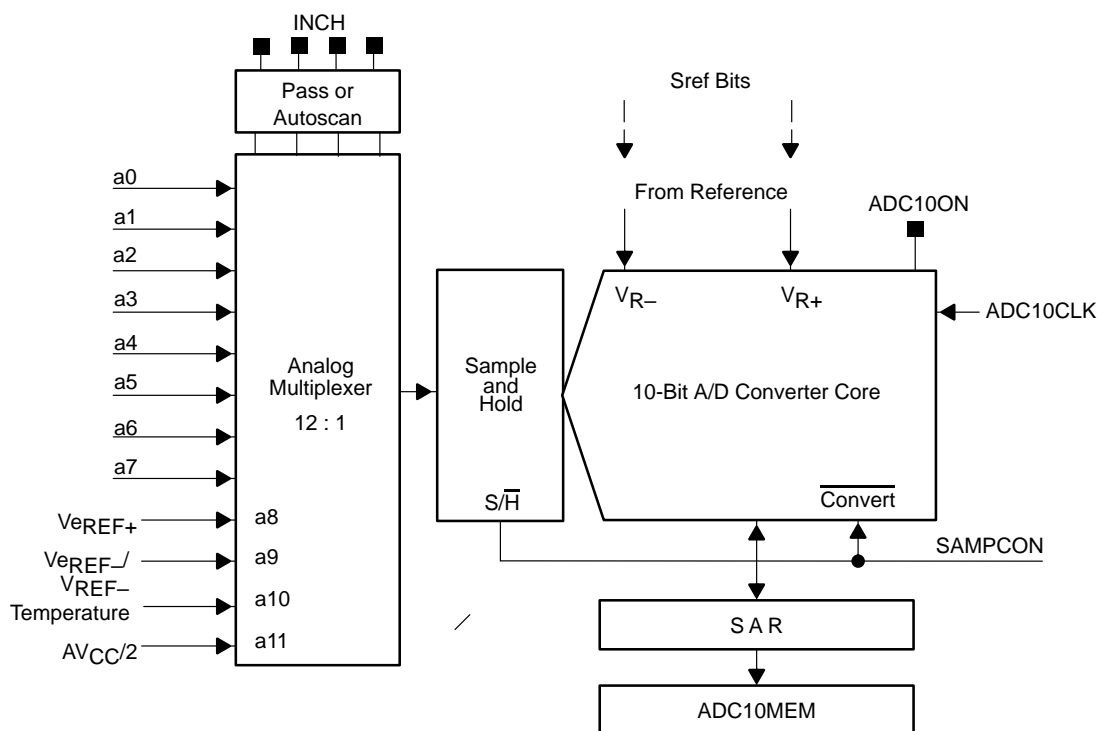
16.2 ADC10 Description and Operation

16.2.1 ADC Core

The ADC core (shown in Figure 16–2) converts the analog input to its 10-bit representation and stores the results in the ADC10MEM register. The core uses two programmable/selectable voltage levels (V_{R+} and V_{R-}) to define the upper and lower limits of the conversion range, and to define the full-scale and zero-scale readings. The digital output is full scale when the input signal is equal to or higher than V_{R+} , and zero when the input signal is equal to or lower than V_{R-} . The input channel and the reference voltage levels (V_{R+} and V_{R-}) are defined in the conversion-control memory. The conversion formula is:

$$N_{\text{ADC}} = 1023 \times \frac{V_{\text{in}} - V_{R-}}{V_{R+} - V_{R-}}$$

Figure 16–2. ADC Core, Input Multiplexer, and Sample-and-Hold



Caution! ADC10 Turnon Time

When the ADC10 is turned on with the ADC10ON bit, the turnon time noted in the data sheet (t_{ADC10ON}) must be observed before a conversion is started. Otherwise, the results will be false.

16.2.2 Reference

The ADC10 A/D converter contains a built-in reference with two selectable reference-voltage levels (1.5 V and 2.5 V). Either of these reference voltages may be applied to V_{R+} of the A/D core and also may be available externally on pin V_{REF+} (check device data sheet for availability of V_{REF+} pin). Additionally, an external reference may be supplied for V_{R+} through pin Ve_{REF+} (check data sheet for availability of Ve_{REF+} pin).

The reference-voltage level for V_{R-} can be selected to be AV_{SS} or may be supplied externally through the V_{REF-}/Ve_{REF-} pin (check device data sheet for V_{REF-}/Ve_{REF-} pin). If the V_{REF-}/Ve_{REF-} pin is not available, then V_{R-} is connected to AV_{SS} .

Configuration of the reference voltage(s) is done with the Sref bits (bits 13, 14, and 15) in the ADC10CTL0 register. Up to six combinations of positive and negative reference voltages are supported as described in Table 16–1.

If only external references are used, the internal-reference generator can be turned off with the REFON bit to conserve power.

Table 16–1. Reference Voltage Configurations

Sref	Voltage at V_{R+}	Voltage at V_{R-}
0	AV_{CC}	AV_{SS}
1	V_{REF+} (internal)	AV_{SS}
2,3	Ve_{REF+} (external)	AV_{SS}
4	AV_{CC}	V_{REF-}/Ve_{REF-} (internal or external)
5	V_{REF+} (internal)	V_{REF-}/Ve_{REF-} (internal or external)
6,7	Ve_{REF+} (external)	V_{REF-}/Ve_{REF-} (internal or external)

The voltage levels V_{R+} and V_{R-} establish the upper and lower limits of the analog inputs to produce a full-scale and zero-scale reading, respectively. The values of V_{R+} , V_{R-} , and the analog input should not exceed the positive supply or be lower than AV_{SS} , consistent with the absolute maximum ratings specified in the device data sheet. The digital output is full scale when the input signal is equal to or higher than V_{R+} , and zero when the input signal is equal to or lower than V_{R-} .

Warning! Reference Voltage Settling Time

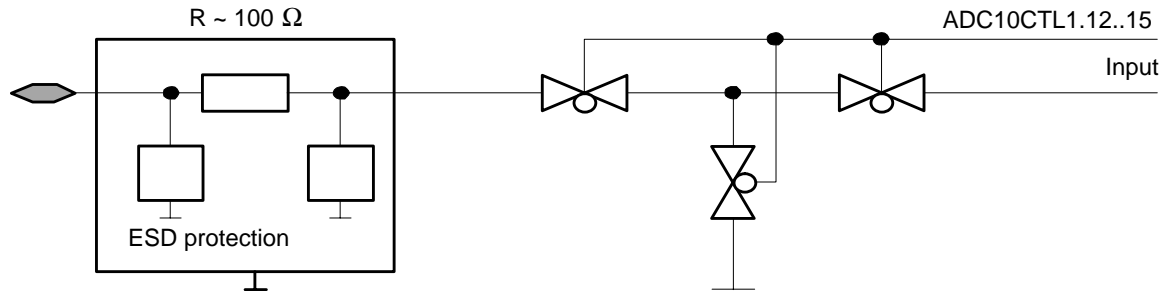
When the built-in reference is turned on with the REFON bit, the settling timing noted in the data sheet must be observed before starting a conversion. Otherwise, the results will be false until the reference settles. Once all internal and external references have settled, no additional settling time is required when selecting or changing the conversion range for each channel.

16.3 Analog Inputs and Multiplexer

16.3.1 Analog Multiplexer

One of eight external analog input channels, two external analog inputs shared with reference voltage inputs, and two internal signals can be selected by the analog multiplexer as the channel for conversion. Channel selection is made using INCH bits in register ADC10CTL1 for single channel conversions. When in a sequence mode, the INCH bits select the first channel of the sequence. The input multiplexer is a break-before-make type (shown in Figure 16–3) to reduce input-to-input noise injection resulting from channel switching. The input multiplexer is also a T-switch to minimize the coupling between channels. Channels that are not selected are isolated from the A/D and the intermediate node is connected to analog ground (AV_{SS}) so that the stray capacitance is grounded to help eliminate crosstalk.

Figure 16–3. Analog Multiplexer Channel



Crosstalk can exist because there is always some parasitic coupling capacitance across the switch and between switches. This can take several forms, such as coupling from the input to the output of an off switch, or coupling from an off analog input channel to the output of an adjacent on channel. For high-accuracy conversions, crosstalk interference should be minimized by shielding and other well-known printed-circuit board (PCB) layout techniques.

16.3.2 Input Signal Considerations

During sampling, the analog input signal is applied to the internal capacitor array of the A/D core. Therefore, the charge of the capacitor array is supplied directly by the source. The capacitor array has to be charged completely during the sampling period. Therefore the external source resistances, dynamic impedances, and capacitance of the capacitor array must be matched with the sampling period so the analog signal can settle to within 10-bit accuracy.

Additionally, source impedances also affect the accuracy of the converter. The source signal can drop at the input of the device due to leakage current or averaged dc-input currents (due to input switching currents). For a 10-bit converter, the error in LSBs due to leakage current is:

$$\text{Error(LSBs)} = 1024 \times (\mu\text{A of leakage current}) \times (\text{k}\Omega \text{ of source resistance}) / (V_{R+} - V_{R-})$$

For example, a 50-nA leakage current with a 10-k Ω source resistance and a 1.5-V V_{REF} gives 1/3 LSBs of error.

These errors due to source impedance also apply to the output impedance of any external-voltage reference source applied to V_{REF+} . The output impedance must be low enough to enable the transients to settle within $0.2/\text{ADC10CLK}$ and generate leakage current induced errors of $\ll 1$ LSB.

See the *Sampling* section for more details on sample timing and sampling considerations.

16.3.3 Using the Temperature Sensor

To use the on-chip temperature sensor, the user simply selects the analog input channel to 10.

Selecting the diode channel automatically turns on the on-chip reference generator (see Figure 16–1) as a voltage source for the temperature diode. However, it does not enable the V_{REF+} output or affect the reference selections for the conversion; so, reference selections for the conversion are the same as with any other channel.

The conversion can start after the required settling time. See the device data sheet for the temperature sensor specifications.

Note: Offset Error of the Temperature Diode

The offset error of the temperature diode can be large (see the device data sheet) and may require calibration to be used in an application.

16.4 Conversion Modes

The ADC10 has four conversion modes:

- ☐ Single-channel, single-conversion
- ☐ Single-channel, repeated-conversions
- ☐ Sequence-of-channels, single-sequence
- ☐ Sequence-of-channels, repeated-sequence

Each mode is summarized in Table 16–2 and described in detail in the following sections.

Table 16–2. Conversion-Modes Summary

CONVERSION MODE	CONSEQ	OPERATION
Single channel	00	Single conversion on channel selected by INCH bits
Sequence-of-channels	01	A sequence-of-channels is converted. The sequence starts with the channel selected by the INCH bits. Each channel from A(INCH) down to A0 is converted once.
Repeat single channel	10	The conversion of channel A(INCH) is repeated until repeat is off or ENC is reset.
Repeat sequence-of-channels	11	The conversion of a sequence-of-channels is repeated until repeat is off or ENC is reset. The sequence starts with A(INCH) and ends at A0.

Note: After completing a conversion, the result is buffered in ADC10MEM; then the interrupt flag ADC10IFG is set.

16.4.1 Single-Channel, Single-Conversion Mode

The single-channel mode converts the channel selected by the INCH bits once. When the conversion is complete, the conversion result is stored in register ADC10MEM and the interrupt flag ADC10IFG is set. If the interrupt enable is set, an interrupt request is generated.

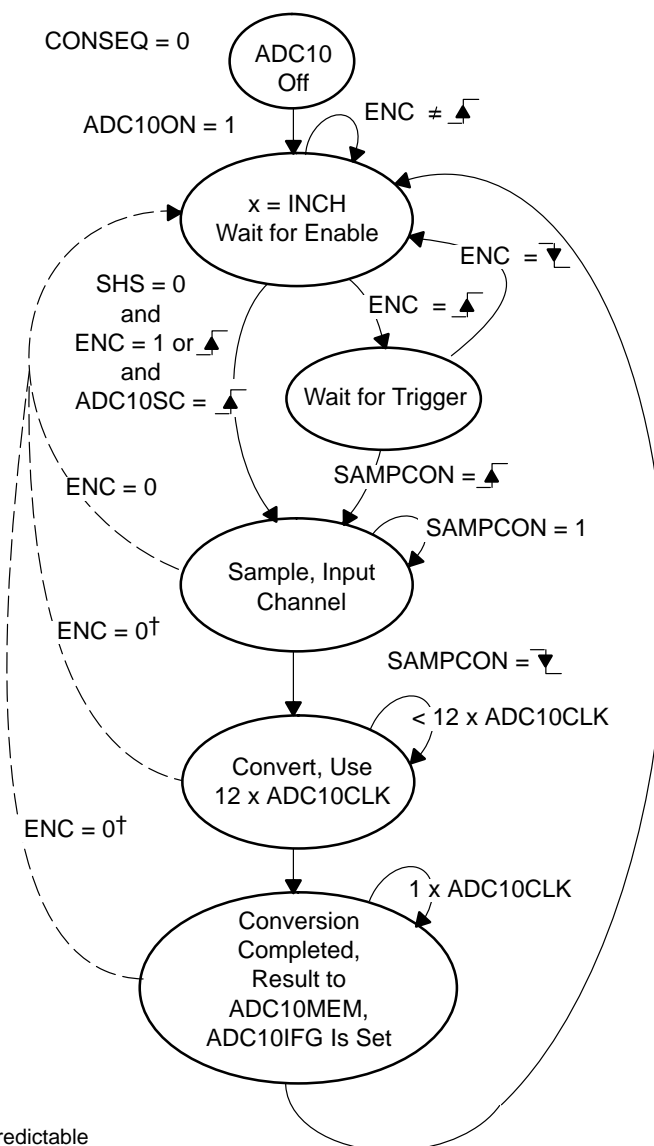
The conversion may be stopped immediately by resetting the enable-conversion bit (ENC, located in ADC10CTL0), but the conversion results will be unreliable, or the conversion may not be performed.

When software is using the ADC10SC bit to initiate conversion, successive conversions can be initiated by simply setting the ADC10SC bit (the ENC bit must already be set, or can be set together with ADC10SC). For the hardware trigger sources, the ENC bit must be toggled between each conversion. All additional incoming sample-input signals will be ignored until the ENC bit is reset and set again.

The conversion mode may be changed after the conversion begins but before it has completed, and the new mode will take effect after the current conversion has completed. See also the *Switching between Conversion Modes* section.

Figure 16–4 illustrates the single-channel, single-conversion mode.

Figure 16–4. Single-Channel, Single-Conversion Mode



† Conversion result is unpredictable

16.4.2 Sequence-of-Channels Mode

The sequence-of-channels mode converts a sequence of channels beginning with A(INCH) down to A0. The sequence stops after the conversion result of A0 is loaded into ADC10MEM. Each conversion result is stored in register ADC10MEM each time a conversion is completed. The interrupt flag ADC10IFG is set each time register ADC10MEM is loaded. Additionally, If the interrupt-enable flag ADC10IE is set, an interrupt request is generated.

When software is using the ADC10SC bit to initiate a sequence, successive sequences can be initiated by simply setting the ADC10SC bit (the ENC bit can remain set or may be set at the same time as ADC10SC). However, when any other trigger source is being used to start a sequence, the ENC bit must be toggled between each sequence. All additional incoming sample-input signals will be ignored until the ENC bit is reset and set again.

The conversion mode may be changed after the conversion begins but before it has completed, and the new mode will take effect after the current sequence has completed. See also the *Switching between Conversion Modes* section.

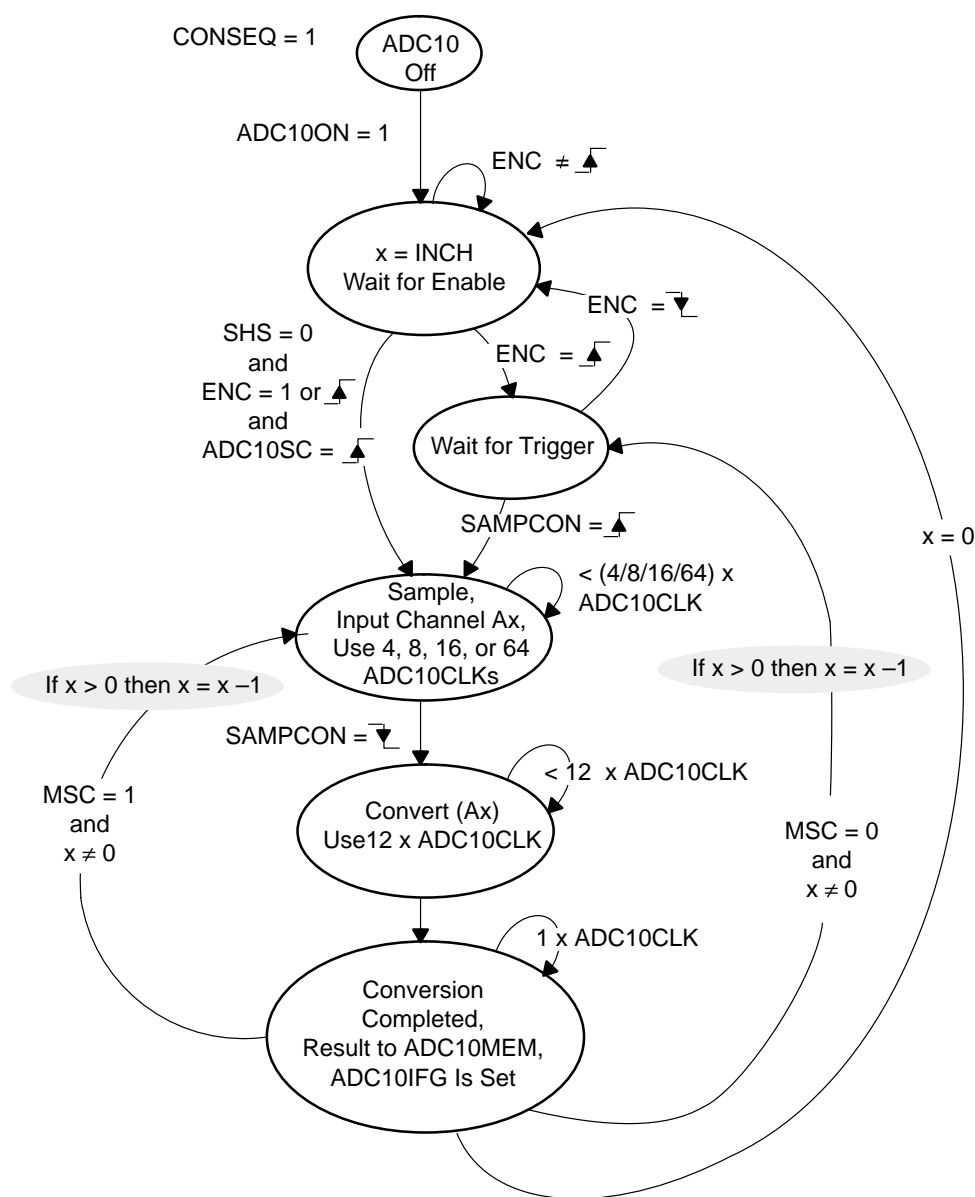
If the conversion mode is changed after the sequence begins but before it has completed and the ENC bit is left high, the sequence completes normally, and the new mode takes effect after the sequence completes, unless the new mode is *single-channel single-conversion*. If the new mode is *single-channel single-conversion*, the current sequence-of-channels stops proceeding when no sample-and-conversion is active, or after an active sample-and-conversion is completed. The original sequence may not be completed, but all completed conversion results are valid. See also the *Switching Between Conversion Modes* section.

If the conversion mode is changed after the sequence begins but before it has completed and the ENC bit is toggled, then the original sequence completes normally and the new mode takes effect and is started after the original sequence completes—unless the new mode is *single-channel single-conversion*. If the new mode is *single-channel single-conversion*, then the original sequence stops when no sample-and-conversion is active, or after an active sample-and-conversion is completed, or when the ENC bit is reset, whichever comes first. Then, the single conversion begins when the ENC bit is set again. See also the *Switching Between Conversion Modes* section.

An active sequence may be stopped immediately by selecting *single-channel single-conversion* mode (reset CONSEQ.1 bit) and then resetting the enable-conversion bit ENC. The data in register ADC10MEM is unpredictable and the interrupt flag ADC10IFG may or may not be set. This is generally not recommended but may be used as an emergency exit.

Figure 16–5 illustrates the sequence-of-channels mode.

Figure 16–5. Sequence-of-Channels Mode



16.4.3 Repeat-Single-Channel Mode

The repeat-single-channel mode is identical to the single-channel mode, except that conversions are repeated on the chosen channel until stopped by software. The conversion result is stored in register ADC10MEM each time a conversion is completed. The interrupt flag ADC10IFG is set each time register ADC10MEM is loaded. Additionally, if the interrupt-enable flag ADC10IE is set, an interrupt request is generated.

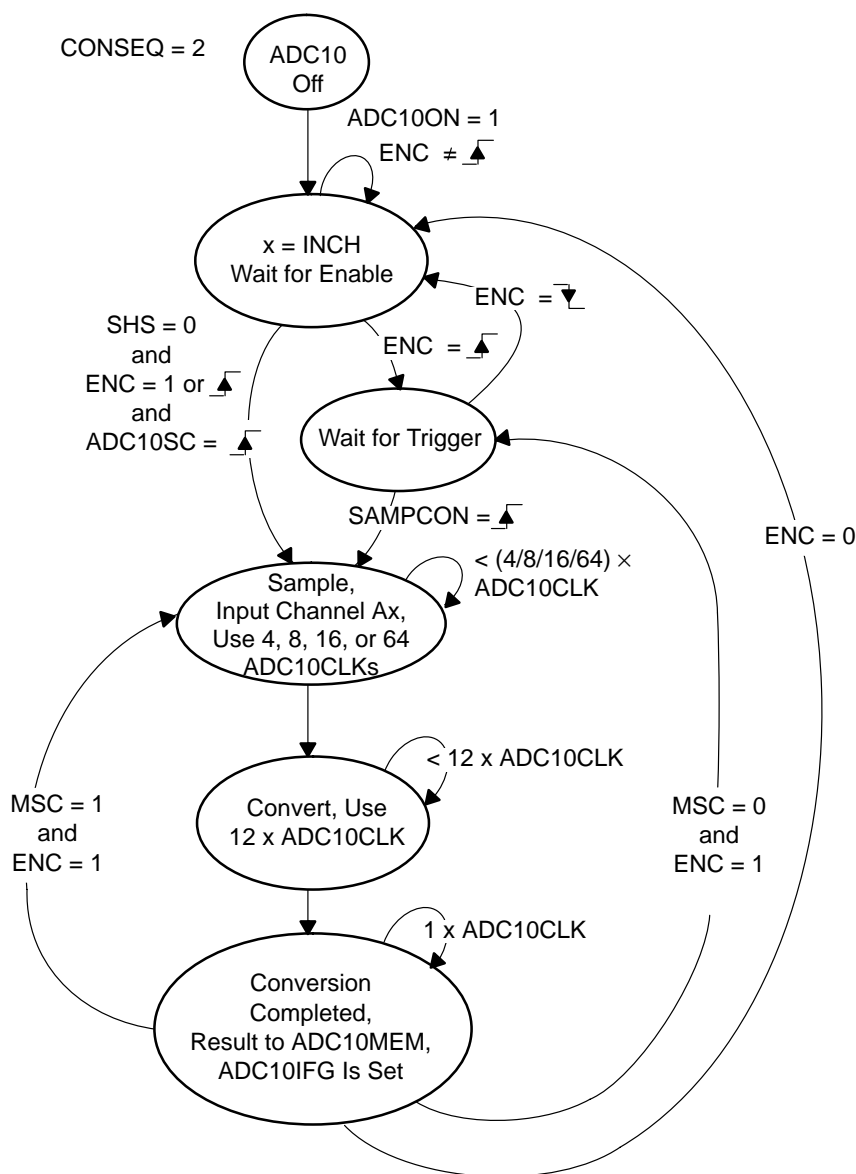
The conversion mode may be changed without first stopping the conversions. When this is done, the new mode takes effect after the current conversion completes (see also the *Switching Between Conversion Modes* section).

There are three ways to stop repeated conversions on a single channel:

- 1) Select single-channel mode instead of repeat-single-channel mode with the CONSEQ bits. When this is done, the current conversion is completed normally, the result is loaded into ADC10MEM, and interrupt flag ADC10IFG is set.
- 2) Reset the ENC bit (ADC10CTL0.1) to stop conversions after the current conversion is completed. Again, the result is loaded into ADC10MEM and the associated interrupt flag ADC10IFG is set.
- 3) Select single-channel mode instead of repeat-single-channel mode and then reset the enable-conversion bit (ENC). When this is done, the current conversion stops immediately. However, the data in memory register ADC10MEM is unpredictable and interrupt flag ADC10IFG may or may not be set. This method is generally not recommended.

Figure 16–6 illustrates the repeat-single-channel mode.

Figure 16–6. Repeat-Single-Channel Mode



16.4.4 Repeat-Sequence-of-Channels Mode

The repeat-sequence-of-channels mode is identical to the sequence-of-channels mode, except the sequence is repeated continuously until stopped by software. Each time a conversion is completed, the results are loaded into register ADC10MEM and interrupt flag ADC10IFG is set. Additionally, If the interrupt-enable flag ADC10IE is set, an interrupt request is generated.

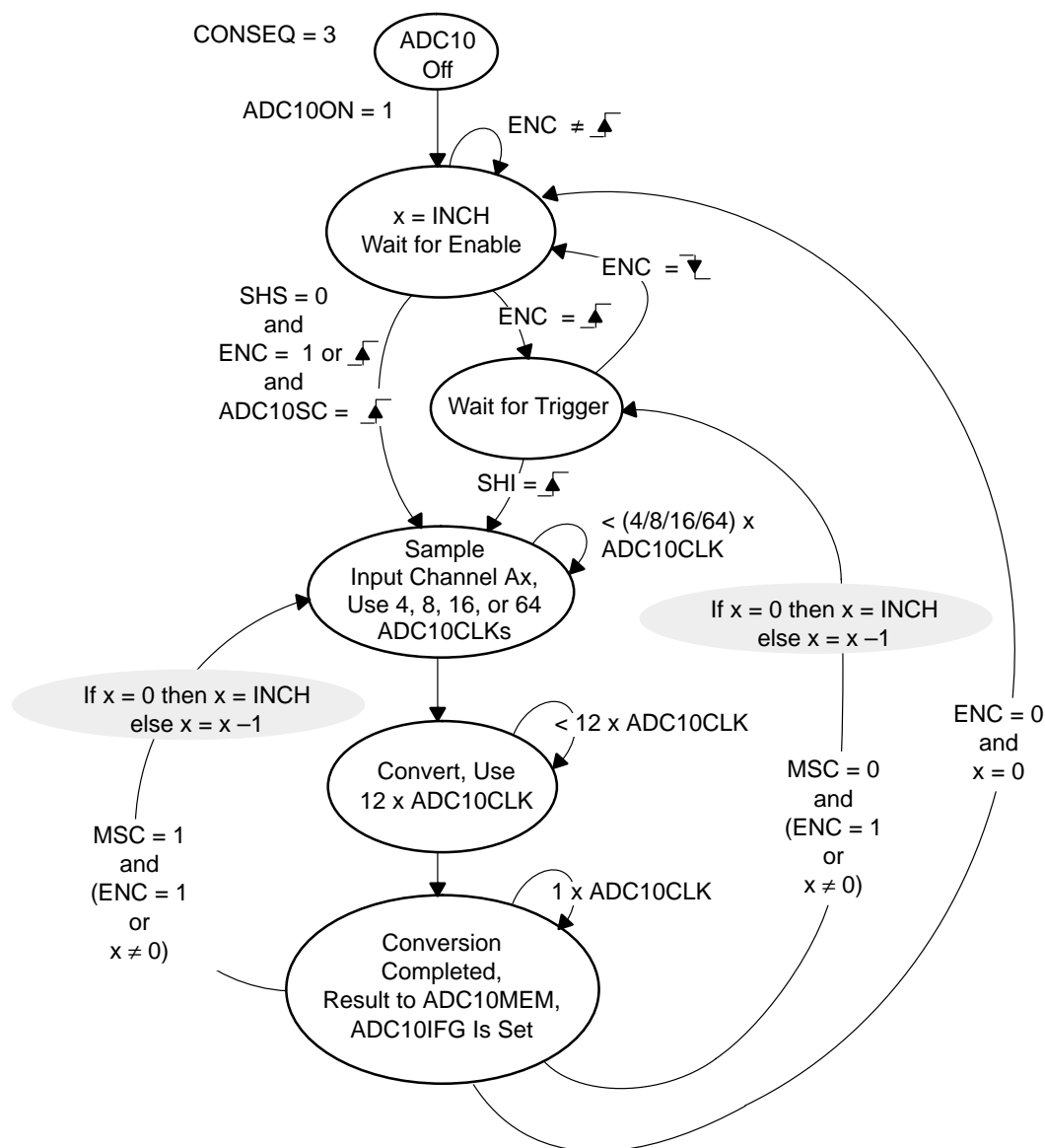
The conversion mode may be changed without first stopping the conversions. When this is done, the new mode takes effect after the current sequence completes, except when the new mode is repeat-single-channel. In this case, the sequence does not complete and the new mode takes effect immediately (see also the *Switching Between Conversion Modes* section).

There are four ways to stop repeat-sequence-of-channels conversions:

- 1) Select sequence-of-channels mode (CONSEQ = 1) instead of repeated sequence-of-channels mode (CONSEQ = 3). When this is done, the current sequence of conversions is completed normally and no further conversions take place. The conversion result is loaded into register ADC10MEM and interrupt flag ADC10IFG is set.
- 2) Reset bit ENC (ADC10CTL0.1). This stops the conversions after the current sequence is completed. The conversion result is stored in register ADC10MEM and interrupt flag ADC10IFG is set.
- 3) Select repeat-single-channel mode (CONSEQ = 2) instead of the repeat-sequence-of-channel mode, and then select single-channel mode. The current conversion is completed normally. The current conversion result is loaded into register ADC10MEM and interrupt flag ADC10IFG is set.
- 4) Select single-channel mode (CONSEQ = 0) and reset enable-conversion bit ENC. The current conversion is stopped immediately. The data in memory register ADC10MEM is unpredictable and interrupt flag ADC10IFG may or may not be set. This method is generally not recommended.

Figure 16–7 illustrates the repeat-sequence-of-channels mode.

Figure 16–7. Repeat-Sequence-of-Channels Mode



16.4.5 Switching Between Conversion Modes

Changing the mode of operation of the ADC10 while the converter is not actively running is done simply by selecting the new mode of operation with the CONSEQ bits. However, if the conversion mode is changed while the converter is actively running, intermediate and undesirable modes can be accidentally selected if both CONSEQ bits are changed in a single instruction. Therefore, the following mode changes should be avoided while the converter is running: $0 \rightarrow 3$, $1 \rightarrow 2$, $2 \rightarrow 1$, and $3 \rightarrow 0$.

The intermediate modes are caused by the asynchronous clocks for the CPU and the ADC10. These intermediate modes can be avoided simply by changing only one CONSEQ bit per instruction. For example, to change from mode 0 to mode 3 while the converter is actively running, the following instructions could be used:

```
BIS #CONSEQ_0,&ADC10CTL1    ; Example: 0 → 3, first
.....                      ; step is 0 → 1
BIS #CONSEQ_1,&ADC10CTL1 ... ; second step is 1 → 3
```

Acceptable sequence modifications are: 0 → 1, 0 → 2, 1 → 0, 1 → 3, 2 → 0, 2 → 3, 3 → 1, and 3 → 2.

16.4.6 Power Down

The ADC10 incorporates two bits (ADC10ON and REFON) for power savings. ADC10ON turns on the A/D core and REFON turns on the reference generator. Each bit is individually controllable by software. The ADC10 is turned off completely if both bits are reset. Register ADC10MEM is not affected by either of these bits and can be accessed and modified at any time (see the *ADC10 Control Registers* section). Note, however, that ADC10ON and REFON may only be modified if ENC=0.

Additionally, other ADC10 functions are automatically switched on and off as needed—if possible—to realize additional power savings—even while the ADC10 is running.

Caution! Powering Down Active Converter

Do not power down the converter or the reference generator while the converter is active. Conversion results will be false.

It is possible to disable the reference generator and the ADC10 by resetting bits ADC10ON and REFON before an active conversion or sequence of conversions has completed. For example, if the conversion mode is set to sequence-of-channels, and software resets the ENC bit immediately after the sequence begins, the ADC10ON and REFON bits can then be reset before the sequence completes. If this occurs, the ADC10 will be powered down immediately and the conversion results will be false.

Caution! Considerations Before Turning the ADC10 and Voltage Reference On or Off.

ADC10 turnon time: when the ADC10 is turned on with the ADC10ON bit, the turnon time noted in the data sheet (t_{ADC10ON}) must be observed before a conversion is started. Otherwise, the results will be false.

Reference-voltage settling Time: When the built-in reference is turned on with the REFON bit, the settling timing noted in the data sheet must be observed before a conversion is started. Otherwise, the results will be false until the reference settles. Once all internal and external references have settled, no additional settling time is required when selecting or changing the conversion range for each channel.

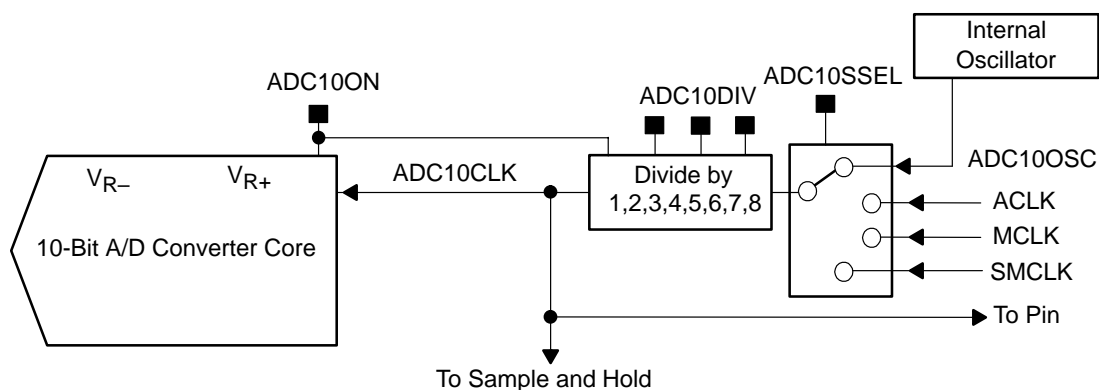
Settling time of external signals: external signals must be settled before performing the first conversion after turning on the ADC10. Otherwise, the conversion results will be false.

16.5 Conversion Clock and Conversion Speed

The conversion clock for the ADC10 (ADC10CLK shown in Figure 16–8) can be selected from several sources and can be divided by any factor from 1–8. The ADC10CLK is used for the A/D conversion and to generate the sampling period [if pulse-sampling mode is selected ($\text{SHP}=1$)]. Possible clock sources are the internal oscillator (ADC10OSC), ACLK, MCLK, and SMCLK.

The internal oscillator generates the ADC10OSC signal and is in the 5-MHz range (see device data sheet for specifications). The internal-oscillator frequency will vary with individual devices, supply voltage, and temperature. A stable clock source should be used for the conversion clock when accurate conversion timing is required.

Figure 16–8. The Conversion Clock ADC10CLK



The conversion starts after the sample period is completed (see the *Sampling* section). A total of thirteen conversion clocks (ADC10CLK) are required to complete a conversion (12 ADC10CLKs) and store the result in ADC10MEM (1 ADC10CLK). The conversion time is:

$$t_{\text{conversion}} = 13 \times (\text{ADC10DIV} / f_{\text{ADC10CLK}})$$

Where ADC10DIV is any integer from 1 to 8. The ADC10CLK frequency must not exceed the maximum and minimum frequencies specified in the data sheet. Either violation may result in inaccurate conversion results.

Note: Availability of ADC10CLK During Conversion

Users must ensure that the clock chosen for ADC10CLK remains active until the ADC10 can complete its operation. If the clock is removed while the ADC10 is active, the operation can not be completed and the end-of-conversion feedback to the program is not possible.

16.6 Sampling

16.6.1 Sampling Operation

The sample-and-hold circuitry samples the analog signal with the 4, 8, 16, or 64 ADC10CLKs prior to the conversion.

Figure 16–9. Sample and Conversion, Basic Signal Timing, ADC10OSC Selected for ADC10CLK

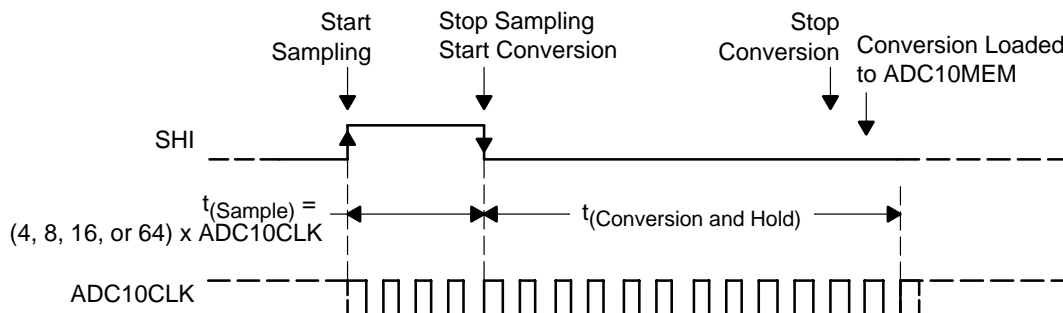
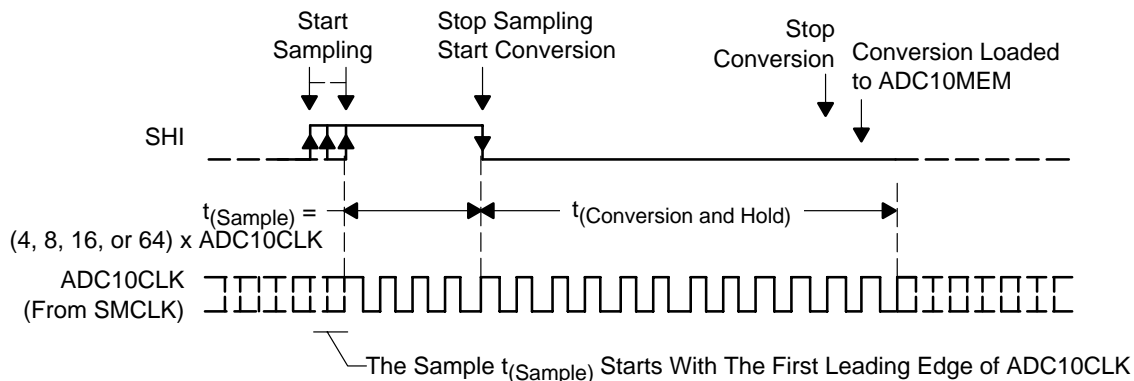


Figure 16–10. Sample and Conversion, Basic Signal Timing, SMCLK Selected for ADC10CLK



The analog input signal must be valid and steady during the sampling period in order to obtain an accurate conversion. It is also desirable not to have any digital activity on any adjacent channels during the whole conversion period to ensure that errors due to supply glitching, ground bounce, or crosstalk do not corrupt the conversion results.

In addition, gains and losses in internal charge limit the hold time. The user should ensure that the data sheet limits are not violated. Otherwise, the sampled analog voltage may increase or decrease, resulting in false conversion values.

16.6.2 Sample Signal Input Selection

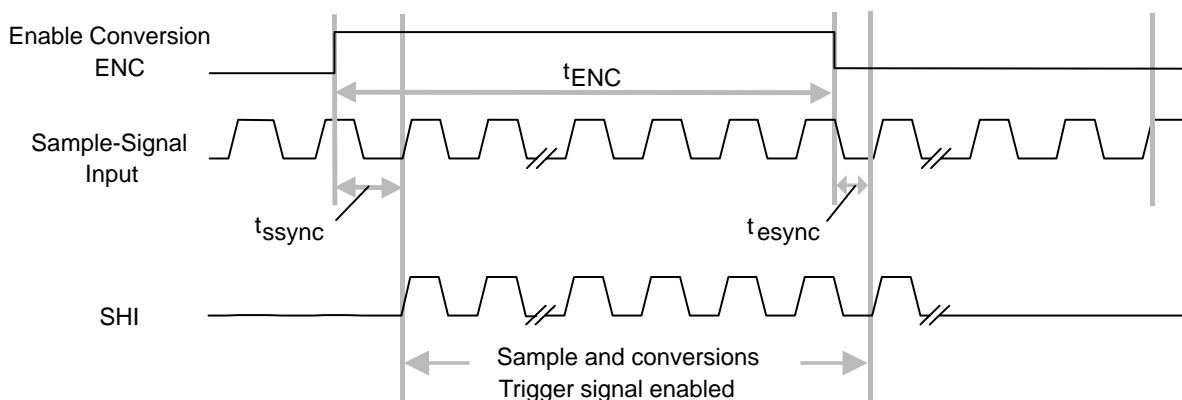
The leading edge of the sample-signal input SHI triggers the sample ($\{4, 8, 16, \text{ or } 64\} \times \text{ADC10CLK}$) and conversion cycle ($13 \times \text{ADC10CLK}$).

The sample-signal input SHI is selected by the SHS bits in ADC10CTL1. There are four choices for the sample-signal input: ADC10SC, Timer_A.OUT0, Timer_A.OUT1, and Timer_A.OUT2. The polarity of the sample-signal input may be selected by the ISSH bit (see Figure 16–1).

The sample-signal input can be asynchronous to a conversion-enable, and is synchronized and enabled by the ENC bit. Without synchronization, the first sampling period after the ENC bit is set could be erroneous, depending on where the ENC bit is set within the cycle of the input signal. In Figure 16–11, for example, note that the ENC bit is set in the middle of a high pulse from the sample-signal input. If the sample-input signal were simply passed directly to the S/H, the first conversion of the example would be erroneous because the first sampling period is too short.

To prevent this problem, synchronization logic is implemented in the sample input selection switch. This ensures that the first sample-and-conversion cycle begins with the first rising edge of the sample-input signal applied *after* the ENC bit is set. Additionally, the last sample-and-conversion begins with the first rising edge of the sample-input signal *after* ENC has been reset.

Figure 16–11. Synchronized Sample and Conversion Signal With Enable Conversion



16.6.3 Using the MSC Bit

If the operating mode is other than single-channel single-conversion (CONSEQ > 0), the MSC bit can be used to configure the converter to perform the successive conversions automatically and as quickly as possible.

If MSC = 0, then a rising edge of the SHI signal is required to trigger each sample-and-conversion, regardless of what mode the converter is in. When MSC = 1 and CONSEQ > 0, the first rising edge of the SHI signal triggers the first conversion, but successive conversions are triggered automatically as soon as the prior conversion is completed. Additional rising edges on SHI are ignored until the sequence is completed or until the ENC bit is toggled (depending on mode). The function of the ENC bit is unchanged when using the MSC bit. See Figure 16–12 and Figure 16–13.

Figure 16–12. Use of MSC Bit With Nonrepeated Modes

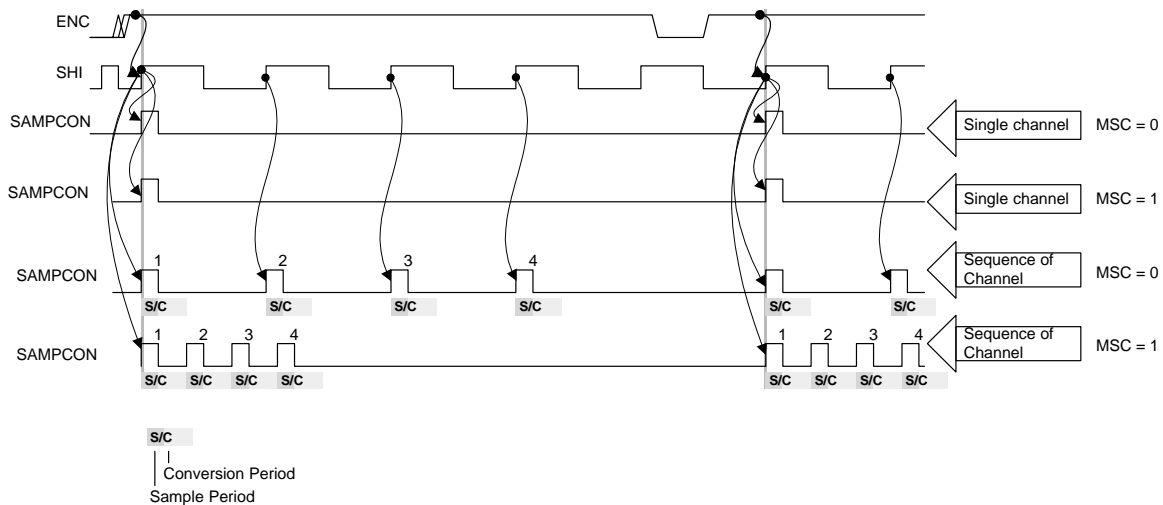
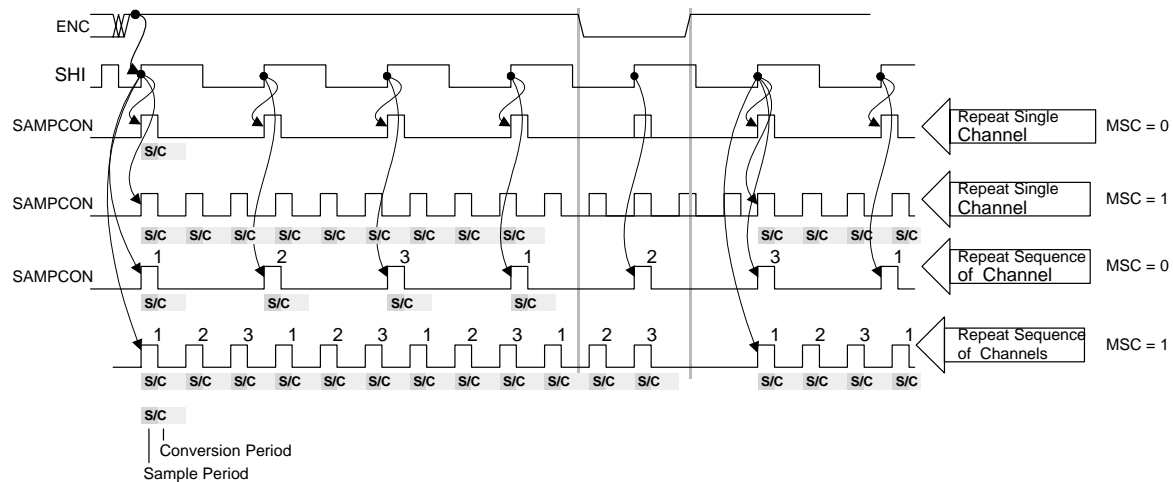


Figure 16–13. Use of MSC Bit With Repeated Modes



16.6.4 Sample Timing Considerations

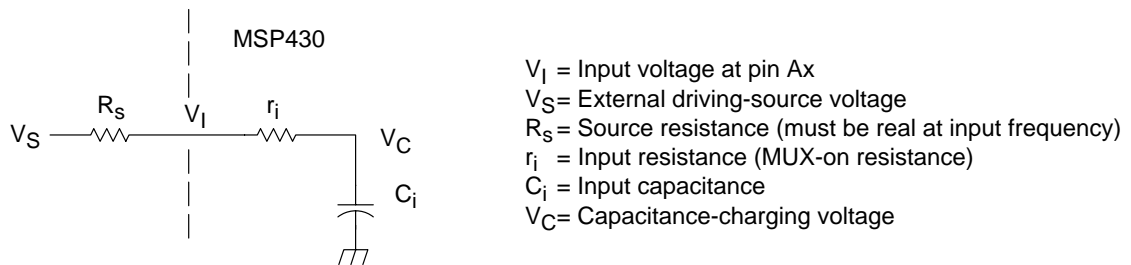
The A/D converter uses the charge redistribution method. Thus, when the inputs are internally switched to sample the input analog signal, the switching action causes displacement currents to flow into and out of the analog inputs. These current spikes or transients occur at the leading and falling edges of the sample pulse, and usually decay and settle before causing any problems because typically the external time constant is less than that presented by the internal effective RC. Internally, the analog inputs see an effective maximum nominal RC of a 30 pF (C-array) capacitor in series with a 2-k Ω resistor (R_{on} of switches). However, if the external dynamic-source impedance is large, then these transients may not settle within the allocated sampling time to ensure 10 bits of accuracy.

It is imperative that the proper sample timing be used for accurate conversions. The next section discusses how to calculate the sample timing.

16.6.4.1 Simplified Sample-Timing Analysis

Using the equivalent circuit shown in Figure 16–14, the time required to charge the analog-input capacitance from 0 to V_S within 1/2 LSB can be derived as follows.

Figure 16–14. Equivalent Circuit



The capacitance-charging voltage is given by:

$$V_C = V_S \left(1 - \exp \left(\frac{-tc}{R_t \times C_i} \right) \right) \quad (1)$$

Where:

$$R_t = R_S + Z_i$$

$$t_c = \text{Cycle time}$$

The input impedance Z_i is ~1 k Ω at 3.0 V, and is higher (~ 2 k Ω) at 1.8 V. The final voltage to 1/2 LSB is given by:

$$V_C (1/2\text{LSB}) = V_S - \left(\frac{V_S}{2048} \right) \quad (2)$$

Equating equation 1 to equation 2 and solving for cycle time t_c gives:

$$V_S - \left(\frac{V_S}{2048} \right) = V_S \left(1 - \exp \left(\frac{-tc}{R_t \times C_i} \right) \right) \quad (3)$$

and the time to charge to 1/2 LSB (minimum sampling time) is:

$$t_{ch}(1/2 \text{ LSB}) = R_t \times C_i \times \ln(2048)$$

Where:

$$\ln(2048) = 7.625$$

Therefore, with the values given, the time for the analog input signal to settle is:

$$t_{ch}(1/2 \text{ LSB}) = (R_s + 1 \text{ k}\Omega) \times C_i \times 7.625 \quad (4)$$

This time must be less than the sampling time.

The maximum ADC10CLK frequency is:

$$f_{\text{ADC10CLK(max)}} = \frac{4}{t_{ch}(1/2 \text{ LSB})} \quad (5)$$

This frequency must not exceed the maximum ADC10CLK frequency specified in the data sheet.

16.7 ADC10 Control Registers

Two control registers and one conversion-memory register are used to configure the ADC10:

Register	Short Form	Register Type	Address	Initial State
ADC input enable	ADC10AE	Read/write	04Ah	Reset with POR
ADC control register 0	ADC10CTL0	Read/write	01B0h	Reset with POR
ADC control register 1	ADC10CTL1	Read/write	01B2h	Reset with POR
ADC memory	ADC10MEM	Read	01B4h	Unchanged

Note: These registers may be accessed by any instruction subject to register-access restrictions.

16.7.1 Control Registers ADC10CTL0 and ADC10CTL1

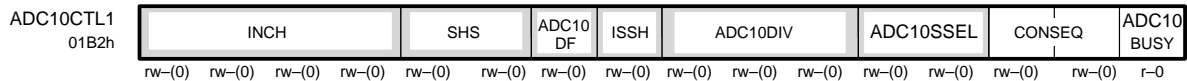
All control bits of ADC10CTL0 and ADC10CTL1 are reset during POR. Most of the control bits in registers ADC10CTL0 and ADC10CTL1 can only be modified if ENC is reset. These bits are marked . All other bits can be modified at any time.

The control bits of control register ADC10CTL0 and ADC10CTL1 are:

	15	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	
ADC10CTL0 01B0h	Sref			ADC10 SHT		ADC10 SR	REF+ Out	REF Burst	MSC	2_5V	REF ON	ADC10 ON	ADC10 IE	ADC10 IFG	ENC	ADC10 SC
	rw-(0)	rw-(0)	rw-(0)	rw-(0)	rw-(0)	rw-(0)	rw-(0)	rw-(0)	rw-(0)	rw-(0)	rw-(0)	rw-(0)	rw-(0)	rw-(0)	rw-(0)	rw-(0)

ADC10SC	bit0	<p>Sample and convert. The ADC10SC bit can be used to control the conversion with software if ENC is set. It is recommended to have ISSH=0. Setting (ISSH=0) or resetting (ISSH=1) the ADC10SC bit starts the sample-and- conversion operation. When the A/D conversion is complete (BUSY=0) the ADC10SC bit is automatically set to the appropriate level for the next conversion.</p> <p>All automatic-sequence functions (CONSEQ={1,2,3}) and multiple sample-and-conversion functions (MSC=1) are executed normally. Therefore, when using ADC10SC the software must ensure that the frequency of the timing of the ADC10SC bit meets the applicable timing requirements.</p> <p>NOTE: The start of a conversion by software (SHS=0, in ADC10CTL1) is possible by setting both ENC and ADC10SC control bits within one instruction.</p>
ENC	bit1	<p>Enable conversion. The software (via ADC10SC) or external signals can start a conversion only if the enable-conversion bit ENC is set. Most of the control bits in ADC10CTL0 and ADC10CTL1 may be changed only if ENC is low.</p> <p>0 : No conversion can be started. This is the initial state. 1 : The first sample and conversion starts with the first rising edge of the SHI signal. The selected operation proceeds as long as ENC is set.</p> <p>CONSEQ=0, ADC10BUSY=1, ENC= 1 → 0: In this mode, if ENC is reset, the current conversion is immediately stopped. The conversion results are unpredictable.</p> <p>CONSEQ≠0, ADC10BUSY=x, ENC= 1 → 0: In these modes, if ENC is reset, the current conversion or sequence is completed and the conversion results are valid. The conversion activities are stopped after the current conversion or sequence is completed.</p>
ADC10IFG	bit2	<p>ADC10 interrupt flag. The ADC10IFG is set if register ADC10MEM has been loaded with the conversion result.</p> <p>It is automatically reset when the interrupt service starts. It may also be reset by software, such as BIC #ADC10IFG,&ADC10CTL0.</p>
ADC10IE	bit3	<p>ADC10 interrupt enable. An ADC10 interrupt request (ADC10IFG = 1) is accepted if the ADC10IE bit and the general interrupt enable bit GIE are set.</p>
ADC10ON	bit4	<p>Turns on the 10-bit ADC core. Settling-time constraints must be met when the ADC10 core is powered up.</p> <p>0: Power consumption of the core is off. No conversion will be started. 1: ADC core is supplied with power. If no A/D conversion is needed, ADC10ON can be reset to conserve power.</p>
REFON	bit5	<p>Reference voltage ON.</p> <p>0: The internal-reference voltage is switched off. No power is consumed from the reference-voltage generator. 1: The internal-reference voltage is switched on. The reference-voltage generator consumes power. When the reference generator is switched on, the settling time of the reference voltage must be completed before the first sampling and conversion is started.</p>

2_5V	bit6	Reference-voltage level. 0: The internal reference voltage is 1.5V, if REFON = 1. 1: The internal reference voltage is 2.5V, if REFON = 1.
MSC	bit7	Multiple sample and conversion. Valid only when the A/D mode is chosen as repeat-single-channel, sequence-of-channel or repeat-sequence-of-channels (CONSEQ≠0). 0: The sampling timer starts with a rising edge of the SHI signal to trigger each sample-and-conversion. 1: The first rising edge of the SHI signal triggers the sampling timer, but further sample-and-conversion are performed automatically as soon as the prior conversion is completed—without additional rising edges of SHI. Additional rising edges of SHI are ignored until the sequence has completed or the ENC bit has been toggled (depending on mode).
REFBurst	bit8	The internal reference voltage is externally available only during the sample and conversion period if REFBurst=1 and REF+Out=1. This reduces system current consumption. The internal reference voltage is continuously available externally if REFBurst=0 and REF+Out=1.
REF+Out	bit9	The internal reference voltage is available externally (see device data sheet for pin details). 0: The internal reference voltage is not available externally. 1: The internal reference voltage is available externally. Note that the corresponding ADC10AE bit must also be set for the appropriate pin on which the reference voltage is available.
ADC10SR	bit 10	Maximum sample rate selection of the ADC10: 0: Maximum sample rate is ~200 ksps 1: Reduced sample rate is ~50 ksps Reducing the maximum sampling rate of the ADC10 reduces the current consumption of the internal reference buffer. Select the slower sampling rate to save system power consumption. See the device data sheet for actual sampling rate data.
ADC10SHT	bits11, 12	Selects the number of ADC10CLKs for the sample time. 0: 4 x ADC10CLKs 1: 8 x ADC10CLKs 2: 16 x ADC10CLKs 3: 64 x ADC10CLKs
Sref	bits 13–15	The Sref bits select one of six reference voltage combinations used for conversion. The conversion is done between the selected voltage range V_{R+} and V_{R-} . 0: $V_{R+} = AV_{CC}$ and $V_{R-} = AV_{SS}$ 1: $V_{R+} = V_{REF+}$ and $V_{R-} = AV_{SS}$ 2,3: $V_{R+} = V_{eREF+}$ and $V_{R-} = AV_{SS}$ 4: $V_{R+} = AV_{CC}$ and $V_{R-} = V_{REF-}/V_{eREF-}$ 5: $V_{R+} = V_{REF+}$ and $V_{R-} = V_{REF-}/V_{eREF-}$ 6,7: $V_{R+} = V_{eREF+}$ and $V_{R-} = V_{REF-}/V_{eREF-}$



ADC10BUSY bit 0 The ADC10BUSY bit indicates an active sample or conversion operation. It is used specifically when the conversion mode is single-channel-single-conversion, because if the ENC bit is reset in this mode, the conversion stops immediately and the results are invalid. Therefore, the ADC10BUSY bit should be tested to verify that it is 0 before resetting the ENC bit when in single-channel-single-conversion mode.

The busy bit also indicates if sequence or repeat mode is still active even if the end of these modes is already started by resetting the ENC bit.

0: No operation is active.

1: A sample period, conversion or conversion sequence is active.

CONSEQ bits 1–2 The CONSEQ bits select the conversion mode. Repeat mode is on if the CONSEQ.1 is set.

0: Single-channel-single-conversion mode. One single channel is converted once.

1: Sequence-of-channels mode. A sequence of conversions is executed once.

2: Repeat-single-channel mode. Conversions on a single channel are repeated until CONSEQ is set to 0 or 1.

3: Repeat-sequence-of-channels. A sequence of conversions is repeated until CONSEQ is set to 0 or 1.

NOTE: See also the *Conversion Modes* section.

ADC10SSEL bits 3–4 Select the clock source for the converter core

0: ADC10 internal oscillator, ADC10OSC

1: ACLK

2: MCLK

3: SMCLK

ADC10DIV bits 5–7 Select the division rate for the clock source selected by ADC10SSEL bits.
0 to 7: Divide selected clock source by 1 to 8
The divider's output signal name is ADC10CLK. Eleven of these clocks are required for a conversion.

ISSH bit8 Invert sample-input signal.

0: The sample-input signal is not inverted.

1: The sample-input signal is inverted.

ADC10DF bit9 The conversion data format in ADC10MEM is either unipolar straight binary (ADC10DF=0) or 2's-complement (ADC10DF=1) format.

Binary format:

Zero scale code = 000h, $V_{code} = V_{R-}$

Full scale code = 3FFh, $V_{code} = V_{R+} - 1 \text{ LSB}$

2's-complement format:

Minus full scale code = 08000h, $V_{code} = V_{R-}$

Full scale code = 07FC0h, $V_{code} = V_{R+} - 1 \text{ LSB}$

SHS	bits 10–11	Source select for the sample-input signal. 0: Control bit ADC10SC is selected. 1: Timer_A.OUT1 2: Timer_A.OUT0 3: Timer_A.OUT2
INCH	bits 12–15	Input channel bits are used to select which ADC10 input channel is converted

Warning! Modifying ADC Control Register During Active Conversion

The enable conversion control bit (ENC) in the ADC10CTL0 register protects most bits from modification during an active conversion. However, some bits that are necessary for proper completion of active conversions and interrupt enable bits can be modified independently of ENC. The user must use caution when modifying these bits to ensure an active conversion is not corrupted, or to not use corrupted data.

To avoid corrupting any active conversions, stop the conversion, wait for the busy bit to be reset, reset the ENC bit, then modify the control bits.

16.7.2 Analog (Input) Enable Control Register

These control bits are implemented for two operational reasons:

- 1) To stop any throughput current at the input buffers if an analog signal is applied
- 2) To prevent any feedback from the general-purpose I/O circuitry to the analog signal's source.

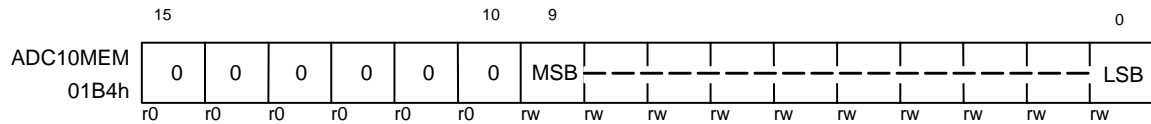
When using a particular analog input, the corresponding ADC10AE.x bist must be set.

	7							0
ADC10AE 04Ah	ADC10 AE.7	ADC10 AE.6	ADC10 AE.5	ADC10 AE.4	ADC10 AE.3	ADC10 AE.2	ADC10 AE.1	ADC10 AE.0
	rw–(0)	rw–(0)	rw–(0)	rw–(0)	rw–(0)	rw–(0)	rw–(0)	rw–(0)

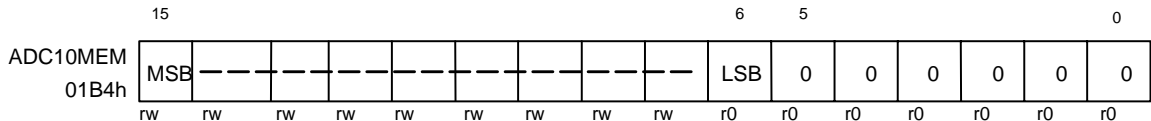
Bit5 0–7 ADC analog input enable
0: The ADC analog input is disabled.
1: The ADC analog input is enabled.

16.7.3 Conversion-Memory Register ADC10MEM

One register ADC10MEM is loaded after a conversion is completed with unipolar binary.



or with 2's-complement data format:

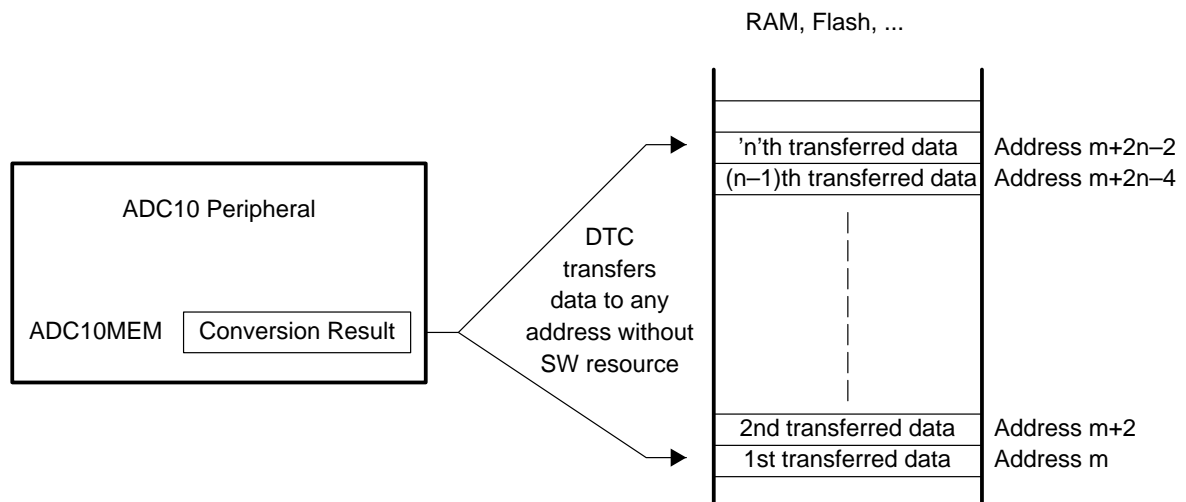


16.8 Data Transfer Control—High-Speed Conversion Support

The ADC10 includes data transfer control (DTC) logic. DTC logic is used to automatically transfer the ADC10 conversion results to other memory locations (typically RAM). Often in microcontroller applications, an end-of-conversion flag or an interrupt flag is polled, or an interrupt service request is used to handle the result of A/D conversions. With the DTC logic hardware of the ADC10, the conversion result can be automatically transferred to a selected destination. No software intervention is required until the predefined amount of conversion data has been transferred.

The DTC logic of the ADC10 is especially useful in digital signal processing applications that require high conversion throughput, such as glass breakage sensors, motion detectors, signal prediction (e.g. electronic fuses), high-quality voice processing, etc. The DTC concept is illustrated in Figure 16–15

Figure 16–15. The DTC Concept



Some applications may require the use of the DTC logic. Others may simply employ it for convenience. To determine if the use of DTC logic is required for an application, users should calculate the maximum conversion rate (throughput) required for the application. An example of how to do this follows.

The example is based on the following assumptions and definitions:

- The system clock period (t_{MCLK}) is 200 ns ($MCLK=5$ MHz)
- The maximum allowable CPU load for ADC conversion handling is 4%
- N is the number of clock cycles needed to transfer the conversion result to RAM using software.

The formula to calculate the maximum conversion rate is:

$$CRate = CPUload / (N \times t_{MCLK} \times 100)$$

Example:

Interrupt handler without DTC:

	CPU clock cycles
ADC10Int	6
MOV &ADC10MEM,0(Rx)	6
INCD Rx	1
RETI	5

	N = 18

; The interrupt handler only moves the data to memory.
; This SW example needs to have register Rx reserved only
; for the ADC10.

Maximum conversion rate:

$$CRate = 4 / (18 \times 200E-9 \times 100)$$

$$CRate = 11.1 \text{ [ksps]}$$

Using DTC:

	CPU clock cycles
; DTC requires 1 MCLK:	1
; The data transfer stops the CPU for 1 clock cycle to	
; transfer the data to the destination.	

Maximum conversion rate:

$$CRate = 4 / (1 \times 200E-9 \times 100)$$

$$CRate = 200 \text{ [ksps]}$$

16.8.1 DTC Operation

A DTC data transfer is triggered each time a conversion result is loaded into the ADC10MEM buffer (if DTC is enabled and properly initialized). When the DTC operation is employed, the ADC10IFG flag is not set with each update of the ADC10MEM buffer. Instead, it is set after a complete block of results has been transferred.

The DTC supports transfers of one or two blocks of n conversion results (see description of bit ADC10TB in the DTC register description). The two-block

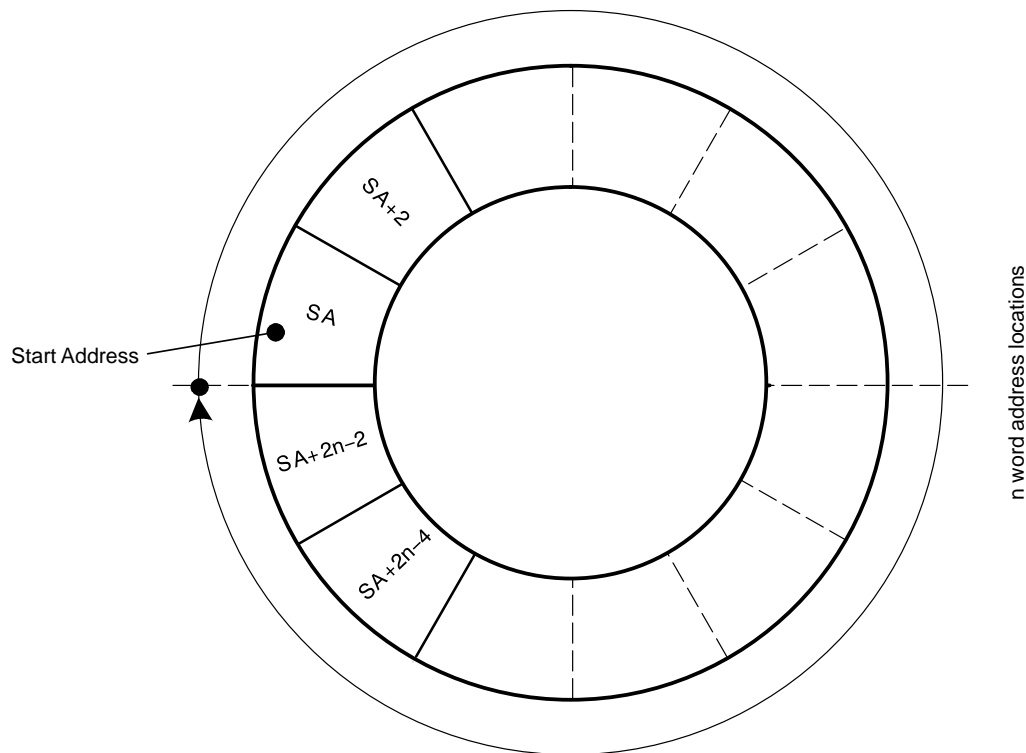
transfer mode allows for CPU operation on one block of data while the other block is being transferred. In addition, the DTC has a one-time-through-the-block(s) mode or a continuous transfer mode. When the continuous transfer mode is enabled ($\text{ADC10CT}=1$), the DTC continuously transfers ADC10 conversion results, in either one-block mode or two-block mode, until the continuous mode is disabled ($\text{ADC10CT}=0$), or until the block starting address is modified in the ADC10SA register. If the continuous mode is not enabled, the DTC stops transferring ADC10 conversions after the complete block has been transferred (one-block mode), or both blocks have been transferred (two-block mode).

Each DTC transfer requires one CPU clock (MCLK). During the DTC transfer, the CPU is halted for the one clock cycle required for the transfer. The DTC operates regardless of the mode the CPU is in at the time of transfer—active mode, or one of the low-power modes.

16.8.1.1 One-Block Transfer Mode

The DTC is enabled if $n \neq 0$. The block mode is set with the ADC10TB bit. If this bit is cleared, the DTC is in one-block mode. In one-block mode, the address range of the block begins with the value in the ADC10SA register and ends at $\text{SA}+2n-2$, where SA is the value of the ADC10SA register and n is the number of data in the block (also the value of the ADC10DTC1 register). The one-block transfer is illustrated in Figure 16–16.

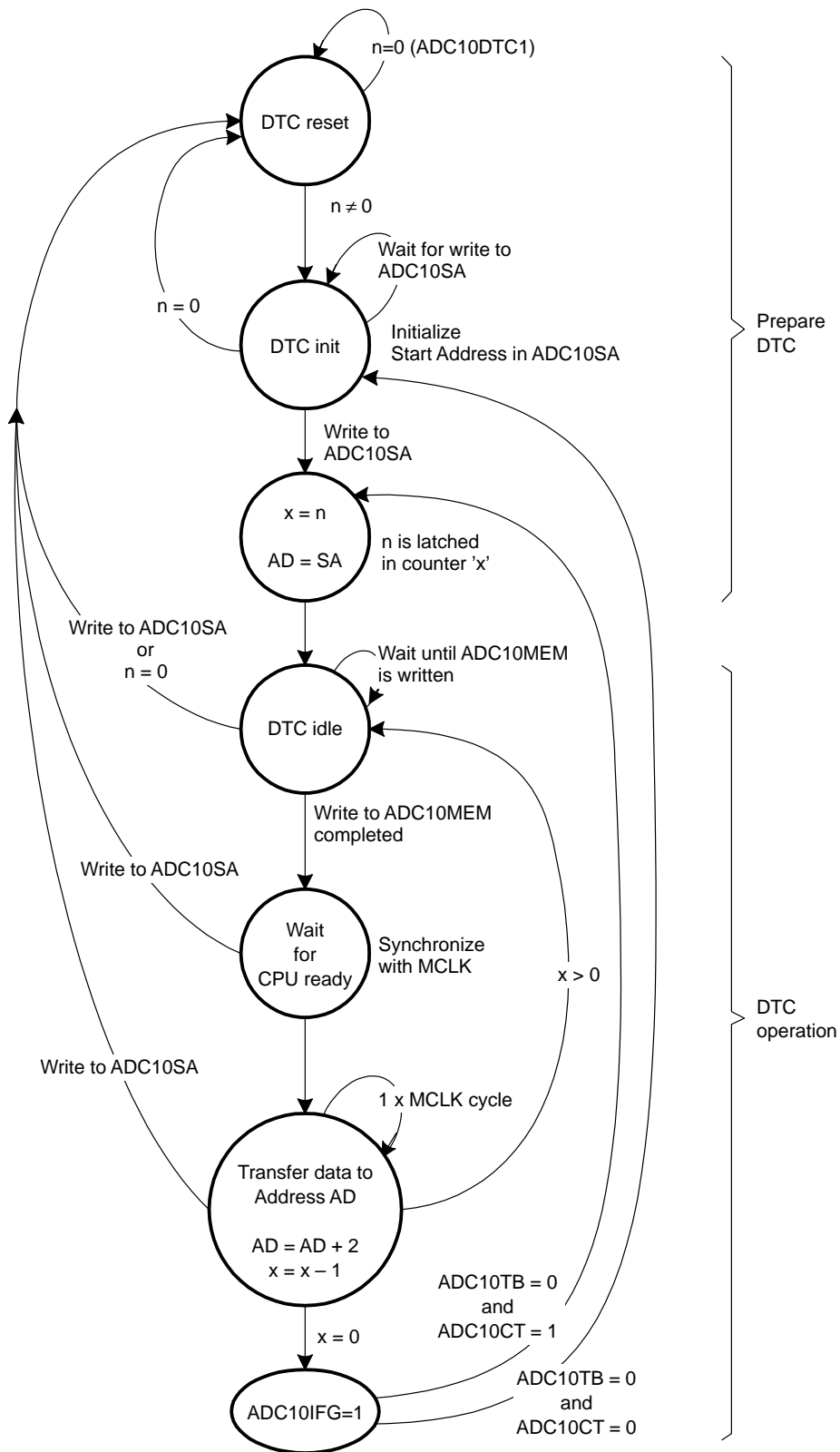
Figure 16–16. One-Block Transfer



The first loading of ADC10MEM starts the data transfer operation. The DTC transfers the ADC10MEM data buffer to the word at address pointer SA. Next, the address pointer is incremented by two and the internal transfer counter, initially set to n , is decremented by one. This operation repeats with each loading of ADC10MEM until the transfer counter becomes zero. After the last transfer of ADC10MEM has completed, the ADC10IFG is set. An interrupt is executed if the general interrupt enable bit (GIE) and the ADC10 interrupt enable bit (ADC10IE) are both set. No software intervention is required during the block transfer. The function of the one-block mode is shown in Figure 16–17 as a state diagram.

In one-block mode, when the control bit ADC10CT (continuous mode) is set, indicating continuous mode, the DTC circuitry does not pause or stop after the block is finished. The address pointer and the transfer counter are reset and begin transfers again with the next ADC10MEM buffer load. In this configuration, the application must have read all values in the block before the DTC begins filling the block again. Otherwise, some conversion results will be overwritten. If bit ADC10CT is reset, the DTC transfers cease after the block has been transferred.

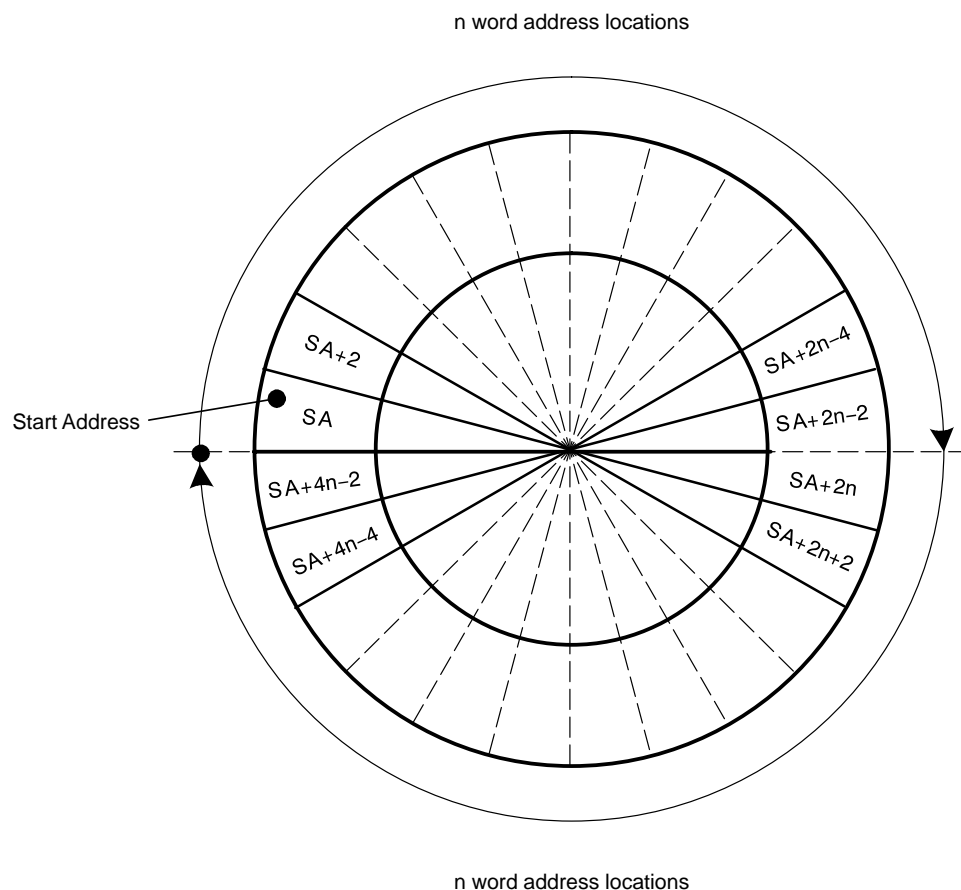
Figure 16–17. State Diagram for Data Transfer Control in One-Block Transfer Mode



16.8.1.2 Two-Block Transfer Mode

The DTC is enabled if $n \neq 0$. The block mode is set with the ADC10TB bit. If this bit is set, the DTC is in two-block mode. In two-block mode, the address range of the first block begins with the value in the ADC10SA register and ends at $SA+2n-2$, where SA is the value of the ADC10SA register and n is the number of data in the block (also the value of the ADC10DTC1 register). The address range for the second block is $SA+2n$ to $SA+4n-2$. The two-block transfer is shown in Figure 16–18.

Figure 16–18. Two-Block Transfer

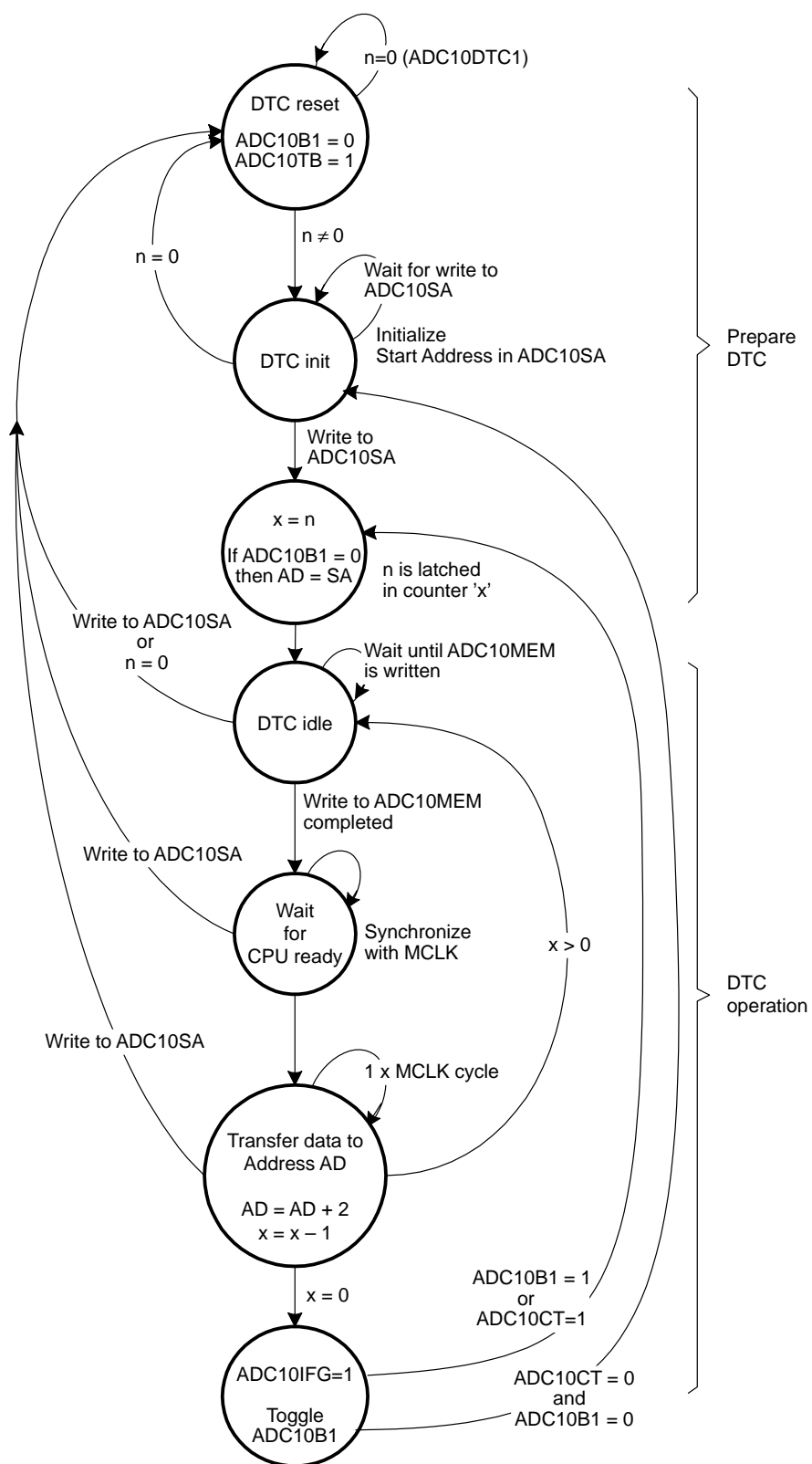


Like in one-block mode, the first loading of ADC10MEM starts the data transfer operation into block one. The DTC transfers the ADC10MEM data buffer to the word at address pointer SA. Then the address pointer is incremented by two and the internal transfer counter, initially set to n , is decremented by one. This operation repeats with each loading of ADC10MEM until the transfer counter becomes zero. At that point, the first block is full, the ADC10IFG flag is set, and the ADC10B1 bit is set to indicate that block one is full. Additionally, since the ADC10IFG flag is set, an interrupt request is executed if both the general interrupt enable bit (GIE) and the ADC10IE bit are set. Next, the transfer counter is loaded with n again and the DTC waits for the ADC10MEM buffer to be loaded again. Upon the next load of the ADC10MEM buffer, the DTC begins transferring conversion results to block two in the same manner as described before. Again, after n transfers have completed, block two is full, so

the ADC10IFG flag is set (and an interrupt is requested if GIE and ADC10IE are set), and bit ADC10B1 is cleared. Bit ADC10B1 being cleared indicates that the transfers to block two have completed and block two is full of data. The ADC10B1 bit indicates to software which block is full of data, so the application software can process the data in either of the blocks while the other block is being loaded simultaneously. The state diagram for the two-block mode is shown in Figure 16–19.

In two-block mode, when the control bit ADC10CT (continuous mode) is set, indicating continuous mode, the DTC circuitry does not pause or stop after the second block is finished. Transfers into the first block begin with the next ADC10MEM buffer load after the second block is filled.. If bit ADC10CT is reset, the DTC transfers cease after both block transfers have completed.

Figure 16–19. State Diagram for Data Transfer Control in Two-Block Transfer Mode



16.8.2 Data Transfer Control Registers in ADC10

Three registers are used by the DTC section of the ADC10 module:

Register	Short Form	Register Type	Address	Initial State
ADC data transfer control register 0	ADC10DTC0	Read/write	048h	Reset with POR
ADC data transfer control register 1	ADC10DTC1	Read/write	049h	Reset with POR
ADC data transfer start address	ADC10SA	Read/write	01BCh	0200h

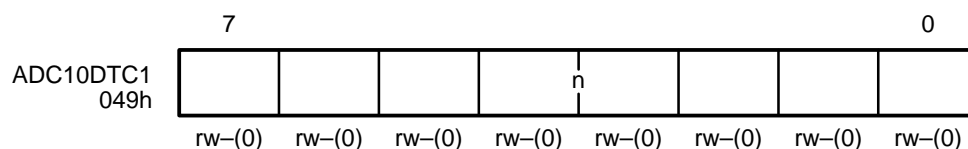
16.8.2.1 Data Transfer Control Registers ADC10DTC0 and ADC10DTC1

The data transfer control register ADC10DTC0 contains control bits for block 1 or 2 identification, continuous data transfer mode, and two-block mode.

ADC10DTC0 048h		Reserved		ADC10 TB	ADC10 CT	ADC10 B1	ADC10 Fetch
	r0	r0	r0	rw-(0)	rw-(0)	r-(0)	rw-(0)

- Bit 0: The ADC10Fetch bit is for debugging purposes only. If set, it delays the data transfer until the present CPU software instruction is completed. This bit should normally be reset.
- Bit 1: The ADC10B1 indicates if block 1 or block 2 is filled with ADC10 conversion results. The initial state is reset.
- The ADC10B1 bit is valid only after the ADC10IFG has been set the first time during operation of the DTC. Writing the start address (ADC10SA register) resets the ADC10IFG flag.
- Block 1 (SA to SA+2n-2) is filled with ADC10 conversion results.
 - Block 2 (SA+2n to SA+4n-2) is filled with ADC10 conversion results.
- Note: Bit ADC10B1 is useful only in two-block mode (ADC10TB=1).
- Bit 2: The ADC10CT bit enables the DTC to transfer data continuously.
- The data transfer stops after the block is transferred in one-block mode, or after both blocks are transferred in two-block mode.
 - The data is transferred continuously. DTC operation is stopped only if the ADC10CT bit is reset or if any data is written into the start address register ADC10SA. Note that if the ADC10CT bit is reset during a block transfer, the block transfer is completed successfully in one-block mode and both block transfers are completed successfully in two-block mode. See also the state diagrams shown in Figures 16-17 and 16-19.
- Bit 3: ADC10TB, the operation of the DTC writes the data into one or two blocks of n words. Using two destination blocks enables software to process one block while conversion proceeds and the DTC fills the other block with conversion results.
- One block transfer mode. The address range for the block is SA to SA+2n-2.
 - Two blocks transfer mode. The address ranges for the blocks are:
 - Block 1: SA to SA+2n-2
 - Block 2: SA+2n to SA+4n-2

The ADC10DTC1 register bits define the number of transfers in each block:

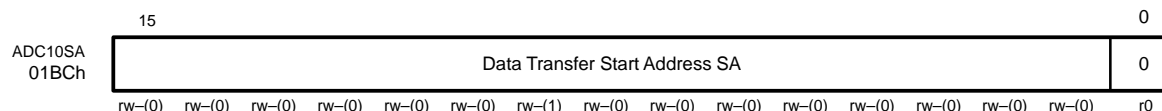


$n = 0$: No data transfer is enabled. The DTC state machine remains in the reset state, goes back to the reset state, or stops operation when an active transfer operation is completed. See also the state diagrams in Figures 16–17 and 16–19.

$n = 1$ to 255: Data transfer is enabled and n defines the number of data transfers per block. Note that a write to the ADC10SA register must be performed to start the DTC transfer—even if the ADC10SA register contains the desired starting address value.

16.8.2.2 Start Address Register for Data Transfer, ADC10SA

The start address for the DTC is contained in the ADC10SA register and is restricted to even address (word aligned) since the ADC10 data is word-only data.



Note:

To start the DTC transfer, the ADC10SA register must be written to—even if the current contents of the ADC10SA register is the desired starting address. Otherwise, the DTC will not start.

Also, any write to the ADC10SA register resets the DTC state machine. See also the state diagrams shown in Figures 16–17 and 16–19.

DTC Transfer While ADC10 Is Busy

A DTC transfer must not be initiated while the ADC10 is busy. When using single-channel, single conversion mode, or sequence-of-channels mode, software must ensure that no active conversion or sequence is in progress when the ADC10SA register is written to. When using one of the repeated modes, software must stop the ADC10 before writing to the ADC10SA register (See applicable section for instructions on stopping the ADC10).

16.8.3 Software Examples for Using DTC

The following two examples show the one-block transfer and the two-block transfer.

16.8.3.1 One-Block Transfer Software Example

```

; Initialize ADC10 DTC for one block transfer. 8 conversion results are
; transferred to address range Beginning with address 0220h.
DTC_Setup  CLR.B    &ADC10DTC0
           MOV.B    #08h,&ADC10DTC1
           MOV.W    #0220h,&ADC10SA
           EINT
;*****
Mainloop
;
; Mainloop code would go here, including ADC10 setup and conversion start.
; None shown for this example.
;
;*****
; Interrupt Service Routine for the ADC10 DTC
ADC10DTC_ISR
           ; The transfers are now complete. The ISR can return the CPU to
           ; active mode, operate on the data, or whatever the application
           ; requires
           RETI

```

16.8.3.2 Two-Block Transfer Software Example With Continuous Mode Enabled

```

; Initialize ADC10 DTC for two block transfer. Transfer 8 conversion
; results to each of the blocks. The first block is 220h to 22Eh. The
; second block is 230h to 23Eh.
DTC_Setup  MOV.B    #ADC10TB+ADC10CT,&ADC10DTC0
           MOV.B    #08h,&ADC10DTC1
           MOV      #0220h,&ADC10SA
           EINT
;*****
Mainloop
;
; Mainloop code would go here, including ADC10 setup and conversion start.
; None shown for this example.
;
;*****
; Interrupt Service Routine for the ADC10 DTC
ADC10DTC_ISR
           MOV      &ADC10SA,Rx          ; Start address of Block1 is in Rx
           BIT.B    #ADC10B1,&ADC10DTC0  ; Test which block is loaded
           JC       Block_1              ; If set, Block 1 is full
Block_2     ADD      #2Xn,Rx              ; Adjust SA w/offset 2n, SA in Rx

           ; Operate on the data. Here, code would either process the data
           ; or move it to another location for future processing.
           RETI

```

16.8.4 DTC Transfer Cycle Time

As mentioned before, the DTC transfer requires one CPU (MCLK) cycle to perform the data transfer and the CPU is halted for that one clock cycle. The complete DTC transfer actually requires three or four CPU clock cycles because of setup, synchronization, etc., but the CPU is only interrupted for one clock cycle. The complete DTC cycle time is dependent on the MSP430 operating mode and clock system setup. the DTC logic requires one or two clock cycles to synchronize, one clock cycle to perform the transfer (while the CPU is halted), and one clock cycle of wait time. In addition, the DTC uses the DCOCLK; so, if the CPU is in a low power mode, the maximum wake-time for the DCOCLK (<6 μ s, see device data sheet) also adds to the DTC cycle time.

Table 16–3 shows the maximum DTC cycle time for all the possible operating modes.

Table 16–3. Maximum DTC Cycle Time

CPU Operating Mode	Maximum DTC Cycle Time, $t_{(DTCmax)}$
Active mode, MCLK=DCOCLK	3 MCLK cycles
Active mode, MCLK=LFXT1CLK	3 MCLK cycles
Low-power mode LPM0/1 MCLK=DCOCLK	4 MCLK cycles
Low-power mode LPM3/4 MCLK=DCOCLK	4 MCLK cycles + 6 μ s [†]
Low-power mode LPM0/1 MCLK=LFXT1CLK	4 MCLK cycles
Low-power mode LPM3/4 MCLK=LFXT1CLK	4 MCLK cycles + x 6 μ s [†]

[†] The additional 6 μ s are needed to start the DCOCLK. It is the $t_{(LPMx)}$ parameter in the data sheet.

Users should refer to Table 16–3 and to the ADC10 settings to assure that the maximum DTC cycle time is allowed for between conversions. The maximum cycle time required to complete one data transfer must be less than the shortest time between successive ADC10 conversions:

$$t_{(DTCmax)} < t_{(ADC10period)}$$

The general formula to verify the above inequality is:

$$\text{MaxDTCCycles} \times 1/f_{(MCLKmin)} + \text{MaxWakeTime} < (\text{SampleClocks} + 13) \times 1/f_{(ADC10CLK)}$$

Where:

MaxDTCCycles is the maximum number of DTC clock cycles required for the transfer (see Table 16–3).

MaxWakeTime is the maximum wake-time from a low-power mode.

SampleClocks is the number of sample clocks for the ADC10 operation set with the SHT bits in register ADC10CTL0.

Example 16–1. Calculate the Maximum ADC10 Clock Frequency With the Following System Conditions:

- ☐ CPU in active mode
- ☐ Minimum MCLK frequency of 1 MHz
- ☐ SHT bits set to 0 (ADC10 sample period = 4 ADC10CLK cycles)

The inequality reduces to:

$$3 \times 1/1 \times 10^6 < (4+13) \times 1/f_{(ADC10CLK)}$$

Which further reduces to:

$$f_{(ADC10CLK)} < 17 \times 10^6/3, \text{ or } f_{(ADC10CLK)} < 5.67 \text{ MHz}$$

Example 16–2. Calculate the Maximum ADC10 Clock Frequency With the Following System Conditions:

- ☐ CPU in LPM3, MCLK=DCOCLK
- ☐ Minimum MCLK frequency of 1 MHz
- ☐ SHT bits set to 2 (ADC10 sample period = 16 ADC10CLK cycles)

The inequality reduces to:

$$4 \times 1/1 \times 10^6 + 6\mu\text{s} < (16+13) \times 1/f_{(ADC10CLK)}$$

Which reduces to:

$$4 \mu\text{s} + 6 \mu\text{s} < 29/f_{(ADC10CLK)}, \text{ or } f_{(ADC10CLK)} < 29/10 \mu\text{s}, \\ \text{or } f_{(ADC10CLK)} < 2.9 \text{ MHz}$$

Using the above formula and examples, a table can be constructed to show the maximum frequency of ADC10CLK in relation to MCLK for the operating modes shown:

CPU Operating Mode	Maximum $f_{(ADC10CLK)}$ Relative to MCLK, ($\times f_{(MCLK)}$)			
	SHT=0	SHT=1	SHT=2	SHT=3
Active mode, MCLK=DCOCLK	5.67	7.0	9.67	25.67
Active mode, MCLK=LFXT1CLK	5.67	7.0	9.67	25.67
Low-power mode LPM0/1, MCLK=DCOCLK	4.25	5.25	7.25	19.25
Low-power mode LPM3/4, MCLK=DCOCLK	Calculation of $f_{(ADC10CLK)}$ required because of 6 μs wake time.			
Low-power mode LPM0/1, MCLK=LFXT1CLK	4.25	5.25	7.25	19.25
Low-power mode LPM3/4, MCLK=LFXT1CLK	Calculation of $f_{(ADC10CLK)}$ required because of 6 μs wake time.			

16.9 Controlling the Current Consumption of the ADC10 Module

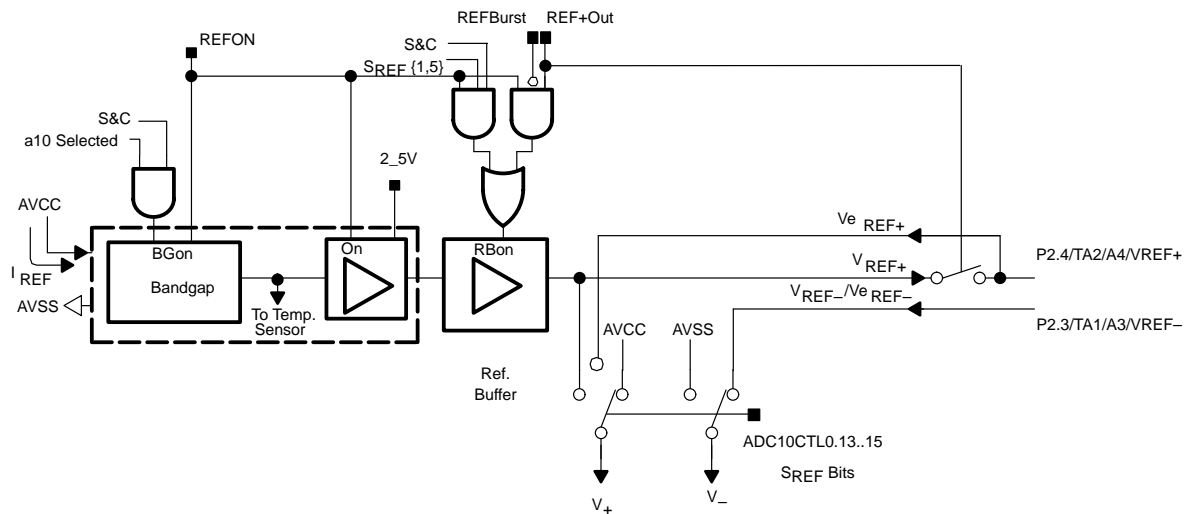
The initial setting of the control bits after a PUC turns off the entire ADC10. Once the ADC10 is powered-up, it consumes current in three blocks: the ADC core, the ADC voltage reference, and the ADC voltage reference buffer.

16.9.1 General Power Saving Features and Tips

The ADC core and ADC voltage reference blocks can be switched on or off independently using control bits ADC10ON and REFON. Some general power-saving tips are listed below and discussed in more detail in the following sections.

- ❑ When using the internal reference, when it is not routed externally, the reference buffer automatically powers on when needed for the sample and conversion cycle, and powers off at the end of the conversion. This reduces the total system power consumption.
- ❑ When using AV_{CC} and AV_{SS} as reference voltages, the internal reference can be powered off completely with bit REFON=0 to reduce power consumption.
- ❑ When using an external reference, the internal reference can be powered off completely, but the current consumption of the external reference must be taken into account for the application.
- ❑ When the internal reference is used, the maximum conversion rate can be reduced to about 50Ksps (see device data sheet) with bit ADC10SR. This reduces the current consumption of the internal reference and reference buffer.
- ❑ When the internal reference voltage is routed externally with bit REF+Out, users may choose to have it continuously present externally, or to have it externally present only during the sample and conversion period. This choice is made with bit REFBurst. When both REF+Out and REFBurst bits are set, the reference is present externally only during the sample and conversion period. When bit REF+Out is set, and bit REFBurst is cleared, the reference voltage is continuously present externally (see Figure 16–20). Note that the bits control the enabling or disabling of the reference voltage buffer. Therefore, when the reference voltage is continuously preset externally, the reference buffer remains continuously on and increases the current consumption of the system, regardless of the presence of a load on the pin or not.

Figure 16–20. Detail Block Diagram of the Internal Reference



16.9.2 Current Consumption Scenarios

Four different current consumption scenarios for the ADC10 are discussed below:

- ☐ The internal reference is not used.
- ☐ The internal reference is used internally ($S_{ref} = \{1,5\}$), but not routed externally ($REF+Out=0$)
- ☐ The internal reference is routed externally to pin V_{REF+} and is continuously present ($REF+OUT=1$, $REFBurst=0$).
- ☐ The internal reference is routed externally to pin V_{REF+} but is only present externally during the sample and conversion period (burst mode, $REF+Out=REFBurst=1$).

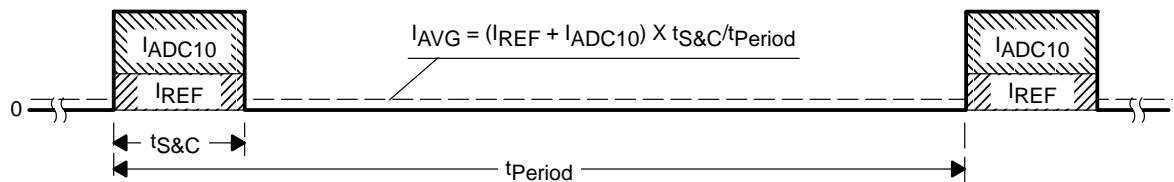
The reference can be divided into three blocks which are active depending on the control bit settings. The current consumed by the reference (and the temperature sensor, when on) is named I_{REF} and the current taken by the reference buffer is I_{RefB} . The current used by the ADC core is I_{ADC10} .

If $REFON=0$, V_{REF+} is always switched off. However, the temperature sensor is supplied with the reference during the sample and conversion period, even if $REFON=0$.

16.9.2.1 Internal Reference Not Used

The reference voltage V_{REF+} is switched off and the internal signal REF_X is on during the sample and conversion period only, if channel a10 is selected.

Figure 16–21. ADC10 Current Consumption Without Internal Reference



The average current consumed when converting any channel other than a10 while the internal reference is off is:

$$I_{AVG} = I_{ADC10} \times t_{S\&C} / t_{Period}$$

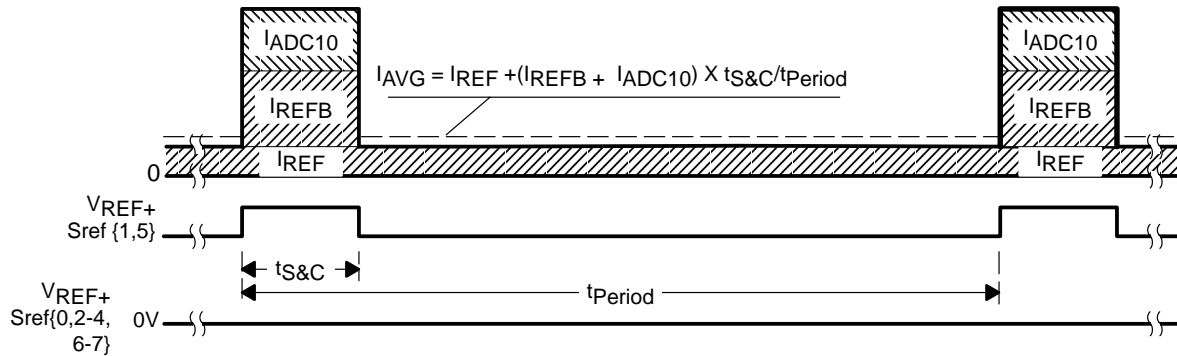
The average current consumed when the internal reference is off but the selected channel is a10 (internal temperature sensor) is:

$$I_{AVG} = (I_{Ref} + I_{ADC10}) \times t_{S\&C} / t_{Period}$$

16.9.2.2 Internal Reference is on But Not Routed Externally

When the internal reference is on, not routed externally (REFON=1, REF=Out=0), and is used for V_{R+} , the reference buffer is automatically enabled during the sample and conversion period and disabled otherwise to save current consumption. If the reference is on and not routed externally, but is not used for V_{R+} for a conversion, the reference buffer is not enabled during the sample and conversion period.

Figure 16–22. ADC10 Current Consumption With Internal Reference On, but not Routed Externally



If the reference is on, not used for V_{R+} , and not routed externally, the average current consumed is:

$$I_{AVG} = I_{Ref} + I_{ADC10} \times t_{S\&C} / t_{Period}$$

If the reference is on, used for V_{R+} , but not routed externally, the average current consumed is:

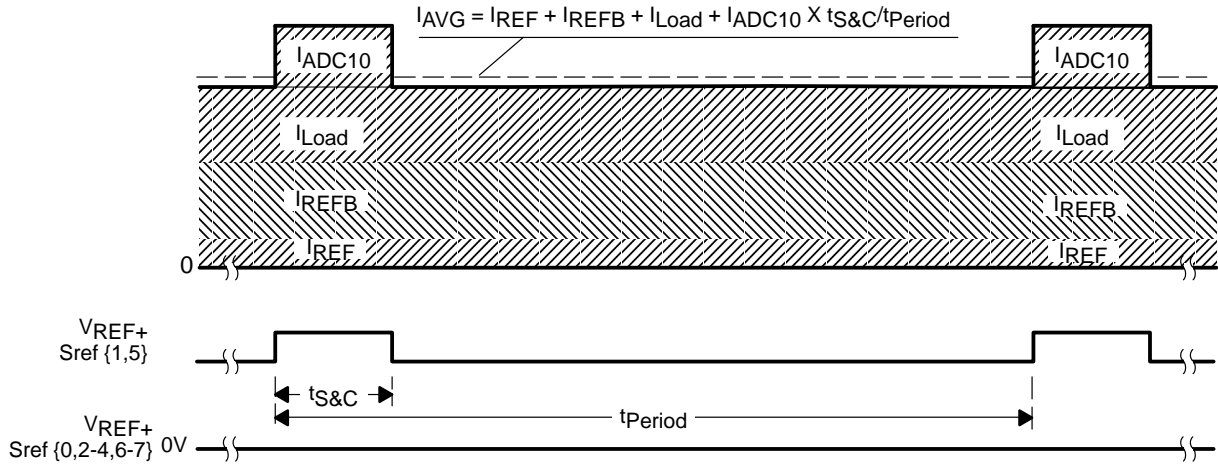
$$I_{AVG} = I_{REF} + (I_{REFB} + I_{ADC10}) \times t_{S\&C} / t_{Period}$$

16.9.2.3 Internal Reference is on and Routed Externally

When the internal reference is on and routed externally to the V_{REF+} pin (REFON=1, REF+Out=1), the REFBurst bit controls whether:

- The reference is continuously on (REFBurst=0). or
- The reference is on only during the sample and conversion period (REFBurst=1) when the reference is used for V_{R+} (SRef={1,5})

Figure 16–23. ADC10 Current Consumption With Internal Reference On, Routed Externally, and REFBurst=0



The average current consumed by the ADC10 is:

$$I_{AVG} = I_{REF} + I_{REFB} + I_{Load} + I_{ADC10} \times t_{S\&C} / t_{Period}$$

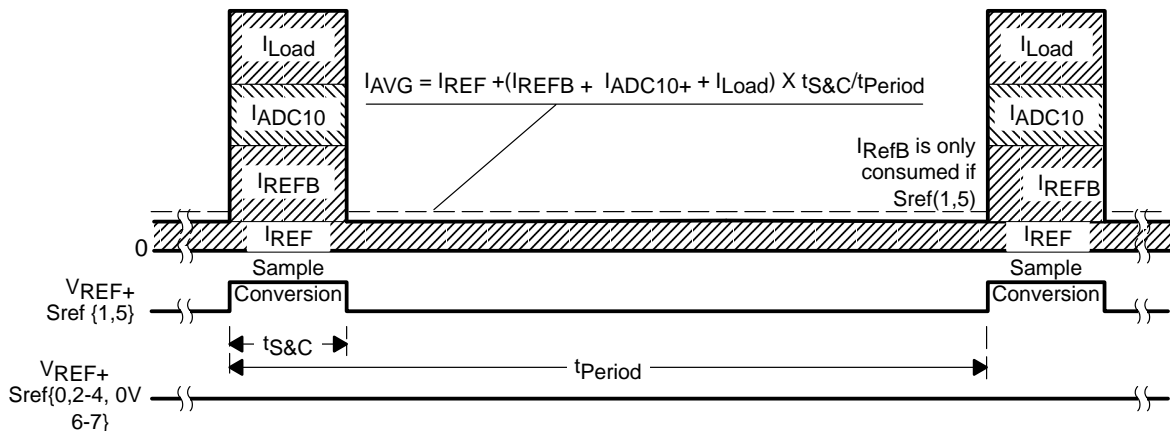
I_{Load} = external load current

This is the highest current consumption scenario.

16.9.2.4 Internal Reference is Selected on an External Pin With Burst Mode of V_{REF+}

When the internal reference is on (REFON=1), routed externally (REF+Out=1), and burst mode is selected (REFBurst=1), the reference buffer is on only during the sample and conversion period in conversions that use the reference (Sref={1,5}). In this case, the reference voltage is externally available only during the same sample and conversion period.

Figure 16–24. ADC10 Current Consumption With Internal Reference On, Routed Externally, and REFBurst=1



The average current consumed is:

$$I_{AVG} = I_{REF} + (I_{REFB} + I_{ADC10} + I_{Load}) \times t_{S\&C} / t_{Period}$$

I_{Load} = external load current

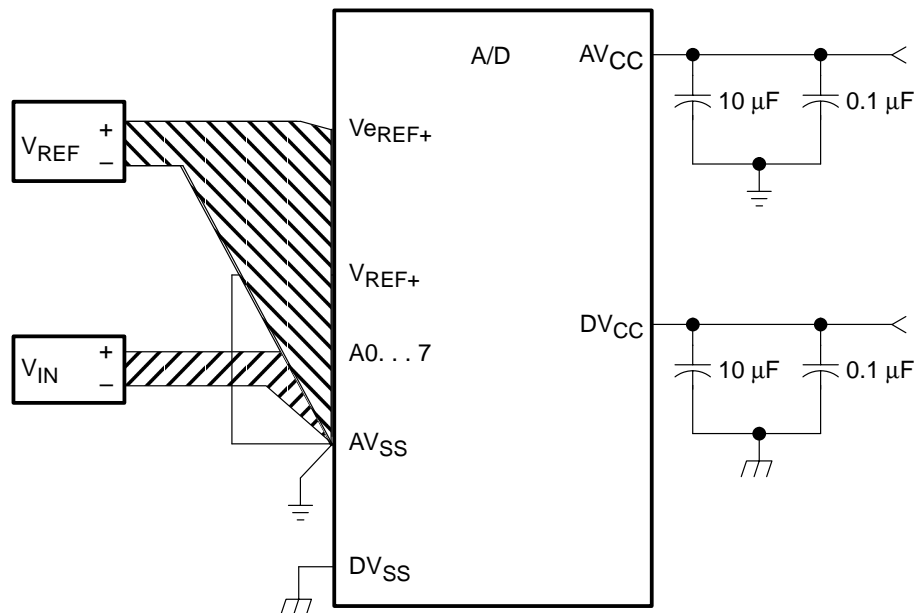
16.10 A/D Grounding and Noise Considerations

As with any high-resolution converter, care and special attention must be paid to the printed-circuit-board layout and the grounding scheme to eliminate ground loops and any unwanted parasitic components/effects and noise. Industry-standard grounding and layout techniques should be followed to reduce these unwanted effects.

Ground Loops are formed when return current from the A/D flows through paths that are common with other analog or digital circuitry. If care is not taken, this current can generate small, unwanted offset voltages that can add to or subtract from the reference or input voltages of the A/D converter. One way to avoid ground loops is to use a star connection scheme for AV_{SS} (shown in Figure 15–26). This way the ground current or reference currents do not flow through any common input leads, eliminating any error voltages.

In addition to grounding, ripple and noise spikes on the power supply lines due to digital switching or switching power supplies can corrupt the conversion result. The ripple can become more dominant by reducing the value of the conversion voltage range ($V_{R+} - V_{R-}$), therefore reducing the value of the LSB and the noise margin. Thus a clean, noise-free setup becomes even more important to achieve the desired accuracy. Adding carefully placed bypass capacitors returned to the respective ground planes can help in reducing ripple in the supply current and minimizing these effects.

Figure 16–25. A/D Grounding and Noise Considerations



Peripheral File Map

This appendix summarizes the peripheral file (PF) and control-bit information into a single location for reference.

Each PF register is presented as a row of boxes containing the control or status bits belonging to the register. The register symbol (e.g. P0IN) and the PF hex address are to the left of each register.

Topic	Page
A.1 Overview	A-2
A.2 Special Function Register of MSP430x1xx Family, Byte Access ...	A-3
A.3 Digital I/O, Byte Access	A-3
A.4 Basic Clock Registers, Byte Access	A-5
A.5 EPROM Control Register Byte Access	A-5
A.6 Comparator_A Registers, Byte Access	A-5
A.7 USART0, USART1, UART Mode (Sync=0), Byte Access	A-6
A.8 USART0, USART1 SPI Mode (Sync=1), Byte Access	A-7
A.9 ADC12 Registers, Byte and Word Access	A-8
A.10 ADC10 Registers, Byte and Word Access	A-11
A.11 Watchdog/Timer, Word Access	A-12
A.12 Flash Control Registers, Word Access	A-13
A.13 Hardware Multiplier, Word Access	A-14
A.14 Timer_A Registers, Word Access	A-14
A.15 Timer_B Registers, Word Access	A-16

A.1 Overview

Bit accessibility and/or hardware definitions are indicated following each bit symbol:

- ☐ rw: Read/write
- ☐ r: Read only
- ☐ r0: Read as 0
- ☐ r1: Read as 1
- ☐ w: Write only
- ☐ w0: Write as 0
- ☐ w1: Write as 1
- ☐ (w): No register bit implemented; writing a 1 results in a pulse. The register bit is always read as 0.
- ☐ h0: Cleared by hardware
- ☐ h1: Set by hardware
- ☐ -0,-1: Condition after PUC signal active
- ☐ -(0),-(1): Condition after POR signal active

The tables in the following sections describe byte access to each peripheral file according to the previously-described definitions.

A.2 Special Function Register of MSP430x1xx Family, Byte Access

000Fh							
Module enable 2, ME2 0005h		UTXE1 rw-0	URXE1 USPIE1 rw-0				
Module enable 1, ME1 0004h	UTXE0 rw-0	URXE0 USPIE0 rw-0					
Interrupt flag 2, IFG2 0003h		UTXIFG1 rw-1	URXIFG1 rw-0			UTXIFG0† rw-1	URXIFG0† rw-0
Interrupt flag 1, IFG1 0002h	UTXIFG0‡ rw-1	URXIFG0‡ rw-0		NMIIFG rw-0		OFIFG rw-1	WDTIFG rw-0
Interrupt enable 2, IE2 0001h		UTXIE1 rw-0	URXIE1 rw-0			UTXIE0† rw-0	URXIE0† rw-0
Interrupt enable 1, IE1 0000h	UTXIE0‡ rw-0	URXIE0‡ rw-0	ACCVIE rw-0	NMIIE rw-0		OFIE rw-0	WDTIE rw-0

† '12xx devices only

‡ '13x and '14x devices only

Note: SFR bits are not implemented on devices without the corresponding peripheral.

A.3 Digital I/O, Byte Access

Bit # -	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Function select, P4SEL 001Fh	P4SEL.7 rw-0	P4SEL.6 rw-0	P4SEL.5 rw-0	P4SEL.4 rw-0	P4SEL.3 rw-0	P4SEL.2 rw-0	P4SEL.1 rw-0	P4SEL.0 rw-0
Direction register, P4DIR 001Eh	P4DIR.7 rw-0	P4DIR.6 rw-0	P4DIR.5 rw-0	P4DIR.4 rw-0	P4DIR.3 rw-0	P4DIR.2 rw-0	P4DIR.1 rw-0	P4DIR.0 rw-0
Output register, P4OUT 001Dh	P4OUT.7 rw	P4OUT.6 rw	P4OUT.5 rw	P4OUT.4 rw	P4OUT.3 rw	P4OUT.2 rw	P4OUT.1 rw	P4OUT.0 rw
Input register, P4IN 001Ch	P4IN.7 r	P4IN.6 r	P4IN.5 r	P4IN.4 r	P4IN.3 r	P4IN.2 r	P4IN.1 r	P4IN.0 r
Function select, P3SEL 001Bh	P3SEL.7 rw-0	P3SEL.6 rw-0	P3SEL.5 rw-0	P3SEL.4 rw-0	P3SEL.3 rw-0	P3SEL.2 rw-0	P3SEL.1 rw-0	P3SEL.0 rw-0
Direction register, P3DIR 001Ah	P3DIR.7 rw-0	P3DIR.6 rw-0	P3DIR.5 rw-0	P3DIR.4 rw-0	P3DIR.3 rw-0	P3DIR.2 rw-0	P3DIR.1 rw-0	P3DIR.0 rw-0
Output register, P3OUT 0019h	P3OUT.7 rw	P3OUT.6 rw	P3OUT.5 rw	P3OUT.4 rw	P3OUT.3 rw	P3OUT.2 rw	P3OUT.1 rw	P3OUT.0 rw
Input register, P3IN 0018h	P3IN.7 r	P3IN.6 r	P3IN.5 r	P3IN.4 r	P3IN.3 r	P3IN.2 r	P3IN.1 r	P3IN.0 r
0017h								
0016h								
0010h								

A.3 Digital I/O, Byte Access (Continued)

Bit # -	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Function select, P6SEL 0037h	P6SEL.7 rw-0	P6SEL.6 rw-0	P6SEL.5 rw-0	P6SEL.4 rw-0	P6SEL.3 rw-0	P6SEL.2 rw-0	P6SEL.1 rw-0	P6SEL.0 rw-0
Direction register, P6DIR 0036h	P6DIR.7 rw-0	P6DIR.6 rw-0	P6DIR.5 rw-0	P6DIR.4 rw-0	P6DIR.3 rw-0	P6DIR.2 rw-0	P6DIR.1 rw-0	P6DIR.0 rw-0
Output register, P6OUT 0035h	P6OUT.7 rw	P6OUT.6 rw	P6OUT.5 rw	P6OUT.4 rw	P6OUT.3 rw	P6OUT.2 rw	P6OUT.1 rw	P6OUT.0 rw
Input register, P6IN 0034h	P6IN.7 r	P6IN.6 r	P6IN.5 r	P6IN.4 r	P6IN.3 r	P6IN.2 r	P6IN.1 r	P6IN.0 r
Function select, P5SEL 0033h	P5SEL.7 rw-0	P5SEL.6 rw-0	P5SEL.5 rw-0	P5SEL.4 rw-0	P5SEL.3 rw-0	P5SEL.2 rw-0	P5SEL.1 rw-0	P5SEL.0 rw-0
Direction register, P5DIR 0032h	P5DIR.7 rw-0	P5DIR.6 rw-0	P5DIR.5 rw-0	P5DIR.4 rw-0	P5DIR.3 rw-0	P5DIR.2 rw-0	P5DIR.1 rw-0	P5DIR.0 rw-0
Output register, P5OUT 0031h	P5OUT.7 rw	P5OUT.6 rw	P5OUT.5 rw	P5OUT.4 rw	P5OUT.3 rw	P5OUT.2 rw	P5OUT.1 rw	P5OUT.0 rw
Input register, P5IN 0030h	P5IN.7 r	P5IN.6 r	P5IN.5 r	P5IN.4 r	P5IN.3 r	P5IN.2 r	P5IN.1 r	P5IN.0 r
002Fh								
Function select, P2SEL 002Eh	P2SEL.7 rw-0	P2SEL.6 rw-0	P2SEL.5 rw-0	P2SEL.4 rw-0	P2SEL.3 rw-0	P2SEL.2 rw-0	P2SEL.1 rw-0	P2SEL.0 rw-0
Interrupt enable, P2IE 002Dh	P2IE.7 rw-0	P2IE.6 rw-0	P2IE.5 rw-0	P2IE.4 rw-0	P2IE.3 rw-0	P2IE.2 rw-0	P2IE.1 rw-0	P2IE.0 rw-0
Interrupt edge select, P2IES 002Ch	P2IES.7 rw	P2IES.6 rw	P2IES.5 rw	P2IES.4 rw	P2IES.3 rw	P2IES.2 rw	P2IES.1 rw	P2IES.0 rw
Interrupt flags, P2IFG 002Bh	P2IFG.7 rw-0	P2IFG.6 rw-0	P2IFG.5 rw-0	P2IFG.4 rw-0	P2IFG.3 rw-0	P2IFG.2 rw-0	P2IFG.1 rw-0	P2IFG.0 rw-0
Direction register, P2DIR 002Ah	P2DIR.7 rw-0	P2DIR.6 rw-0	P2DIR.5 rw-0	P2DIR.4 rw-0	P2DIR.3 rw-0	P2DIR.2 rw-0	P2DIR.1 rw-0	P2DIR.0 rw-0
Output register, P2OUT 0029h	P2OUT.7 rw	P2OUT.6 rw	P2OUT.5 rw	P2OUT.4 rw	P2OUT.3 rw	P2OUT.2 rw	P2OUT.1 rw	P2OUT.0 rw
Input register, P2IN 0028h	P2IN.7 r	P2IN.6 r	P2IN.5 r	P2IN.4 r	P2IN.3 r	P2IN.2 r	P2IN.1 r	P2IN.0 r
0027h								
Function select, P1SEL 0026h	P1SEL.7 rw-0	P1SEL.6 rw-0	P1SEL.5 rw-0	P1SEL.4 rw-0	P1SEL.3 rw-0	P1SEL.2 rw-0	P1SEL.1 rw-0	P1SEL.0 rw-0
Interrupt enable, P1IE 0025h	P1IE.7 rw-0	P1IE.6 rw-0	P1IE.5 rw-0	P1IE.4 rw-0	P1IE.3 rw-0	P1IE.2 rw-0	P1IE.1 rw-0	P1IE.0 rw-0
Int. edge select, P1IES 0024h	P1IES.7 rw	P1IES.6 rw	P1IES.5 rw	P1IES.4 rw	P1IES.3 rw	P1IES.2 rw	P1IES.1 rw	P1IES.0 rw
Interrupt flags, P1IFG 0023h	P1IFG.7 rw-0	P1IFG.6 rw-0	P1IFG.5 rw-0	P1IFG.4 rw-0	P1IFG.3 rw-0	P1IFG.2 rw-0	P1IFG.1 rw-0	P1IFG.0 rw-0
Direction register, P1DIR 0022h	P1DIR.7 rw-0	P1DIR.6 rw-0	P1DIR.5 rw-0	P1DIR.4 rw-0	P1DIR.3 rw-0	P1DIR.2 rw-0	P1DIR.1 rw-0	P1DIR.0 rw-0
Output register, P1OUT 0021h	P1OUT.7 rw	P1OUT.6 rw	P1OUT.5 rw	P1OUT.4 rw	P1OUT.3 rw	P1OUT.2 rw	P1OUT.1 rw	P1OUT.0 rw
Input register, P1IN 0020h	P1IN.7 r	P1IN.6 r	P1IN.5 r	P1IN.4 r	P1IN.3 r	P1IN.2 r	P1IN.1 r	P1IN.0 r

A.4 Basic Clock Registers, Byte Access

Bit # –	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
BCSCTL2 0058h	SELM.1 rw-0	SELM.0 rw-0	DIVM.1 rw-0	DIVM.0 rw-0	SELS rw-0	DIVS.1 rw-0	DIVS.0 rw-0	DCOR rw-0
BCSCTL1 0057h	XT2OFF rw-(1)	XTS rw-(0)	DIVA.1 rw-(0)	DIVA.0 rw-(0)	XT5V rw-0	Rsel.2 rw-1	Rsel.1 rw-0	Rsel.0 rw-0
DCOCTL 0056h	DCO.2 rw-0	DCO.1 rw-1	DCO.0 rw-1	MOD.4 rw-0	MOD.3 rw-0	MOD.2 rw-0	MOD.1 rw-0	MOD.0 rw-0

A.5 EPROM Control Register Byte Access

Bit # –	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
EPROM control register† EPCTL 0054h	r-0	r-0	r-0	r-0	r-0	r-0	VPPS rw-0	EXE rw-0

† Non-EPROM devices may use this register for other control purposes.

A.6 Comparator_A Registers, Byte Access

Bit # –	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Comparator_A Port Disable, CAPD 005Bh	CAPD.7 rw-(0)	CAPD.6 rw-(0)	CAPD.5 rw-(0)	CAPD.4 rw-(0)	CAPD.3 rw-(0)	CAPD.2 rw-(0)	CAPD.1 rw-(0)	CAPD.0 rw-(0)
Comparator_A control reg. 2, CACTL2 005Ah	CACTL2.7 rw-(0)	CACTL2.6 rw-(0)	CACTL2.5 rw-(0)	CACTL2.4 rw-(0)	CA1 rw-(0)	CA0 rw-(0)	CAF rw-(0)	CAOUT r-(0)
Comparator_A control reg. 1, CACTL1 0059h	CAEX rw-(0)	CARSEL rw-(0)	CAREF1 rw-(0)	CAREF0 rw-(0)	CAON rw-(0)	CAIES rw-(0)	CAIE rw-(0)	CAIFG rw-(0)

A.7 USART0, USART1, UART Mode (Sync=0), Byte Access

Bit # –	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
USART1 Transmit buffer UTXBUF1 07Fh	2^7 rw	2^6 rw	2^5 rw	2^4 rw	2^3 rw	2^2 rw	2^1 rw	2^0 rw
USART1 Receive buffer URXBUF1 07Eh	2^7 r	2^6 r	2^5 r	2^4 r	2^3 r	2^2 r	2^1 r	2^0 r
USART1 Baud rate UBR11 07Dh	2^{15} rw	2^{14} rw	2^{13} rw	2^{12} rw	2^{11} rw	2^{10} rw	2^9 rw	2^8 rw
USART1 Baud rate UBR01 07Ch	2^7 rw	2^6 rw	2^5 rw	2^4 rw	2^3 rw	2^2 rw	2^1 rw	2^0 rw
USART1 Modulation control UMCTL1 07Bh	m7 rw	m6 rw	m5 rw	m4 rw	m3 rw	m2 rw	m1 rw	m0 rw
USART1 Receive control URCTL1 07Ah	FE rw-0	PE rw-0	OE rw-0	BRK rw-0	URXEIE rw-0	URXWIE rw-0	RXWake rw-0	RXERR rw-0
USART1 Transmit control UTCTL1 079h	Unused rw-0	CKPL rw-0	SSEL1 rw-0	SSEL0 rw-0	URXSE rw-0	TXWAKE rw-0	Unused rw-0	TXEPT rw-1
USART1 USART control UCTL1 078h	PENA rw-0	PEV rw-0	SP rw-0	CHAR rw-0	Listen rw-0	SYNC rw-0	MM rw-0	SWRST rw-1
USART0 Transmit buffer UTXBUF0 077h	2^7 rw	2^6 rw	2^5 rw	2^4 rw	2^3 rw	2^2 rw	2^1 rw	2^0 rw
USART0 Receive buffer URXBUF0 076h	2^7 r	2^6 r	2^5 r	2^4 r	2^3 r	2^2 r	2^1 r	2^0 r
USART0 Baud rate UBR10 075h	2^{15} rw	2^{14} rw	2^{13} rw	2^{12} rw	2^{11} rw	2^{10} rw	2^9 rw	2^8 rw
USART0 Baud rate UBR00 074h	2^7 rw	2^6 rw	2^5 rw	2^4 rw	2^3 rw	2^2 rw	2^1 rw	2^0 rw
USART0 Modulation control UMCTL0 073h	m7 rw	m6 rw	m5 rw	m4 rw	m3 rw	m2 rw	m1 rw	m0 rw
USART0 Receive control URCTL0 072h	FE rw-0	PE rw-0	OE rw-0	BRK rw-0	URXEIE rw-0	URXWIE rw-0	RXWake rw-0	RXERR rw-0
USART0 Transmit control UTCTL0 071h	Unused rw-0	CKPL rw-0	SSEL1 rw-0	SSEL0 rw-0	URXSE rw-0	TXWAKE rw-0	Unused rw-0	TXEPT rw-1
USART0 USART control UCTL0 070h	PENA rw-0	PEV rw-0	SP rw-0	CHAR rw-0	Listen rw-0	SYNC rw-0	MM rw-0	SWRST rw-1

A.8 USART0, USART1, SPI Mode (Sync=1), Byte Access

Bit # –	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
USART1 Transmit buffer UTXBUF1 07Fh	2 ⁷ rw	2 ⁶ rw	2 ⁵ rw	2 ⁴ rw	2 ³ rw	2 ² rw	2 ¹ rw	2 ⁰ rw
USART1 Receive buffer URXBUF1 07Eh	2 ⁷ r	2 ⁶ r	2 ⁵ r	2 ⁴ r	2 ³ r	2 ² r	2 ¹ r	2 ⁰ r
USART1 Baud rate UBR11 07Dh	2 ¹⁵ rw	2 ¹⁴ rw	2 ¹³ rw	2 ¹² rw	2 ¹¹ rw	2 ¹⁰ rw	2 ⁹ rw	2 ⁸ rw
USART1 Baud rate UBR01 07Ch	2 ⁷ rw	2 ⁶ rw	2 ⁵ rw	2 ⁴ rw	2 ³ rw	2 ² rw	2 ¹ rw	2 ⁰ rw
USART1 Modulation control UMCTL1 07Bh	m7 rw	m6 rw	m5 rw	m4 rw	m3 rw	m2 rw	m1 rw	m0 rw
USART1 Receive control URCTL1 07Ah	FE rw-0	Undef. rw-0	OE rw-0	Undef. rw-0	Unused rw-0	Unused rw-0	Undef. rw-0	Undef. rw-0
USART1 Transmit control UTCTL1 079h	CKPH rw-0	CKPL rw-0	SSEL1 rw-0	SSEL0 rw-0	Unused rw-0	Unused rw-0	STC rw-0	TXEPT rw-1
USART1 USART control UCTL1 078h	Unused rw-0	Unused rw-0	Unused rw-0	CHAR rw-0	Listen rw-0	SYNC rw-0	MM rw-0	SWRST rw-1
USART0 Transmit buffer UTXBUF0 077h	2 ⁷ rw	2 ⁶ rw	2 ⁵ rw	2 ⁴ rw	2 ³ rw	2 ² rw	2 ¹ rw	2 ⁰ rw
USART0 Receive buffer URXBUF0 076h	2 ⁷ r	2 ⁶ r	2 ⁵ r	2 ⁴ r	2 ³ r	2 ² r	2 ¹ r	2 ⁰ r
USART0 Baud rate UBR10 075h	2 ¹⁵ rw	2 ¹⁴ rw	2 ¹³ rw	2 ¹² rw	2 ¹¹ rw	2 ¹⁰ rw	2 ⁹ rw	2 ⁸ rw
USART0 Baud rate UBR00 074h	2 ⁷ rw	2 ⁶ rw	2 ⁵ rw	2 ⁴ rw	2 ³ rw	2 ² rw	2 ¹ rw	2 ⁰ rw
USART0 Modulation control UMCTL0 073h	m7 rw	m6 rw	m5 rw	m4 rw	m3 rw	m2 rw	m1 rw	m0 rw
USART0 Receive control URCTL0 072h	FE rw-0	Undef. rw-0	OE rw-0	Undef. rw-0	Unused rw-0	Unused rw-0	Undef. rw-0	Undef. rw-0
USART0 Transmit control UTCTL0 071h	CKPH rw-0	CKPL rw-0	SSEL1 rw-0	SSEL0 rw-0	Unused rw-0	Unused rw-0	STC rw-0	TXEPT rw-1
USART0 USART control UCTL0 070h	Unused rw-0	Unused rw-0	Unused rw-0	CHAR rw-0	Listen rw-0	SYNC rw-0	MM rw-0	SWRST rw-1

A.9 ADC12 Registers, Byte and Word Access

Bit # –	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
ADC12MCTL15 [†] 008Fh	EOS rw–(0)	Sref.2 rw–(0)	Sref.1 rw–(0)	Sref.0 rw–(0)	INCH.3 rw–(0)	INCH.2 rw–(0)	INCH.1 rw–(0)	INCH.0 rw–(0)
ADC12MCTL14 [†] 008Eh	EOS rw–(0)	Sref.2 rw–(0)	Sref.1 rw–(0)	Sref.0 rw–(0)	INCH.3 rw–(0)	INCH.2 rw–(0)	INCH.1 rw–(0)	INCH.0 rw–(0)
ADC12MCTL13 [†] 008Dh	EOS rw–(0)	Sref.2 rw–(0)	Sref.1 rw–(0)	Sref.0 rw–(0)	INCH.3 rw–(0)	INCH.2 rw–(0)	INCH.1 rw–(0)	INCH.0 rw–(0)
ADC12MCTL12 [†] 008Ch	EOS rw–(0)	Sref.2 rw–(0)	Sref.1 rw–(0)	Sref.0 rw–(0)	INCH.3 rw–(0)	INCH.2 rw–(0)	INCH.1 rw–(0)	INCH.0 rw–(0)
ADC12MCTL11 [†] 008Bh	EOS rw–(0)	Sref.2 rw–(0)	Sref.1 rw–(0)	Sref.0 rw–(0)	INCH.3 rw–(0)	INCH.2 rw–(0)	INCH.1 rw–(0)	INCH.0 rw–(0)
ADC12MCTL10 [†] 008Ah	EOS rw–(0)	Sref.2 rw–(0)	Sref.1 rw–(0)	Sref.0 rw–(0)	INCH.3 rw–(0)	INCH.2 rw–(0)	INCH.1 rw–(0)	INCH.0 rw–(0)
ADC12MCTL9 [†] 0089h	EOS rw–(0)	Sref.2 rw–(0)	Sref.1 rw–(0)	Sref.0 rw–(0)	INCH.3 rw–(0)	INCH.2 rw–(0)	INCH.1 rw–(0)	INCH.0 rw–(0)
ADC12MCTL8 [†] 0088h	EOS rw–(0)	Sref.2 rw–(0)	Sref.1 rw–(0)	Sref.0 rw–(0)	INCH.3 rw–(0)	INCH.2 rw–(0)	INCH.1 rw–(0)	INCH.0 rw–(0)
ADC12MCTL7 [†] 0087h	EOS rw–(0)	Sref.2 rw–(0)	Sref.1 rw–(0)	Sref.0 rw–(0)	INCH.3 rw–(0)	INCH.2 rw–(0)	INCH.1 rw–(0)	INCH.0 rw–(0)
ADC12MCTL6 [†] 0086h	EOS rw–(0)	Sref.2 rw–(0)	Sref.1 rw–(0)	Sref.0 rw–(0)	INCH.3 rw–(0)	INCH.2 rw–(0)	INCH.1 rw–(0)	INCH.0 rw–(0)
ADC12MCTL5 [†] 0085h	EOS rw–(0)	Sref.2 rw–(0)	Sref.1 rw–(0)	Sref.0 rw–(0)	INCH.3 rw–(0)	INCH.2 rw–(0)	INCH.1 rw–(0)	INCH.0 rw–(0)
ADC12MCTL4 [†] 0084h	EOS rw–(0)	Sref.2 rw–(0)	Sref.1 rw–(0)	Sref.0 rw–(0)	INCH.3 rw–(0)	INCH.2 rw–(0)	INCH.1 rw–(0)	INCH.0 rw–(0)
ADC12MCTL3 [†] 0083h	EOS rw–(0)	Sref.2 rw–(0)	Sref.1 rw–(0)	Sref.0 rw–(0)	INCH.3 rw–(0)	INCH.2 rw–(0)	INCH.1 rw–(0)	INCH.0 rw–(0)
ADC12MCTL2 [†] 0082h	EOS rw–(0)	Sref.2 rw–(0)	Sref.1 rw–(0)	Sref.0 rw–(0)	INCH.3 rw–(0)	INCH.2 rw–(0)	INCH.1 rw–(0)	INCH.0 rw–(0)
ADC12MCTL1 [†] 0081h	EOS rw–(0)	Sref.2 rw–(0)	Sref.1 rw–(0)	Sref.0 rw–(0)	INCH.3 rw–(0)	INCH.2 rw–(0)	INCH.1 rw–(0)	INCH.0 rw–(0)
ADC12MCTL0 [†] 0080h	EOS rw–(0)	Sref.2 rw–(0)	Sref.1 rw–(0)	Sref.0 rw–(0)	INCH.3 rw–(0)	INCH.2 rw–(0)	INCH.1 rw–(0)	INCH.0 rw–(0)

[†] All bits of ADC12MCTLx registers are only modifiable when ENC=0.

A.9. ADC12 Registers, Byte and Word Access (Continued)

Bit # –	15	14	13	12	11	0
ADC12MEM15 015Eh	Unused r0	Unused r0	Unused r0	Unused r0	MSB $\xleftarrow{\hspace{1.5cm}}$ Conversion Result $\xrightarrow{\hspace{1.5cm}}$ LSB All conversion-result bits of type rw	
ADC12MEM14 015Ch	Unused r0	Unused r0	Unused r0	Unused r0	MSB $\xleftarrow{\hspace{1.5cm}}$ Conversion Result $\xrightarrow{\hspace{1.5cm}}$ LSB All conversion-result bits of type rw	
ADC12MEM13 015Ah	Unused r0	Unused r0	Unused r0	Unused r0	MSB $\xleftarrow{\hspace{1.5cm}}$ Conversion Result $\xrightarrow{\hspace{1.5cm}}$ LSB All conversion-result bits of type rw	
ADC12MEM12 0158h	Unused r0	Unused r0	Unused r0	Unused r0	MSB $\xleftarrow{\hspace{1.5cm}}$ Conversion Result $\xrightarrow{\hspace{1.5cm}}$ LSB All conversion-result bits of type rw	
ADC12MEM11 0156h	Unused r0	Unused r0	Unused r0	Unused r0	MSB $\xleftarrow{\hspace{1.5cm}}$ Conversion Result $\xrightarrow{\hspace{1.5cm}}$ LSB All conversion-result bits of type rw	
ADC12MEM10 0154h	Unused r0	Unused r0	Unused r0	Unused r0	MSB $\xleftarrow{\hspace{1.5cm}}$ Conversion Result $\xrightarrow{\hspace{1.5cm}}$ LSB All conversion-result bits of type rw	
ADC12MEM9 0152h	Unused r0	Unused r0	Unused r0	Unused r0	MSB $\xleftarrow{\hspace{1.5cm}}$ Conversion Result $\xrightarrow{\hspace{1.5cm}}$ LSB All conversion-result bits of type rw	
ADC12MEM8 0150h	Unused r0	Unused r0	Unused r0	Unused r0	MSB $\xleftarrow{\hspace{1.5cm}}$ Conversion Result $\xrightarrow{\hspace{1.5cm}}$ LSB All conversion-result bits of type rw	
ADC12MEM7 014Eh	Unused r0	Unused r0	Unused r0	Unused r0	MSB $\xleftarrow{\hspace{1.5cm}}$ Conversion Result $\xrightarrow{\hspace{1.5cm}}$ LSB All conversion-result bits of type rw	
ADC12MEM6 014Ch	Unused r0	Unused r0	Unused r0	Unused r0	MSB $\xleftarrow{\hspace{1.5cm}}$ Conversion Result $\xrightarrow{\hspace{1.5cm}}$ LSB All conversion-result bits of type rw	
ADC12MEM5 014Ah	Unused r0	Unused r0	Unused r0	Unused r0	MSB $\xleftarrow{\hspace{1.5cm}}$ Conversion Result $\xrightarrow{\hspace{1.5cm}}$ LSB All conversion-result bits of type rw	
ADC12MEM4 0148h	Unused r0	Unused r0	Unused r0	Unused r0	MSB $\xleftarrow{\hspace{1.5cm}}$ Conversion Result $\xrightarrow{\hspace{1.5cm}}$ LSB All conversion-result bits of type rw	
ADC12MEM3 0146h	Unused r0	Unused r0	Unused r0	Unused r0	MSB $\xleftarrow{\hspace{1.5cm}}$ Conversion Result $\xrightarrow{\hspace{1.5cm}}$ LSB All conversion-result bits of type rw	
ADC12MEM2 0144h	Unused r0	Unused r0	Unused r0	Unused r0	MSB $\xleftarrow{\hspace{1.5cm}}$ Conversion Result $\xrightarrow{\hspace{1.5cm}}$ LSB All conversion-result bits of type rw	
ADC12MEM1 0142h	Unused r0	Unused r0	Unused r0	Unused r0	MSB $\xleftarrow{\hspace{1.5cm}}$ Conversion Result $\xrightarrow{\hspace{1.5cm}}$ LSB All conversion-result bits of type rw	
ADC12MEM0 0140h	Unused r0	Unused r0	Unused r0	Unused r0	MSB $\xleftarrow{\hspace{1.5cm}}$ Conversion Result $\xrightarrow{\hspace{1.5cm}}$ LSB All conversion-result bits of type rw	

A.9. ADC12 Registers, Byte and Word Access (Continued)

Bit # –	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
ADC12IE 01A6h	ADC12IE.15 rw–(0)	ADC12IE.14 rw–(0)	ADC12IE.13 rw–(0)	ADC12IE.12 rw–(0)	ADC12IE.11 rw–(0)	ADC12IE.10 rw–(0)	ADC12IE.9 rw–(0)	ADC12IE.8 rw–(0)
ADC12IFG 01A4h	ADC12IFG.15 rw–(0)	ADC12IFG.14 rw–(0)	ADC12IFG.13 rw–(0)	ADC12IFG.12 rw–(0)	ADC12IFG.11 rw–(0)	ADC12IFG.10 rw–(0)	ADC12IFG.9 rw–(0)	ADC12IFG.8 rw–(0)
ADC12CTL1 01A2h	CStartAdd.3 [†] rw–(0)	CStartAdd.2 [†] rw–(0)	CStartAdd.1 [†] rw–(0)	CStartAdd.0 [†] rw–(0)	SHS.1 [†] rw–(0)	SHS.0 [†] rw–(0)	SHP [†] rw–(0)	ISSH [†] rw–(0)
ADC12CTL0 01A0h	SHT1.3 [†] rw–(0)	SHT1.2 [†] rw–(0)	SHT1.1 [†] rw–(0)	SHT1.0 [†] rw–(0)	SHT0.3 [†] rw–(0)	SHT0.2 [†] rw–(0)	SHT0.1 [†] rw–(0)	SHT0.0 [†] rw–(0)

[†] Only modifiable when ENC=0.

Bit # –	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
ADC12IE 01A6h	ADC12IE.7 rw–(0)	ADC12IE.6 rw–(0)	ADC12IE.5 rw–(0)	ADC12IE.4 rw–(0)	ADC12IE.3 rw–(0)	ADC12IE.2 rw–(0)	ADC12IE.1 rw–(0)	ADC12IE.0 rw–(0)
ADC12IFG 01A4h	ADC12IFG.7 rw–(0)	ADC12IFG.6 rw–(0)	ADC12IFG.5 rw–(0)	ADC12IFG.4 rw–(0)	ADC12IFG.3 rw–(0)	ADC12IFG.2 rw–(0)	ADC12IFG.1 rw–(0)	ADC12IFG.0 rw–(0)
ADC12CTL1 01A2h	ADC12DIV.2 [†] rw–(0)	ADC12DIV.1 [†] rw–(0)	ADC12DIV.0 [†] rw–(0)	ADC12SSEL.1 [†] rw–(0)	ADC12SSEL.0 [†] rw–(0)	CONSEQ.1 rw–(0)	CONSEQ.0 rw–(0)	ADC12BUSY r–(0)
ADC12CTL0 01A0h	MSC [†] rw–(0)	2_5V [†] rw–(0)	REFON [†] rw–(0)	ADC12ON [†] rw–(0)	ADC12OVIE rw–(0)	ADC12TOVIE rw–(0)	ENC rw–(0)	ADC12SC rw–(0)

[†] Only modifiable when ENC=0.

A.10 ADC10 Registers, Byte and Word Access

Bit # –	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
ADC10CTL1 01B2h	ADC10INCH.3† rw–(0)	ADC10INCH.2† rw–(0)	ADC10INCH.1† rw–(0)	ADC10INCH.0† rw–(0)	ADC10SHS.1† rw–(0)	ADC10SHS.0† rw–(0)	ADC10DF† rw–(0)	ADC10ISSH† rw–(0)
ADC10CTL0 01B0h	ADC10Sref.2† rw–(0)	ADC10Sref.1† rw–(0)	ADC10Sref.0† rw–(0)	ADC10SHT.1† rw–(0)	ADC10SHT.0† rw–(0)	ADC10SR† rw–(0)	REF+Out† rw–(0)	REFBurst† rw–(0)

† Only modifiable when ENC=0.

Bit # –	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
ADC10CTL1 01B2h	ADC10DIV.2† rw–(0)	ADC10DIV.1† rw–(0)	ADC10DIV.0† rw–(0)	ADC10SSEL.1† rw–(0)	ADC10SSEL.0† rw–(0)	ADC10CON- SEQ.1 rw–(0)	ADC10CON- SEQ.0 rw–(0)	ADC10BUSY r–(0)
ADC10CTL0 01B0h	ADC10MSC† rw–(0)	2_5V† rw–(0)	REFON† rw–(0)	ADC10ON† rw–(0)	ADC10IE rw–(0)	ADC10IFG rw–(0)	ADC10ENC rw–(0)	ADC10SC rw–(0)

† Only modifiable when ENC=0.

Bit # –	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
ADC10AE 04Ah	ADC10AE.7 rw–(0)	ADC10AE.6 rw–(0)	ADC10AE.5 rw–(0)	ADC10AE.4 rw–(0)	ADC10AE.3 rw–(0)	ADC10AE.2 rw–(0)	ADC10AE.1 rw–(0)	ADC10AE.0 rw–(0)
ADC10DTC1 049h	← n rw–(0) →							
ADC10DTC0 080h	Reserved r0	Reserved r0	Reserved r0	Reserved r0	ADC10TB rw–(0)	ADC10CT rw–(0)	ADC10B1 r–(0)	ADC10FETCH rw–(0)

Bit # –	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	0
ADC10MEM† 01B4h	Not Used r0	Not Used r0	Not Used r0	Not Used r0	Not Used r0	Not Used r0	MSB ← Conversion Result → All conversion-result bits of type rw	LSB

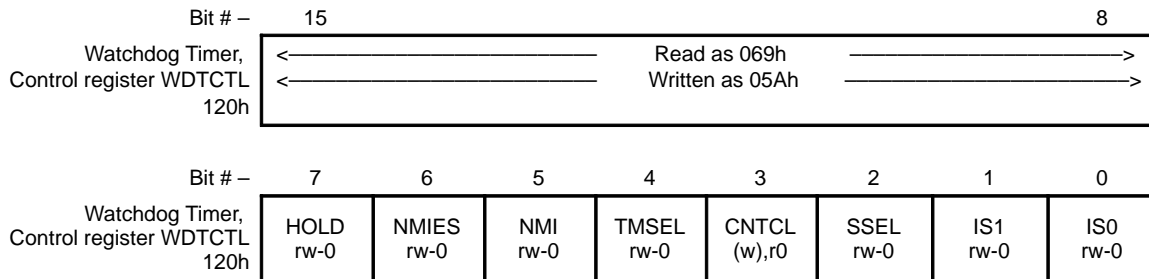
† ADC10DF = 0

Bit # –	15	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
ADC10MEM† 01B4h	MSB ← Conversion Result → All conversion-result bits of type rw					Not Used r0	Not Used r0	Not Used r0

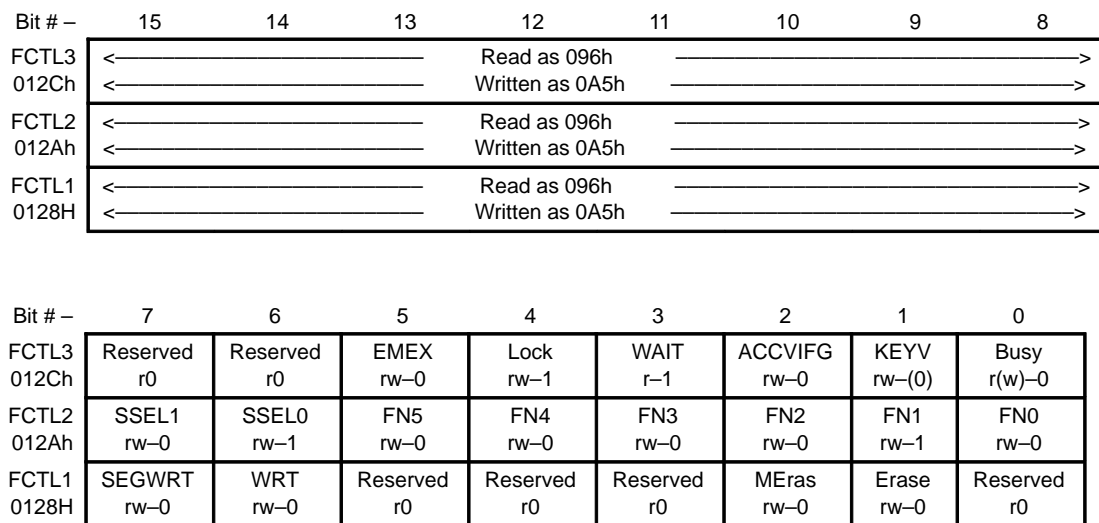
† ADC10DF = 1

Bit # –	15																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																								
---------	----	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--

A.11 Watchdog/Timer, Word Access



A.12 Flash Control Registers, Word Access



A.13 Hardware Multiplier, Word Access

Bit # –	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
Sum extend, SumExt 013Eh	\dagger r	\dagger r	\dagger r	\dagger r	\dagger r	\dagger r	\dagger r	\dagger r
Result-high word ResHI 013Ch	2^{15} rw	2^{14} rw	2^{13} rw	2^{12} rw	2^{11} rw	2^{10} rw	2^9 rw	2^8 rw
Result-low word ResLO 013Ah	2^{15} rw	2^{14} rw	2^{13} rw	2^{12} rw	2^{11} rw	2^{10} rw	2^9 rw	2^8 rw
Second operand OP2 0138h	2^{15} rw	2^{14} rw	2^{13} rw	2^{12} rw	2^{11} rw	2^{10} rw	2^9 rw	2^8 rw
MPYS+ACC MACS 0136h	2^{15} rw	2^{14} rw	2^{13} rw	2^{12} rw	2^{11} rw	2^{10} rw	2^9 rw	2^8 rw
MPY+ACC MAC 0134h	2^{15} rw	2^{14} rw	2^{13} rw	2^{12} rw	2^{11} rw	2^{10} rw	2^9 rw	2^8 rw
Multiply signed MPYS 0132h	2^{15} rw	2^{14} rw	2^{13} rw	2^{12} rw	2^{11} rw	2^{10} rw	2^9 rw	2^8 rw
Multiply unsigned MPY 0130h	2^{15} rw	2^{14} rw	2^{13} rw	2^{12} rw	2^{11} rw	2^{10} rw	2^9 rw	2^8 rw

Bit # –	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Sum extend, SumExt 013Eh	\dagger r	\dagger r	\dagger r	\dagger r	\dagger r	\dagger r	\dagger r	\dagger r
Result-high word ResHI 013Ch	2^7 rw	2^6 rw	2^5 rw	2^4 rw	2^3 rw	2^2 rw	2^1 rw	2^0 rw
Result-low word ResLO 013Ah	2^7 rw	2^6 rw	2^5 rw	2^4 rw	2^3 rw	2^2 rw	2^1 rw	2^0 rw
Second operand OP2 0138h	2^7 rw	2^6 rw	2^5 rw	2^4 rw	2^3 rw	2^2 rw	2^1 rw	2^0 rw
MPYS+ACC MACS 0136h	2^7 rw	2^6 rw	2^5 rw	2^4 rw	2^3 rw	2^2 rw	2^1 rw	2^0 rw
MPY+ACC MAC 0134h	2^7 rw	2^6 rw	2^5 rw	2^4 rw	2^3 rw	2^2 rw	2^1 rw	2^0 rw
Multiply signed MPYS 0132h	2^7 rw	2^6 rw	2^5 rw	2^4 rw	2^3 rw	2^2 rw	2^1 rw	2^0 rw
Multiply unsigned MPY 0130h	2^7 rw	2^6 rw	2^5 rw	2^4 rw	2^3 rw	2^2 rw	2^1 rw	2^0 rw

\dagger The Sum Extend register SumExt holds a 16×16-bit multiplication (MPYS) sign result, or the overflow of the multiply and accumulate (MAC) operation, or the sign of the signed multiply and accumulate (MACS) operation. Overflow and underflow of the MACS operation must be handled by software.

A.14 Timer_A Registers, Word Access

Bit # –	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
017Eh								
017Ch								
Cap/com register CCR4† 017Ah	2 ¹⁵ rw-(0)	2 ¹⁴ rw-(0)	2 ¹³ rw-(0)	2 ¹² rw-(0)	2 ¹¹ rw-(0)	2 ¹⁰ rw-(0)	2 ⁹ rw-(0)	2 ⁸ rw-(0)
Cap/com register CCR3† 0178h	2 ¹⁵ rw-(0)	2 ¹⁴ rw-(0)	2 ¹³ rw-(0)	2 ¹² rw-(0)	2 ¹¹ rw-(0)	2 ¹⁰ rw-(0)	2 ⁹ rw-(0)	2 ⁸ rw-(0)
Cap/com register CCR2 0176h	2 ¹⁵ rw-(0)	2 ¹⁴ rw-(0)	2 ¹³ rw-(0)	2 ¹² rw-(0)	2 ¹¹ rw-(0)	2 ¹⁰ rw-(0)	2 ⁹ rw-(0)	2 ⁸ rw-(0)
Cap/com register CCR1 0174h	2 ¹⁵ rw-(0)	2 ¹⁴ rw-(0)	2 ¹³ rw-(0)	2 ¹² rw-(0)	2 ¹¹ rw-(0)	2 ¹⁰ rw-(0)	2 ⁹ rw-(0)	2 ⁸ rw-(0)
Cap/com register CCR0 0172h	2 ¹⁵ rw-(0)	2 ¹⁴ rw-(0)	2 ¹³ rw-(0)	2 ¹² rw-(0)	2 ¹¹ rw-(0)	2 ¹⁰ rw-(0)	2 ⁹ rw-(0)	2 ⁸ rw-(0)
Timer_A register TAR 0170h	2 ¹⁵ rw-(0)	2 ¹⁴ rw-(0)	2 ¹³ rw-(0)	2 ¹² rw-(0)	2 ¹¹ rw-(0)	2 ¹⁰ rw-(0)	2 ⁹ rw-(0)	2 ⁸ rw-(0)
016Eh								
016Ch								
Cap/com control CCTL4†, 016Ah	CM41 rw-(0)	CM40 rw-(0)	CCIS41 rw-(0)	CCIS40 rw-(0)	SCS4 rw-(0)	SCCI4 rw-(0)	Unused r0	CAP4 rw-(0)
Cap/com control CCTL3†, 0168h	CM31 rw-(0)	CM30 rw-(0)	CCIS31 rw-(0)	CCIS30 rw-(0)	SCS3 rw-(0)	SCCI3 rw-(0)	Unused r0	CAP3 rw-(0)
Cap/com control CCTL2, 0166h	CM21 rw-(0)	CM20 rw-(0)	CCIS21 rw-(0)	CCIS20 rw-(0)	SCS2 rw-(0)	SCCI2 rw-(0)	Unused r0	CAP2 rw-(0)
Cap/com control CCTL1, 0164h	CM11 rw-(0)	CM10 rw-(0)	CCIS11 rw-(0)	CCIS10 rw-(0)	SCS1 rw-(0)	SCCI1 rw-(0)	Unused r0	CAP1 rw-(0)
Cap/com control CCTL0, 0162h	CM01 rw-(0)	CM00 rw-(0)	CCIS01 rw-(0)	CCIS00 rw-(0)	SCS0 rw-(0)	SCCI0 rw-(0)	Unused r0	CAP0 rw-(0)
Timer_A control TACTL 0160h	Unused rw-(0)	Unused rw-(0)	Unused rw-(0)	Unused rw-(0)	Unused rw-(0)	SSEL2 rw-(0)	SSEL1 rw-(0)	SSEL0 rw-(0)

† Registers are reserved on devices with Timer_A3.

A.14 Timer_A Registers, Word Access (Continued)

Bit # –	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
017Eh								
017Ch								
Cap/com register CCR4† 017Ah	2 ⁷ rw-(0)	2 ⁶ rw-(0)	2 ⁵ rw-(0)	2 ⁴ rw-(0)	2 ³ rw-(0)	2 ² rw-(0)	2 ¹ rw-(0)	2 ⁰ rw-(0)
Cap/com register CCR3† 0178h	2 ⁷ rw-(0)	2 ⁶ rw-(0)	2 ⁵ rw-(0)	2 ⁴ rw-(0)	2 ³ rw-(0)	2 ² rw-(0)	2 ¹ rw-(0)	2 ⁰ rw-(0)
Cap/com register CCR2 0176h	2 ⁷ rw-(0)	2 ⁶ rw-(0)	2 ⁵ rw-(0)	2 ⁴ rw-(0)	2 ³ rw-(0)	2 ² rw-(0)	2 ¹ rw-(0)	2 ⁰ rw-(0)
Cap/com register CCR1 0174h	2 ⁷ rw-(0)	2 ⁶ rw-(0)	2 ⁵ rw-(0)	2 ⁴ rw-(0)	2 ³ rw-(0)	2 ² rw-(0)	2 ¹ rw-(0)	2 ⁰ rw-(0)
Cap/com register CCR0 0172h	2 ⁷ rw-(0)	2 ⁶ rw-(0)	2 ⁵ rw-(0)	2 ⁴ rw-(0)	2 ³ rw-(0)	2 ² rw-(0)	2 ¹ rw-(0)	2 ⁰ rw-(0)
Timer_A register TAR 0170h	2 ⁷ rw-(0)	2 ⁶ rw-(0)	2 ⁵ rw-(0)	2 ⁴ rw-(0)	2 ³ rw-(0)	2 ² rw-(0)	2 ¹ rw-(0)	2 ⁰ rw-(0)
016Eh								
016Ch								
Cap/com control CCTL4†, 016Ah	OutMod42 rw-(0)	OutMod41 rw-(0)	OutMod40 rw-(0)	CCIE4 rw-(0)	CCI4 r	OUT4 rw-(0)	COV4 rw-(0)	CCIFG4 rw-(0)
Cap/com control CCTL3†, 0168h	OutMod32 rw-(0)	OutMod31 rw-(0)	OutMod30 rw-(0)	CCIE3 rw-(0)	CCI3 r	OUT3 rw-(0)	COV3 rw-(0)	CCIFG3 rw-(0)
Cap/com control CCTL2, 0166h	OutMod22 rw-(0)	OutMod21 rw-(0)	OutMod20 rw-(0)	CCIE2 rw-(0)	CCI2 r	OUT2 rw-(0)	COV2 rw-(0)	CCIFG2 rw-(0)
Cap/com control CCTL1, 0164h	OutMod12 rw-(0)	OutMod11 rw-(0)	OutMod10 rw-(0)	CCIE1 rw-(0)	CCI1 r	OUT1 rw-(0)	COV1 rw-(0)	CCIFG1 rw-(0)
Cap/com control CCTL0, 0162h	OutMod02 rw-(0)	OutMod01 rw-(0)	OutMod00 rw-(0)	CCIE0 rw-(0)	CCI0 r	OUT0 rw-(0)	COV0 rw-(0)	CCIFG0 rw-(0)
Timer_A control TACTL 0160h	ID1 rw-(0)	ID0 rw-(0)	MC1 rw-(0)	MC0 rw-(0)	Unused rw-(0)	CLR rw-(0)	TAIE rw-(0)	TAIFG rw-(0)

† Registers are reserved on devices with Timer_A3.

Bit # –	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
Timer_A interrupt vector TAIV 12Eh	0 r0	0 r0	0 r0	0 r0	0 r0	0 r0	0 r0	0 r0

Bit # –	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Timer_A interrupt vector TAIV 12Eh	0 r0	0 r0	0 r0	0 r0	TAIV r-(0)			0 r0

TAIV Vector, Timer_A5 (five capture/compare blocks integrated)

- 0: No interrupt pending
- 2: CCIFG1 flag set, interrupt flag of capture/compare block 1
- 4: CCIFG2 flag set, interrupt flag of capture/compare block 2 (CCIFG1=0)
- 6: CCIFG3 flag set, interrupt flag of capture/compare block 3 (CCIFG1=CCIFG2=0)
- 8: CCIFG3 flag set, interrupt flag of capture/compare block 3 (CCIFG1=CCIFG2=CCIFG3=0)
- 10: TAIFG flag set, interrupt flag of Timer_A register/counter (CCIFG1=CCIFG2=CCIFG3=CCIFG4=0)

TAIV Vector, Timer_A3 (three capture/compare blocks integrated)

- 0: No interrupt pending
- 2: CCIFG1 flag set, interrupt flag of capture/compare block 1
- 4: CCIFG2 flag set, interrupt flag of capture/compare block 2 (CCIFG1=0)
- 6: Reserved
- 8: Reserved
- 10: TAIFG flag set, interrupt flag of Timer_A register/counter (CCIFG1=CCIFG2=CCIFG3=CCIFG4=0)

A.15 Timer_B Registers, Word Access

Bit # –	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
Cap/com register CCR6† 019Eh	2 ¹⁵ rw-(0)	2 ¹⁴ rw-(0)	2 ¹³ rw-(0)	2 ¹² rw-(0)	2 ¹¹ rw-(0)	2 ¹⁰ rw-(0)	2 ⁹ rw-(0)	2 ⁸ rw-(0)
Cap/com register CCR5† 019Ch	2 ¹⁵ rw-(0)	2 ¹⁴ rw-(0)	2 ¹³ rw-(0)	2 ¹² rw-(0)	2 ¹¹ rw-(0)	2 ¹⁰ rw-(0)	2 ⁹ rw-(0)	2 ⁸ rw-(0)
Cap/com register CCR4† 019Ah	2 ¹⁵ rw-(0)	2 ¹⁴ rw-(0)	2 ¹³ rw-(0)	2 ¹² rw-(0)	2 ¹¹ rw-(0)	2 ¹⁰ rw-(0)	2 ⁹ rw-(0)	2 ⁸ rw-(0)
Cap/com register CCR3† 0198h	2 ¹⁵ rw-(0)	2 ¹⁴ rw-(0)	2 ¹³ rw-(0)	2 ¹² rw-(0)	2 ¹¹ rw-(0)	2 ¹⁰ rw-(0)	2 ⁹ rw-(0)	2 ⁸ rw-(0)
Cap/com register CCR2 0196h	2 ¹⁵ rw-(0)	2 ¹⁴ rw-(0)	2 ¹³ rw-(0)	2 ¹² rw-(0)	2 ¹¹ rw-(0)	2 ¹⁰ rw-(0)	2 ⁹ rw-(0)	2 ⁸ rw-(0)
Cap/com register CCR1 0194h	2 ¹⁵ rw-(0)	2 ¹⁴ rw-(0)	2 ¹³ rw-(0)	2 ¹² rw-(0)	2 ¹¹ rw-(0)	2 ¹⁰ rw-(0)	2 ⁹ rw-(0)	2 ⁸ rw-(0)
Cap/com register CCR0 0192h	2 ¹⁵ rw-(0)	2 ¹⁴ rw-(0)	2 ¹³ rw-(0)	2 ¹² rw-(0)	2 ¹¹ rw-(0)	2 ¹⁰ rw-(0)	2 ⁹ rw-(0)	2 ⁸ rw-(0)
Timer_B register TBR 0190h	2 ¹⁵ rw-(0)	2 ¹⁴ rw-(0)	2 ¹³ rw-(0)	2 ¹² rw-(0)	2 ¹¹ rw-(0)	2 ¹⁰ rw-(0)	2 ⁹ rw-(0)	2 ⁸ rw-(0)
Cap/com control CCTL6†, 018Eh	CM61 rw-(0)	CM60 rw-(0)	CCIS61 rw-(0)	CCIS60 rw-(0)	SCS6 rw-(0)	CLLD6.1 rw-(0)	CLLD6.0 rw-(0)	CAP6 rw-(0)
Cap/com control CCTL5†, 018Ch	CM51 rw-(0)	CM50 rw-(0)	CCIS51 rw-(0)	CCIS50 rw-(0)	SCS5 rw-(0)	CLLD5.1 rw-(0)	CLLD5.0 rw-(0)	CAP5 rw-(0)
Cap/com control CCTL4†, 018Ah	CM41 rw-(0)	CM40 rw-(0)	CCIS41 rw-(0)	CCIS40 rw-(0)	SCS4 rw-(0)	CCLD4.1 rw-(0)	CCLD4.0 r0	CAP4 rw-(0)
Cap/com control CCTL3†, 0188h	CM31 rw-(0)	CM30 rw-(0)	CCIS31 rw-(0)	CCIS30 rw-(0)	SCS3 rw-(0)	CCLD3.1 rw-(0)	CCLD3.0 r0	CAP3 rw-(0)
Cap/com control CCTL2, 0186h	CM21 rw-(0)	CM20 rw-(0)	CCIS21 rw-(0)	CCIS20 rw-(0)	SCS2 rw-(0)	CCLD2.1 rw-(0)	CCLD2.0 r0	CAP2 rw-(0)
Cap/com control CCTL1, 0184h	CM11 rw-(0)	CM10 rw-(0)	CCIS11 rw-(0)	CCIS10 rw-(0)	SCS1 rw-(0)	CCLD1.1 rw-(0)	CCLD1.0 r0	CAP1 rw-(0)
Cap/com control CCTL0, 0182h	CM01 rw-(0)	CM00 rw-(0)	CCIS01 rw-(0)	CCIS00 rw-(0)	SCS0 rw-(0)	CCLD0.1 rw-(0)	CCLD0.0 r0	CAP0 rw-(0)
Timer_B control TBCTL, 0180h	Unused rw-(0)	TBCLGRP1 rw-(0)	TBCLGRP0 rw-(0)	TBCNTL1 rw-(0)	TBCNTL0 rw-(0)	Unused rw-(0)	TBSSEL1 rw-(0)	TBSSEL0 rw-(0)

† Registers are reserved on devices with Timer_B3.

A.15 Timer_B Registers, Word Access (Continued)

Bit # –	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Cap/com register CCR6† 019Eh	2 ⁷ rw-(0)	2 ⁶ rw-(0)	2 ⁵ rw-(0)	2 ⁴ rw-(0)	2 ³ rw-(0)	2 ² rw-(0)	2 ¹ rw-(0)	2 ⁰ rw-(0)
Cap/com register CCR5† 019Ch	2 ⁷ rw-(0)	2 ⁶ rw-(0)	2 ⁵ rw-(0)	2 ⁴ rw-(0)	2 ³ rw-(0)	2 ² rw-(0)	2 ¹ rw-(0)	2 ⁰ rw-(0)
Cap/com register CCR4† 019Ah	2 ⁷ rw-(0)	2 ⁶ rw-(0)	2 ⁵ rw-(0)	2 ⁴ rw-(0)	2 ³ rw-(0)	2 ² rw-(0)	2 ¹ rw-(0)	2 ⁰ rw-(0)
Cap/com register CCR3† 0198h	2 ⁷ rw-(0)	2 ⁶ rw-(0)	2 ⁵ rw-(0)	2 ⁴ rw-(0)	2 ³ rw-(0)	2 ² rw-(0)	2 ¹ rw-(0)	2 ⁰ rw-(0)
Cap/com register CCR2 0196h	2 ⁷ rw-(0)	2 ⁶ rw-(0)	2 ⁵ rw-(0)	2 ⁴ rw-(0)	2 ³ rw-(0)	2 ² rw-(0)	2 ¹ rw-(0)	2 ⁰ rw-(0)
Cap/com register CCR1 0194h	2 ⁷ rw-(0)	2 ⁶ rw-(0)	2 ⁵ rw-(0)	2 ⁴ rw-(0)	2 ³ rw-(0)	2 ² rw-(0)	2 ¹ rw-(0)	2 ⁰ rw-(0)
Cap/com register CCR0 0192h	2 ⁷ rw-(0)	2 ⁶ rw-(0)	2 ⁵ rw-(0)	2 ⁴ rw-(0)	2 ³ rw-(0)	2 ² rw-(0)	2 ¹ rw-(0)	2 ⁰ rw-(0)
Timer_B register TBR 0190h	2 ⁷ rw-(0)	2 ⁶ rw-(0)	2 ⁵ rw-(0)	2 ⁴ rw-(0)	2 ³ rw-(0)	2 ² rw-(0)	2 ¹ rw-(0)	2 ⁰ rw-(0)
Cap/com control CCTL6†, 018Eh	OutMod62 rw-(0)	OutMod61 rw-(0)	OutMod60 rw-(0)	CCIE6 rw-(0)	CCI6 r	OUT6 rw-(0)	COV6 rw-(0)	CCIFG6 rw-(0)
Cap/com control CCTL5†, 018Ch	OutMod52 rw-(0)	OutMod51 rw-(0)	OutMod50 rw-(0)	CCIE5 rw-(0)	CCI5 r	OUT5 rw-(0)	COV5 rw-(0)	CCIFG5 rw-(0)
Cap/com control CCTL4†, 018Ah	OutMod42 rw-(0)	OutMod41 rw-(0)	OutMod40 rw-(0)	CCIE4 rw-(0)	CCI4 r	OUT4 rw-(0)	COV4 rw-(0)	CCIFG4 rw-(0)
Cap/com control CCTL3†, 0188h	OutMod32 rw-(0)	OutMod31 rw-(0)	OutMod30 rw-(0)	CCIE3 rw-(0)	CCI3 r	OUT3 rw-(0)	COV3 rw-(0)	CCIFG3 rw-(0)
Cap/com control CCTL2, 0186h	OutMod22 rw-(0)	OutMod21 rw-(0)	OutMod20 rw-(0)	CCIE2 rw-(0)	CCI2 r	OUT2 rw-(0)	COV2 rw-(0)	CCIFG2 rw-(0)
Cap/com control CCTL1, 0184h	OutMod12 rw-(0)	OutMod11 rw-(0)	OutMod10 rw-(0)	CCIE1 rw-(0)	CCI1 r	OUT1 rw-(0)	COV1 rw-(0)	CCIFG1 rw-(0)
Cap/com control CCTL0, 0182h	OutMod02 rw-(0)	OutMod01 rw-(0)	OutMod00 rw-(0)	CCIE0 rw-(0)	CCI0 r	OUT0 rw-(0)	COV0 rw-(0)	CCIFG0 rw-(0)
Timer_B control TACTL 0180h	TBID1 rw-(0)	TBID0 rw-(0)	TBMC1 rw-(0)	TBMC0 rw-(0)	Unused rw-(0)	TBCLR rw-(0)	TBIE rw-(0)	TBIFG rw-(0)

† Registers are reserved on devices with Timer_B3.

A.15 Timer_B Registers, Word Access (Continued)

Bit # –	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
Timer_B interrupt vector TBIV 11Eh	0 r0	0 r0	0 r0	0 r0	0 r0	0 r0	0 r0	0 r0

Bit # –	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Timer_B interrupt vector TBIV 11Eh	0 r0	0 r0	0 r0	0 r0	r-(0)	TBIV r-(0)	r-(0)	0 r0

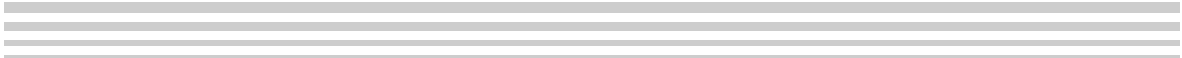
TBIV Vector, Timer_B5 (five capture/compare blocks integrated)

- 0: No interrupt pending
- 2: CCIFG1 flag set, interrupt flag of capture/compare block 1
- 4: CCIFG2 flag set, interrupt flag of capture/compare block 2 (CCIFG1=0)
- 6: CCIFG3 flag set, interrupt flag of capture/compare block 3 (CCIFG1=CCIFG2=0)
- 8: CCIFG4 flag set, interrupt flag of capture/compare block 4 (CCIFG1=CCIFG2=CCIFG3=0)
- 10: CCIFG5 flag set, interrupt flag of capture/compare block 5 (CCIFG1=CCIFG2=CCIFG3=CCIFG4=0)
- 12: CCIFG6 flag set, interrupt flag of capture/compare block 6 (CCIFG1=CCIFG2=CCIFG3=CCIFG4=CCIFG5=0)
- 14: TBIFG flag set, interrupt flag of Timer_B register/counter (CCIFG1=CCIFG2=CCIFG3=CCIFG4=CCIFG5=CCIFG6=0)

TBIV Vector, Timer_B3 (three capture/compare blocks integrated)

- 0: No interrupt pending
- 2: CCIFG1 flag set, interrupt flag of capture/compare block 1
- 4: CCIFG2 flag set, interrupt flag of capture/compare block 2 (CCIFG1=0)
- 6: Reserved
- 8: Reserved
- 10: Reserved
- 12: Reserved
- 14: TBIFG flag set, interrupt flag of Timer_B register/counter (CCIFG1=CCIFG2=0)

Instruction Set Description



The MSP430 core CPU architecture evolved from a reduced instruction set with highly-transparent instruction formats. Using these formats, core instructions are implemented into the hardware. Emulated instructions are also supported by the assembler. Emulated instructions use the core instructions with the built-in constant generators CG1 and CG2 and/or the program counter (PC). The core and emulated instructions are described in detail in this section. The emulated instruction mnemonics are listed with examples.

Program memory words used by an instruction vary from one to three words, depending on the combination of addressing modes.

Topic	Page
B.1 Instruction Set Overview	B-2
B.2 Instruction Set Description	B-8

B.1 Instruction Set Overview

The following list gives an overview of the instruction set.

				Status Bits			
				V	N	Z	C
* ADC[.W];ADC.B	dst	dst + C → dst		*	*	*	*
ADD[.W];ADD.B	src,dst	src + dst → dst		*	*	*	*
ADDC[.W];ADDC.B	src,dst	src + dst + C → dst		*	*	*	*
AND[.W];AND.B	src,dst	src .and. dst → dst		0	*	*	*
BIC[.W];BIC.B	src,dst	.not.src .and. dst → dst		—	—	—	—
BIS[.W];BIS.B	src,dst	src .or. dst → dst		—	—	—	—
BIT[.W];BIT.B	src,dst	src .and. dst		0	*	*	*
* BR	dst	Branch to		—	—	—	—
CALL	dst	PC+2 → stack, dst → PC		—	—	—	—
* CLR[.W];CLR.B	dst	Clear destination		—	—	—	—
* CLRC		Clear carry bit		—	—	—	0
* CLRN		Clear negative bit		—	0	—	—
* CLRZ		Clear zero bit		—	—	0	—
CMP[.W];CMP.B	src,dst	dst – src		*	*	*	*
* DADC[.W];DADC.B	dst	dst + C → dst (decimal)		*	*	*	*
DADD[.W];DADD.B	src,dst	src + dst + C → dst (decimal)		*	*	*	*
* DEC[.W];DEC.B	dst	dst – 1 → dst		*	*	*	*
* DECD[.W];DECD.B	dst	dst – 2 → dst		*	*	*	*
* DINT		Disable interrupt		—	—	—	—
* EINT		Enable interrupt		—	—	—	—
* INC[.W];INC.B	dst	Increment destination, dst + 1 → dst		*	*	*	*
* INCD[.W];INCD.B	dst	Double-Increment destination, dst+2→dst		*	*	*	*
* INV[.W];INV.B	dst	Invert destination		*	*	*	*
JC/JHS	Label	Jump to Label if Carry-bit is set		—	—	—	—
JEQ/JZ	Label	Jump to Label if Zero-bit is set		—	—	—	—
JGE	Label	Jump to Label if (N .XOR. V) = 0		—	—	—	—
JL	Label	Jump to Label if (N .XOR. V) = 1		—	—	—	—
JMP	Label	Jump to Label unconditionally		—	—	—	—
JN	Label	Jump to Label if Negative-bit is set		—	—	—	—
JNC/JLO	Label	Jump to Label if Carry-bit is reset		—	—	—	—
JNE/JNZ	Label	Jump to Label if Zero-bit is reset		—	—	—	—

					Status Bits			
					V	N	Z	C
	MOV[.W];MOV.B	src,dst	src → dst		—	—	—	—
*	NOP		No operation		—	—	—	—
*	POP[.W];POP.B	dst	Item from stack, SP+2 → SP		—	—	—	—
	PUSH[.W];PUSH.B	src	SP – 2 → SP, src → @SP		—	—	—	—
	RETI		Return from interrupt		*	*	*	*
			TOS → SR, SP + 2 → SP					
			TOS → PC, SP + 2 → SZP					
*	RET		Return from subroutine		—	—	—	—
			TOS → PC, SP + 2 → SP					
*	RLA[.W];RLA.B	dst	Rotate left arithmetically		*	*	*	*
*	RLC[.W];RLC.B	dst	Rotate left through carry		*	*	*	*
	RRA[.W];RRA.B	dst	MSB → MSB →LSB → C	0	*	*	*	*
	RRC[.W];RRC.B	dst	C → MSB →LSB → C	*	*	*	*	*
*	SBC[.W];SBC.B	dst	Subtract carry from destination	*	*	*	*	*
*	SETC		Set carry bit		—	—	—	1
*	SETN		Set negative bit		—	1	—	—
*	SETZ		Set zero bit		—	—	1	—
	SUB[.W];SUB.B	src,dst	dst + .not.src + 1 → dst		*	*	*	*
	SUBC[.W];SUBC.B	src,dst	dst + .not.src + C → dst		*	*	*	*
	SWPB	dst	swap bytes		—	—	—	—
	SXT	dst	Bit7 → Bit8 Bit15	0	*	*	*	*
*	TST[.W];TST.B	dst	Test destination	0	*	*	*	1
	XOR[.W];XOR.B	src,dst	src .xor. dst → dst		*	*	*	*

Note: Asterisked Instructions

Asterisked (*) instructions are emulated. They are replaced with core instructions by the assembler.

B.1.1 Instruction Formats

The following sections describe the instruction formats.

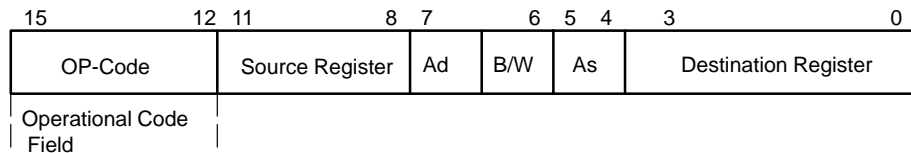
B.1.1.1 Double-Operand Instructions (Core Instructions)

The instruction format using double operands, as shown in Figure B–1, consists of four main fields to form a 16-bit code:

- ☐ operational code field, four bits [op-code]
- ☐ source field, six bits [source register + As]
- ☐ byte operation identifier, one bit [BW]
- ☐ destination field, five bits [dest. register + Ad]

The source field is composed of two addressing bits and a four-bit register number (0....15). The destination field is composed of one addressing bit and a four-bit register number (0....15). The byte identifier B/W indicates whether the instruction is executed as a byte (B/W = 1) or as a word instruction (B/W = 0).

Figure B–1. Double-Operand Instructions



Status Bits

				V	N	Z	C
ADD[.W];	ADD.B	src,dst	src + dst → dst	*	*	*	*
ADDC[.W];	ADDC.B	src,dst	src + dst + C → dst	*	*	*	*
AND[.W];	AND.B	src,dst	src .and. dst → dst	0	*	*	*
BIC[.W];	BIC.B	src,dst	.not.src .and. dst → dst	—	—	—	—
BIS[.W];	BIS.B	src,dst	src .or. dst → dst	—	—	—	—
BIT[.W];	BIT.B	src,dst	src .and. dst	0	*	*	*
CMP[.W];	CMP.B	src,dst	dst – src	*	*	*	*
DADD[.W];	DADD.B	src,dst	src + dst + C → dst (dec)	*	*	*	*
MOV[.W];	MOV.B	src,dst	src → dst	—	—	—	—
SUB[.W];	SUB.B	src,dst	dst + .not.src + 1 → dst	*	*	*	*
SUBC[.W];	SUBC.B	src,dst	dst + .not.src + C → dst	*	*	*	*
XOR[.W];	XOR.B	src,dst	src .xor. dst → dst	*	*	*	*

Note: Operations Using the Status Register (SR) for Destination

All operations using Status Register SR for destination overwrite the SR contents with the operation result; as described in that operation, the status bits are not affected.

Example: ADD #3,SR ; Operation: (SR) + 3 → SR

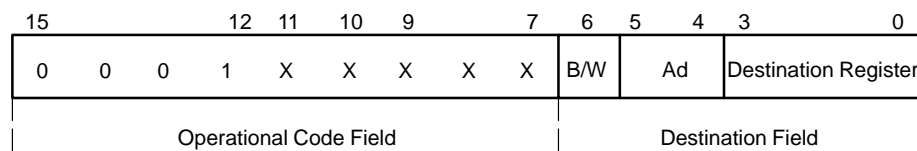
B.1.1.2 Single Operand Instructions (Core Instructions)

The instruction format using a single operand, as shown in Figure B–2, consists of two main fields to form a 16-bit code:

- ☐ operational code field, nine bits with four MSBs equal to 1h
- ☐ byte operation identifier, one bit [B/W]
- ☐ destination field, six bits [destination register + Ad]

The destination field is composed of two addressing bits and the four-bit register number (0....15). The destination field bit position is the same as that of the two operand instructions. The byte identifier (B/W) indicates whether the instruction is executed as a byte (B/W = 1) or as a word (B/W = 0).

Figure B–2. Single-Operand Instructions



					Status Bits			
					V	N	Z	C
RRA[.W];	RRA.B	dst	MSB → MSB ...LSB → C		0	*	*	*
RRC[.W];	RRC.B	dst	C → MSB .....LSB → C		*	*	*	*
PUSH[.W];	PUSH.B	dst	SP – 2 → SP, src → @SP		–	–	–	–
SWPB		dst	swap bytes		–	–	–	–
CALL		dst	PC→2 + @SP, dst → PC		–	–	–	–
RETI		dst	TOS → SR, SP + 2 → SP		*	*	*	*
			TOS → PC, SP + 2 → SP					
SXT		dst	Bit 7 → Bit 8 Bit 15		0	*	*	*

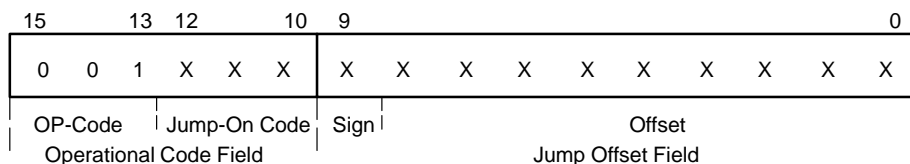
B.1.2 Conditional and Unconditional Jumps (Core Instructions)

The instruction format for conditional and unconditional jumps, as shown in Figure B–3, consists of two main fields to form a 16-bit code:

- ☐ operational code (op-code) field, six bits
- ☐ jump offset field, ten bits

The operational-code field is composed of the op-code (three bits), and three bits according to the following conditions.

Figure B–3. Conditional and Unconditional Jump Instructions



Conditional jumps jump to addresses in the range of –511 to +512 words relative to the current address. The assembler computes the signed offsets and inserts them into the op-code.

JC/JHS	Label	Jump to label if carry bit is set
JEQ/JZ	Label	Jump to label if zero bit is set
JGE	Label	Jump to label if (N .XOR. V) = 0
JL	Label	Jump to label if (N .XOR. V) = 1
JMP	Label	Jump to label unconditionally
JN	Label	Jump to label if negative bit is set
JNC/JLO	Label	Jump to label if carry bit is reset
JNE/JNZ	Label	Jump to label if zero bit is reset

Note: Conditional and Unconditional Jumps

Conditional and unconditional jumps do not affect the status bits.

A jump that is taken alters the PC with the offset:

$$PC_{\text{new}} = PC_{\text{old}} + 2 + 2 \cdot \text{offset}$$

A jump that is not taken continues the program with the ascending instruction.

B.1.3 Emulated Instructions

The following instructions can be emulated with the reduced instruction set without additional code words. The assembler accepts the emulated instruction mnemonic, and inserts the applicable core instruction op-code.

The following list describes the emulated instruction short form.

Mnemonic		Description	Status Bits				Emulation	
			V	N	Z	C		
Arithmetical instructions								
ADC[.W]	dst	Add carry to destination	*	*	*	*	ADDC	#0,dst
ADC.B	dst	Add carry to destination	*	*	*	*	ADDC.B	#0,dst
DADC[.W]	dst	Add carry decimal to destination	*	*	*	*	DADD	#0,dst
DADC.B	dst	Add carry decimal to destination	*	*	*	*	DADD.B	#0,dst
DEC[.W]	dst	Decrement destination	*	*	*	*	SUB	#1,dst
DEC.B	dst	Decrement destination	*	*	*	*	SUB.B	#1,dst
DECD[.W]	dst	Double-decrement destination	*	*	*	*	SUB	#2,dst
DECD.B	dst	Double-decrement destination	*	*	*	*	SUB.B	#2,dst
INC[.W]	dst	Increment destination	*	*	*	*	ADD	#1,dst
INC.B	dst	Increment destination	*	*	*	*	ADD.B	#1,dst
INCD[.W]	dst	Increment destination	*	*	*	*	ADD	#2,dst
INCD.B	dst	Increment destination	*	*	*	*	ADD.B	#2,dst
SBC[.W]	dst	Subtract carry from destination	*	*	*	*	SUBC	#0,dst
SBC.B	dst	Subtract carry from destination	*	*	*	*	SUBC.B	#0,dst
Logical instructions								
INV[.W]	dst	Invert destination	*	*	*	*	XOR	#0FFFFh,dst
INV.B	dst	Invert destination	*	*	*	*	XOR.B	#0FFFFh,dst
RLA[.W]	dst	Rotate left arithmetically	*	*	*	*	ADD	dst,dst
RLA.B	dst	Rotate left arithmetically	*	*	*	*	ADD.B	dst,dst
RLC[.W]	dst	Rotate left through carry	*	*	*	*	ADDC	dst,dst
RLC.B	dst	Rotate left through carry	*	*	*	*	ADDC.B	dst,dst
Data instructions (common use)								
CLR[.W]		Clear destination	—	—	—	—	MOV	#0,dst
CLR.B		Clear destination	—	—	—	—	MOV.B	#0,dst
CLRC		Clear carry bit	—	—	—	0	BIC	#1,SR
CLRN		Clear negative bit	—	0	—	—	BIC	#4,SR
CLRZ		Clear zero bit	—	—	0	—	BIC	#2,SR
POP	dst	Item from stack	—	—	—	—	MOV	@SP+,dst
SETC		Set carry bit	—	—	—	1	BIS	#1,SR
SETN		Set negative bit	—	1	—	—	BIS	#4,SR
SETZ		Set zero bit	—	—	1	—	BIS	#2,SR
TST[.W]	dst	Test destination	0	*	*	1	CMP	#0,dst
TST.B	dst	Test destination	0	*	*	1	CMP.B	#0,dst
Program flow instructions								
BR	dst	Branch to	—	—	—	—	MOV	dst,PC
DINT		Disable interrupt	—	—	—	—	BIC	#8,SR
EINT		Enable interrupt	—	—	—	—	BIS	#8,SR
NOP		No operation	—	—	—	—	MOV	#0h,#0h
RET		Return from subroutine	—	—	—	—	MOV	@SP+,PC

B.2 Instruction Set Description

This section catalogues and describes all core and emulated instructions in alphabetical order. Some examples serve as explanations and others as application hints.

The suffix `.W` or no suffix in the instruction mnemonic results in a word operation.

The suffix `.B` at the instruction mnemonic results in a byte operation.

ADC[.W]	Add carry to destination
ADC.B	Add carry to destination
Syntax	ADC dst or ADC.W dst ADC.B dst
Operation	dst + C → dst
Emulation	ADDC #0,dst ADDC.B #0,dst
Description	The carry bit (C) is added to the destination operand. The previous contents of the destination are lost.
Status Bits	N: Set if result is negative, reset if positive Z: Set if result is zero, reset otherwise C: Set if dst was incremented from 0FFFFh to 0000, reset otherwise Set if dst was incremented from 0FFh to 00, reset otherwise V: Set if an arithmetic overflow occurs, otherwise reset
Mode Bits	OscOff, CPUOff, and GIE are not affected.
Example	The 16-bit counter pointed to by R13 is added to a 32-bit counter pointed to by R12. ADD @R13,0(R12) ; Add LSDs ADC 2(R12) ; Add carry to MSD
Example	The 8-bit counter pointed to by R13 is added to a 16-bit counter pointed to by R12. ADD.B @R13,0(R12) ; Add LSDs ADC.B 1(R12) ; Add carry to MSD

ADD[.W]	Add source to destination
ADD.B	Add source to destination
Syntax	<pre> ADD src,dst or ADD.W src,dst ADD.B src,dst </pre>
Operation	src + dst → dst
Description	The source operand is added to the destination operand. The source operand is not affected. The previous contents of the destination are lost.
Status Bits	<p>N: Set if result is negative, reset if positive</p> <p>Z: Set if result is zero, reset otherwise</p> <p>C: Set if there is a carry from the result, cleared if not</p> <p>V: Set if an arithmetic overflow occurs, otherwise reset</p>
Mode Bits	OscOff, CPUOff, and GIE are not affected.
Example	<p>R5 is increased by 10. The jump to TONI is performed on a carry.</p> <pre> ADD #10,R5 JC TONI ; Carry occurred ; No carry </pre>
Example	<p>R5 is increased by 10. The jump to TONI is performed on a carry.</p> <pre> ADD.B #10,R5 ; Add 10 to Lowbyte of R5 JC TONI ; Carry occurred, if (R5) ≥ 246 [0Ah+0F6h] ; No carry </pre>

ADDC[.W]	Add source and carry to destination
ADDC.B	Add source and carry to destination
Syntax	ADDC src,dst or ADDC.W src,dst ADDC.B src,dst
Operation	src + dst + C → dst
Description	The source operand and the carry bit (C) are added to the destination operand. The source operand is not affected. The previous contents of the destination are lost.
Status Bits	N: Set if result is negative, reset if positive Z: Set if result is zero, reset otherwise C: Set if there is a carry from the MSB of the result, reset otherwise V: Set if an arithmetic overflow occurs, otherwise reset
Mode Bits	OscOff, CPUOff, and GIE are not affected.
Example	The 32-bit counter pointed to by R13 is added to a 32-bit counter, eleven words (20/2 + 2/2) above the pointer in R13. ADD @R13+,20(R13) ; ADD LSDs with no carry in ADDC @R13+,20(R13) ; ADD MSDs with carry ... ; resulting from the LSDs
Example	The 24-bit counter pointed to by R13 is added to a 24-bit counter, eleven words above the pointer in R13. ADD.B @R13+,10(R13) ; ADD LSDs with no carry in ADDC.B @R13+,10(R13) ; ADD medium Bits with carry ADDC.B @R13+,10(R13) ; ADD MSDs with carry ... ; resulting from the LSDs

AND[.W]	Source AND destination
AND.B	Source AND destination
Syntax	<p>AND src,dst or AND.W src,dst</p> <p>AND.B src,dst</p>
Operation	src .AND. dst → dst
Description	The source operand and the destination operand are logically ANDed. The result is placed into the destination.
Status Bits	<p>N: Set if result MSB is set, reset if not set</p> <p>Z: Set if result is zero, reset otherwise</p> <p>C: Set if result is not zero, reset otherwise (= .NOT. Zero)</p> <p>V: Reset</p>
Mode Bits	OscOff, CPUOff, and GIE are not affected.
Example	<p>The bits set in R5 are used as a mask (#0AA55h) for the word addressed by TOM. If the result is zero, a branch is taken to label TONI.</p> <pre> MOV #0AA55h,R5 ; Load mask into register R5 AND R5,TOM ; mask word addressed by TOM with R5 JZ TONI ; ; Result is not zero ; ; ; ; ; or ; ; ; AND #0AA55h,TOM JZ TONI </pre>
Example	<p>The bits of mask #0A5h are logically ANDed with the low byte TOM. If the result is zero, a branch is taken to label TONI.</p> <pre> AND.B #0A5h,TOM ; mask Lowbyte TOM with R5 JZ TONI ; ; Result is not zero </pre>

BIC[.W]	Clear bits in destination
BIC.B	Clear bits in destination
Syntax	BIC src,dst or BIC.W src,dst BIC.B src,dst
Operation	.NOT.src .AND. dst → dst
Description	The inverted source operand and the destination operand are logically ANDed. The result is placed into the destination. The source operand is not affected.
Status Bits	N: Not affected Z: Not affected C: Not affected V: Not affected
Mode Bits	OscOff, CPUOff, and GIE are not affected.
Example	The six MSBs of the RAM word LEO are cleared. BIC #0FC00h,LEO ; Clear 6 MSBs in MEM(LEO)
Example	The five MSBs of the RAM byte LEO are cleared. BIC.B #0F8h,LEO ; Clear 5 MSBs in Ram location LEO

BIS[W]	Set bits in destination
BIS.B	Set bits in destination
Syntax	BIS src,dst or BIS.W src,dst BIS.B src,dst
Operation	src .OR. dst → dst
Description	The source operand and the destination operand are logically ORed. The result is placed into the destination. The source operand is not affected.
Status Bits	N: Not affected Z: Not affected C: Not affected V: Not affected
Mode Bits	OscOff, CPUOff, and GIE are not affected.
Example	The six LSBs of the RAM word TOM are set. BIS #003Fh,TOM; set the six LSBs in RAM location TOM
Example	The three MSBs of RAM byte TOM are set. BIS.B #0E0h,TOM ; set the 3 MSBs in RAM location TOM

BIT[.W]	Test bits in destination
BIT.B	Test bits in destination
Syntax	BIT src,dst or BIT.W src,dst
Operation	src .AND. dst
Description	The source and destination operands are logically ANDed. The result affects only the status bits. The source and destination operands are not affected.
Status Bits	N: Set if MSB of result is set, reset otherwise Z: Set if result is zero, reset otherwise C: Set if result is not zero, reset otherwise (.NOT. Zero) V: Reset
Mode Bits	OscOff, CPUOff, and GIE are not affected.
Example	If bit 9 of R8 is set, a branch is taken to label TOM. <pre> BIT #0200h,R8 ; bit 9 of R8 set? JNZ TOM ; Yes, branch to TOM ... ; No, proceed </pre>
Example	If bit 3 of R8 is set, a branch is taken to label TOM. <pre> BIT.B #8,R8 JC TOM </pre>
Example	A serial communication receive bit (RCV) is tested. Because the carry bit is equal to the state of the tested bit while using the BIT instruction to test a single bit, the carry bit is used by the subsequent instruction; the read information is shifted into register RECBUF. <pre> ; ; Serial communication with LSB is shifted first: ; ; xxxx xxxx xxxx xxxx BIT.B #RCV,RCCTL ; Bit info into carry RRC RECBUF ; Carry -> MSB of RECBUF ; cxxx xxxx ; repeat previous two instructions ; 8 times ; cccc cccc ; ^ ^ ; MSB LSB ; Serial communication with MSB is shifted first: BIT.B #RCV,RCCTL ; Bit info into carry RLC.B RECBUF ; Carry -> LSB of RECBUF ; xxxx xxxc ; repeat previous two instructions ; 8 times ; cccc cccc ; | LSB ; MSB </pre>

* BR, BRANCH	Branch to destination	
Syntax	BR	dst
Operation	dst → PC	
Emulation	MOV	dst,PC
Description	An unconditional branch is taken to an address anywhere in the 64K address space. All source addressing modes can be used. The branch instruction is a word instruction.	
Status Bits	Status bits are not affected.	
Example	Examples for all addressing modes are given.	
	BR	#EXEC ;Branch to label EXEC or direct branch (e.g. #0A4h) ; Core instruction MOV @PC+,PC
	BR	EXEC ; Branch to the address contained in EXEC ; Core instruction MOV X(PC),PC ; Indirect address
	BR	&EXEC ; Branch to the address contained in absolute ; address EXEC ; Core instruction MOV X(0),PC ; Indirect address
	BR	R5 ; Branch to the address contained in R5 ; Core instruction MOV R5,PC ; Indirect R5
	BR	@R5 ; Branch to the address contained in the word ; pointed to by R5. ; Core instruction MOV @R5,PC ; Indirect, indirect R5
	BR	@R5+ ; Branch to the address contained in the word pointed ; to by R5 and increment pointer in R5 afterwards. ; The next time—S/W flow uses R5 pointer—it can ; alter program execution due to access to ; next address in a table pointed to by R5 ; Core instruction MOV @R5,PC ; Indirect, indirect R5 with autoincrement
	BR	X(R5) ; Branch to the address contained in the address ; pointed to by R5 + X (e.g. table with address ; starting at X). X can be an address or a label ; Core instruction MOV X(R5),PC ; Indirect, indirect R5 + X

CALL	Subroutine		
Syntax	CALL	dst	
Operation	dst	→ tmp	dst is evaluated and stored
	SP – 2	→ SP	
	PC	→ @SP	PC updated to TOS
	tmp	→ PC	dst saved to PC
Description	A subroutine call is made to an address anywhere in the 64K address space. All addressing modes can be used. The return address (the address of the following instruction) is stored on the stack. The call instruction is a word instruction.		
Status Bits	Status bits are not affected.		
Example	Examples for all addressing modes are given.		
	CALL	#EXEC	; Call on label EXEC or immediate address (e.g. #0A4h) ; SP–2 → SP, PC+2 → @SP, @PC+ → PC
	CALL	EXEC	; Call on the address contained in EXEC ; SP–2 → SP, PC+2 → @SP, X(PC) → PC ; Indirect address
	CALL	&EXEC	; Call on the address contained in absolute address ; EXEC ; SP–2 → SP, PC+2 → @SP, X(PC) → PC ; Indirect address
	CALL	R5	; Call on the address contained in R5 ; SP–2 → SP, PC+2 → @SP, R5 → PC ; Indirect R5
	CALL	@R5	; Call on the address contained in the word ; pointed to by R5 ; SP–2 → SP, PC+2 → @SP, @R5 → PC ; Indirect, indirect R5
	CALL	@R5+	; Call on the address contained in the word ; pointed to by R5 and increment pointer in R5. ; The next time—S/W flow uses R5 pointer— ; it can alter the program execution due to ; access to next address in a table pointed to by R5 ; SP–2 → SP, PC+2 → @SP, @R5 → PC ; Indirect, indirect R5 with autoincrement
	CALL	X(R5)	; Call on the address contained in the address pointed ; to by R5 + X (e.g. table with address starting at X) ; X can be an address or a label ; SP–2 → SP, PC+2 → @SP, X(R5) → PC ; Indirect indirect R5 + X

* CLR[.W]	Clear destination
* CLR.B	Clear destination
Syntax	CLR dst or CLR.W dst CLR.B dst
Operation	0 → dst
Emulation	MOV #0,dst MOV.B #0,dst
Description	The destination operand is cleared.
Status Bits	Status bits are not affected.
Example	RAM word TONI is cleared. CLR TONI ; 0 → TONI
Example	Register R5 is cleared. CLR R5
Example	RAM byte TONI is cleared. CLR.B TONI ; 0 → TONI

* CLRC	Clear carry bit
Syntax	CLRC
Operation	0 → C
Emulation	BIC #1,SR
Description	The carry bit (C) is cleared. The clear carry instruction is a word instruction.
Status Bits	N: Not affected Z: Not affected C: Cleared V: Not affected
Mode Bits	OscOff, CPUOff, and GIE are not affected.
Example	<p>The 16-bit decimal counter pointed to by R13 is added to a 32-bit counter pointed to by R12.</p> <pre> CLRC ; C=0: defines start DADD @R13,0(R12) ; add 16-bit counter to low word of 32-bit counter DADC 2(R12) ; add carry to high word of 32-bit counter </pre>

* CLRN	Clear negative bit
Syntax	CLRN
Operation	0 → N or (.NOT.src .AND. dst → dst)
Emulation	BIC #4,SR
Description	The constant 04h is inverted (0FFFBh) and is logically ANDed with the destination operand. The result is placed into the destination. The clear negative bit instruction is a word instruction.
Status Bits	N: Reset to 0 Z: Not affected C: Not affected V: Not affected
Mode Bits	OscOff, CPUOff, and GIE are not affected.
Example	The Negative bit in the status register is cleared. This avoids special treatment with negative numbers of the subroutine called.
	CLRN
	CALL SUBR

SUBR	JN SUBRET ; If input is negative: do nothing and return

SUBRET	RET

* CLRZ	Clear zero bit
Syntax	CLRZ
Operation	$0 \rightarrow Z$ or (.NOT.src .AND. dst \rightarrow dst)
Emulation	BIC #2,SR
Description	The constant 02h is inverted (0FFFDh) and logically ANDed with the destination operand. The result is placed into the destination. The clear zero bit instruction is a word instruction.
Status Bits	N: Not affected Z: Reset to 0 C: Not affected V: Not affected
Mode Bits	OscOff, CPUOff, and GIE are not affected.
Example	The zero bit in the status register is cleared. CLRZ

CMP[.W]	Compare source and destination
CMP.B	Compare source and destination
Syntax	<div> <div>CMP</div> <div>src,dst</div> </div> <div>or</div> <div> <div>CMP.W</div> <div>src,dst</div> </div> <div> <div>CMP.B</div> <div>src,dst</div> </div>
Operation	$\text{dst} + \text{.NOT.src} + 1$ or $(\text{dst} - \text{src})$
Description	The source operand is subtracted from the destination operand. This is accomplished by adding the 1s complement of the source operand plus 1. The two operands are not affected and the result is not stored; only the status bits are affected.
Status Bits	N: Set if result is negative, reset if positive ($\text{src} \geq \text{dst}$) Z: Set if result is zero, reset otherwise ($\text{src} = \text{dst}$) C: Set if there is a carry from the MSB of the result, reset otherwise V: Set if an arithmetic overflow occurs, otherwise reset
Mode Bits	OscOff, CPUOff, and GIE are not affected.
Example	<p>R5 and R6 are compared. If they are equal, the program continues at the label EQUAL.</p> <pre> CMP R5,R6 ; R5 = R6? JEQ EQUAL ; YES, JUMP </pre>
Example	<p>Two RAM blocks are compared. If they are not equal, the program branches to the label ERROR.</p> <pre> MOV #NUM,R5 ; number of words to be compared L\$1 CMP &BLOCK1,&BLOCK2 ; Are Words equal? JNZ ERROR ; No, branch to ERROR DEC R5 ; Are all words compared? JNZ L\$1 ; No, another compare </pre>
Example	<p>The RAM bytes addressed by EDE and TONI are compared. If they are equal, the program continues at the label EQUAL.</p> <pre> CMP.B EDE,TONI ; MEM(EDE) = MEM(TONI)? JEQ EQUAL ; YES, JUMP </pre>

Example The two-digit decimal number contained in R5 is added to a four-digit decimal number pointed to by R8.

```
CLRC                ; Reset carry
                    ; next instruction's start condition is defined
DADD.B    R5,0(R8)  ; Add LSDs + C
DADC      1(R8)     ; Add carry to MSDs
```

DADD[W]	Source and carry added decimally to destination
DADD.B	Source and carry added decimally to destination
Syntax	DADD src,dst or DADD.W src,dst DADD.B src,dst
Operation	src + dst + C → dst (decimally)
Description	The source operand and the destination operand are treated as four binary coded decimals (BCD) with positive signs. The source operand and the carry bit (C) are added decimally to the destination operand. The source operand is not affected. The previous contents of the destination are lost. The result is not defined for non-BCD numbers.
Status Bits	N: Set if the MSB is 1, reset otherwise Z: Set if result is zero, reset otherwise C: Set if the result is greater than 9999 Set if the result is greater than 99 V: Undefined
Mode Bits	OscOff, CPUOff, and GIE are not affected.
Example	The eight-digit BCD number contained in R5 and R6 is added decimally to an eight-digit BCD number contained in R3 and R4 (R6 and R4 contain the MSDs). <pre> CLRC ; CLEAR CARRY DADD R5,R3 ; add LSDs DADD R6,R4 ; add MSDs with carry JC OVERFLOW ; If carry occurs go to error handling routine </pre>
Example	The two-digit decimal counter in the RAM byte CNT is incremented by one. <pre> CLRC ; clear Carry DADD.B #1,CNT ; increment decimal counter </pre> <p>or</p> <pre> SETC DADD.B #0,CNT ; ≡ DADC.B CNT </pre>

* DEC[W]	Decrement destination
* DEC.B	Decrement destination
Syntax	DEC dst or DEC.W dst DEC.B dst
Operation	dst – 1 → dst
Emulation	SUB #1, dst
Emulation	SUB.B #1, dst
Description	The destination operand is decremented by one. The original contents are lost.
Status Bits	N: Set if result is negative, reset if positive Z: Set if dst contained 1, reset otherwise C: Reset if dst contained 0, set otherwise V: Set if an arithmetic overflow occurs, otherwise reset. Set if initial value of destination was 08000h, otherwise reset. Set if initial value of destination was 080h, otherwise reset.
Mode Bits	OscOff, CPUOff, and GIE are not affected.

Example

R10 is decremented by 1

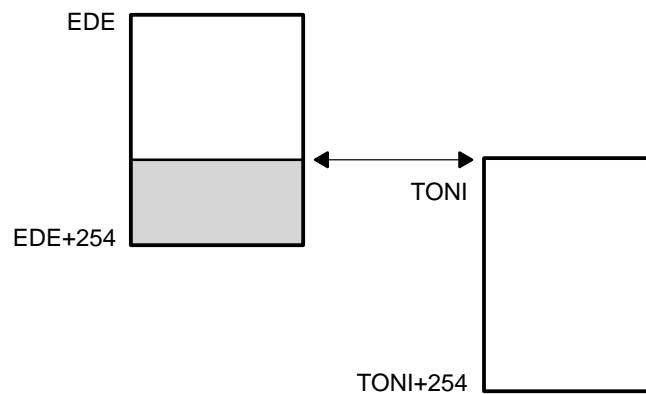
```
DEC      R10      ; Decrement R10
```

```
; Move a block of 255 bytes from memory location starting with EDE to memory location starting with
; TONI. Tables should not overlap: start of destination address TONI must not be within the range EDE
; to EDE+0FEh
;
```

```
MOV      #EDE,R6
MOV      #255,R10
L$1      MOV.B    @R6+,TONI-EDE-1(R6)
DEC      R10
JNZ      L$1
```

; Do not transfer tables using the routine above with the overlap shown in Figure B-4.

Figure B-4. Decrement Overlap



Example

Memory byte at address LEO is decremented by one.

```
DEC.B    LEO      ; Decrement MEM(LEO)
```

```
; Move a block of 255 bytes from memory location starting with EDE to memory location starting with
; TONI. Tables should not overlap: start of destination address TONI must not be within the range EDE
; to EDE+0FEh
;
```

```
MOV      #EDE,R6
MOV.B    #255,LEO
L$1      MOV.B    @R6+,TONI-EDE-1(R6)
DEC.B    LEO
JNZ      L$1
```


* DECD[.W]	Double-decrement destination
* DECD.B	Double-decrement destination
Syntax	DECD dst or DECD.W dst DECD.B dst
Operation	dst – 2 → dst
Emulation	SUB #2,dst
Emulation	SUB.B #2,dst
Description	The destination operand is decremented by two. The original contents are lost.
Status Bits	N: Set if result is negative, reset if positive Z: Set if dst contained 2, reset otherwise C: Reset if dst contained 0 or 1, set otherwise V: Set if an arithmetic overflow occurs, otherwise reset. Set if initial value of destination was 08001 or 08000h, otherwise reset. Set if initial value of destination was 081 or 080h, otherwise reset.
Mode Bits	OscOff, CPUOff, and GIE are not affected.
Example	R10 is decremented by 2.

```
DECD        R10        ; Decrement R10 by two
```

```
; Move a block of 255 words from memory location starting with EDE to memory location
; starting with TONI
; Tables should not overlap: start of destination address TONI must not be within the
; range EDE to EDE+0FEh
;
```

```

MOV        #EDE,R6
MOV        #510,R10
L$1        MOV        @R6+,TONI-EDE-2(R6)
DECD        R10
JNZ        L$1
```

Example Memory at location LEO is decremented by two.

```
DECD.B      LEO        ; Decrement MEM(LEO)
```

Decrement status byte STATUS by two.

```
DECD.B      STATUS
```

* DINT	Disable (general) interrupts
Syntax	DINT
Operation	0 → GIE or (0FFF7h .AND. SR → SR / .NOT.src .AND. dst → dst)
Emulation	BIC #8,SR
Description	All interrupts are disabled. The constant 08h is inverted and logically ANDed with the status register (SR). The result is placed into the SR.
Status Bits	N: Not affected Z: Not affected C: Not affected V: Not affected
Mode Bits	GIE is reset. OscOff and CPUOff are not affected.
Example	<p>The general interrupt enable (GIE) bit in the status register is cleared to allow a nondisrupted move of a 32-bit counter. This ensures that the counter is not modified during the move by any interrupt.</p> <pre> DINT ; All interrupt events using the GIE bit are disabled NOP MOV COUNTHI,R5 ; Copy counter MOV COUNTLO,R6 EINT ; All interrupt events using the GIE bit are enabled </pre>
<div> Note: Disable Interrupt <p>If any code sequence needs to be protected from interruption, the DINT should be executed at least one instruction before the beginning of the uninterruptible sequence, or should be followed by an NOP.</p> </div>	

* EINT	Enable (general) interrupts
Syntax	EINT
Operation	1 → GIE or (0008h .OR. SR → SR / .NOT.src .OR. dst → dst)
Emulation	BIS #8,SR
Description	All interrupts are enabled. The constant #08h and the status register SR are logically ORed. The result is placed into the SR.
Status Bits	N: Not affected Z: Not affected C: Not affected V: Not affected
Mode Bits	GIE is set. OscOff and CPUOff are not affected.
Example	The general interrupt enable (GIE) bit in the status register is set.

```
; Interrupt routine of ports P1.2 to P1.7
```

```
; P1IN is the address of the register where all port bits are read. P1IFG is the address of
```

```
; the register where all interrupt events are latched.
```

```
;
```

```

                                PUSH.B  &P1IN
                                BIC.B    @SP,&P1IFG  ; Reset only accepted flags
                                EINT      ; Preset port 0 interrupt flags stored on stack
                                           ; other interrupts are allowed

                                BIT       #Mask,@SP
                                JEQ      MaskOK      ; Flags are present identically to mask: jump
                                .....
MaskOK                          BIC      #Mask,@SP
                                .....
                                INCD     SP           ; Housekeeping: inverse to PUSH instruction
                                           ; at the start of interrupt subroutine. Corrects
                                           ; the stack pointer.

                                RETI

```

Note: Enable Interrupt

The instruction following the enable interrupt instruction (EINT) is always executed, even if an interrupt service request is pending when the interrupts are enable.

* INC[.W]	Increment destination
* INC.B	Increment destination
Syntax	INC dst or INC.W dst INC.B dst
Operation	dst + 1 → dst
Emulation	ADD #1,dst
Description	The destination operand is incremented by one. The original contents are lost.
Status Bits	N: Set if result is negative, reset if positive Z: Set if dst contained 0FFFFh, reset otherwise Set if dst contained 0FFh, reset otherwise C: Set if dst contained 0FFFFh, reset otherwise Set if dst contained 0FFh, reset otherwise V: Set if dst contained 07FFFh, reset otherwise Set if dst contained 07Fh, reset otherwise
Mode Bits	OscOff, CPUOff, and GIE are not affected.
Example	The status byte of a process STATUS is incremented. When it is equal to 11, a branch to OVFL is taken. <div style="margin-left: 100px;"> INC.B STATUS CMP.B #11,STATUS JEQ OVFL </div>

* INCD[.W]	Double-increment destination
* INCD.B	Double-increment destination
Syntax	INCD dst or INCD.W dst INCD.B dst
Operation	dst + 2 → dst
Emulation	ADD #2,dst
Emulation	ADD.B #2,dst
Example	The destination operand is incremented by two. The original contents are lost.
Status Bits	N: Set if result is negative, reset if positive Z: Set if dst contained 0FFFEh, reset otherwise Set if dst contained 0FEh, reset otherwise C: Set if dst contained 0FFFEh or 0FFFFh, reset otherwise Set if dst contained 0FEh or 0FFh, reset otherwise V: Set if dst contained 07FFEh or 07FFFh, reset otherwise Set if dst contained 07Eh or 07Fh, reset otherwise
Mode Bits	OscOff, CPUOff, and GIE are not affected.
Example	<p>The item on the top of the stack (TOS) is removed without using a register.</p> <pre> PUSH R5 ; R5 is the result of a calculation, which is stored ; in the system stack INCD SP ; Remove TOS by double-increment from stack ; Do not use INCD.B, SP is a word-aligned ; register RET </pre>
Example	<p>The byte on the top of the stack is incremented by two.</p> <pre> INCD.B 0(SP) ; Byte on TOS is increment by two </pre>

* INV[.W]	Invert destination
* INV.B	Invert destination
Syntax	INV dst INV.B dst
Operation	.NOT.dst → dst
Emulation	XOR #0FFFFh,dst
Emulation	XOR.B #0FFh,dst
Description	The destination operand is inverted. The original contents are lost.
Status Bits	N: Set if result is negative, reset if positive Z: Set if dst contained 0FFFFh, reset otherwise Set if dst contained 0FFh, reset otherwise C: Set if result is not zero, reset otherwise (= .NOT. Zero) Set if result is not zero, reset otherwise (= .NOT. Zero) V: Set if initial destination operand was negative, otherwise reset
Mode Bits	OscOff, CPUOff, and GIE are not affected.
Example	Content of R5 is negated (twos complement). MOV #00AEh,R5 ; R5 = 000AEh INV R5 ; Invert R5, R5 = 0FF51h INC R5 ; R5 is now negated, R5 = 0FF52h
Example	Content of memory byte LEO is negated. MOV.B #0AEh,LEO ; MEM(LEO) = 0AEh INV.B LEO ; Invert LEO, MEM(LEO) = 051h INC.B LEO ; MEM(LEO) is negated, MEM(LEO) = 052h

JC	Jump if carry set	
JHS	Jump if higher or same	
Syntax	JC	label
	JHS	label
Operation	If C = 1: $PC + 2 \times \text{offset} \rightarrow PC$ If C = 0: execute following instruction	
Description	The status register carry bit (C) is tested. If it is set, the 10-bit signed offset contained in the instruction LSBs is added to the program counter. If C is reset, the next instruction following the jump is executed. JC (jump if carry/higher or same) is used for the comparison of unsigned numbers (0 to 65536).	
Status Bits	Status bits are not affected.	
Example	The P1IN.1 signal is used to define or control the program flow. <pre> BIT #01h,&P1IN ; State of signal → Carry JC PROGA ; If carry=1 then execute program routine A ; Carry=0, execute program here </pre>	
Example	R5 is compared to 15. If the content is higher or the same, branch to LABEL. <pre> CMP #15,R5 JHS LABEL ; Jump is taken if $R5 \geq 15$; Continue here if $R5 < 15$ </pre>	

JEQ, JZ	Jump if equal, jump if zero
Syntax	JEQ label, JZ label
Operation	If Z = 1: $PC + 2 \times \text{offset} \rightarrow PC$ If Z = 0: execute following instruction
Description	The status register zero bit (Z) is tested. If it is set, the 10-bit signed offset contained in the instruction LSBs is added to the program counter. If Z is not set, the instruction following the jump is executed.
Status Bits	Status bits are not affected.
Example	Jump to address TONI if R7 contains zero. <pre> TST R7 ; Test R7 JZ TONI ; if zero: JUMP </pre>
Example	Jump to address LEO if R6 is equal to the table contents. <pre> CMP R6,Table(R5) ; Compare content of R6 with content of ; MEM (table address + content of R5) JEQ LEO ; Jump if both data are equal ; No, data are not equal, continue here </pre>
Example	Branch to LABEL if R5 is 0. <pre> TST R5 JZ LABEL </pre>

JGE	Jump if greater or equal
Syntax	JGE label
Operation	If (N .XOR. V) = 0 then jump to label: PC + 2 × offset → PC If (N .XOR. V) = 1 then execute the following instruction
Description	<p>The status register negative bit (N) and overflow bit (V) are tested. If both N and V are set or reset, the 10-bit signed offset contained in the instruction LSBs is added to the program counter. If only one is set, the instruction following the jump is executed.</p> <p>This allows comparison of signed integers.</p>
Status Bits	Status bits are not affected.
Example	<p>When the content of R6 is greater or equal to the memory pointed to by R7, the program continues at label EDE.</p> <pre> CMP @R7,R6 ; R6 ≥ (R7)?, compare on signed numbers JGE EDE ; Yes, R6 ≥ (R7) ; No, proceed </pre>

JL	Jump if less
Syntax	JL label
Operation	If (N .XOR. V) = 1 then jump to label: PC + 2 × offset → PC If (N .XOR. V) = 0 then execute following instruction
Description	<p>The status register negative bit (N) and overflow bit (V) are tested. If only one is set, the 10-bit signed offset contained in the instruction LSBs is added to the program counter. If both N and V are set or reset, the instruction following the jump is executed.</p> <p>This allows comparison of signed integers.</p>
Status Bits	Status bits are not affected.
Example	<p>When the content of R6 is less than the memory pointed to by R7, the program continues at label EDE.</p> <pre> CMP @R7,R6 ; R6 < (R7)?, compare on signed numbers JL EDE ; Yes, R6 < (R7) ; No, proceed </pre>

JMP	Jump unconditionally
Syntax	JMP label
Operation	$PC + 2 \times \text{offset} \rightarrow PC$
Description	The 10-bit signed offset contained in the instruction LSBs is added to the program counter.
Status Bits	Status bits are not affected.
Hint:	This one-word instruction replaces the BRANCH instruction in the range of –511 to +512 words relative to the current program counter.

JN	Jump if negative
Syntax	JN label
Operation	if N = 1: $PC + 2 \times \text{offset} \rightarrow PC$ if N = 0: execute following instruction
Description	The negative bit (N) of the status register is tested. If it is set, the 10-bit signed offset contained in the instruction LSBs is added to the program counter. If N is reset, the next instruction following the jump is executed.
Status Bits	Status bits are not affected.
Example	<p>The result of a computation in R5 is to be subtracted from COUNT. If the result is negative, COUNT is to be cleared and the program continues execution in another path.</p> <pre> SUB R5,COUNT ; COUNT - R5 -> COUNT JN L\$1 ; If negative continue with COUNT=0 at PC=L\$1 ; Continue with COUNT≥0 L\$1 CLR COUNT </pre>

JNC	Jump if carry not set	
JLO	Jump if lower	
Syntax	JNC	label
	JNC	label
Operation	if C = 0: PC + 2 × offset → PC if C = 1: execute following instruction	
Description	The status register carry bit (C) is tested. If it is reset, the 10-bit signed offset contained in the instruction LSBs is added to the program counter. If C is set, the next instruction following the jump is executed. JNC (jump if no carry/lower) is used for the comparison of unsigned numbers (0 to 65536).	
Status Bits	Status bits are not affected.	
Example	The result in R6 is added in BUFFER. If an overflow occurs, an error handling routine at address ERROR is used.	
ERROR	ADD	R6,BUFFER ; BUFFER + R6 → BUFFER
	JNC	CONT ; No carry, jump to CONT
	.....	; Error handler start
	
	
CONT	.....
		; Continue with normal program flow
	
Example		
	CMP.B	#2,STATUS
	JLO	STL2 ; STATUS < 2
	.....	; STATUS ≥ 2, continue here

JNE, JNZ	Jump if not equal, jump if not zero
Syntax	JNE label, JNZ label
Operation	If Z = 0: PC + 2 × offset → PC If Z = 1: execute following instruction
Description	The status register zero bit (Z) is tested. If it is reset, the 10-bit signed offset contained in the instruction LSBs is added to the program counter. If Z is set, the next instruction following the jump is executed.
Status Bits	Status bits are not affected.
Example	Jump to address TONI if R7 and R8 have different contents.
	<pre> CMP R7,R8 ; COMPARE R7 WITH R8 JNE TONI ; if different: jump ; if equal, continue </pre>

MOV[.W]	Move source to destination
MOV.B	Move source to destination
Syntax	MOV src,dst or MOV.W src,dst MOV.B src,dst
Operation	src → dst
Description	The source operand is moved to the destination. The source operand is not affected. The previous contents of the destination are lost.
Status Bits	Status bits are not affected.
Mode Bits	OscOff, CPUOff, and GIE are not affected.
Example	The contents of table EDE (word data) are copied to table TOM. The length of the tables must be 020h locations.
Loop	<pre> MOV #EDE,R10 ; Prepare pointer MOV #020h,R9 ; Prepare counter MOV @R10+,TOM-EDE-2(R10) ; Use pointer in R10 for both tables DEC R9 ; Decrement counter JNZ Loop ; Counter ≠ 0, continue copying ; Copying completed </pre>
Example	The contents of table EDE (byte data) are copied to table TOM. The length of the tables should be 020h locations
Loop	<pre> MOV #EDE,R10 ; Prepare pointer MOV #020h,R9 ; Prepare counter MOV.B @R10+,TOM-EDE-1(R10) ; Use pointer in R10 for ; both tables DEC R9 ; Decrement counter JNZ Loop ; Counter ≠ 0, continue ; copying ; Copying completed </pre>

* NOP	No operation
Syntax	NOP
Operation	None
Emulation	MOV #0, R3
Description	No operation is performed. The instruction may be used for the elimination of instructions during the software check or for defined waiting times.
Status Bits	Status bits are not affected.

The NOP instruction is mainly used for two purposes:

- ☐ To hold one, two or three memory words
- ☐ To adjust software timing

Note: Emulating No-Operation Instruction

Other instructions can emulate the NOP function while providing different numbers of instruction cycles and code words. Some examples are:

Examples:

MOV	0(R4),0(R4)	; 6 cycles, 3 words
MOV	@R4,0(R4)	; 5 cycles, 2 words
BIC	#0,EDE(R4)	; 4 cycles, 2 words
JMP	\$+2	; 2 cycles, 1 word
BIC	#0,R5	; 1 cycle, 1 word

However, care should be taken when using these examples to prevent unintended results. For example, if MOV 0(R4), 0(R4) is used and the value in R4 is 120h, then a security violation will occur with the watchdog timer (address 120h) because the security key was not used.

* POP[.W]	Pop word from stack to destination
* POP.B	Pop byte from stack to destination
Syntax	POP dst POP.B dst
Operation	@SP → temp SP + 2 → SP temp → dst
Emulation	MOV @SP+,dst or MOV.W @SP+,dst
Emulation	MOV.B @SP+,dst
Description	The stack location pointed to by the stack pointer (TOS) is moved to the destination. The stack pointer is incremented by two afterwards.
Status Bits	Status bits are not affected.
Example	The contents of R7 and the status register are restored from the stack. POP R7 ; Restore R7 POP SR ; Restore status register
Example	The contents of RAM byte LEO is restored from the stack. POP.B LEO ; The low byte of the stack is moved to LEO.
Example	The contents of R7 is restored from the stack. POP.B R7 ; The low byte of the stack is moved to R7, ; the high byte of R7 is 00h
Example	The contents of the memory pointed to by R7 and the status register are restored from the stack. POP.B 0(R7) ; The low byte of the stack is moved to the ; the byte which is pointed to by R7 : Example: R7 = 203h ; Mem(R7) = low byte of system stack : Example: R7 = 20Ah ; Mem(R7) = low byte of system stack POP SR
<div> Note: The System Stack Pointer The system stack pointer (SP) is always incremented by two, independent of the byte suffix. </div>	

PUSH[.W]	Push word onto stack
PUSH.B	Push byte onto stack
Syntax	PUSH src or PUSH.W src PUSH.B src
Operation	SP – 2 → SP src → @SP
Description	The stack pointer is decremented by two, then the source operand is moved to the RAM word addressed by the stack pointer (TOS).
Status Bits	N: Not affected Z: Not affected C: Not affected V: Not affected
Mode Bits	OscOff, CPUOff, and GIE are not affected.
Example	The contents of the status register and R8 are saved on the stack. PUSH SR ; save status register PUSH R8 ; save R8
Example	The contents of the peripheral TCDAT is saved on the stack. PUSH.B &TCDAT ; save data from 8-bit peripheral module, ; address TCDAT, onto stack

Note: The System Stack Pointer

The system stack pointer (SP) is always decremented by two, independent of the byte suffix.

* RET	Return from subroutine
Syntax	RET
Operation	@SP → PC SP + 2 → SP
Emulation	MOV @SP+, PC
Description	The return address pushed onto the stack by a CALL instruction is moved to the program counter. The program continues at the code address following the subroutine call.
Status Bits	Status bits are not affected.

RETI Return from interrupt

Syntax RETI

Operation

TOS	→ SR
SP + 2	→ SP
TOS	→ PC
SP + 2	→ SP

Description The status register is restored to the value at the beginning of the interrupt service routine by replacing the present SR contents with the TOS contents. The stack pointer (SP) is incremented by two.

The program counter is restored to the value at the beginning of interrupt service. This is the consecutive step after the interrupted program flow. Restoration is performed by replacing the present PC contents with the TOS memory contents. The stack pointer (SP) is incremented.

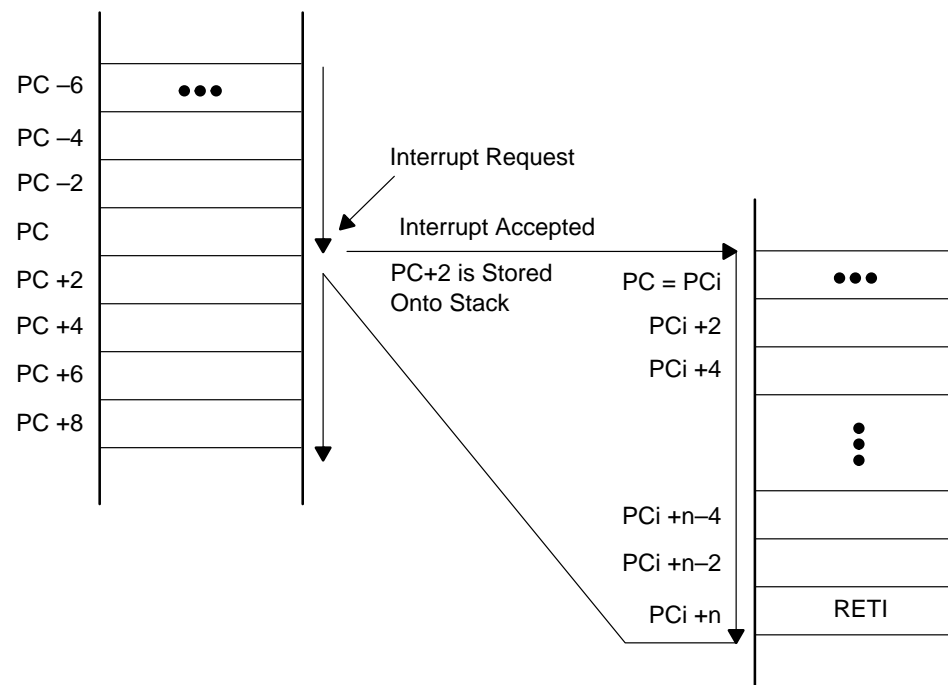
Status Bits

- N: restored from system stack
- Z: restored from system stack
- C: restored from system stack
- V: restored from system stack

Mode Bits OscOff, CPUOff, and GIE are restored from system stack.

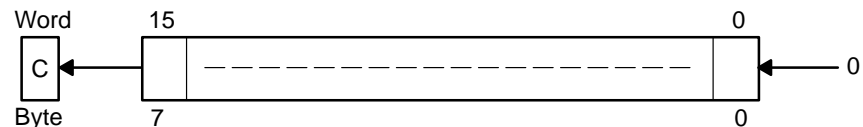
Example Figure B–5 illustrates the main program interrupt.

Figure B–5. Main Program Interrupt



* RLA[.W]	Rotate left arithmetically
* RLA.B	Rotate left arithmetically
Syntax	RLA dst or RLA.W dst RLA.B dst
Operation	$C \leftarrow \text{MSB} \leftarrow \text{MSB}-1 \dots \text{LSB}+1 \leftarrow \text{LSB} \leftarrow 0$
Emulation	ADD dst,dst ADD.B dst,dst
Description	<p>The destination operand is shifted left one position as shown in Figure B-6. The MSB is shifted into the carry bit (C) and the LSB is filled with 0. The RLA instruction acts as a signed multiplication by 2.</p> <p>An overflow occurs if $\text{dst} \geq 04000\text{h}$ and $\text{dst} < 0\text{C}000\text{h}$ before operation is performed: the result has changed sign.</p>

Figure B-6. Destination Operand—Arithmetic Shift Left



An overflow occurs if $\text{dst} \geq 040\text{h}$ and $\text{dst} < 0\text{C}0\text{h}$ before the operation is performed: the result has changed sign.

Status Bits	<p>N: Set if result is negative, reset if positive</p> <p>Z: Set if result is zero, reset otherwise</p> <p>C: Loaded from the MSB</p> <p>V: Set if an arithmetic overflow occurs: the initial value is $04000\text{h} \leq \text{dst} < 0\text{C}000\text{h}$; otherwise it is reset</p> <p>Set if an arithmetic overflow occurs: the initial value is $040\text{h} \leq \text{dst} < 0\text{C}0\text{h}$; otherwise it is reset</p>
--------------------	--

Mode Bits OscOff, CPUOff, and GIE are not affected.

Example R7 is multiplied by 4.

```
RLA      R7          ; Shift left R7 (× 2) – emulated by  ADD R7,R7
RLA      R7          ; Shift left R7 (× 4) – emulated by  ADD R7,R7
```

Example The low byte of R7 is multiplied by 4.

```
RLA.B    R7          ; Shift left low byte of R7 (× 2) – emulated by
                    ; ADD.B R7,R7
RLA.B    R7          ; Shift left low byte of R7 (× 4) – emulated by
                    ; ADD.B R7,R7
```

Note: RLA Substitution

The assembler does not recognize the instruction:

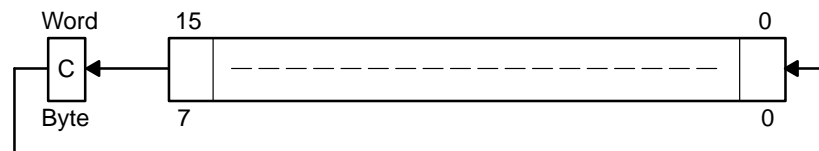
```
RLA      @R5+          nor      RLA.B    @R5+.
```

It must be substituted by:

```
ADD      @R5+,-2(R5)    or      ADD.B    @R5+,-1(R5).
```

* RLC[.W]	Rotate left through carry
* RLC.B	Rotate left through carry
Syntax	RLC dst or RLC.W dst RLC.B dst
Operation	$C \leftarrow \text{MSB} \leftarrow \text{MSB}-1 \dots \text{LSB}+1 \leftarrow \text{LSB} \leftarrow C$
Emulation	ADDC dst,dst
Description	The destination operand is shifted left one position as shown in Figure B–7. The carry bit (C) is shifted into the LSB and the MSB is shifted into the carry bit (C).

Figure B–7. Destination Operand—Carry Left Shift



Status Bits	N: Set if result is negative, reset if positive Z: Set if result is zero, reset otherwise C: Loaded from the MSB V: Set if arithmetic overflow occurs, reset otherwise Set if $03\text{FFFh} < \text{dst}_{\text{initial}} < 0\text{C000h}$, reset otherwise Set if $03\text{Fh} < \text{dst}_{\text{initial}} < 0\text{C0h}$, reset otherwise
Mode Bits	OscOff, CPUOff, and GIE are not affected.
Example	R5 is shifted left one position. RLC R5 ; (R5 x 2) + C → R5
Example	The input P1IN.1 information is shifted into the LSB of R5. BIT.B #2,&P1IN ; Information → Carry RLC R5 ; Carry=P0in.1 → LSB of R5
Example	The MEM(LEO) content is shifted left one position. RLC.B LEO ; Mem(LEO) x 2 + C → Mem(LEO)
Example	The input P1IN.1 information is to be shifted into the LSB of R5. BIT.B #2,&P1IN ; Information → Carry RLC.B R5 ; Carry = P0in.1 → LSB of R5 ; High byte of R5 is reset

Note: RLC and RLC.B Emulation

The assembler does not recognize the instruction:

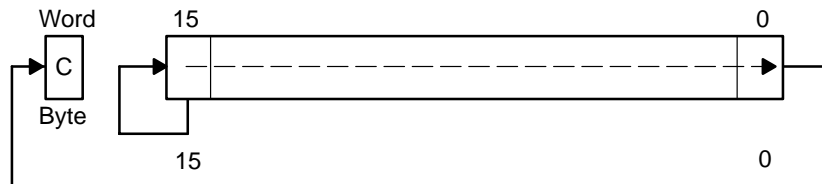
```
RLC      @R5+.
```

It must be substituted by:

```
ADDC    @R5+,-2(R5).
```

RRA[.W]	Rotate right arithmetically
RRA.B	Rotate right arithmetically
Syntax	RRA dst or RRA.W dst RRA.B dst
Operation	MSB → MSB, MSB → MSB−1, ... LSB+1 → LSB, LSB → C
Description	The destination operand is shifted right one position as shown in Figure B–8. The MSB is shifted into the MSB, the MSB is shifted into the MSB−1, and the LSB+1 is shifted into the LSB.

Figure B–8. Destination Operand—Arithmetic Right Shift



Status Bits	N: Set if result is negative, reset if positive Z: Set if result is zero, reset otherwise C: Loaded from the LSB V: Reset
Mode Bits	OscOff, CPUOff, and GIE are not affected.

Example

R5 is shifted right one position. The MSB retains the old value. It operates equal to an arithmetic division by 2.

```
RRA      R5      ; R5/2 → R5
```

```
;  
;  
;  
The value in R5 is multiplied by 0.75 ( $0.5 + 0.25$ ).
```

```
PUSH     R5      ; hold R5 temporarily using stack  
RRA      R5      ;  $R5 \times 0.5 \rightarrow R5$   
ADD      @SP+,R5  ;  $R5 \times 0.5 + R5 = 1.5 \times R5 \rightarrow R5$   
RRA      R5      ;  $(1.5 \times R5) \times 0.5 = 0.75 \times R5 \rightarrow R5$   
.....  
.....
```

```
; OR  
;  
;
```

```
RRA      R5      ;  $R5 \times 0.5 \rightarrow R5$   
PUSH     R5      ;  $R5 \times 0.5 \rightarrow \text{TOS}$   
RRA      @SP      ;  $\text{TOS} \times 0.5 = 0.5 \times R5 \times 0.5 = 0.25 \times R5 \rightarrow \text{TOS}$   
ADD      @SP+,R5  ;  $R5 \times 0.5 + R5 \times 0.25 = 0.75 \times R5 \rightarrow R5$   
.....
```

Example

The low byte of R5 is shifted right one position. The MSB retains the old value. It operates equal to an arithmetic division by 2.

```
RRA.B    R5      ; R5/2 → R5: operation is on low byte only  
           ; High byte of R5 is reset
```

```
;  
;  
;  
The value in R5 (low byte only) is multiplied by 0.75 ( $0.5 + 0.25$ ).
```

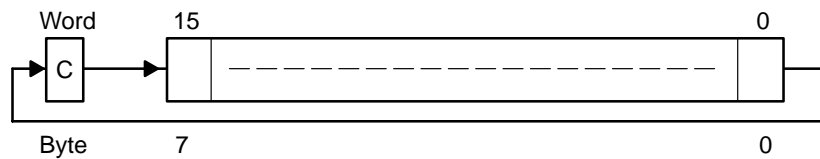
```
PUSH.B   R5      ; hold low byte of R5 temporarily using stack  
RRA.B    R5      ;  $R5 \times 0.5 \rightarrow R5$   
ADD.B    @SP+,R5  ;  $R5 \times 0.5 + R5 = 1.5 \times R5 \rightarrow R5$   
RRA.B    R5      ;  $(1.5 \times R5) \times 0.5 = 0.75 \times R5 \rightarrow R5$   
.....
```

```
; OR  
;  
;
```

```
RRA.B    R5      ;  $R5 \times 0.5 \rightarrow R5$   
PUSH.B   R5      ;  $R5 \times 0.5 \rightarrow \text{TOS}$   
RRA.B    @SP      ;  $\text{TOS} \times 0.5 = 0.5 \times R5 \times 0.5 = 0.25 \times R5 \rightarrow \text{TOS}$   
ADD.B    @SP+,R5  ;  $R5 \times 0.5 + R5 \times 0.25 = 0.75 \times R5 \rightarrow R5$   
.....
```


RRC[.W]	Rotate right through carry
RRC.B	Rotate right through carry
Syntax	<div> RRC dst or RRC.W dst </div> <div> RRC dst </div>
Operation	C → MSB → MSB−1 LSB+1 → LSB → C
Description	<p>The destination operand is shifted right one position as shown in Figure B-6. The carry bit (C) is shifted into the MSB, the LSB is shifted into the carry bit (C).</p>

Figure B–9. Destination Operand—Carry Right Shift



Status Bits	N: Set if result is negative, reset if positive Z: Set if result is zero, reset otherwise C: Loaded from the LSB V: Set if initial destination is positive and initial carry is set, otherwise reset
Mode Bits	OscOff, CPUOff, and GIE are not affected.
Example	R5 is shifted right one position. The MSB is loaded with 1. <pre> SETC ; Prepare carry for MSB RRC R5 ; R5/2 + 8000h → R5 </pre>
Example	R5 is shifted right one position. The MSB is loaded with 1. <pre> SETC ; Prepare carry for MSB RRC.B R5 ; R5/2 + 80h → R5; low byte of R5 is used </pre>

* SBC[.W]	Subtract (borrow*) from destination
* SBC.B	Subtract (borrow*) from destination
Syntax	SBC dst or SBC.W dst SBC.B dst
Operation	dst + 0FFFFh + C → dst dst + 0FFh + C → dst
Emulation	SUBC #0,dst SUBC.B #0,dst
Description	The carry bit (C) is added to the destination operand minus one. The previous contents of the destination are lost.
Status Bits	N: Set if result is negative, reset if positive Z: Set if result is zero, reset otherwise C: Reset if dst was decremented from 0000 to 0FFFFh, set otherwise Reset if dst was decremented from 00 to 0FFh, set otherwise V: Set if initially C = 0 and dst = 08000h Set if initially C = 0 and dst = 080h
Mode Bits	OscOff, CPUOff, and GIE are not affected.
Example	The 16-bit counter pointed to by R13 is subtracted from a 32-bit counter pointed to by R12. SUB @R13,0(R12) ; Subtract LSDs SBC 2(R12) ; Subtract carry from MSD
Example	The 8-bit counter pointed to by R13 is subtracted from a 16-bit counter pointed to by R12. SUB.B @R13,0(R12) ; Subtract LSDs SBC.B 1(R12) ; Subtract carry from MSD

Note: Borrow Is Treated as a .NOT.

The borrow is treated as a .NOT. carry :	Borrow	Carry bit
	Yes	0
	No	1

* SETC	Set carry bit		
Syntax	SETC		
Operation	1 → C		
Emulation	BIS	#1,SR	
Description	The carry bit (C) is set.		
Status Bits	N: Not affected Z: Not affected C: Set V: Not affected		
Mode Bits	OscOff, CPUOff, and GIE are not affected.		
Example	Emulation of the decimal subtraction: Subtract R5 from R6 decimally Assume that R5 = 3987 and R6 = 4137		
DSUB	ADD	#6666h,R5	; Move content R5 from 0–9 to 6–0Fh ; R5 = 03987 + 6666 = 09FEDh ; Invert this (result back to 0–9) ; R5 = .NOT. R5 = 06012h ; Prepare carry = 1 ; Emulate subtraction by addition of: ; (10000 – R5 – 1) ; R6 = R6 + R5 + 1 ; R6 = 4137 + 06012 + 1 = 1 0150 = 0150

* SETN	Set negative bit
Syntax	SETN
Operation	1 → N
Emulation	BIS #4,SR
Description	The negative bit (N) is set.
Status Bits	N: Set Z: Not affected C: Not affected V: Not affected
Mode Bits	OscOff, CPUOff, and GIE are not affected.

* SETZ	Set zero bit
Syntax	SETZ
Operation	1 → Z
Emulation	BIS #2,SR
Description	The zero bit (Z) is set.
Status Bits	N: Not affected Z: Set C: Not affected V: Not affected
Mode Bits	OscOff, CPUOff, and GIE are not affected.

SUB[.W]	Subtract source from destination
SUB.B	Subtract source from destination
Syntax	SUB src,dst or SUB.W src,dst SUB.B src,dst
Operation	dst + .NOT.src + 1 → dst or [(dst – src → dst)]
Description	The source operand is subtracted from the destination operand by adding the source operand's 1s complement and the constant 1. The source operand is not affected. The previous contents of the destination are lost.
Status Bits	N: Set if result is negative, reset if positive Z: Set if result is zero, reset otherwise C: Set if there is a carry from the MSB of the result, reset otherwise. Set to 1 if no borrow, reset if borrow. V: Set if an arithmetic overflow occurs, otherwise reset
Mode Bits	OscOff, CPUOff, and GIE are not affected.
Example	See example at the SBC instruction.
Example	See example at the SBC.B instruction.

Note: Borrow Is Treated as a .NOT.

The borrow is treated as a .NOT. carry :	Borrow	Carry bit
	Yes	0
	No	1

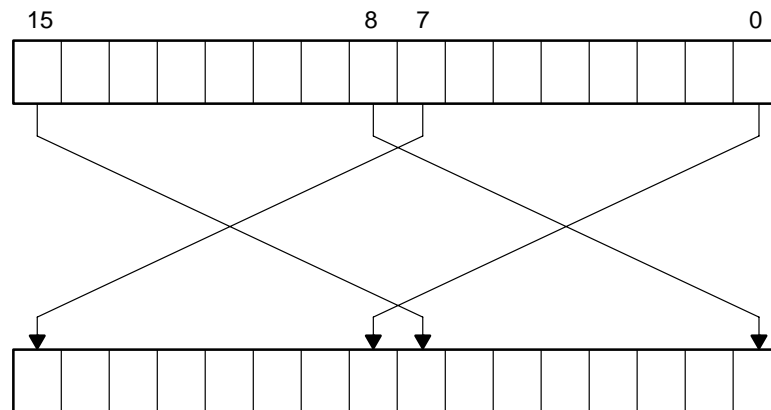
SUBC[.W]SBB[.W]	Subtract source and borrow/.NOT. carry from destination
SUBC.B,SBB.B	Subtract source and borrow/.NOT. carry from destination
Syntax	SUBC src,dst or SUBC.W src,dst or SBB src,dst or SBB.W src,dst SUBC.B src,dst or SBB.B src,dst
Operation	$dst + \text{.NOT.}src + C \rightarrow dst$ or $(dst - src - 1 + C \rightarrow dst)$
Description	The source operand is subtracted from the destination operand by adding the source operand's 1s complement and the carry bit (C). The source operand is not affected. The previous contents of the destination are lost.
Status Bits	N: Set if result is negative, reset if positive. Z: Set if result is zero, reset otherwise. C: Set if there is a carry from the MSB of the result, reset otherwise. Set to 1 if no borrow, reset if borrow. V: Set if an arithmetic overflow occurs, reset otherwise.
Mode Bits	OscOff, CPUOff, and GIE are not affected.
Example	Two floating point mantissas (24 bits) are subtracted. LSBs are in R13 and R10, MSBs are in R12 and R9. SUB.W R13,R10 ; 16-bit part, LSBs SUBC.B R12,R9 ; 8-bit part, MSBs
Example	The 16-bit counter pointed to by R13 is subtracted from a 16-bit counter in R10 and R11(MSD). SUB.B @R13+,R10 ; Subtract LSDs without carry SUBC.B @R13,R11 ; Subtract MSDs with carry ... ; resulting from the LSDs

Note: Borrow Is Treated as a .NOT. Carry

The borrow is treated as a .NOT. carry :	Borrow	Carry bit
	Yes	0
	No	1

SWPB	Swap bytes
Syntax	SWPB dst
Operation	Bits 15 to 8 \leftrightarrow bits 7 to 0
Description	The destination operand high and low bytes are exchanged as shown in Figure B–10.
Status Bits	N: Not affected Z: Not affected C: Not affected V: Not affected
Mode Bits	OscOff, CPUOff, and GIE are not affected.

Figure B–10. Destination Operand Byte Swap



Example

```
MOV    #040BFh,R7      ; 0100000010111111 → R7
SWPB   R7               ; 1011111101000000 in R7
```

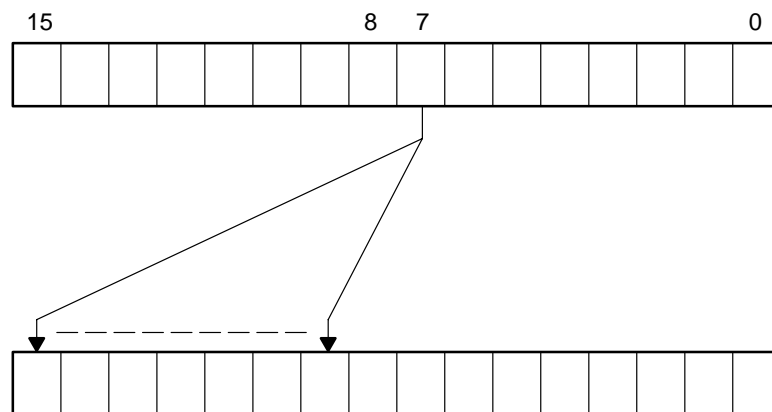
Example

The value in R5 is multiplied by 256. The result is stored in R5,R4.

```
SWPB   R5               ;
MOV     R5,R4           ;Copy the swapped value to R4
BIC     #0FF00h,R5      ;Correct the result
BIC     #00FFh,R4       ;Correct the result
```


SXT	Extend Sign
Syntax	SXT dst
Operation	Bit 7 → Bit 8 Bit 15
Description	The sign of the low byte is extended into the high byte as shown in Figure B–11.
Status Bits	N: Set if result is negative, reset if positive Z: Set if result is zero, reset otherwise C: Set if result is not zero, reset otherwise (.NOT. Zero) V: Reset
Mode Bits	OscOff, CPUOff, and GIE are not affected.

Figure B–11. Destination Operand Sign Extension

**Example**

R7 is loaded with the P1IN value. The operation of the sign-extend instruction expands bit 8 to bit 15 with the value of bit 7.

R7 is then added to R6.

```

MOV.B   &P1IN,R7      ; P1IN = 080h:      . . . . . 1000 0000
SXT     R7              ; R7 = 0FF80h:    1111 1111 1000 0000
ADD     R7,R6           ; add value of EDE to 16-bit ACCU

```

* TST[.W]	Test destination		
* TST.B	Test destination		
Syntax	TST	dst	or TST.W dst
	TST.B	dst	
Operation	dst + 0FFFFh + 1 dst + 0FFh + 1		
Emulation	CMP	#0,dst	
	CMP.B	#0,dst	
Description	The destination operand is compared with zero. The status bits are set according to the result. The destination is not affected.		
Status Bits	N: Set if destination is negative, reset if positive Z: Set if destination contains zero, reset otherwise C: Set V: Reset		
Mode Bits	OscOff, CPUOff, and GIE are not affected.		
Example	R7 is tested. If it is negative, continue at R7NEG; if it is positive but not zero, continue at R7POS.		
	TST	R7	; Test R7
	JN	R7NEG	; R7 is negative
	JZ	R7ZERO	; R7 is zero
R7POS	.....		; R7 is positive but not zero
R7NEG	.....		; R7 is negative
R7ZERO	.....		; R7 is zero
Example	The low byte of R7 is tested. If it is negative, continue at R7NEG; if it is positive but not zero, continue at R7POS.		
	TST.B	R7	; Test low byte of R7
	JN	R7NEG	; Low byte of R7 is negative
	JZ	R7ZERO	; Low byte of R7 is zero
R7POS	.....		; Low byte of R7 is positive but not zero
R7NEG	.....		; Low byte of R7 is negative
R7ZERO	.....		; Low byte of R7 is zero

XOR[.W]	Exclusive OR of source with destination
XOR.B	Exclusive OR of source with destination
Syntax	XOR src,dst or XOR.W src,dst XOR.B src,dst
Operation	src .XOR. dst → dst
Description	The source and destination operands are exclusive ORed. The result is placed into the destination. The source operand is not affected.
Status Bits	N: Set if result MSB is set, reset if not set Z: Set if result is zero, reset otherwise C: Set if result is not zero, reset otherwise (= .NOT. Zero) V: Set if both operands are negative
Mode Bits	OscOff, CPUOff, and GIE are not affected.
Example	<p>The bits set in R6 toggle the bits in the RAM word TONI.</p> <pre>XOR R6,TONI ; Toggle bits of word TONI on the bits set in R6</pre>
Example	<p>The bits set in R6 toggle the bits in the RAM byte TONI.</p> <pre>XOR.B R6,TONI ; Toggle bits in word TONI on bits ; set in low byte of R6,</pre>
Example	<p>Reset to 0 those bits in low byte of R7 that are different from bits in RAM byte EDE.</p> <pre>XOR.B EDE,R7 ; Set different bit to "1s" INV.B R7 ; Invert Lowbyte, Highbyte is 0h</pre>

Flash Memory

This chapter describes the MSP430 flash memory module. The flash memory module is electrically erasable and programmable. Devices with a flash memory module are multiple-time programmable devices (MTP). They can be erased and programmed off-board, or in a system via the MSP430's JTAG peripheral module, a bootstrap loader, or via the processor's resources.

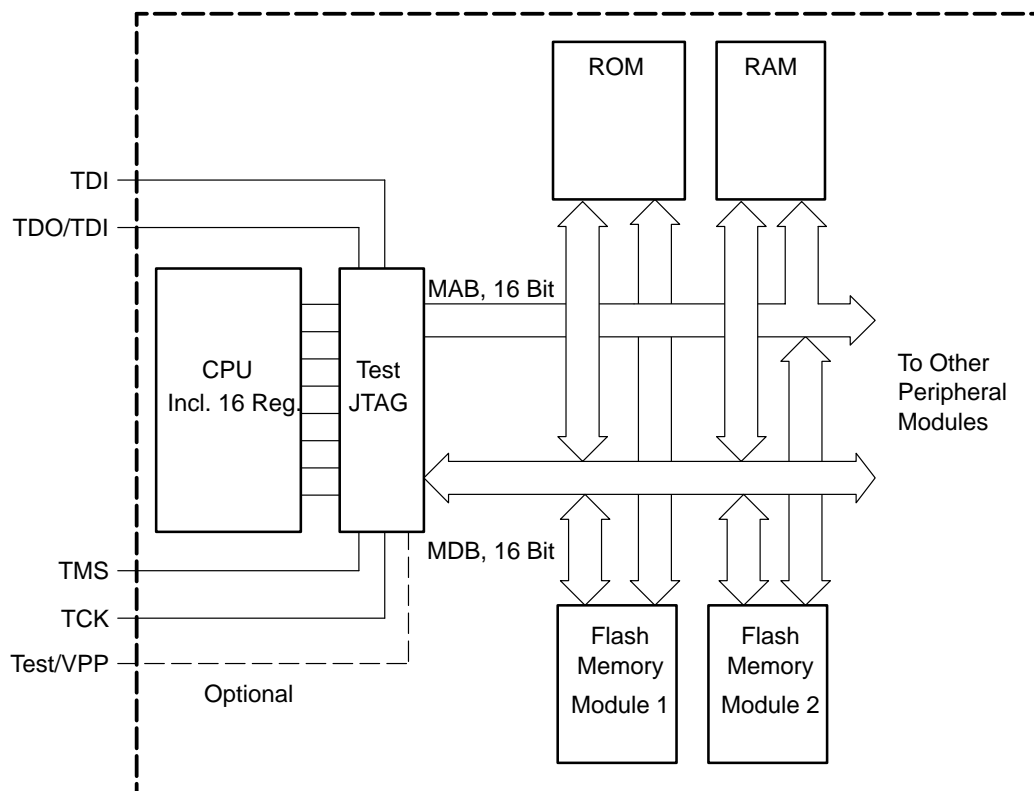
Software running on an MSP430 device can erase and program the flash memory module. This active software may run in RAM, in ROM, or in the flash memory. The flash memory may be a different memory module or the same memory module.

Topic	Page
C.1 Flash Memory Organization	C-2
C.2 Flash Memory Data Structure and Operation	C-5
C.3 Flash Memory Control Registers	C-13
C.4 Flash Memory, Interrupt and Security Key Violation	C-18
C.5 Flash Memory Access via JTAG and Software	C-22

C.1 Flash Memory Organization

The flash memory may have one or more modules of different sizes as shown in Figure C–1. A module is a physical memory unit that operates independent from other modules. In an MSP430 configuration with more than one flash memory module, all modules are located in one linear-address range.

Figure C–1. Interconnection of Flash Memory Module(s)



Independent modules, such as Module1 and Module2, are intended to execute software code from one module while simultaneously programming or erasing another module.

Note: Flash Memory Module(s) in MSP430 Devices

Different devices may have one or more flash memory modules.

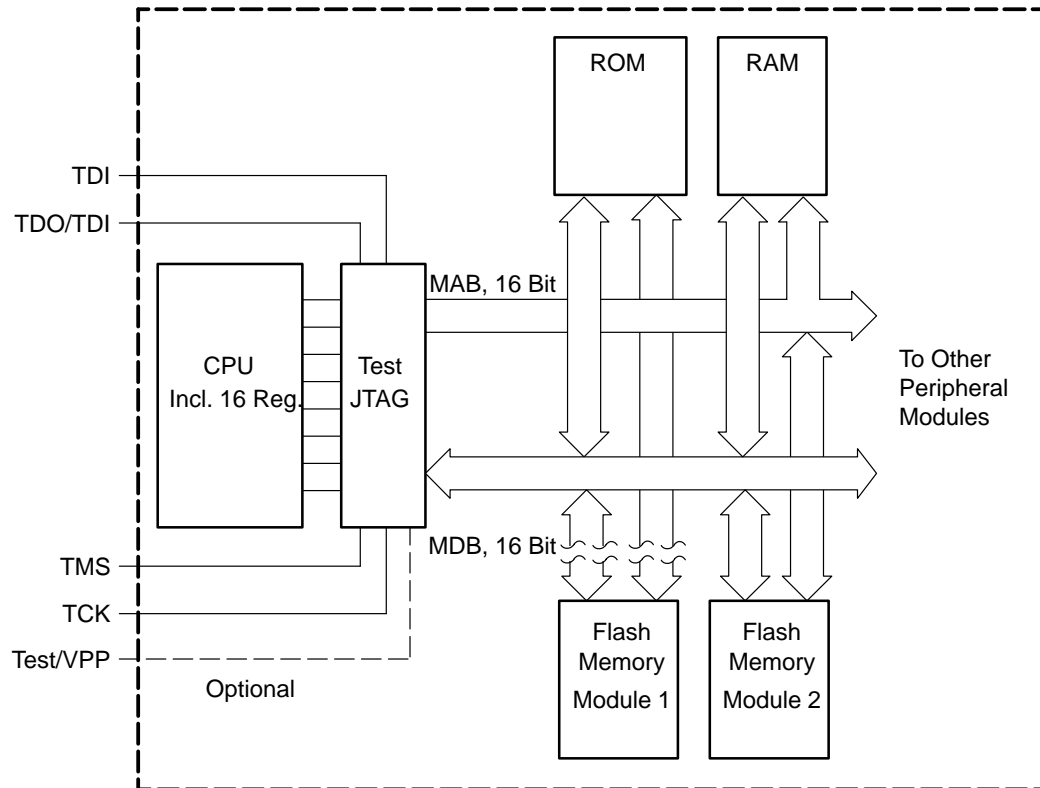
A flash memory module can not be accessed while being programmed or erased.

If the active software and the target programming location are in the same flash memory module, the program execution is halted (flag BUSY=1) until the programming cycle is completed (flag BUSY=0). Then it proceeds with the next instruction. The active software may also erase segments of the flash memory module. The user should be careful not to erase memory locations that are necessary to execute the software correctly.

Figure C–2 shows the flash memory Module1 in program or erase operation. During this operation the module is disconnected from the memory address

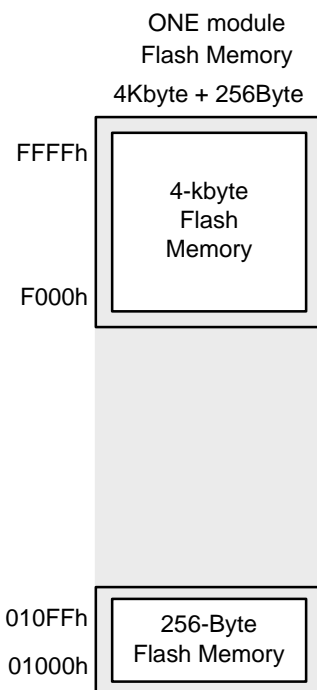
bus and memory data bus. When a second module (here Module2) is implemented, program code in this module can be executed while Module1 is disconnected.

Figure C–2. Flash Memory Module1 Disabled, Module2 Can Execute Code Simultaneously



One MSP430 flash memory module will have, in addition to its code segments, extra flash memory called *information memory*.

Figure C–3. Flash Memory Module Example



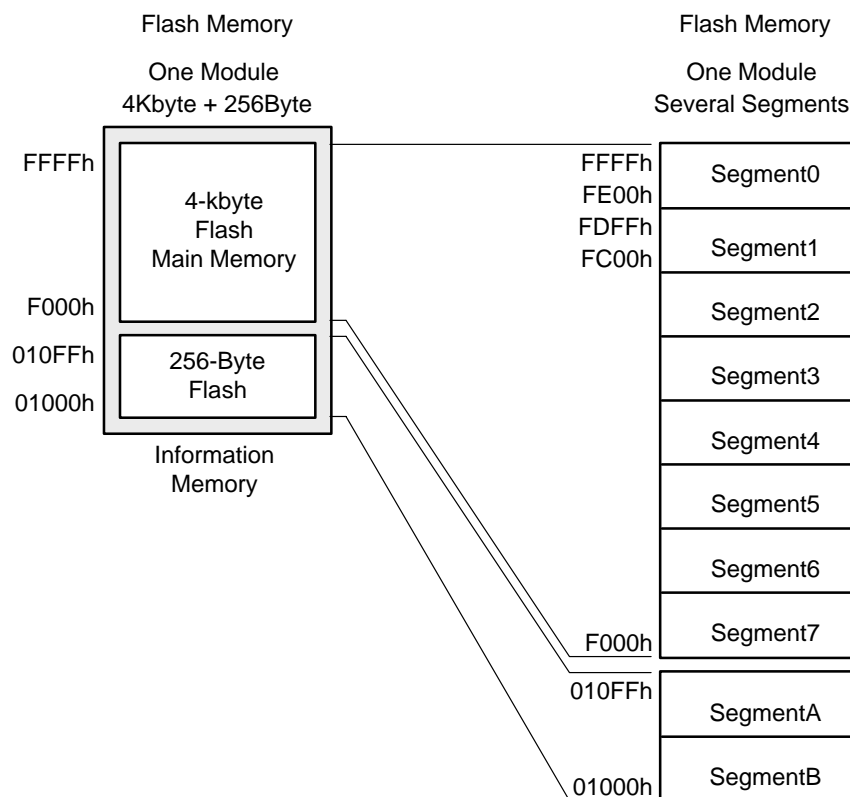
A module has several segments. The information memory has two segments of 128 bytes each. In the example in Figure C–4, the 4-kB module has eight segments of 512 bytes (Segment0 to Segment7), and two 128-byte segments (SegmentA and SegmentB). Segment0 to Segment7 can be erased individually or as a group. SegmentA and SegmentB can be erased individually or as a group with segments 0 to 7.

The segment structure is described in the device's data sheet. The information memory can be located directly below the main memory's address, or at a different address but will be in the same module.

Note:

Flash memory modules may have different numbers of segments. Segment are numbered from 0 up to n, e.g., segment 0 to segment n.

Figure C–4. Segments in Flash Memory Module, 4K-Byte Example



C.1.1 Why Is a Flash Memory Module Divided Into Several Segments?

Once a bit in flash memory has been programmed, it cannot be erased without erasing a whole segment. For this reason, the MSP430 flash memory modules have been heavily segmented to allow erasing and reprogramming of smaller memory segments.

C.2 Flash Memory Data Structure and Operation

The flash memory can be read and written (programmed) in bytes or words. Bits can be written as 0s once between erase cycles. The read access does not differ from access to masked ROM or RAM. Flash memory has restrictions in write operation:

- ☐ The default (erased) level for all bits is 1. Bits that are not programmed to 0s can be programmed to 0s at any time.
- ☐ The smallest memory portion to be erased is a segment. No single byte or word erase is possible.
- ☐ Access to a flash memory module is only possible when the module is not in a write or erase operation. For example, program code can not be executed in a module while it is processing a write or erase operation. The access limitation has no critical impact on program execution, but an access violation can be flagged in some situations (see flash memory register section in this appendix).

C.2.1 Flash Memory Basic Functions

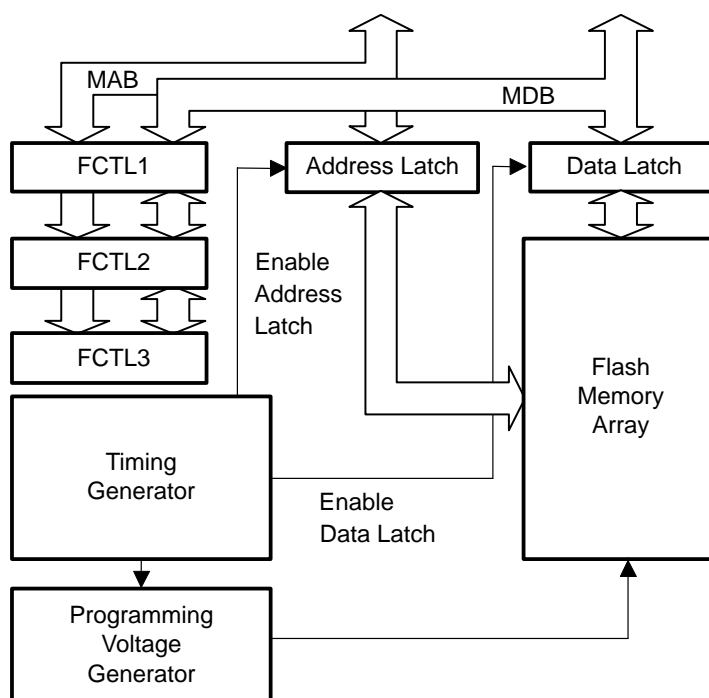
The basic functions of flash memory are to:

- ❑ Supply program code and data during program execution
- ❑ Erase, under software or JTAG control, parts of a module (one segment), multiple segments, or an entire module.
- ❑ Write data to a memory location under software or JTAG control. A double-speed programming sequence is implemented within a 64-byte section of the address range xx00h to xx3fh.

C.2.2 Flash Memory Block Diagram

The flash memory module has a minimum of three control registers, a timing generator, a voltage generator to supply program and erase voltages, and the flash memory itself. Data and address are latched when execution of a write (program) or erase operation is in progress.

Figure C–5. Flash Memory Module Block Diagram



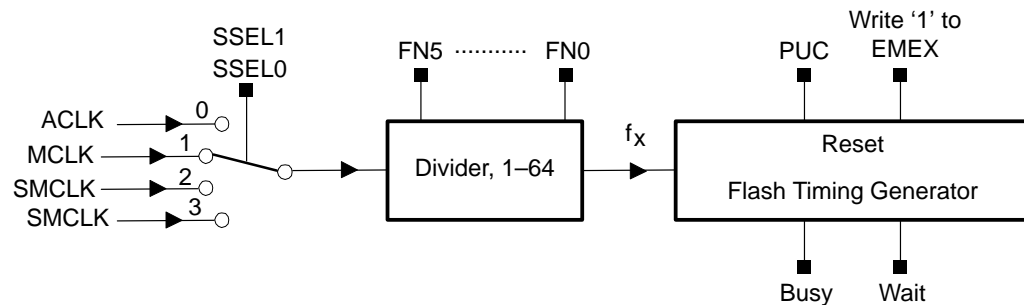
C.2.3 Flash Memory, Basic Operation

The flash memory module normally works in read mode, the address and data latch are transparent, and the timing generator and programming voltage generator are off. The flash memory module changes its mode of operation when data is written (programmed) to the module, or when the flash memory, or parts of it, are erased. In these situations, flash control registers FCTL1, FCTL2, and FCTL3 need to be set up properly to ensure correct write or erase

operation. Once these registers are set up and write or erase is started, the timing generator controls the entire operation and applies all signals internally. If the BUSY control signal is set, it indicates that the timing generator is active and a write or erase cycle is active. The block write mode also uses a second control bit WAIT. There are three basic parts to a write or erase cycle: preparation of program/erase voltage, control timing for the program or erase operation, and the switch-off sequence of the program/erase voltage. Once a write or erase function is started, the software should not access the flash memory until the BUSY signal indicates, with 0, that it can be accessed again. In critical situations where flash programming or erase should be immediately stopped, the *emergency exit* bit EMEX can be set. The current operation may be incomplete or the result may be incorrect.

Different clock sources (ACLK, MCLK, or SMCLK) can be selected to clock the timing generator. The connected clock sources applied to the timing generator may vary with the device, see data sheet for details. The clock source selected should be active from the beginning of write or erase until the operation is fully completed.

Figure C–6. Block Diagram of the Timing Generator in the Flash Memory Module



The selected clock source should be divided to meet the frequency requirement f_x of the flash timing generator.

If the clock signals are not available throughout the duration of the write or erase operation, or their frequencies change drastically, the result of the write or erase may be marginal, or the flash memory module may be stressed above the limits of reliable operation.

Table C–1 shows all useful combinations of control bits for proper write and erase operation:

Table C–1. Control Bits for Write or Erase Operation

FUNCTION PERFORMED	BLKWRT	WRT	Meras	Erase	BUSY	WAIT	Lock
Write word or byte	0	1	0	0	0	0	0
Write word or byte in same block, block write mode	1	1	0	0	0	1	0
Erase one segment by writing to any address in the target segment (0 to n or A or B)	0	0	0	1	0	0	0
Erase all segments (0 to n) but not the information memory (SegmentA and SegmentB)	0	0	1	0	0	0	0
Erase all segments (0 to n and A and B) by writing to any address in the flash memory module	0	0	1	1	0	0	0

Note: A write to flash memory performed with any other combination of bits BLKWRT, WRT, Meras, Erase, BUSY, WAIT, and Lock will result in an access violation. ACCVIFG is set and an NMI is requested if ACCVIE=1.

C.2.4 Flash Memory Status During Code Execution

The flash memory module delivers data for code execution in the same manner as any masked ROM or RAM. The flash memory module should be in read mode, with no write (programming) or erase operation active. By default, power-on reset (POR) puts the flash memory into read mode. No control bits need to be defined in the flash memory control registers after POR for code execution.

C.2.5 Flash Memory Status During Erase

The default bit level of the flash memory is 1. Any successful erase sets all bits of a segment or a block to this default level. Once a bit is programmed to the 0-level, only the erase function can reset it back to 1. Erase can be performed for one segment, a group of segments, or for an entire module. This can vary for each device configuration, and the exact implementation should be noted in the data sheet.

The erase operation starts with the following sequence:

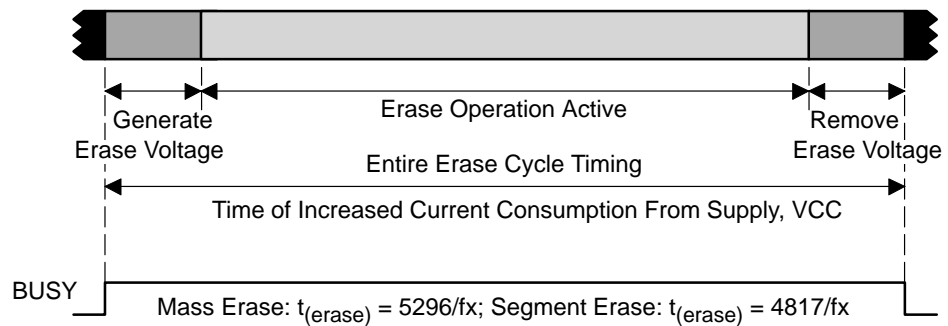
- 1) Set the correct input-clock frequency of the timing generator by selecting the clock source and predivider.
- 2) Reset the LOCK control bit, if set.
- 3) Watch the BUSY bit. Continue to the next steps only if the BUSY bit is reset.
- 4) Set the erase control bit *Erase* to erase a segment, or
- 5) Set the *mass-erase* control bit *MEras* to erase all numbered segments
- 6) Set the *mass-erase* (*MEras*) and erase (*Erase*) control bits to erase all flash memory segments
- 7) Execute a dummy write to any address in the range to be erased.

The *dummy write* starts the erase cycle. An example of dummy write is `CLR &0F012h`.

Note that a dummy write is ignored in a segment where the selected operation can not be executed successfully.

An example of such a situation can take place when Segment 1 is to be erased: the control bits are set properly, but the *dummy write* is sent to the information memory. No flag indicates this unsuccessful erase situation.

Figure C–7. Basic Flash EEPROM Module Timing During the Erase Cycle



The erase cycle completes successfully when none of the following restrictions is violated:

- ☐ The selected clock source is available until the cycle is completed.
- ☐ The predivider should not be modified during the operation.
- ☐ No further access to the flash memory module is performed while BUSY is set.
 - No read of data from this block
 - No write into this block
 - No further erase of this block

An access will result in setting the KEYV bit and requesting an NMI interrupt. The NMI interrupt routine should handle such violations.

- ☐ The supply voltage should be within the devices' electrical specifications defined in the respective data sheet; however, slight variations can be tolerated.

Control bit BUSY indicates an active erase cycle. It is set immediately after a dummy write starts the timing generator. It remains set until the entire erase cycle is completed and the erased segment or block is ready to be accessed again. The BUSY bit can not be set by software. But it can be reset. In case of emergency, set the emergency exit (EMEX) bit and the erase operation will be stopped immediately; BUSY bit is reset. One example of stop erase by software is when the supply voltage drops drastically and the operating conditions of the controller are exceeded. Another example is when the timing of the erase cycle gets out of control, for example, when the clock-source signal is lost.

Note:

When the erase cycle is stopped before its normal completion by the hardware, the timing generator is stopped and erasure of the flash memory can be marginal. An incomplete erasure can be verified. But an erase level of 1 can be inconsistently read as valid when supply voltage, temperature, access time (instruction execution, data read), and frequency vary.

C.2.6 Flash Memory Status During Write (Programming)

The flash memory erase bit level is 1. Bits can only be written (programmed) to a 0-level. Once a bit is programmed, only the erase function can reset it back to the 1-level. The byte or word 0-level can not be written (programmed) in one cycle. Any bit can be programmed from 1 to 0 at any time, but not from 0 to 1.

Two slightly different write operations can be performed: write a single byte or word of data, or write a sequence of bytes or words. A write sequence of bytes or words can be performed as multiple sequential, or as a block write. The block write is approximately twice as fast as a multiple-sequential write algorithm.

The write (program) operation starts with the following sequence:

- ☐ Set the correct input clock frequency of the timing generator by selecting the clock source and predivider.
- ☐ Reset the LOCK control bit, if set.
- ☐ Watch the BUSY bit. Continue with the next steps only if the BUSY bit is reset.
- ☐ Set the write-control bit WRT when a single byte or word data is to be written.
- ☐ Set the write WRT and BLKWRT control bits when block write is chosen to write multiple bytes or words to the flash memory module.
- ☐ Writing the data to the selected address starts the timing generator. The data is written (programmed) while the timing generator proceeds.

Note:

Whenever the write cycle is stopped before its normal ending by the hardware, the timing generator is stopped and the data written to the flash memory can be marginal. The data may be incorrect, which can be verified, or the data are verified to be correct but the programming is marginal. Reading of the data may be inconsistently valid when varying the supply voltage, the temperature, the access time (instruction execution, data read), or the time.

Figure C–8. Basic Flash Memory Module Timing During Write (Single Byte or Word) Cycle

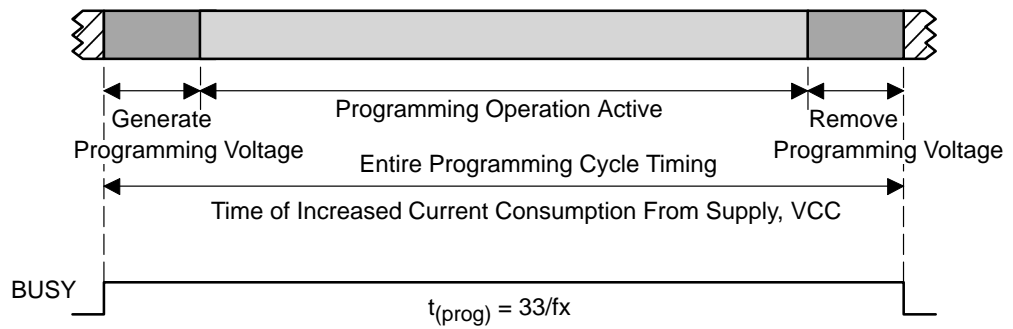
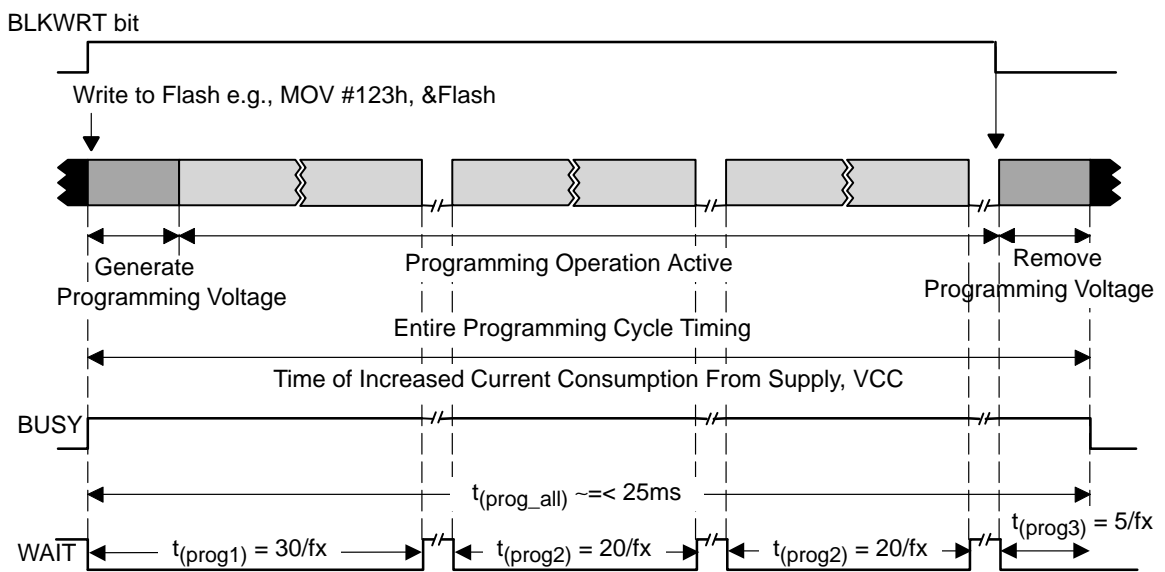


Figure C–9. Basic Flash Memory Module Timing During a Block-Write Cycle



The block write can be used on sequential addresses of the memory module. One block is 64 bytes long, starting at 0xx00h, 0xx40h, 0xx80h, or 0xxC0h, and ending at 0xx3Fh, 0xx7Fh, 0xxBFh, or 0xFFh. Examples of sequential block addresses are:

0F000h to 0F03Fh, 0F040h to 0F07Fh, 0F080h to 0F0BFh,
0F0C0h to 0F0FFh, 0F100 to 0F13Fh,

The block-write (program) operation at the 64-byte boundaries needs special software support (test of address 0xx3Fh, 0xx7Fh, 0xxBFh, or 0xFFh was successful):

- ☐ Wait until the WAIT bit is set, indicating that the write of the last byte or word was completed.
- ☐ Reset control bit BLKWRT.
- ☐ The BUSY bit remains set until the programming voltage is removed from the flash memory module and overstress is avoided.
- ☐ Wait the recovery time $t_{(rcv)}$ before another block write is started.

The write cycle is successfully completed if none of the following restrictions is violated:

- ☐ The selected clock source is available until the cycle is completed.
- ☐ The predivider is not modified.
- ☐ The access to the flash memory module is restricted as long as BUSY is set.

The conditions to read data from the flash memory with and without access violation are listed in Table C–2.

Table C–2. Conditions to Read Data From Flash Memory

Flash Operation	Instruction Fetch (see Note 1)	BUSY	WAIT	Data on Memory Data Bus (MDB)	Action
Byte/word program cycle (see Note 2)	No	1	0	3FFF	Access violation
	Yes	1	0	3FFF → JMP \$	Nothing
Flash read mode		0	0	Memory contents from applied address	PC = PC + 2
Page erase cycle (see Note 3)	No	1	0	3FFF	Access violation
	Yes	1	0	3FFF → JMP \$	Nothing
Mass-erase cycle (see Note 3)	No	1	0	3FFF	Access violation
	Yes	1	0	3FFF → JMP \$	Nothing
All erase (mass and in-information memory)	No	1	0	3FFF	Access violation
	Yes	1	0	3FFF → JMP \$	Nothing
Block write (see Note 4)	N.A.	1	0	3FFF	Access violation and LOCK (see Note 5)
	No	1	1	3FFF	Nothing
	Yes	1	1	3FFF	Access violation and LOCK (see Note 5)

- Notes:**
- 1) Instruction fetch refers to the fetch part of an instruction, and reads one word. The instruction fetch reads the first word of instructions with more than one word. The JMP instruction has one word. The data fetched (3FFFh) is used by the CPU as an instruction.
 - 2) Ensure that the programmed data does not result in unpredictable program execution, such as destruction of executable code sequences.
 - 3) If the PC points to the memory location being erased, no access violation indicates this situation. After erase, no executable code is available and an unpredictable situation occurs.
 - 4) Any software located in a flash memory module can not use the BLKWRT mode to program the same flash memory module. Using the byte or word programming mode allows programming data in the flash memory module holding the software code currently executing.
 - 5) The access violation sets the LOCK bit to 1. Setting the LOCK bit allows completion of the active block write operation in the normal manner.

- ❑ The supply voltage should be within the devices' electrical conditions and can only vary slightly, as specified in the applicable data sheet

The control bit BUSY indicates that the write or block-write cycle is active. It is set by the instruction that writes data to the flash memory module and starts the timing generator. It remains set until the write cycle is completed and the programming voltage is removed. In the write mode the BUSY bit indicates if the flash memory is ready for another write operation. In block write mode the WAIT bit indicates if the flash memory is ready for another write operation and the BUSY bit indicates the block write operation is completed. In case of emergency, the emergency exit bit EMEX is set and stops the write cycle immediately. The programming voltage is switched off. One situation where the write cycle should be stopped by software is when the supply voltage drops drastically and the controller's operating conditions may be exceeded. Another case is when the flash memory timing gets out of control, as when the clock-source signal is lost.

Note:

Whenever the write cycle is stopped before its normal ending by the hardware, the timing generator is stopped and the data written in flash memory may be marginal. Data reading may be inconsistently valid when varying the supply voltage, the temperature, the access time (instruction execution, data read), or the time.

C.3 Flash Memory Control Registers

Defining the correct control bits of three control registers enables write (program), erase, or mass-erase. All three registers should be accessed using word instructions only. The control registers are protected against false write or erase cycles via a key word. Any violation of this keyword sets the KEYV bit and requests a nonmaskable interrupt (NMI). The keyword is different to the keyword used with the Watchdog Timer.

All control bits are reset during PUC. PUC is activated after V_{CC} is applied, a reset condition is applied to the RST/NMI pin or watchdog, or a flash operation was not performed normally.

C.3.1 Flash Memory Control Register FCTL1

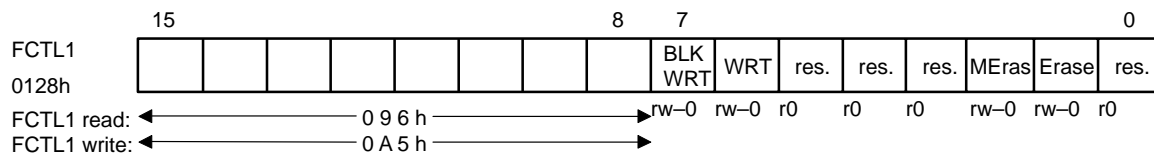
Any write to control register FCTL1 during erase, mass-erase, or write (programming) will end in an access violation with ACCVIFG=1. In an active segment-write mode, the control register can be written if wait mode is active (WAIT=1). In an active block write mode and while WAIT=0, writing to control register FCTL1 will also end in an access violation with ACCVIFG=1.

Read access is possible at any time without restrictions.

Any write to control register FCTL1 during erase, mass-erase, or write (programming) will end in an access violation with ACCVIFG=1. In an active segment write mode, the control register can be written if wait mode is active (WAIT=1). In an active block write mode and while WAIT=0, writing to control register FCTL1 will also end in an access violation with ACCVIFG=1.

Read access is possible at any time without restrictions.

The control bits of control register FCTL1 are:



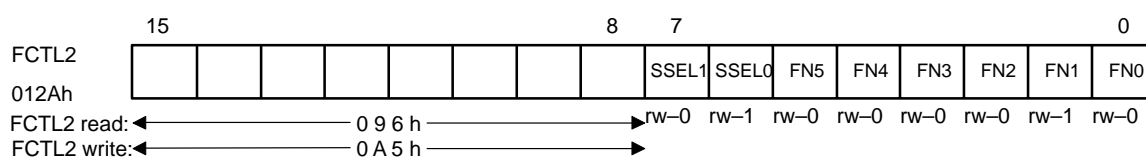
- Erase** 0128h, bit1, Erase a segment
- 0: No segment erase is started.
- 1: Erase of one segment is enabled. The segment *n* to be erased is defined by a *dummy* write into any address within the segment. The Erase bit is automatically reset when the erase operation is completed.
- Note: Instruction fetch access during erase is allowed. Any other access to the flash memory during erase results in setting the ACCVIFG bit, and an NMI interrupt is requested. The NMI interrupt routine should handle such violations.
- MEras** 0128h, bit2, Mass-erase, Segment0 to Segmentn are erased together. Segmentn is highest numbered segment of the device, but not the information segments.
- 0: No erase is started
- 1: Erase of Segment0 to Segmentn is enabled. When a *dummy* write into any address in Segment0 to Segmentn is executed, mass-erase is started. The MEras bit is automatically reset when the erase operation is completed.
- Note: Instruction fetch access during mass-erase is allowed. Any other access to the flash memory during erase results in setting the ACCVIFG bit, and an NMI interrupt is requested. The NMI interrupt routine should handle such violations.
- WRT** 0128h, bit6, The bit WRT should be set to get a successful write execution.
- If bit WRT is reset and write access to the flash memory is performed, an access violation occurs and ACCVIFG is set.
- Note: Instruction fetch access during erase is allowed. Any other access to the flash memory during erase results in setting the ACCVIFG bit, and an NMI interrupt is requested. The NMI interrupt routine should handle such violations.
- BLKWRT** 0128h, bit7, Bit BLKWRT can be used to reduce total programming time.
- The block-write bit BLKWRT is useful if larger sequences of data have to be programmed. If programming of one block is completed, a reset and set sequence should be performed to enable access to the next block. The WAIT bit should be high before the next write instruction is executed. See also paragraph C.1.1 and Figure C–9.
- 0: No block write accelerate is selected.
- 1: Block write is used. This bit needs to be reset and set between borders of blocks.

C.3.2 Flash Memory Control Register FCTL2

A PUC resets the flash timing generator. The generator is also reset if the emergency exit bit EMEX is set.

The timing generator generates the timing necessary to write, erase, and mass-erase from a selected clock source. Two control bits SSEL0 and SSEL1 in control register FCTL2 can select one of three clock sources. The clock source selected should be divided to meet the frequency requirements for f_x , as specified in the device's data sheet.

Writing to control register FCTL2 should not be attempted if the BUSY bit is set; otherwise an access violation will occur (ACCVIFG=1). Read access to FCTL2 is possible at any time without restrictions.

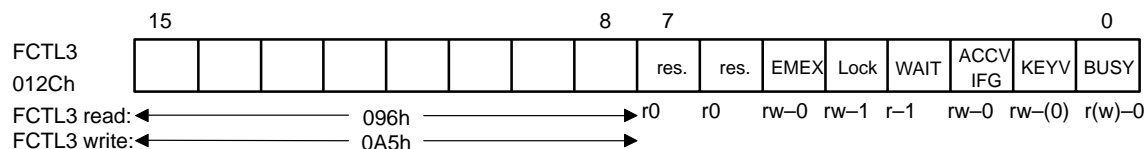


The control bits are:

FN0	012Ah, bit0,	These six bits define the division rate of the clock signal. The division rate can be 1 to 64, depending on the digital value of FN5 to FN0
to		
FN5	012Ah, bit5,	Plus one
SSEL0	012Ah, bit0,	Determine the clock source.
SSEL1	012Ah, bit6, bit 7:	0: ACLK 1: MCLK 2,3 SMCLK

C.3.3 Flash Memory Control Register FCTL3

There are no restrictions on modifying this control register. The control bits are reset or set (WAIT) by a PUC, but key violation bit KEYV is reset by POR.



BUSY 0128h, bit0, The bit BUSY shows if an access to the flash memory is possible (BUSY=0), or if an access violation can occur. The BUSY bit is read only, but a write operation is allowed. The BUSY bit should be tested before each write and erase cycle. The flash-timing generator hardware immediately sets the BUSY bit after the start of a write operation, a block-write operation, a segment erase, or a mass-erase. Once the timing generator has completed its function, the BUSY bit is reset by hardware.

The program and erase timing are shown in Figures C-7, C-8, and C-9.

0: Flash memory is not busy. Read, write, erase and mass-erase are possible without any violation of the internal flash timing. The BUSY bit is reset by POR and by the flash timing generator.

1: Flash memory is busy. Remains in busy state if block write function is in *wait* mode.

The conditions for access to the flash memory during BUSY=1 are described in paragraph C.2.6.

KEYV, 012Ch, bit1, Key Violated.

0: Key 0A5h (high byte) was not violated.

1: Key 0A5h (high byte) was violated. Violation occurs when a write access to register FCTL1, FCTL2 or FCTL3 is executed and the *high byte* is not equal to 0A5h. If the security key is violated, bit KEYV is set and a PUC is performed. The KEYV bit can be used to determine the source that forced a start of the program at the reset vector's address. The KEYV bit is not automatically reset and should reset by software.

Note: Any key violation results in a PUC, independent of the state of the KEYV bit. To avoid endless software loops, the flash memory control registers should not be written during a key violation service routine.

Note: The software can set the KEYV bit. A PUC is also performed if it is set by software.

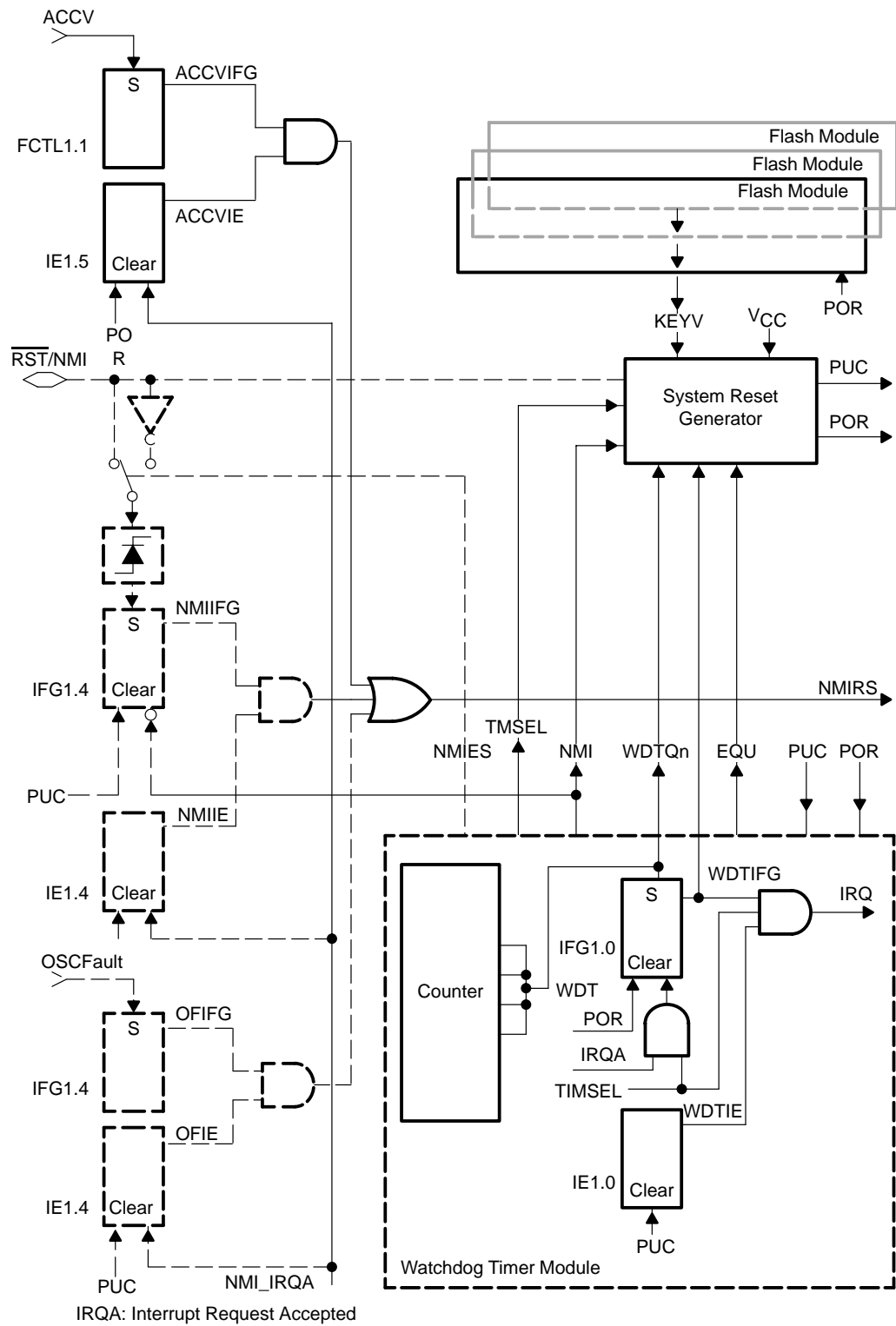
ACCVIFG	bit2,	<p>Access violation interrupt flag</p> <p>The access-violation interrupt flag is set when the flash memory module is improperly accessed while a write or erase operation is active. The violation situations are described in section C.2. When the access-violation interrupt-enable bit is set, the interrupt-service request is accepted and the program continues at the NMI interrupt-vector address.</p> <p>Reading the control registers will not set the ACCVIFG bit.</p> <p>Note: The proper interrupt-enable bit ACCVIE is located in interrupt-enable register IE1 of the special-function register. Software can set the ACCVIFG bit; in this case, an NMI is also executed.</p>
WAIT	012Ch, bit3,	<p>Wait. In the block write mode the WAIT bit indicates that the flash memory is ready to receive the (next) data for programming. The WAIT bit is read only, but a write to the WAIT bit is allowed.</p> <p>The WAIT bit is automatically reset if the BLKWRT bit is reset or the LOCK bit is set. Block-write operation is completed, and then the WAIT bit returns to 1.</p> <p>Condition, BLKWRT=1 (see Figure C-9):</p> <p>After each successful write operation, the BUSY bit is reset to indicate that another byte or word can be written (programmed). The BUSY bit does not indicate the condition when the timing generator has completed the entire programming. The high-voltage portion and voltage generator remain active. The maximum time $t_{(CPT)}$ should not be violated.</p> <p>0: Block-write operation has started and programming is in progress.</p> <p>1: Block-write operation is active and programming of data is completed. Waiting for the next data to be programmed.</p>
Lock	012Ch, bit4,	<p>The Lock bit can be set during any write, erase of a segment, or mass-erase request. The active sequence is completed normally. In block-write mode, if the Lock bit is set and BLKWRT and WAIT are set, the BLKWRT and WAIT bits are reset and the mode ends normally. The WAIT bit is 1 after block-write mode has ended. Software or hardware can control the Lock bit. If an access violation occurs (see conditions described in paragraph C.1.1), the ACCVIFG and the Lock bit are set.</p> <p>0: Flash memory can be read, programmed, erased, and mass-erased.</p> <p>1: Flash memory can be read but not programmed, erased, or mass-erased. A current program, erase, or mass-erase operation is completed normally. The access-violation interrupt flag ACCVIFG is set when the flash memory module is accessed while the Lock bit is set.</p>

EMEX	012Ch, bit5,	<p>Emergency exit. The emergency exit should only be used when a flash memory write or erase operation is out-of-control.</p> <p>0: No function.</p> <p>1: Stops the active operation immediately and shuts down all internal parts of the flash memory controller. Current consumption immediately drops back to the active mode. All bits in control register FCTL1 are reset. Since the EMEX bit is automatically reset by hardware, the software always reads EMEX as 0.</p>
------	--------------	--

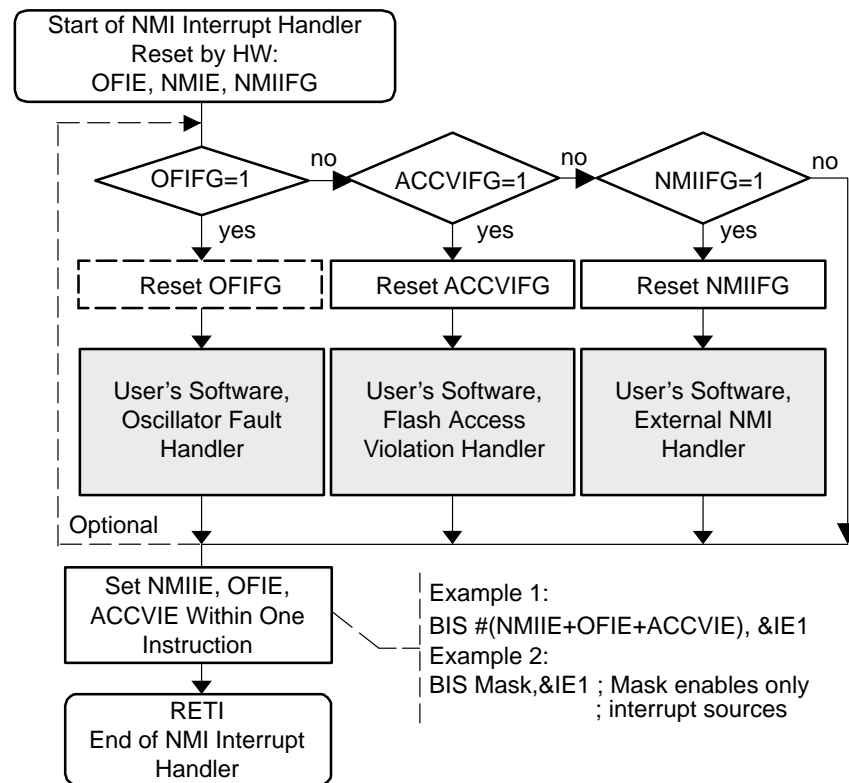
C.4 Flash Memory, Interrupt and Security Key Violation

One NMI vector is used for three non-maskable interrupt (NMI) events, RST/NMI, oscillator fault (OFIFG), and flash-access violation (ACCVIFG). The software can determine the source of the interrupt request by testing interrupt flags NMIFG, OFIFG, and ACCVIFG. They remain set until reset by software.

Figure C–10. Access Violation (Non)Maskable Interrupt Scheme in Flash Memory Module



C.4.1 Example of an NMI Interrupt Handler



The NMI handler takes care of all sources requesting a nonmaskable interrupt. The NMI interrupt is a multiple-source interrupt per MSP430 definition. The hardware resets the interrupt-enable flags: the external nonmaskable interrupt enable NMIE, the oscillator fault interrupt enable OFIE, and the flash memory access-violation interrupt enable. The individual software handlers reset the interrupt flags and reenables the interrupt enable bits according to the application needs. After all software is processed, the interrupt enable bits have to be set if another NMI event is to be accepted. Setting the interrupt enable bits should be the last instruction before the return-from-interrupt instruction RETI. If this rule is violated, the stack can grow out of control while other NMI requests are already pending. Setting the interrupt enable bits can be accomplished by using a bit-set-instruction BIS using immediate data or a mask. The mask data can be modified anywhere via software (for example in RAM); this constitutes the nonmaskable interrupt processing.

C.4.2 Protecting One-Flash Memory-Module Systems From Corruption

MSP430 configurations having one flash memory module use this module for program code and interrupt vectors. When the flash memory module is in a write, erase, or mass-erase operation and the program accesses it, an access violation occurs. This violation will request an interrupt service – but when the interrupt vector is read from the flash memory, 03FFFh will be read independent of the data in the flash memory at the vector's memory location.

To protect the software from this error situation, all interrupt sources have to be disabled since all interrupt requests will fail. The flash memory returns the vector 03FFFh. Before the interrupt enable bits are modified, they can be stored in RAM to be restored when the flash memory is ready for access again.

The following interrupt enable bits should be reset to stop all interrupt service requests:

- ☐ GIE = 0
- ☐ NMIIE = ACCVIE = OFIE = 0

Additionally the watchdog should be halted to prevent its expiration when flash memory is busy:

- ☐ WDT HOLD = 1

When the flash memory is ready, the interrupt sources can be enabled again. Before they are enabled, critical interrupt flags should be checked and, if necessary, served or reset by software.

- ☐ GIE = 1 or left disabled, or be restored to the previous level
- ☐ NMIIE = ACCVIE = OFIE = 1 or left disabled, or be restored to the previous level
- ☐ WDT HOLD = 0 or left disabled, or be restored to the previous level

C.5 Flash Memory Access via JTAG and Software

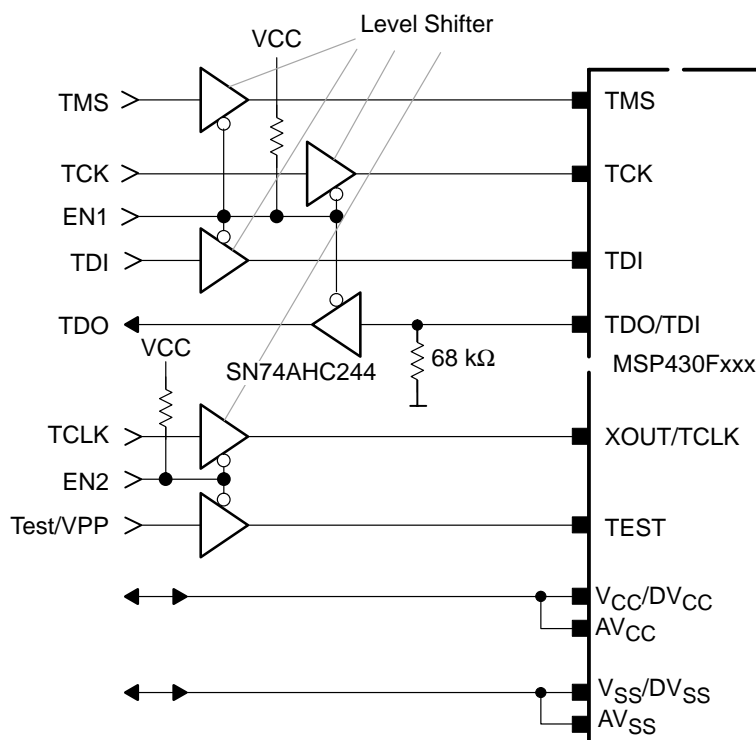
C.5.1 Flash Memory Protection

Flash memory access via the serial test and programming interface JTAG can be inhibited when the *security fuse* is activated. The *security fuse* is activated via serial instructions shifted into the JTAG. Activating the fuse is not reversible, and any access to the internal system is disrupted. The bypass function described in the IEEE1149.1 standard is active.

C.5.2 Program Flash Memory Module via Serial Data Link Using JTAG Feature

The hardware interconnection to the JTAG pins is done via four separate pins, plus the ground or V_{SS} reference level. The JTAG pins are TMS, TCK, TDI (V_{PP}), and TDO ($/TDI$).

Figure C–11. Signal Connections to MSP430Fxxx JTAG Pins

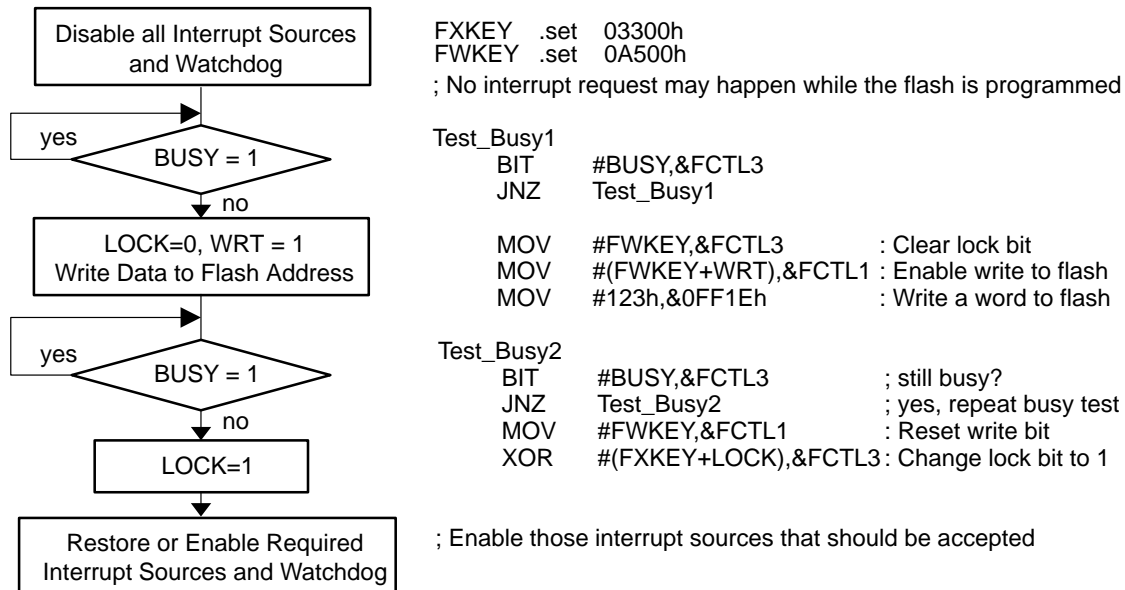


C.5.3 Programming a Flash Memory Module via Controller Software

No special external hardware is required to program a flash memory module. The power supply at pin V_{CC} should supply sufficient current during write (program) and erase modes. Please separate the device's data sheet for flash write and erase current. The software algorithm is simple. The embedded timing generator in the flash memory module controls the program and erase cycles. Software can run in the same flash memory module where data is to be written, or in other memory modules, such as ROM, RAM, or another flash memory module.

C.5.3.1 Example: Programming One Word Into a Flash Memory Module via Software Execution Outside This Module

This example assumes that the code to program the flash location is not executed from the target flash memory module.



The BUSY bit can be tested before the write to the flash memory module is done, or after a write (program) starts:

- ☐ For flash memory locations that hold data, it is a good practice to test the BUSY bit before the write is executed. This has some time benefits, since the write process is executed via the flash memory timing generator without further CPU intervention. It is important that the clock source remains active until BUSY is reset by the flash memory hardware.

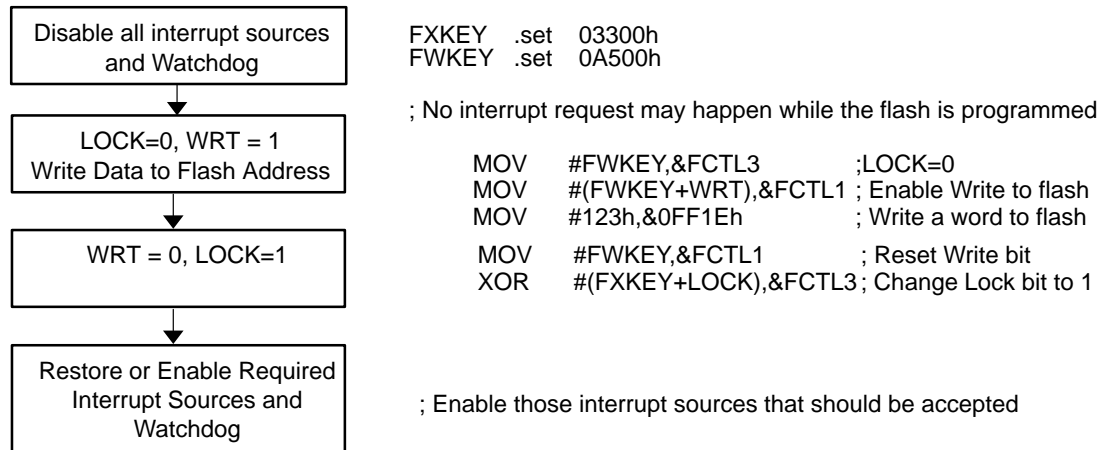
The power or clock management, responsible for entering low-power modes, has to make sure that it does not switch off the clock source used by the flash controller.

- ☐ For flash memory blocks that hold program code, it is a good practice to test the BUSY bit after the write is executed. The program can only proceed if the module can be accessed again. No special attention is needed during execution of software code. Every write to the flash memory module has to leave the programming cycle with the BUSY bit reset.

Testing the BUSY bit before writing to a flash memory block that holds program code ensures that the active program will not access the flash memory module. Two types of access are visible: execute program code, or read and write data on this flash memory module.

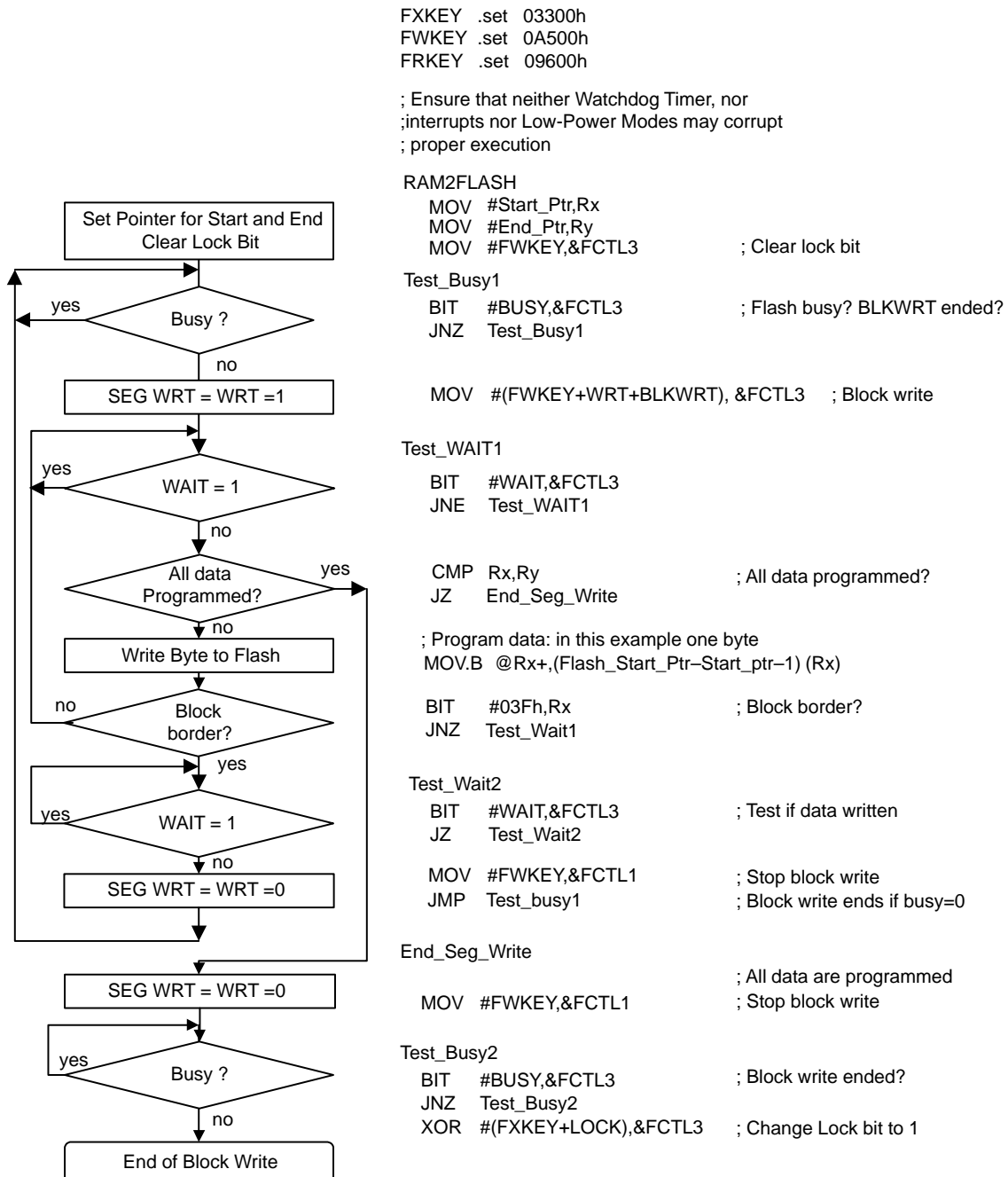
C.5.3.2 Example: Programming One Word Into the Same Flash Memory Module via Software

The program execution waits after the write-to-flash instruction (MOV #123h,&0FF1Eh) until the busy bit is reset again. If no other write-to-flash instruction method is used the BUSY bit test may not be needed to ensure correct flash-write handling.



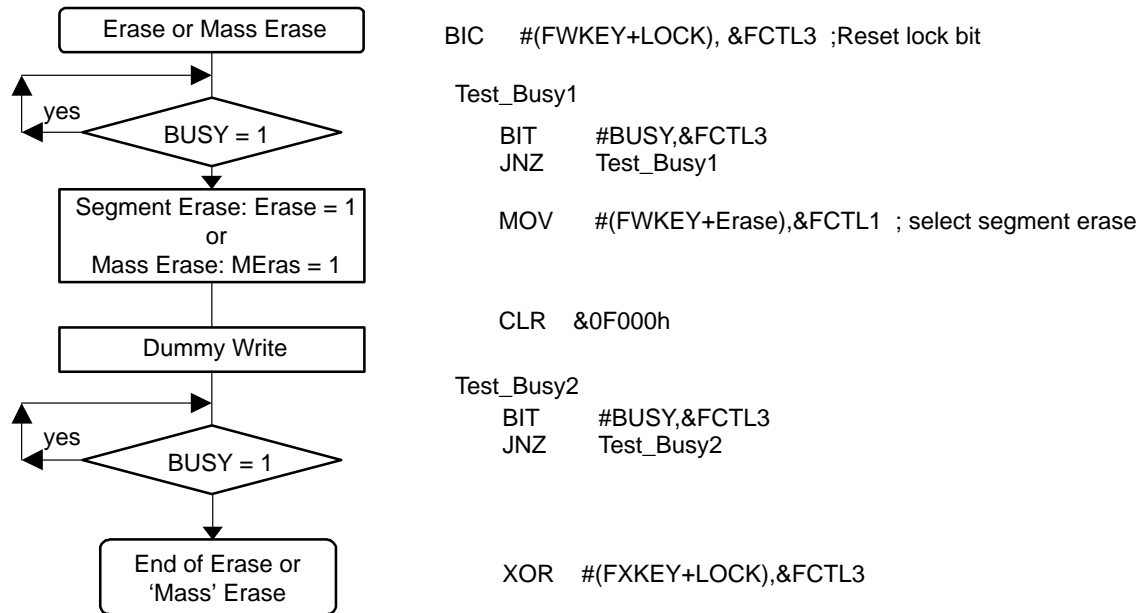
C.5.3.3 Example, Programming Byte Sequences Into a Flash Memory Module via Software

Sequences of data, bytes, or words can use the block-write feature. This reduces the programming time by about one half.

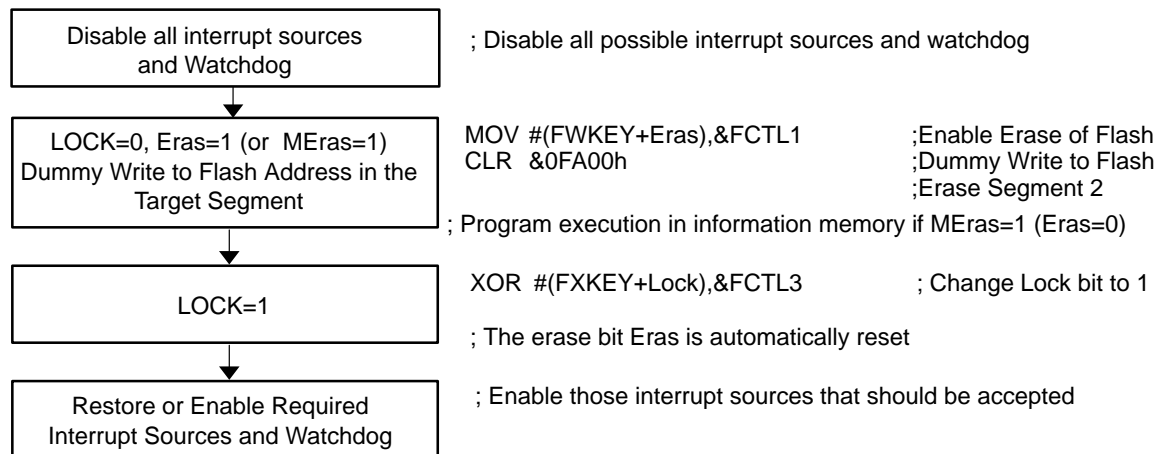


C.5.3.4 Example, Erase Flash Memory Segment or Module via Software Execution Outside This Flash Module

The following sequence can be used to erase a segment, or mass-erase of segments.



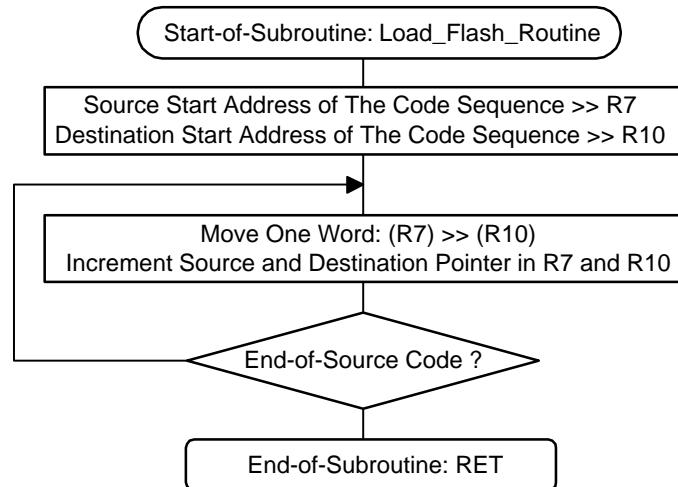
C.5.3.5 Example, Erase Flash Memory Segment Module in the Same Flash Memory Module via Software



C.5.3.6 Code for Write (Program), Erase, and Mass-Erase

Software that controls write, erase, or mass-erase can be located in the flash memory module and copied during execution into RAM. In this case the code should be written position-independent, and should be loaded (for instance, to RAM) before it is used. The algorithm runs in RAM during the programming sequence to avoid conflict when the flash memory is written or erased.

In the following example, a subroutine moves the programming-code sequence to another memory such as RAM.



```

;-----
; Definitions used in Subroutine:
; Move programming code sequence into RAM (load_flash_routine)
;-----
Flash_ram          .set  0222h ; Start address of flash
                    ; program in the RAM
                    ; program in the RAM

Prg_source_start   .set  0xxxxh ; Start address of code
                    ; in the flash to be prg'ed

Prg_source_end     .set  0yyyyh ; End address of code
                    ; in the flash to be prg'ed

Prg_dest_start     .set  Flash_ram

load_flash_routine ; The code of the program which moves
                    ; Flash access code (write, erase,...)
                    ; starts at label load_flash_routine

    push  r9
    push  r10
    mov   #Prg_source_start,R9 ; load pointer source
    mov   #Prg_dest_start,R10 ; load pointer destination
load_flash_prg
    mov   @R9,0(R10)           ; move a word
    incd  R10                  ; destination pointer + 2
    incd  R9                   ; source pointer + 2
    cmp   # Prg_source_end,R9 ; compare to end_of_code
    jne   load_ flash_prg
    pop   r9
    pop   r10
    ret

```
